Contents

Preface

Audience xx
Documentation Accessibility xx
Related Documents xx
Conventions xxi

Part I  Multitenant Architecture

1  Introduction to the Multitenant Architecture

1.1 Changes in Oracle Database Release 20c for Oracle Multitenant Administrator's Guide 1-1
1.2 Database and Instance 1-3
   1.2.1 Multitenant Architecture 1-3
      1.2.1.1 CDBs 1-3
      1.2.1.2 PDBs 1-4
      1.2.1.3 Application Containers 1-5
   1.2.2 Sharding Architecture 1-6
1.3 About the Multitenant Architecture 1-8
   1.3.1 About Containers in a CDB 1-8
   1.3.2 About User Interfaces for the Multitenant Architecture 1-11
1.4 Benefits of the Multitenant Architecture 1-12
   1.4.1 Benefits of Consolidating Data into a Single CDB 1-12
   1.4.2 Benefits of the Multitenant Architecture for Manageability 1-14
1.5 Overview of CDB and PDB Creation 1-15
   1.5.1 Creation of a CDB 1-15
   1.5.2 Creation of a PDB 1-15
      1.5.2.1 Creation of a PDB by Cloning 1-16
      1.5.2.2 Creation of a PDB by Plugging In an Unplugged PDB 1-21
      1.5.2.3 Creation of a PDB by Relocating 1-23
      1.5.2.4 Creation of a PDB as a Proxy PDB 1-25
2
Overview of the Multitenant Architecture

2.1 Overview of Containers in a CDB
  2.1.1 The CDB Root and System Container
  2.1.2 PDBs
    2.1.2.1 Types of PDBs
    2.1.2.2 Purpose of PDBs
    2.1.2.3 Proxy PDBs
    2.1.2.4 Names for PDBs
    2.1.2.5 Database Links Between PDBs
  2.1.3 Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB
    2.1.3.1 Purpose of Data Dictionary Separation in a CDB
    2.1.3.2 Metadata and Data Links
    2.1.3.3 Container Data Objects in a CDB
    2.1.3.4 Data Dictionary Storage in a CDB
  2.1.4 Current Container
  2.1.5 Cross-Container Operations

2.2 Overview of Commonality in the CDB
  2.2.1 About Commonality in a CDB
    2.2.1.1 Principles of Commonality
    2.2.1.2 Namespaces in a CDB
  2.2.2 Overview of Common and Local Users in a CDB
    2.2.2.1 Common Users in a CDB
    2.2.2.2 Local Users in a CDB
  2.2.3 Overview of Common and Local Roles in a CDB
    2.2.3.1 Common Roles in a CDB
    2.2.3.2 Local Roles in a CDB
  2.2.4 Overview of Privilege and Role Grants in a CDB
    2.2.4.1 Principles of Privilege and Role Grants in a CDB
    2.2.4.2 Privileges and Roles Granted Locally in a CDB
    2.2.4.3 Roles and Privileges Granted Commonly in a CDB
    2.2.4.4 Grants to PUBLIC in a CDB
    2.2.4.5 Grants of Privileges and Roles: Scenario
  2.2.5 Overview of Common and Local Objects in a CDB
  2.2.6 Overview of Common Audit Configurations
  2.2.7 Overview of PDB Lockdown Profiles

2.3 Overview of Applications in an Application Container
  2.3.1 About Application Containers
    2.3.1.1 Purpose of Application Containers
2.3.1.2 Application Root 2-36
2.3.1.3 Application PDBs 2-37
2.3.1.4 Application Seed 2-38
2.3.2 Application Common Objects 2-38
  2.3.2.1 Creation of Application Common Objects 2-39
  2.3.2.2 Metadata-Linked Application Common Objects 2-39
  2.3.2.3 Data-Linked Application Common Objects 2-41
  2.3.2.4 Extended Data-Linked Application Objects 2-42
2.3.3 Application Maintenance 2-44
  2.3.3.1 About Application Maintenance 2-44
  2.3.3.2 Application Installation 2-44
  2.3.3.3 Application Upgrade 2-46
  2.3.3.4 Application Patch 2-50
2.3.4 Migration of an Existing Application 2-51
2.3.5 Implicitly Created Applications 2-52
2.3.6 Application Synchronization 2-52
  2.3.6.1 Synchronization of a Single Application 2-52
  2.3.6.2 Synchronization of Multiple Applications 2-53
2.3.7 Container Maps 2-54
2.4 Overview of Services in a CDB 2-57
  2.4.1 Service Creation in a CDB 2-58
    2.4.1.1 Default Services in a CDB 2-58
    2.4.1.2 Nondefault Services in a CDB 2-58
  2.4.2 Connections to Containers in a CDB 2-59
2.5 Overview of Tablespaces and Database Files in a CDB 2-60
2.6 Overview of Availability in a CDB 2-62
  2.6.1 Overview of Backup and Recovery in a CDB 2-62
  2.6.2 Overview of Flashback PDB 2-63
2.7 Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a CDB 2-63

Part II Creating and Configuring a Multitenant Environment

3 Overview of Configuring and Managing a Multitenant Environment

  3.1 About Configuring and Managing a Multitenant Environment 3-1
    3.1.1 Common Users and Local Users 3-1
    3.1.2 Separation of Duties in CDB and PDB Administration 3-2
  3.2 Prerequisites for a Multitenant Environment 3-2
  3.3 Tasks and Tools for a Multitenant Environment 3-2
    3.3.1 Tasks for a Multitenant Environment 3-3
4 Creating and Configuring a CDB

4.1 About Creating a CDB 4-1
4.2 Planning for CDB Creation 4-1
  4.2.1 Decide How to Configure the CDB 4-2
    4.2.1.1 Plan the PDBs 4-2
    4.2.1.2 Plan the Physical Layout 4-2
    4.2.1.3 Learn How to Manage Initialization Parameters 4-3
    4.2.1.4 Select the Character Set 4-4
    4.2.1.5 Decide Which Time Zones to Support 4-5
    4.2.1.6 Select the Database and Redo Log Block Sizes 4-5
    4.2.1.7 Plan the SYSTEM and SYSAUX Tablespaces 4-5
    4.2.1.8 Plan the Temporary Tablespaces 4-6
    4.2.1.9 Choose the Undo Mode 4-6
    4.2.1.10 Plan the Services for Your Application 4-7
    4.2.1.11 Learn How to Start Up and Shut Down a CDB 4-7
    4.2.1.12 Plan for Oracle RAC 4-8
  4.2.2 Prerequisites for CDB Creation 4-8
4.3 Creating a CDB 4-9
  4.3.1 About CDB Creation with DBCA 4-9
  4.3.2 About CDB Creation with SQL Statements 4-10
    4.3.2.1 About Enabling PDBs 4-10
    4.3.2.2 About the Names and Locations of Files for the CDB Root and PDB$SEED 4-10
    4.3.2.3 About the Attributes of the Data Files for PDB$SEED 4-12
    4.3.2.4 About the CDB Undo Mode 4-13
  4.3.3 Creating a CDB with the CREATE DATABASE Statement 4-14
  4.3.4 Creating a CDB with the CREATE DATABASE Statement: Examples 4-15
    4.3.4.1 Creating a CDB Without Using Oracle Managed Files 4-16
    4.3.4.2 Creating a CDB Using Oracle Managed Files: Example 4-19
4.4 Configuring EM Express for a CDB 4-21
4.5 After Creating a CDB 4-22

Part III Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers

5 Overview of PDB Creation

  5.1 Techniques for Creating a PDB 5-1
    5.1.1 Current Container and PDB Creation 5-3
5.2  PDB Storage  
5.2.1 Storage Limits  
5.2.2 Default Tablespace  
5.2.3 User Tablespaces  
5.2.4 PDB File Locations  
5.2.4.1 FILE_NAME_CONVERT Clause  
5.2.4.2 CREATE_FILE_DEST Clause  
5.2.4.3 Restrictions on PDB File Locations  
5.3 Service Name Conversion  
5.4 Summary of Clauses for Creating a PDB  
5.5 General Prerequisites for PDB Creation  

6  Creating a PDB from Scratch  
6.1 About Creating a PDB from Scratch  
6.2 Creating a PDB  
6.3 Creating a PDB: Examples  
6.3.1 Creating a PDB Using No Clauses: Example  
6.3.2 Creating a PDB and Granting Predefined Oracle Roles to the PDB Administrator: Example  
6.3.3 Creating a PDB Using Multiple Clauses: Example  

7  Cloning a PDB  
7.1 About Cloning a PDB  
7.1.1 How Cloning Works  
7.1.2 User Interface for PDB Cloning  
7.2 Cloning a Local PDB  
7.2.1 About Cloning a Local PDB  
7.2.2 Cloning a Local PDB: Basic Steps  
7.2.3 After Cloning a Local PDB  
7.2.4 Cloning a Local PDB: Examples  
7.2.4.1 Cloning a Local PDB Using No Clauses: Example  
7.2.4.2 Cloning a Local PDB Using DBCA: Example  
7.2.4.3 Cloning a Local PDB with the PATH_PREFIX Clause: Example  
7.2.4.4 Cloning a Local PDB Using the STORAGE Clause: Example  
7.2.4.5 Cloning a Local PDB with the NO DATA Clause: Example  
7.3 Cloning a Remote PDB  
7.3.1 About Cloning a Remote PDB  
7.3.2 Cloning a Remote PDB: Basic Steps  
7.3.3 After Cloning a Remote PDB  
7.3.4 Cloning a Remote PDB: Examples
7.3.4.1 Cloning a Remote PDB Using No Clauses: Example 7-15
7.3.4.2 Cloning a Remote PDB Using DBCA: Example 7-16
7.4 About Refreshable Clone PDBs 7-17
7.4.1 Purpose of Refreshable Clone PDBs 7-17
7.4.2 Automatic and Manual Refresh Modes 7-18
7.4.3 Requirements for Refreshable Clone PDBs 7-19
7.4.4 Creating a Refreshable Clone PDB: Scenario 7-19
7.5 Cloning PDBs from PDB Snapshots 7-20
7.5.1 About Cloning PDBs from PDB Snapshots 7-20
7.5.1.1 PDB Snapshot Carousel 7-20
7.5.1.2 Creation of a PDB with the USING SNAPSHOT Clause 7-21
7.5.2 Cloning a PDB from a PDB Snapshot: Scenario 7-21
7.6 Creating and Materializing Snapshot Copy PDBs 7-22
7.6.1 About Snapshot Copy PDBs 7-23
7.6.1.1 Storage Requirements for Snapshot Copy PDBs 7-23
7.6.1.2 Restrictions for Snapshot Copy PDBs 7-24
7.6.2 Creating a Snapshot Copy PDB: Scenario 7-25
7.6.3 Materializing a Snapshot Copy PDB 7-26
7.7 Creating a Split Mirror Clone PDB 7-27

8 Relocating a PDB

8.1 About PDB Relocation 8-1
8.2 Purpose of PDB Relocation 8-4
8.3 How PDB Relocation Works 8-4
8.3.1 Server Session Draining When Relocating or Stopping PDBs 8-4
8.3.2 Stages of PDB Relocation 8-5
8.3.2.1 PDB Relocation in a Common Listener Network 8-6
8.3.2.2 PDB Relocation in Isolated Listener Networks 8-7
8.4 User Interface for PDB Relocation 8-9
8.5 Relocating a PDB Using CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE 8-10
8.6 Relocating a PDB: Examples 8-13
8.6.1 Relocating a PDB from a Remote CDB 8-13
8.6.2 Relocating a PDB Using DBCA: Example 8-14

9 Plugging In an Unplugged PDB

9.1 About PDB Plugin Operations 9-1
9.1.1 About the XML File and Archive File 9-1
9.1.2 Source File Locations When Plugging In an Unplugged PDB 9-4
9.1.2.1 SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT Clause 9-4
9.1.2.2 SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY Clause 9-5
9.2 Plugging In an Unplugged PDB 9-6
9.3 After Plugging in an Unplugged PDB 9-10
9.4 Plugging in an Unplugged PDB: Examples 9-11

10 Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB

10.1 About Creating a Proxy PDB 10-1
10.1.1 Proxy PDBs and SQL Statements 10-4
10.1.2 Proxy PDBs and Database Links 10-4
10.1.3 Proxy PDBs and Authentication 10-5
10.1.4 Proxy PDBs and the Listener 10-5
10.1.4.1 HOST Clause 10-5
10.1.4.2 PORT Clause 10-5
10.2 Creating a Proxy PDB 10-6

11 Removing a PDB

11.1 Unplugging a PDB from a CDB 11-1
11.1.1 About Unplugging a PDB 11-1
11.1.2 Unplugging a PDB 11-4
11.2 Dropping a PDB 11-5

12 Creating and Removing Application Containers and Seeds

12.1 Creating and Removing Application Containers 12-1
12.1.1 Creating Application Containers 12-1
12.1.1.1 About Creating an Application Container 12-1
12.1.1.2 Preparing for Application Containers 12-2
12.1.1.3 Creating an Application Container 12-3
12.1.2 Unplugging an Application Container from a CDB 12-6
12.1.2.1 About Unplugging an Application Container 12-6
12.1.2.2 Unplugging an Application Container 12-7
12.1.3 Dropping an Application Container 12-8
12.2 Creating and Removing Application Seeds 12-10
12.2.1 Creating Application Seeds 12-10
12.2.1.1 About Creating an Application Seed 12-10
12.2.1.2 Preparing for an Application Seed 12-11
12.2.1.3 Creating an Application Seed 12-11
12.2.2 Unplugging an Application Seed from an Application Container 12-15
12.2.2.1 About Unplugging an Application Seed 12-15
12.2.2.2 Unplugging an Application Seed 12-16
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.2.3</td>
<td>Dropping an Application Seed</td>
<td>12-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>Creating an Application PDB</td>
<td>12-18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part IV**  
Administering a Multitenant Environment

**13**  
Administering a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>About CDB Administration</td>
<td>13-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.1</td>
<td>About the Current Container</td>
<td>13-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.2</td>
<td>About Administrative Tasks in a CDB</td>
<td>13-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.3</td>
<td>About Using Manageability Features in a CDB</td>
<td>13-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.4</td>
<td>About Managing Tablespaces in a CDB</td>
<td>13-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.4.1</td>
<td>About Managing Permanent Tablespaces in a CDB</td>
<td>13-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.4.2</td>
<td>About Managing Temporary Tablespaces in a CDB</td>
<td>13-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.5</td>
<td>About Managing Database Objects in a CDB</td>
<td>13-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.6</td>
<td>About Flashing Back a PDB</td>
<td>13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.7</td>
<td>About Restricting PDB Users for Enhanced Security</td>
<td>13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.7.1</td>
<td>PDB Lockdown Profiles</td>
<td>13-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.7.2</td>
<td>The PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL Initialization Parameter</td>
<td>13-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.7.3</td>
<td>The PATH_PREFIX and CREATE_FILE_DEST PDB Creation Clauses</td>
<td>13-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.8</td>
<td>Overview of Oracle Multitenant with Oracle RAC</td>
<td>13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>Accessing Containers in a CDB</td>
<td>13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.1</td>
<td>About Container Access in a CDB</td>
<td>13-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.1.1</td>
<td>Services in a CDB</td>
<td>13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.1.2</td>
<td>Session Limits in a CDB</td>
<td>13-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.1.3</td>
<td>User Names in a Multitenant Environment</td>
<td>13-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.1.4</td>
<td>How the Multitenant Option Affects Password Files for Administrative Users</td>
<td>13-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.2</td>
<td>Accessing a Container in a CDB</td>
<td>13-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.2.1</td>
<td>Connecting to a Container Using the SQL*Plus CONNECT Command</td>
<td>13-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2.2.2</td>
<td>Switching to a Container Using the ALTER SESSION Statement</td>
<td>13-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>Modifying a CDB at the System Level</td>
<td>13-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3.1</td>
<td>About System-Level Modifications of a CDB</td>
<td>13-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3.2</td>
<td>Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM</td>
<td>13-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>Modifying Containers When Connected to the CDB Root</td>
<td>13-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4.1</td>
<td>About Container Modification When Connected to CDB Root</td>
<td>13-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4.2</td>
<td>Modifying an Entire CDB Using ALTER DATABASE</td>
<td>13-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4.3</td>
<td>Setting the Undo Mode in a CDB Using ALTER DATABASE</td>
<td>13-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4.3.1</td>
<td>About the CDB Undo Mode</td>
<td>13-30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.4 Modifying a PDB at the Database Level 15-14

15.4.1 About PDB-Level Modifications 15-14

15.4.1.1 Storage Clauses 15-15
15.4.1.2 Logging and Recovery Clauses 15-16
15.4.1.3 Miscellaneous Clauses 15-18

15.4.2 Modifying a PDB with the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE Statement 15-19

15.4.3 Changing the Global Database Name of a PDB 15-22
15.4.4 Managing Refreshable Clone PDBs 15-23

15.4.4.1 Refreshing a PDB 15-23
15.4.4.2 Switching Over a Refreshable Clone PDB 15-23

15.5 Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs 15-27

15.5.1 About the Open Mode of a PDB 15-27

15.5.1.1 Summary of PDB Open Modes 15-28
15.5.1.2 Clauses for Changing the Open State of PDBs 15-29
15.5.1.3 Compatibility Checks When a PDB Is Opened 15-32
15.5.1.4 How to Disable or Enable Replay Upgrade 15-33

15.5.2 Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE 15-33

15.5.3 Preserving or Discarding the Open Mode of PDBs When the CDB Restarts 15-36

15.6 Altering the Open Mode of a PDB Using STARTUP and SHUTDOWN 15-38

15.6.1 About Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with the SQL*Plus STARTUP Command 15-38
15.6.2 Starting Up a PDB Using the STARTUP Command 15-40
15.6.3 Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with the SQL*Plus STARTUP Command 15-41
15.6.4 Shutting Down a PDB Using the SHUTDOWN Command 15-42

15.7 Starting and Stopping PDBs in Oracle RAC 15-44

15.8 Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU 15-45

15.8.1 Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment 15-46

15.8.1.1 Purpose of Resource Management in a Multitenant Environment 15-47
15.8.1.2 How Resource Management Works in a Multitenant Environment 15-48

15.8.1.3 User Interface for PDB Resource Management 15-49

15.8.2 Managing CDB Resource Plans 15-57

15.8.2.1 About CDB Resource Plans 15-57
15.8.2.2 Creating a CDB Resource Plan for Managing PDBs 15-63
15.8.2.3 Creating a CDB Resource Plan for Managing PDBs: Scenario 15-63
15.8.2.4 Creating a CDB Resource Plan with PDB Performance Profiles 15-66
15.8.2.5 Creating a CDB Resource Plan for PDB Performance Profiles: Scenario 15-67
15.8.2.6 Enabling a CDB Resource Plan 15-70
15.8.2.7 Modifying a CDB Resource Plan 15-71
15.8.2.8 Disabling a CDB Resource Plan 15-81
15.8.2.9 Viewing Information About Plans and Directives in a CDB 15-82

15.8.3 Managing PDB Resource Plans 15-84
  15.8.3.1 About PDB Resource Plans 15-84
  15.8.3.2 Creating a PDB Resource Plan 15-86
  15.8.3.3 Enabling a PDB Resource Plan 15-87
  15.8.3.4 Modifying a PDB Resource Plan 15-88
  15.8.3.5 Disabling a PDB Resource Plan 15-89

15.8.4 Monitoring PDBs Managed by Oracle Database Resource Manager 15-89
  15.8.4.1 About Resource Manager Views for PDBs 15-89
  15.8.4.2 Monitoring CPU Usage for PDBs 15-90
  15.8.4.3 Monitoring Parallel Execution for PDBs 15-92
  15.8.4.4 Monitoring the I/O Generated by PDBs 15-93
  15.8.4.5 Monitoring Memory Usage for PDBs 15-93

16 Administering a PDB Snapshot Carousel 16-1
  16.1 About PDB Snapshot Carousel 16-1
    16.1.1 Purpose of PDB Snapshot Carousel 16-1
    16.1.2 How PDB Snapshot Carousel Works 16-4
      16.1.2.1 Contents of a PDB Snapshot 16-4
      16.1.2.2 Contents of a PDB Snapshot Carousel 16-6
    16.1.3 User Interface for PDB Snapshot Carousel 16-7
  16.2 Setting the Maximum Number of Snapshots in a PDB Snapshot Carousel 16-9
  16.3 Configuring Automatic PDB Snapshots 16-10
  16.4 Creating PDB Snapshots Manually 16-12
  16.5 Dropping a PDB Snapshot 16-14
  16.6 Viewing Metadata for PDB Snapshots 16-14

17 Administering Application Containers 17-1
  17.1 About Application Container Administration 17-1
  17.2 About Modifying an Application Root 17-4
  17.3 Managing Applications in an Application Container 17-5
    17.3.1 About Application Management 17-6
      17.3.1.1 Basic Steps of Application Maintenance 17-6
      17.3.1.2 Application Versions 17-7
      17.3.1.3 Application Module Names 17-7
    17.3.2 Installing Applications in an Application Container 17-8
      17.3.2.1 About Installing Applications in an Application Container 17-8
17.3.2.2 Installing an Application in an Application Container with Automated Propagation 17-9

17.3.3 Upgrading Applications in an Application Container 17-10
  17.3.3.1 About Upgrading Applications in an Application Container 17-10
  17.3.3.2 Upgrading an Application in an Application Container 17-13

17.3.4 Patching Applications in an Application Container 17-14
  17.3.4.1 About Patching Applications in an Application Container 17-15
  17.3.4.2 Patching an Application in an Application Container with Automated Propagation 17-15

17.3.5 Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container 17-16
  17.3.5.1 About Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container 17-17
  17.3.5.2 Creating an Application Root Using an Existing PDB 17-18
  17.3.5.3 Creating an Application PDB Using an Existing PDB 17-19

17.3.6 Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB 17-20

17.3.7 Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB 17-22
  17.3.7.1 About Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB 17-22
  17.3.7.2 Creating a Proxy PDB That References an Application Root Replica 17-24

17.3.8 Setting the Compatibility Version of an Application 17-30

17.3.9 Performing Bulk Inserts During Application Install, Upgrade, and Patch Operations 17-31

17.3.10 Uninstalling Applications from an Application Container 17-33
  17.3.10.1 About Uninstalling Applications from an Application Container 17-33
  17.3.10.2 Uninstalling an Application from an Application Container 17-34

17.4 Managing Application Common Objects 17-35
  17.4.1 About Application Common Objects 17-35
    17.4.1.1 Creation of Application Common Objects 17-36
    17.4.1.2 About Metadata-Linked Application Common Objects 17-37
    17.4.1.3 About Extended Data-Linked Application Common Objects 17-37
    17.4.1.4 About Extended Data-Linked Application Common Objects 17-38

  17.4.2 Restrictions for Application Common Objects 17-39

  17.4.3 Creating Application Common Objects 17-39

  17.4.4 Issuing DML Statements on Application Common Objects 17-42
    17.4.4.1 Issuing DML on Metadata-Linked Common Objects 17-43
    17.4.4.2 Issuing DML on Data-Linked Common Objects 17-44

  17.4.5 Modifying Application Common Objects with DDL Statements 17-46

17.5 Issuing DML Statements on Containers in an Application Container 17-47
  17.5.1 About Issuing DML Statements on Containers in an Application Container 17-47

  17.5.2 Specifying the Default Container for DML Statements in an Application Container 17-49
Configuring Privilege and Role Authentication in a Multitenant Environment

19.1 Managing Commonly and Locally Granted Privileges

19.1.1 How the Oracle Multitenant Option Affects Privileges

19.1.2 About Commonly and Locally Granted Privileges

19.1.3 How Commonly Granted System Privileges Work

19.1.4 How Commonly Granted Object Privileges Work

19.1.5 Granting or Revoking Privileges to Access a PDB

19.1.6 Example: Granting a Privilege to a Common User

19.1.7 Enabling Common Users to View CONTAINER_DATA Object Information

19.1.7.1 Viewing Data About the Root, CDB, and PDBs While Connected to the Root

19.1.7.2 Enabling Common Users to Query Data in Specific PDBs

19.2 Managing Common Roles and Local Roles

19.2.1 About Common Roles and Local Roles

19.2.2 How Common Roles Work

19.2.3 How the PUBLIC Role Works in a Multitenant Environment

19.2.4 Privileges Required to Create, Modify, or Drop a Common Role

19.2.5 Rules for Creating Common Roles

19.2.6 Creating a Common Role

19.2.7 Rules for Creating Local Roles

19.2.8 Creating a Local Role

19.2.9 Role Grants and Revokes for Common Users and Local Users

19.3 Configuring Operating System Users for a PDB

19.3.1 About Configuring Operating System Users for a PDB

19.3.2 Configuring an Operating System User for a PDB

19.3.3 Setting the Default Credential in a PDB

19.4 Restricting Operations on PDBs Using PDB Lockdown Profiles

19.4.1 About PDB Lockdown Profiles

19.4.2 Default PDB Lockdown Profiles

19.4.3 Creating a PDB Lockdown Profile

19.4.4 Enabling or Disabling a PDB Lockdown Profile

19.4.5 Dropping a PDB Lockdown Profile

Controlling Access to Data in a Multitenant Environment

20.1 Using Application Contexts in a Multitenant Environment

20.1.1 What Is an Application Context?

20.1.2 Application Contexts in a Multitenant Environment

20.2 Using Oracle Virtual Private Database in a Multitenant Environment
22.5.2 Realm Authorizations in a Multitenant Environment
22.6 Rule Sets and Rules in a Multitenant Environment
22.7 Command Rules in a Multitenant Environment
22.8 Oracle Database Vault Policies in a Multitenant Environment
22.9 Using Database Vault Operations Control to Restrict Multitenant Common User Access to Local PDB Data
   22.9.1 About Using Database Vault Operations Control
   22.9.2 How the Addition of Common Users and Packages to an Exception List Works
   22.9.3 Enabling Database Vault Operations Control
   22.9.4 Adding Common Users and Packages to an Exception List
   22.9.5 Deleting Common Users and Packages from an Exception List
   22.9.6 Disabling Database Vault Operations Control
22.10 Converting a Standalone Oracle Database to a PDB and Plugging It into a CDB

23 Backing Up and Recovering CDBs and PDBs
   23.1 Overview of Backing Up and Recovering CDBs and PDBs
   23.2 Backup and Complete Recovery of CDBs
   23.3 Backup and Complete Recovery of PDBs
   23.4 Point-in-Time Recovery in a Multitenant Environment
   23.5 Flashback Database in a Multitenant Environment

24 Using Database Utilities in a Multitenant Environment
   24.1 Importing and Exporting Data in a CDB
      24.1.1 About Using Oracle Data Pump in a Multitenant Environment
      24.1.2 Using Oracle Data Pump to Move Data Into a CDB
      24.1.3 Using Oracle Data Pump to Move PDBs Within or Between CDBs
   24.2 Using LogMiner in a CDB
      24.2.1 LogMiner V$ Views and DBA Views in a CDB
      24.2.2 The V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS View in a CDB
      24.2.3 Enabling Supplemental Logging in a CDB
      24.2.4 Using a Flat File Dictionary in a CDB
   24.3 DBNEWID Considerations for CDBs and PDBs
### Using Oracle Scheduler with a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.1</td>
<td>DBMS_SCHEDULER Invocations in a CDB</td>
<td>25-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>Job Coordinator and Slave Processes in a CDB</td>
<td>25-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>DBMS_JOB and DBMS_SCHEDULER</td>
<td>25-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>Processes to Close a PDB</td>
<td>25-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>New and Changed CDB Views</td>
<td>25-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using XStream with a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.1</td>
<td>About XStream</td>
<td>26-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.2</td>
<td>System-Created Rules and a Multitenant Environment</td>
<td>26-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.2.1</td>
<td>System-Created Rules in a CDB and XStream Out</td>
<td>26-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.2.2</td>
<td>System-Created Rules in a CDB and XStream In</td>
<td>26-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>XStream Out and a Multitenant Environment</td>
<td>26-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.4</td>
<td>Configuring XStream Out in a CDB</td>
<td>26-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.4.1</td>
<td>Configuring XStream Out with Local Capture in a CDB</td>
<td>26-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.4.2</td>
<td>Configuring XStream Out with Downstream Capture in CDBs</td>
<td>26-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>XStream In and a Multitenant Environment</td>
<td>26-16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary

### Index
Preface

This document describes how to create, configure, and administer an Oracle database.

Audience

This document is intended for database administrators who perform the following tasks:

• Create and configure one or more Oracle databases
• Monitor and tune Oracle databases
• Oversee routine maintenance operations for Oracle databases
• Create and maintain schema objects, such as tables, indexes, and views
• Schedule system and user jobs
• Diagnose, repair, and report problems

To use this document, you should be familiar with relational database concepts. You should also be familiar with the operating system environment under which you are running Oracle Database.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle’s commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Related Documents

For more information, see these Oracle resources:

• Oracle Database Concepts
• Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide
• Oracle Database 2 Day DBA
• Oracle Database SQL Language Reference
Many of the examples in this book use the sample schemas. See Oracle Database Sample Schemas for information about these schemas.

Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>boldface</strong></td>
<td>Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>italic</em></td>
<td>Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>monospace</strong></td>
<td>Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Part I

Multitenant Architecture

The multitenant architecture enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB).
Introduction to the Multitenant Architecture

Become familiar with the Oracle Multitenant option.

1.1 Changes in Oracle Database Release 20c for Oracle Multitenant Administrator’s Guide

The following features are new in this release.

Note:

A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, "database" and "non-CDB" refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, "non-CDB" refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

• Adopting a non-CDB as a PDB using Replay Upgrade

When adopting a non-CDB from a previous release as a PDB in an Oracle Database 20c CDB, the upgrade occurs automatically when the PDB is opened normally. The Replay Upgrade feature automatically captures necessary CREATE OR REPLACE statements, replays the statements only for changed objects, and converts the data dictionary. The replay mechanism is the same one used in application synchronization.

See Oracle Database Upgrade Guide to learn how to adopt a non-CDB as a PDB using Replay Upgrade.

• Replay Upgrade on PDB Open

Opening a PDB upgrades it automatically when a version mismatch occurs between the PDB and the CDB root. The Replay Upgrade on PDB Open optimization, which is the default, avoids manual error correction by re-executing statements stored in capture tables. The mechanism is the same used in application synchronization. Oracle Database 20c uses Replay Upgrade on PDB Open in the following scenarios:

– You plug in a PDB that was unplugged from a CDB in a previous release. When the PDB is opened, the database automatically performs a Replay Upgrade.

– A CDB from a previous release was upgraded to Oracle Database 20c, but a PDB in the CDB was not upgraded. If you open this PDB without the OPEN UPGRADE option, then the CDB automatically performs a Replay Upgrade of the PDB.
See “Compatibility Checks When a PDB Is Opened” and “Plugging In an Unplugged PDB”.

- Namespace integration with Oracle Database

DbNest provides operating system resource isolation and management, file system isolation, and secure computing for PDBs. When DbNest is enabled, provisioning of a database instance occurs inside a nest, which is a type of isolated, hierarchical container. The database instance system resources are isolated from other instances. Files and directories are only accessible to the CDB or PDB for which they were configured.

See “Securing and Isolating Resources Using DbNest”.

- Transparent Application Continuity in the Oracle Cloud

During planned maintenance, the database may decide that a session is unlikely to drain in the drain window. In this case, the database invokes Application Continuity and fails over the session automatically.

See “Server Session Draining When Relocating or Stopping PDBs”.

- CPU_MIN_COUNT initialization parameter enhancements

CPU_MIN_COUNT expresses the minimum number of CPU threads required by the PDB or CDB. CPU resource manager uses the PDB-level CPU_MIN_COUNT value to set the PDB shares in the resource plan. For each PDB, CPU Resource Manager ensures fair access to the CPU, guarantees the minimum CPU, and enforces the maximum CPU.

See “CPU-Related Initialization Parameters for PDBs”.

- JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES initialization parameter enhancements

The default value for JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES across all containers has changed its default from 4000 to an automatic value that depends on the number of sessions and CPU threads.

See “DBMS_SCHEDULER Invocations in a CDB”.

- MAX_IDLE_BLOCKER_TIME initialization parameter enhancements

MAX_IDLE_BLOCKER_TIME sets the number of minutes that a session holding needed resources can be idle before it is a candidate for termination.

See “Session-Related Initialization Parameters for PDBs”.

- Expanded syntax for application synchronization

The ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC statement accepts multiple application names. For example, a single statement issued in an application PDB can synchronize apexapp and ordsapp, or synchronize all applications except ordsapp.

When applications depend on one another, synchronizing them in a single statement is necessary for functional correctness. Assume that you upgrade apexapp from 1.0 to 2.0, upgrade ordsapp from 1.0 to 2.0, and then upgrade apexapp to 3.0. The statement ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION apexapp, ordsapp SYNC replays the upgrades in sequence, upgrading apexapp to 2.0, ordsapp to 2.0, and then apexapp to 3.0. Synchronizing apexapp and then ordsapp in separate statements does not preserve the upgrade order.

See “Application Synchronization” and “Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB”.
1.2 Database and Instance

An Oracle database server consists of a database and at least one database instance, commonly referred to as simply an instance. Because an instance and a database are so closely connected, the term Oracle database sometimes refers to both instance and database. In the strictest sense, the terms have the following meanings:

- **Database**
  A database is a set of files, located on disk, that store user data. These data files can exist independently of a database instance. Starting in Oracle Database 20c, "database" refers specifically to the data files of a multitenant container database (CDB), pluggable database (PDB), or application container.

- **Database instance**
  An instance is a named set of memory structures that manage database files. A database instance consists of a shared memory area, called the system global area (SGA), and a set of background processes. An instance can exist independently of database files.

1.2.1 Multitenant Architecture

The multitenant architecture enables an Oracle database to be a CDB. Every Oracle database must contain or be able to be contained by another database. For example, a CDB contains PDBs, and an application container contains application PDBs. A PDB is contained by a CDB or application container, and an application container is contained by a CDB.

Starting in Oracle Database 20c, a multitenant container database is the only supported architecture. In previous releases, Oracle supported non-container databases (non-CDBs).

1.2.1.1 CDBs

A CDB contains one or more user-created PDBs and application containers. At the physical level, a CDB is a set of files: control file, online redo log files, and data files. The database instance manages the files that make up the CDB.

The following figure shows a CDB and an associated database instance.
1.2.1.2 PDBs

A **PDB** is a portable collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects that appears to an application as a separate database.

At the physical level, each PDB has its own set of data files that store the data for the PDB. The CDB includes all the data files for the PDBs contained within it, and a set of system data files that store metadata for the CDB itself.

To move or archive a PDB, you can unplug it. An unplugged PDB consists of the PDB data files and a metadata file. An unplugged PDB is not usable until it is plugged in to a CDB.

The following figure shows a CDB named **MYCDB**.
Physically, MYCDB is an Oracle database, in the sense of a set of data files associated with an instance. MYCDB has one database instance, although multiple instances are possible in Oracle Real Application Clusters, and one set of database files. MYCDB contains two PDBs: hrpdb and salespdb. As shown in Figure 1-2, these PDBs appear to their respective applications as separate, independent databases. An application has no knowledge of whether it is connecting to a CDB or PDB.

To administer the CDB itself or any PDB within it, you can connect to the CDB root. The root is a collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects to which all PDBs and application containers belong.

See Also:
Oracle Multitenant Administrator’s Guide to learn more about PDBs

1.2.1.3 Application Containers

An application container is an optional, user-created container within a CDB that stores data and metadata for one or more applications.

In this context, an application (also called the master application definition) is a named, versioned set of common data and metadata stored in the application root. For example, the application might include definitions of tables, views, user accounts, and PL/SQL packages that are common to a set of PDBs.

In some ways, an application container functions as an application-specific CDB within a CDB. An application container, like the CDB itself, can include multiple application
PDBs, and enables these PDBs to share metadata and data. At the physical level, an application container has its own set of data files, just like a PDB.

For example, a SaaS deployment can use multiple application PDBs, each for a separate customer, which share application metadata and data. For example, in the following figure, sales_app is the application model in the application root. The application PDB named cust1_pdb contains sales data only for customer 1, whereas the application PDB named cust2_pdb contains sales data only for customer 2. Plugging, unplugging, cloning, and other PDB-level operations are available for individual customer PDBs.

Figure 1-3  SaaS Use Case

See Also:

Oracle Multitenant Administrator’s Guide for an overview of application containers

1.2.2 Sharding Architecture

Oracle Sharding is a database scaling technique based on horizontal partitioning of data across multiple PDBs. Applications perceive the pool of PDBs as a single logical database.
Key benefits of sharding for OLTP applications include linear scalability, fault containment, and geographical data distribution. Sharding is well suited to deployment in the Oracle Cloud. Unlike NoSQL data stores that implement sharding, Oracle Sharding provides the benefits of sharding without sacrificing the capabilities of an enterprise RDBMS.

In a sharding architecture, each CDB is hosted on a dedicated server with its own local resources: CPU, memory, flash, or disk. You can designate a PDB as a shard. PDB shards from different CDBs make up a single logical database, which is referred to as a sharded database. Two shards in the same CDB cannot be members of the same sharded database. However, within the same CDB, one PDB could be in one sharded database, and another PDB could be in a separate sharded database.

Horizontal partitioning involves splitting a database table across shards so that each shard contains the table with the same columns but a different subset of rows. A table split up in this manner is also known as a sharded table. The following figure shows a sharded table horizontally partitioned across three shards, each of which is a PDB in a separate CDB.

**Figure 1-4  Horizontal Partitioning of a Table Across Shards**

A use case is distributing customer account data across multiple CDBs. For example, a customer with ID 28459361 may look up his records. The following figure shows a possible architecture. The customer request is routed through a connection pool, where sharding directors (network listeners) direct the request to the appropriate PDB shard, which contains all the customer rows.
1.3 About the Multitenant Architecture

The **multitenant architecture** enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB).

Starting in Oracle Database 20c, a multitenant container database is the only supported architecture. In previous releases, Oracle supported non-container databases (non-CDBs).

A **CDB** includes zero, one, or many customer-created pluggable databases (PDBs) and application containers. A **PDB** is a portable collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects that appears to an Oracle Net client as a separate database.

**Video**

1.3.1 About Containers in a CDB

A **container** is a logical collection of data or metadata within the multitenant architecture.

---

**Figure 1-5  Oracle Sharding Architecture**

See Also:

*Using Oracle Sharding* for an overview of Oracle Sharding
Every CDB has the following containers:

- **Exactly one CDB root container** (also called simply the *root*).
  
  The **CDB root** is a collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects to which all PDBs belong (see "Overview of Containers in a CDB"). The root stores Oracle-supplied metadata and common users. An example of metadata is the source code for Oracle-supplied PL/SQL packages (see "Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB"). A common user is a database user known in every container (see "Common Users in a CDB"). The root container is named **CDB$ROOT**.

- **Exactly one system container**
  
  The **system container** includes the root CDB and all PDBs in the CDB. Thus, the system container is the logical container for the CDB itself.

- **Zero or more application containers**
  
  An **application container** consists of exactly one application root, and the PDBs plugged in to this root. Whereas the system container contains the CDB root and all the PDBs within the CDB, an application container includes only the PDBs plugged into the application root. An application root belongs to the CDB root and no other container.

- **Zero or more user-created PDBs**
  
  A PDB contains the data and code required for a specific set of features (see "PDBs"). For example, a PDB can support a specific application, such as a human resources or sales application. No PDBs exist at creation of the CDB. You add PDBs based on your business requirements.

  A PDB belongs to exactly zero or one application container. If a PDB belongs to an application container, then it is an **application PDB**. For example, the
**Example 1-1  CDB with No Application Containers**

This example shows a simple CDB with five containers: the system container (the entire CDB), the CDB root, the PDB seed (PDB$SEED), and two PDBs. Each PDB has its own dedicated application. A different PDB administrator manages each PDB. A common user exists across a CDB with a single identity. In this example, common user SYS can manage the root and every PDB. At the physical level, this CDB is managed by one or more database instances, and contains a set of data files for each PDB and for the CDB itself.

**Example 1-2  CDB with an Application Container**

In this variation, the CDB contains an application container named saas_sales_ac. Within the application container, the application PDB cust1_pdb supports an application for one customer, and the application PDB cust2_pdb supports an
application for a different customer. The CDB also contains a PDB named hrpdb, which supports an HR application, but does not belong to an application container.

**Figure 1-8  CDB with an Application Container**

In this example, multiple DBAs manage the CDB environment:

- A CDB administrator manages the CDB itself.
- An application container administrator manages the *saas_sales_ac* container, including application installation and upgrades.
- An application PDB administrator manages the two PDBs in the *saas_sales_ac* container: *cust1_pdb* and *cust2_pdb*.
- A PDB administrator manages *hrpdb*.

**See Also:**

"Overview of Configuring and Managing a Multitenant Environment"

### 1.3.2 About User Interfaces for the Multitenant Architecture

You can use the same set of administration tools for CDBs, PDBs, and application containers.
Table 1-1  Tools in a Multitenant Environment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL*Plus and SQL Developer for command-line access</td>
<td>SQL*Plus is an interactive and batch query tool that is installed with Oracle Database.</td>
<td>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control (Cloud Control)</td>
<td>Cloud Control is an Oracle Database administration tool that provides a graphical user interface (GUI). Cloud Control supports targets such as PDBs and CDBs.</td>
<td>The Cloud Control online help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express (EM Express)</td>
<td>EM Express is a web-based management product built into the Oracle database. EM Express enables you to provision and manage PDBs, including the following operations:  - Creating and dropping PDBs  - Plugging in and unplugging PDBs  - Cloning PDBs  - Setting resource limits for PDBs</td>
<td>Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide to learn more about using EM Express for managing CDBs and PDBs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA)</td>
<td>DBCA is a utility with a graphical user interface that enables you to create and duplicate CDBs. It also enables you to create, relocate, clone, plug in, and unplug PDBs.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide and Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for more information about DBCA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:

Oracle Database 2 Day DBA for more information about tools for database administrators

1.4 Benefits of the Multitenant Architecture

Create separate PDBs within a single CDB provides benefits for manageability and performance.

1.4.1 Benefits of Consolidating Data into a Single CDB

Database consolidation is the process of consolidating data from multiple databases on separate hosts into one CDB on one host. The multitenant architecture enables you to consolidate data and code without altering existing schemas or applications.
Consolidating data into a single CDB has the following benefits:

- **Cost reduction**
  By consolidating hardware and database infrastructure to a single set of background processes, and efficiently sharing computational and memory resources, you reduce costs for hardware and maintenance. For example, 100 PDBs in a single CDB on a single host can share one database instance.

- **Easier and more rapid movement of data and code**
  By design, you can quickly plug a PDB into a CDB, unplug the PDB from the CDB, and then plug this PDB into a different CDB. You can also clone PDBs while they remain available. You can plug in a PDB with any character set and access it without character set conversion. If the character set of the CDB is AL32UTF8, then PDBs with different database character sets can exist in the same CDB.

- **Easier management and monitoring of the physical database**
  The CDB administrator can manage the environment as an aggregate by executing a single operation, such as patching or performing an RMAN backup, for all hosted tenants and the CDB root. Backup strategies and disaster recovery are simplified.

- **Separation of data and code**
  Although consolidated into a single physical CDB, PDBs appears to applications as separate databases. For example, if user error loses critical data in a single PDB, then the PDB administrator can use Oracle Flashback or point-in-time recovery to retrieve the lost data without affecting other PDBs.

- **Secure separation of administrative duties**
  A common user account can connect to any container on which it has sufficient privileges, whereas a local user account is restricted to a specific PDB. Administrators can divide duties as follows:
  - An administrator uses a common user account to manage a CDB or application container.
  - A PDB administrator uses a local user account to manage an individual PDB. Because a privilege is contained within the container in which it is granted, a local user on one PDB does not have privileges on other PDBs within the same CDB.

- **Ease of performance tuning**
  It is easier to collect performance metrics for a single CDB on one host than for multiple databases on multiple hosts. For example, it is easier to size one SGA than 100 SGAs.

- **Fewer database patches and upgrades**
  It is easier to apply a patch to one CDB than to 100 databases, and to upgrade one CDB than to upgrade 100 databases.

---

**See Also:**
- “Overview of Configuring and Managing a Multitenant Environment”
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn about common user accounts
1.4.2 Benefits of the Multitenant Architecture for Manageability

The multitenant architecture improves manageability by storing the data and metadata specific to a PDB in the PDB itself.

By storing its own dictionary metadata, a PDB becomes easier to manage as a unit. This benefit occurs even when only one PDB resides in a CDB. Grouping PDBs into a separately managed application container increases manageability even further.

In a CDB, the data dictionary metadata is split between the CDB root and the PDBs. Benefits of data dictionary separation include the following:

• Easier upgrade of data and code
  For example, instead of upgrading a CDB from one database release to another, you can rapidly unplug a PDB from the existing CDB, and then plug it into a newly created CDB from a higher release.

• Easier migration between servers
  To perform load balancing or to meet SLAs, you can migrate an application database from an on-premise data center to the Oracle Cloud, or between two servers in the same environment.

• Protection against data corruption within a PDB
  You can flash back a PDB to an SCN or PDB-specific restore point, without affecting other PDBs.

• Ability to install, administer, and upgrade application-specific data and metadata in a single place
  You can define a set of application-specific PDBs as a single component, called an application container. You can then define one or more applications within this container. Each application definition is a named, versioned set of common metadata and data shared within this application container.

For example, each customer of a SaaS vendor could have its own application PDB. Each application PDB might have identically defined tables named sales_mlt, with different data in each PDB. The PDBs could share a data-linked common object named countries_olt, which has identical data in each PDB. As an application administrator, you could manage the master application definition so that every new customer gets a PDB with the same objects, and every change to existing schemas (for example, the addition of a new table, or a change in the definition of a table) applies to all PDBs that share the application definition.

• Integration with Oracle Database Resource Manager
  In the multitenant environment, PDBs contend for shared resources. To address resource contention, usage, and monitoring issues, use Oracle Database Resource Manager.
1.5 Overview of CDB and PDB Creation

You create a CDB using `CREATE DATABASE`, and then create PDBs and application containers using `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE`.

1.5.1 Creation of a CDB

The `CREATE DATABASE` statement creates a new CDB.

When you create a CDB, Oracle Database automatically creates a root container (CDB$ROOT) and a seed PDB (PDB$SEED). The following graphic shows a newly created CDB:

![Figure 1-9 CDB with Seed PDB](image)

See Also:

- "Creating and Configuring a CDB"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about specifying the clauses and parameter values for the `CREATE DATABASE` statement

1.5.2 Creation of a PDB

The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` SQL statement creates a PDB.
The created PDB automatically includes a full data dictionary including metadata and internal links to system-supplied objects in the CDB root. You must define every PDB from a single root: either the CDB root or an application root.

Each PDB has a globally unique identifier (GUID). The PDB GUID is primarily used to generate names for directories that store the PDB's files, including both Oracle Managed Files directories and non-Oracle Managed Files directories.

See Also:

"Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers"

1.5.2.1 Creation of a PDB by Cloning

One technique for creating a PDB is called cloning.

You can clone a PDB from PDB$SEED, an application seed, or a remote or local PDB.

1.5.2.1.1 Creation of a PDB from a Seed

You can use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create a PDB from a seed.

A seed is a PDB that serves as a template for creation of another PDB. Creating a PDB from a seed copies some or all of the contents of a PDB, and then assigns a new unique identifier.

A seed PDB is either of the following:

- The PDB seed (PDB$SEED), which is a system-supplied template for creating PDBs
  Every CDB has exactly one PDB$SEED, which cannot be modified or dropped.

- An application seed, which is a user-created PDB for a specified application root
  Within an application container, you can create an application seed using the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE AS SEED` statement, which you can then use to accelerate creation of new application PDBs.
Figure 1-10  Creation from PDB$SEED

Example 1-3  Creation of a PDB from PDB$SEED

The following SQL statement creates a PDB named hrpdb from PDB$SEED using Oracle Managed Files:

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb
 ADMIN USER dba1 IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

See Also:
"Creating a PDB from Scratch"

1.5.2.1.2 Creation of a PDB by Cloning

To clone a PDB from another PDB, use the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with the FROM clause.

In this technique, the source is a PDB in a local or remote CDB. The target is the PDB copied from the source. The cloning operation copies the files associated with the source to a new location, and then assigns a new GUID to create the PDB.

This technique is useful for quickly creating PDBs for testing and development. For example, you might test a new or modified application on a cloned PDB before deploying the application in a production PDB. If a PDB is in local undo mode, then the source PDB can be open in read/write mode during the operation, referred to as hot cloning.
If you clone a PDB from a remote CDB, then you must use a database link.

If you run `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement in an application root, then you create the cloned PDB in the application container. In this case, the application name and version of the source PDB must be compatible with the application name and version of the application container.

The following graphic illustrates cloning a PDB when both source and target are in the same CDB.

**Figure 1-11  Cloning a PDB**

Starting in Oracle Database 19c, you can clone a remote PDB using DBCA.

**Example 1-4  Cloning a PDB**

The following SQL statement clones a PDB named `salespdb` from the plugged-in PDB named `hrpdb`:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb FROM hrpdb;
```
1.5.2.1.2.1 Clones from PDB Snapshots

Create a clone from a PDB snapshot by specifying USING SNAPSHOT clause of the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE command.

Creation of PDB Snapshots with the SNAPSHOT Clause

A PDB snapshot is a point-in-time copy of a PDB. The source PDB can be open read-only or read/write while the snapshot is created. A PDB snapshot taken while the source PDB is open is called a hot clone. You can create clones from PDB snapshots. These clone PDBs are useful in development and testing.

You can create snapshots manually using the SNAPSHOT clause of CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE (or ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE), or automatically using the EVERY interval clause. The following statement creates a PDB snapshot with the name pdb1_wed_4_1201:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT pdb1_wed_4_1201;
```

If the storage system supports sparse clones, then the preceding command creates a sparse copy. Otherwise, the command creates a full copy.

Every PDB snapshot is associated with a snapshot name and the SCN and timestamp at snapshot creation.

Creation of a PDB Clone with the USING SNAPSHOT Clause

A clone from a PDB snapshot is a full, standalone PDB. Unlike a snapshot copy PDB, which is based on a storage-managed snapshot, you do not need to materialize a clone created from a PDB snapshot.

To create a clone from a PDB snapshot, specify the USING SNAPSHOT clause of the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement. For example, the following statement clones a PDB named pdb1_copy from the PDB-level snapshot named pdb1_wed_4_1201:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1_copy FROM pdb1
    USING SNAPSHOT pdb1_wed_4_1201;
```
1.5.2.1.2.2 Snapshot Copy PDBs

A snapshot copy PDB is based on a copy of the underlying storage system. Snapshot copy PDBs reduce the amount of storage required for testing purposes and reduce creation time significantly.

If the file system supports storage snapshots, then `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... SNAPSHOT COPY` copies a PDB from a source PDB, which can be read/write during the operation. The snapshot copy PDB files use copy-on-write technology. Only modified blocks require extra storage on disk. If the file system does not support storage snapshots or use Oracle Exadata sparse files, then the `CLONEDB` initialization parameter must be `true`, and the source PDB must be read-only for as long as the snapshot copy PDB exists.

Because a snapshot copy PDB depends on storage-managed snapshots, you cannot unplug a snapshot copy PDB from the CDB root or application root. You cannot drop the storage snapshot on which a snapshot copy PDB is based.

You can transform a snapshot copy PDB, which uses sparse files, into a full PDB. This process is known as **materializing** the snapshot copy PDB. Because a materialized PDB does not depend on the source PDB, you can drop it. Materialize a PDB by running the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE MATERIALIZE` command.

---

**Note:**

A PDB created with the **USING SNAPSHOT clause** and a PDB created with the **SNAPSHOT COPY clause** have different properties. You cannot specify both clauses in a single `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ...` command. The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... USING SNAPSHOT` clause creates a **full, standalone PDB** that does not need to be materialized. The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... SNAPSHOT COPY` clause creates a **sparse PDB** that must be materialized if you want to drop the storage-level snapshot on which it is based.

---

**Note:**

"Creating and Materializing Snapshot Copy PDBs"
1.5.2.1.2.3 Refreshable Clone PDBs

A **refreshable clone PDB** is a read-only clone that can periodically synchronize with its source PDB.

Depending on the value specified in the `REFRESH MODE` clause, synchronization occurs automatically or manually. For example, if `hrpdb_re_clone` is a clone of `hrpdb`, then every month you could manually refresh `hrpdb_re_clone` with changes from `hrpdb`. Alternatively, you could configure `hrpdb` to propagate changes to `hrpdb_re_clone` automatically every 24 hours.

You can switch the roles of a source PDB and its refreshable clone. This switchover can be useful for load balancing between CDBs, and when the source PDB suffers a failure.

**Note:**

“About Cloning a PDB” to learn how to clone a PDB using the `REFRESH MODE` clause

---

1.5.2.2 Creation of a PDB by Plugging In an Unplugged PDB

An **unplugged PDB** is a self-contained set of data files, and an XML metadata file that specifies the locations of the PDB files. To plug in an unplugged PDB, use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `USING` clause.

When plugging in an unplugged PDB, you have the following options:

- Specify the XML metadata file that describes the PDB and the files associated with the PDB.
- Specify a **PDB archive file**, which is a compressed file that contains both the XML file and PDB data files. You can create a PDB by specifying the archive file, and thereby avoid copying the XML file and the data files separately.

The following graphic illustrates plugging in an unplugged PDB using the XML file.
Example 1-5   Plugging In a PDB

The following SQL statement plugs in a PDB named `salespdb` based on the metadata stored in the named XML file, and specifies `NOCOPY` because the files of the unplugged PDB do not need to be moved to a new location:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml' NOCOPY;
```
1.5.2.3 Creation of a PDB by Relocating

To relocate a PDB from one CDB to another, use either the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE` statement or DBCA.

This technique has the following advantages:

- The relocation occurs with minimal downtime.
- The technique keeps the PDB being relocated open in read/write mode during the relocation, and then brings the PDB online in its new location.

You must create a database link at the target CDB, which is the CDB that will contain the relocated PDB. Also, the source PDB must use local undo data.

The following graphic depicts a PDB relocation.
Starting in Oracle Database 19c, you can relocate a remote PDB using DBCA in silent mode.

**Example 1-6  PDB Relocation**

The following statement, which is issued at a target CDB, relocates `hrpdb` from the source CDB to the target CDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb FROM hrpdb@lnk_to_source RELOCATE;
```
1.5.2.4 Creation of a PDB as a Proxy PDB

A **proxy PDB** provides access to different PDB, called the **referenced PDB**, in a remote CDB.

Proxy PDBs enable you to aggregate data from multiple sources. A SQL statement submitted for execution in a proxy PDB executes within the referenced PDB.

A typical use case is a proxy PDB that references an application root replica. If multiple CDBs have the same application definition (for example, same tables and PL/SQL packages), then you can create a proxy PDB in the application container of the master application root. The referenced PDB for the proxy PDB is the application root in a different CDB. By running installation scripts in the master root, the application roots in the other CDBs become replicas of the master application root.

To create a proxy PDB, use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `FROM` clause, which must specify a database link to the referenced PDB in the remote CDB, and the `AS PROXY` clause.

**Note:**

If you plug a proxy PDB directly into `CDB$ROOT`, then you must have created the proxy in `CDB$ROOT`. A proxy of an application PDB must both be plugged in to an application root.

The following graphic shows the creation of a proxy PDB that references a PDB in a remote CDB.
Example 1-7 Creation of a Proxy PDB

This example creates a proxy PDB named `pdb1`. The referenced PDB is specified using a database link.

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1 AS PROXY FROM pdb1@pdb1_link;
```
1.6 Multitenant Environment Documentation Roadmap

This topic lists the most important topics for understanding and using CDBs, and includes cross-references to the appropriate documentation.

Table 1-2 Road map for the Multitenant Architecture Documentation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Documentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concepts</td>
<td>Overview of CDBs and PDBs</td>
<td>&quot;Overview of the Multitenant Architecture&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Creating and configuring a CDB</td>
<td>&quot;Creating and Configuring a CDB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Managing a CDB</td>
<td>&quot;Administering a CDB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Creating and configuring PDBs</td>
<td>&quot;Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Managing PDBs</td>
<td>&quot;Administering PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Creating and removing application containers</td>
<td>&quot;Creating and Removing Application Containers&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>Administering application containers</td>
<td>&quot;Administering Application Containers&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance</td>
<td>Troubleshooting PDBs</td>
<td>Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring</td>
<td>Viewing information about CDBs and PDBs</td>
<td>&quot;Monitoring CDBs and PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup and Recovery</td>
<td>Performing backup and recovery in a CDB</td>
<td>Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td>Managing common users, roles, and privileges in a CDB</td>
<td>Oracle Database Security Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>All other tasks relating to managing a CDB or PDB, including Oracle RAC, resource management, data transfer, and so on</td>
<td>This guide is the primary task-oriented intermediate and advanced documentation for managing CDBs. This guide also contains See Also links to books that cover different CDB topics. For example, Oracle Database Utilities explains concepts and tasks specific to PDBs when using Oracle Data Pump.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This chapter describes the most important components of the multitenant architecture.

Note:
A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, "database" and "non-CDB" refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, "non-CDB" refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

2.1 Overview of Containers in a CDB

A container is a collection of schemas, objects, and related structures in a multitenant container database (CDB). Within a CDB, each container has a unique ID and name.

2.1.1 The CDB Root and System Container

The CDB root, also called simply the root, is a collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects to which all PDBs belong.

Every CDB has one and only one root container named CDB$ROOT. The root stores the system metadata required to manage PDBs. All PDBs belong to the root. The system container is the CDB root and all PDBs that belong to this root.

The CDB root does not store user data. Oracle recommends that you do not add common objects to the root or modify Oracle-supplied schemas in the root. However, you can create common users and roles for database administration. A common user with the necessary privileges can switch between containers.

Oracle recommends AL32UTF8 for the root character set. PDBs with different character sets can reside in the same CDB without requiring character set conversion.

Example 2-1 All Containers in a CDB

The following query, issued by an administrative user connected to the CDB root, lists all containers in the CDB (including the seed and CDB root), ordered by CON_ID.

```
COL NAME FORMAT A15
SELECT NAME, CON_ID, DBID, CON_UID, GUID
FROM V$CONTAINERS ORDER BY CON_ID;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>DBID</th>
<th>CON_UID</th>
<th>GUID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1895287725</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2003321E0D4F60D6E0534E40E40A41C5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.1.2 PDBs

A PDB is a user-created set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to a client application as a separate database.

Every PDB is owned by SYS, regardless of which user created the PDB. SYS is a common user in the CDB.

2.1.2.1 Types of PDBs

All PDBs are user-created with the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement except for PDB$SEED, which is Oracle-supplied.

You can create the following types of PDBs.

**Standard PDB**

This type of PDB results from running `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE without` specifying the PDB as a seed, proxy PDB, or application root. Its capabilities depend on the container in which you create it:

- **PDB plugged in to the CDB root**
  
  This PDB belongs to the CDB root container and not an application container. This type of PDB cannot use application common objects. See "Application Common Objects".

- **Application PDB**
  
  An application PDB belongs to exactly one application container. Unlike PDBs plugged in to the CDB root, application PDBs can share a master application definition within an application container. For example, a `usa_zipcodes` table in an application root might be a data-linked common object, which means it contains data accessible by all application PDBs plugged in to this root. PDBs that do not reside within the application container cannot access its application common objects.

**Application Root**

Consider an application root as an application-specific root container. It serves as a repository for a master definition of an application back end, including common data and metadata. To create an application root, connect to the CDB root and specify the
AS APPLICATION CONTAINER clause in a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement. See "Application Root".

Seed PDBs

Unlike a standard PDB, a seed PDB is not intended to support an application. Rather, the seed is a template for the creation of PDBs that support applications. A seed can be either of the following:

- **Seed PDB plugged in the CDB root (PDB$SEED)**
  
  You can use this system-supplied template to create new PDBs either in an application container or the system container. The system container contains exactly one PDB seed. You cannot drop PDB$SEED, or add objects to or modify objects within it.

- **Application seed PDB**
  
  To accelerate creation of application PDBs within an application container, you can create an optional application seed. An application container contains either zero or one application seed.

  You create an application seed by connecting to the application container and executing the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... AS SEED` statement. See "Application Seed".

Proxy PDBs

A proxy PDB is a PDB that uses a database link to reference a PDB in a remote CDB. When you issue a statement in a proxy PDB while the PDB is open, the statement executes in the referenced PDB.

You must create a proxy PDB while connected to the CDB root or application root. You can alter or drop a proxy PDB just as you can a standard PDB.

See Also:

"Overview of PDB Creation"

2.1.2.2 Purpose of PDBs

For an application, a PDB is a self-contained, fully functional Oracle database. You can consolidate PDBs into a single CDB to achieve economies of scale, while maintaining isolation between PDBs.

You can use PDBs to achieve the following specific goals:

- **Store data specific to an application**
  
  For example, a sales application can have its own dedicated PDB, and a human resources application can have its own dedicated PDB. Alternatively, you can create an application container, which is a named collection of PDBs, to store an application back end containing common data and metadata (see "About Application Containers").

- **Move data into a different CDB**
A database is "pluggable" because you can package it as a self-contained unit, called an unplugged PDB, and then move it into another CDB.

- **Perform rapid upgrades**
  You can unplug a PDB from CDB at a lower Oracle Database release, and then plug it in to a CDB at a higher release.

- **Copy data quickly without loss of availability**
  For testing and development, you can clone a PDB while it remains open, storing the clone in the same or a different CDB. Optionally, you can specify the PDB as a refreshable clone PDB. Alternatively, you use the Oracle-supplied seed PDB or a user-created application seed to copy new PDBs.

- **Reference data in a different CDB**
  You can create a proxy PDB that refers to a different PDB, either in the same CDB or in a separate CDB. When you issue statements in the proxy PDB, they execute in the referenced PDB.

- **Isolate grants within PDBs**
  A local or common user with appropriate privileges can grant EXECUTE privileges on a schema object to PUBLIC within an individual PDB.

### See Also:

- "Benefits of the Multitenant Architecture"
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn how to grant roles and privileges in a CDB

#### 2.1.2.3 Proxy PDBs

A **proxy PDB** refers to a remote PDB, called the **referenced PDB**.

Although you issue SQL statements in the proxy (referring) PDB, the statements execute in the referenced PDB. In this respect, a proxy PDB is loosely analogous to a symbolic link file in Linux.

Proxy PDBs provide the following benefits:

- **Aggregate data from multiple application models**
  Proxy PDBs enable you to build location-transparent applications that can aggregate data from multiple sources. These sources can be in the same data center or distributed across data centers.

- **Enable an application root in one CDB to propagate application changes to a different application root**
  Assume that CDBs *cdb_prod* and *cdb_test* have the same application model. You create a proxy PDB in an application container in *cdb_prod* that refers to an application root in *cdb_test*. When you run installation and upgrade scripts in the application root in *cdb_prod*, Oracle Database propagates these statements to the proxy PDB, which in turn sends them remotely to the application root in *cdb_test*. 
In this way, the application root in `cdb_test` becomes a replica of the application root in `cdb_prod`.

To create a proxy PDB, execute `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE with the AS PROXY FROM` clause, where `FROM` specifies the referenced PDB name and a database link. The creation statement copies only the data files belonging to the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` spaces.

**Example 2-2 Creating a Proxy PDB**

This example connects to the container `saas_sales_ac` in a local production CDB. The `sales_admin` common user creates a proxy PDB named `sales_sync_pdb`. This application PDB references an application root named `saas_sales_test_ac` in a remote development CDB, which it accesses using the `cdb_dev_rem` database link. When an application upgrade occurs in `saas_sales_ac` in the production CDB, the upgrade automatically propagates to the application root `saas_sales_test_ac` in the remote development CDB.

```
CONNECT sales_admin@saas_sales_ac
Password: ***********
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE sales_sync_pdb AS PROXY FROM saas_sales_test_ac@cdb_dev_rem;
```

2.1.2.4 Names for PDBs

Containers in a CDB share the same namespace, which means that they must have unique names within this namespace.

Names for the following containers must not conflict within the same CDB:

- The CDB root
- PDBs plugged in to the CDB root
- Application roots
- Application PDBs

For example, if the same CDB contains the application containers `saas_sales_ac` and `saas_sales_test_ac`, then two application PDBs that are both named `cust1` cannot simultaneously reside in both containers. The namespace rules also prevent creation of a PDB named `cust1pdb` in the CDB root and a PDB named `cust1pdb` in an application root.

PDBs and application root containers must follow the same naming rules as service names. Moreover, because a PDB or application root has a service with its own name, the container name must be unique across all CDBs whose services are exposed through a specific listener. The first character of a user-created container name must be alphanumeric, with remaining characters either alphanumeric or an underscore (_).
Because service names are case-insensitive, container names are case-insensitive, and are in upper case even if specified using delimited identifiers.

See Also:
- Oracle Database Net Services Reference for the rules for service names
- "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation"

2.1.2.5 Database Links Between PDBs

By default, a user connected to one PDB must use database links to access objects in a different PDB.

Figure 2-1   Database Link Between PDBs

In this illustration, a PDB administrator is connected to the PDB named hrpdb1. By default, during this user session, c##dba cannot query the emp2 table in hrpdb2 without specifying a database link.

Exceptions to the rule include:

- A data-linked common object, which is accessible by all application PDBs that contain a data link that points to this object. For example, the application container saas_sales_ac might contain the data-linked table usa_zipcodes within its application. In this case, common CDB user c##dba can connect to an application PDB in this container, and then query usa_zipcodes even though the actual table resides in the application root. In this case, no database link is required.
- The CONTAINERS() clause in SQL issued from the CDB root or application root. Using this clause, you can query data across all PDBs plugged in to the container root.
When creating a proxy PDB, you must specify a database link name in the `FROM` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... AS PROXY` statement. If the proxy PDB and referenced PDB reside in separate CDBs, then the database link must be defined in the root of the CDB that will contain the proxy PDB. The database link must connect either to the remote referenced PDB or to the CDB root of the remote CDB.

See Also:

- “Overview of Common and Local Objects in a CDB”
- “About PDB Administration” to learn how to access objects in other PDBs using database links

2.1.3 Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB

From the user and application perspective, the data dictionary in each container in a CDB is separate.

For example, the `DBA_OBJECTS` view in each PDB can show a different number of rows. This dictionary separation enables Oracle Database to manage the PDBs separately from each other and from the root.

2.1.3.1 Purpose of Data Dictionary Separation in a CDB

In a CDB, the data dictionary metadata is split between the CDB root and the PDBs.

In a newly created CDB that does not yet contain user data, the data dictionary in the CDB root contains only system metadata. For example, the `TAB$` table contains rows that describe only Oracle-supplied tables, for example, `TRIGGER$` and `SERVICE$`. The following graphic depicts three underlying data dictionary tables, with the red bars indicating rows describing the system.

**Figure 2-2   Data Dictionary Metadata in the CDB Root**

Assume that you create a PDB, and then create an `hr` schema containing the `employees` and `departments` tables in this PDB. The data dictionary in the PDB contains some rows that describe Oracle-supplied entities, and other rows that describe user-created entities. For example, the `TAB$` table in the PDB dictionary has a row of metadata for the `employees` table and a row for the `departments` table.
Figure 2-3  Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB

The preceding graphic shows that the data dictionary in the PDB contains pointers to the data dictionary in the CDB root. Internally, Oracle-supplied objects such as data dictionary table definitions and PL/SQL packages are represented only once in the CDB root. This architecture achieves two main goals within the CDB:

- **Reduction of duplication**
  
  For example, instead of storing the source code for the DBMS_ADVISOR PL/SQL package in every PDB, the CDB stores the code only once in CDB$ROOT, which saves disk space.

- **Ease of database upgrade**

  If the definition of a data dictionary table existed in every PDB, and if the definition were to change in a new release, then each PDB would need to be upgraded separately to capture the change. Storing the table definition only once in the CDB root eliminates this problem.

### 2.1.3.2 Metadata and Data Links

The CDB uses an internal linking mechanism to separate data dictionary information. Specifically, Oracle Database uses the following automatically managed pointers:

- **Metadata links**

  Oracle Database stores metadata about dictionary objects only in the CDB root. For example, the column definitions for the OBJ$ dictionary table, which underlies the DBA_OBJECTS data dictionary view, exist only in the CDB root. As depicted in Figure 2-3, the OBJ$ table in each PDB uses an internal mechanism called a metadata link to point to the definition of OBJ$ stored in the CDB root.
The data corresponding to a metadata link resides in its PDB, not in the CDB root. For example, if you create table `mytable` in `hrpdb` and add rows to it, then the rows are stored in the PDB data files, not in the CDB root data files.

The data dictionary views in the PDB and in the CDB root contain different rows. For example, a new row describing `mytable` exists in the `OBJ$` table in `hrpdb`, but not in the `OBJ$` table in the CDB root. Thus, a query of `DBA_OBJECTS` in the CDB root and `DBA_OBJECTS` in `hrpdb` shows different results.

- **Data links**

  Data links were called *object links* in Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.2).

  In some cases, Oracle Database stores the data (not only metadata) for an object only once in the application root of an application container. Consider an e-commerce company that has different PDBs for different regions. The application root might store a table named `postal_codes`, which lists all U.S. zip codes. Every application PDB in this container requires access to the common `postal_codes` table.

  An application PDB uses an internal mechanism called a *data link* to refer to the object in the application root. The application PDB in which the data link was created also stores the data link description. A data link inherits the data type of the object to which it refers.

- **Extended data link**

  An extended data link is a hybrid of a data link and a metadata link. Like a data link, an extended data link refers to an object in an application root. However, the extended data link also refers to a corresponding object in the application PDB. For example, an application PDB might have an extended data link table that stores both U.S. zip codes and Canadian postal codes. Like a metadata link, the object in the application PDB inherits metadata from the corresponding object in the application root.

  When queried in the application root, an extended data-linked table fetches rows only from the application root, for example, just U.S. zip codes. However, when queried in an application PDB, an extended data-linked table fetches rows from both the application root and application PDB, for example, U.S. zip codes and Canadian postal codes.

  Oracle Database automatically creates and manages metadata and data links to `CDB$ROOT`. Users cannot add, modify, or remove these links.

- **See Also:**
  - “Application Common Objects”
  - *Oracle Database Concepts* for an overview of the data dictionary
2.1.3.3 Container Data Objects in a CDB

A container data object is a table or view containing data pertaining to multiple containers or the whole CDB.

Container data privileges support a general requirement in which multiple PDBs reside in a single CDB, but with different local administration requirements. For example, if application DBAs do not want to administer locally, then they can grant container data privileges on appropriate views to the common users. In this case, the CDB administrator can access the data for these PDBs. In contrast, PDB administrators who do not want the CDB administrator accessing their data do not grant container data privileges.

Examples of container data objects are Oracle-supplied views whose names begin with V$ and CDB_. All container data objects have a CON_ID column. The following table shows the meaning of the values for this column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Container ID</th>
<th>Rows pertain to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Whole CDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Other IDs</td>
<td>User-created PDBs, application roots, or application seeds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a CDB, for every DBA_ view, a corresponding CDB_ view exists. The owner of a CDB_ view is the owner of the corresponding DBA_ view. The following graphic shows the relationship among the different categories of dictionary views:

Figure 2-4  Dictionary Views in a CDB

When the current container is a PDB, a user can view data dictionary information for the current PDB only. When the current container is the CDB root, however, a common user can query CDB_ views to see metadata for the CDB root and for PDBs for which this user is privileged.
When queried from the CDB root, \texttt{CDB} and \texttt{V$} views implicitly convert data to the AL32UTF8 character set. If a character set needs more bytes to represent a character when converted to AL32UTF8, and if the view column width cannot accommodate data from a specific PDB, then data truncation is possible.

The following table describes queries of \texttt{CDB} views. Each row describes an action that occurs after the action in the preceding row.

### Table 2-2 Querying \texttt{CDB} Views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM Enter password: ******** Connected.</td>
<td>The \texttt{SYSTEM} user, which is common to all containers in the CDB, connects to the CDB root (see &quot;Common Users in a CDB&quot;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(*) FROM CDB_USERS WHERE CON_ID=1;</td>
<td>\texttt{SYSTEM} queries \texttt{CDB_USERS} to obtain the number of common users in the CDB root. The output indicates that 38 common users exist in CDB root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(DISTINCT(CON_ID)) FROM CDB_USERS;</td>
<td>\texttt{SYSTEM} queries \texttt{CDB_USERS} to determine the number of distinct containers in the CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@hrpdb Enter password: ******** Connected.</td>
<td>The \texttt{SYSTEM} user now connects to the PDB named hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(*) FROM CDB_USERS;</td>
<td>\texttt{SYSTEM} queries \texttt{CDB_USERS}. The output indicates that 48 common and local users exist in the current container, which is hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-2  (Cont.) Querying CDB_ Views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(*) FROM DBA_USERS;</td>
<td>SYSTEM queries DBA_USERS. The output is the same as the previous query. Because SYSTEM is not connected to the CDB root, the DBA_USERS view shows the same output as CDB_USERS. Because DBA_USERS only shows the users in the current container, it shows 48.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.1.3.4 Data Dictionary Storage in a CDB

The data dictionary that stores the metadata for the CDB as a whole is stored only in the system tablespaces.

The data dictionary that stores the metadata for a specific PDB is stored in the self-contained tablespaces dedicated to this PDB. The PDB tablespaces contain both the data and metadata for an application back end. Thus, each set of data dictionary tables is stored in its own dedicated set of tablespaces.

See Also:

- Oracle Database Concepts for an overview of the data dictionary
- "Overview of Tablespaces and Database Files in a CDB"

2.1.4 Current Container

For a given session, the current container is the one in which the session is running. The current container can be the CDB root, an application root, or a PDB.

Each session has exactly one current container at any point in time. Because the data dictionary in each container is separate, Oracle Database uses the data dictionary in the current container for name resolution and privilege authorization.

See Also:

"About the Current Container"
2.1.5 Cross-Container Operations

A cross-container operation is a DDL or DML statement that affects multiple containers at once.

Only a common user connected to either the CDB root or an application root can perform cross-container operations. A cross-container operation can affect:

- The CDB itself
- Multiple containers within a CDB
- Multiple phenomena such as common users or common roles that are represented in multiple containers
- A container to which the user issuing the DDL or DML statement is currently not connected

Examples of cross-container DDL operations include user SYSTEM granting a privilege commonly to another common user (see “Roles and Privileges Granted Commonly in a CDB”), and an ALTER DATABASE . . . RECOVER statement that applies to the entire CDB.

When you are connected to either the CDB root or an application root, you can execute a single DML statement to modify tables or views in multiple PDBs within the container. The database infers the target PDBs from the value of the CON_ID column specified in the DML statement. If no CON_ID is specified, then the database uses the CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET property specified by the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET statement.

Example 2-3  Updating Multiple PDBs in a Single DML Statement

In this example, your goal is to set the country_name column to the value USA in the sh.sales table. This table exists in two separate PDBs, with container IDs of 7 and 8. Both PDBs are in the application container named saas_sales_ac. You can connect to the application root as an administrator, and make the update as follows:

CONNECTION sales_admin@saas_sales_ac
Password: *******

UPDATE CONTAINERS(sh.sales) sal
    SET sal.country_name = 'USA'
    WHERE sal.CON_ID IN (7,8);

In the preceding UPDATE statement, sal is an alias for CONTAINERS(sh.sales).

See Also:

- “Common Users in a CDB”
- “Administering a CDB"
2.2 Overview of Commonality in the CDB

In a CDB, every user, role, or object is either common or local. Similarly, a privilege is granted either commonly or locally.

2.2.1 About Commonality in a CDB

A common phenomenon defined in a CDB or application root is the same in all containers plugged in to this root.

2.2.1.1 Principles of Commonality

In a CDB, a phenomenon can be common within either the system container (the CDB itself), or within a specific application container.

For example, if you create a common user account while connected to CDB$ROOT, then this user account is common to all PDBs and application roots in the CDB. If you create an application common user account while connected to an application root, however, then this user account is common only to the PDBs in this application container.

Within the context of CDB$ROOT or an application root, the principles of commonality are as follows:

• A common phenomenon is the same in every existing and future container.
  Therefore, a common user defined in the CDB root has the same identity in every PDB plugged in to the CDB root; a common user defined in an application root has the same identity in every application PDB plugged in to this application root. In contrast, a local phenomenon is scoped to exactly one existing container.

• Only a common user can alter the existence of common phenomena.
  More precisely, only a common user logged in to either the CDB root or an application root can create, destroy, or modify attributes of a user, role, or object that is common to the current container.

2.2.1.2 Namespaces in a CDB

In a CDB, the namespace for every object is scoped to its container.

The following principles summarize the scoping rules:

• From an application perspective, a PDB is a separate database that is distinct from any other PDBs.

• Local phenomena are created within and restricted to a single container.

Note:

In this topic, the word “phenomenon” means “user account, role, or database object.”
• Common phenomena are defined in a CDB root or application root, and exist in all PDBs that are or will be plugged into this root.

The preceding principles have implications for local and common phenomena.

Local Phenomena

A local phenomenon must be uniquely named within a container, but not across all containers in the CDB. Identically named local phenomena in different containers are distinct. For example, local user sh in one PDB does not conflict with local user sh in another PDB.

CDB$ROOT Common Phenomena

Common phenomena defined in CDB$ROOT exist in multiple containers and must be unique within each of these namespaces. For example, the CDB root includes predefined common users such as SYSTEM and SYS. To ensure namespace separation, Oracle Database prevents creation of a SYSTEM user within another container.

To ensure namespace separation, the name of user-created common phenomena in the CDB root must begin with the value specified by the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter. The default prefix is c## or C##. The names of all other user-created phenomena must not begin with c## or C##. For example, you cannot create a local user in hrpdb named c##hr, nor can you create a common user in the CDB root named hr.

Application Common Phenomena

Within an application container, names for local and application common phenomena must not conflict.

• Application common users and roles

The same principles apply to application common users as to CDB common users. The difference is that for CDB common users, the default value for the common user prefix is c## or C##, whereas in application root the default value for the common user prefix is the empty string.

The multitenant architecture assumes that you create application PDBs from an application root, or convert a single-tenant application to a multitenant application.

• Application common objects

The multitenant architecture assumes that you create application common objects in the application root. Later, you add data locally within the application PDBs. However, Oracle Database supports creation of local tables within an application PDB. In this case, the local tables reside in the same namespace as application common objects within the application PDB.

See Also:

Oracle Database Security Guide to learn more about common users and roles
2.2.2 Overview of Common and Local Users in a CDB

If a user account owns objects that define the database, then this user account is common. User accounts that are not Oracle-supplied are either local or common.

A CDB common user is a common user that is created in the CDB root. An application common user is a user that is created in an application root, and is common only within this application container.

The following graphic shows the possible user account types in a CDB.

**Figure 2-5  User Accounts in a CDB**

A CDB common user can connect to any container in the CDB to which it has sufficient privileges. In contrast, an application common user can only connect to the application root in which it was created, or a PDB that is plugged in to this application root, depending on its privileges.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database Security Guide* for an overview of common and local users

2.2.2.1 Common Users in a CDB

Within the context of either the system container (CDB) or an application container, a common user is a database user that has the same identity in the root and in every existing and future PDB within this container.

Every common user can connect to and perform operations within the root of its container, and within any PDB in which it has sufficient privileges. Some administrative tasks must be performed by a common user. Examples include creating a PDB and unplugging a PDB.
For example, SYSTEM is a CDB common user with DBA privileges. Thus, SYSTEM can connect to the CDB root and any PDB in the database. You might create a common user saas_sales_admin in the saas_sales application container. In this case, the saas_sales_admin user could only connect to the saas_sales application root or to an application PDB within the saas_sales application container.

Every common user is either Oracle-supplied or user-created. Examples of Oracle-supplied common users are SYS and SYSTEM. Every user-created common user is either a CDB common user, or an application common user.

Figure 2-6 shows sample users and schemas in two PDBs: hrpdb and salespdb. SYS and c##dba are CDB common users who have schemas in CDB$ROOT, hrpdb, and salespdb. Local users hr and rep exist in hrpdb. Local users hr and rep also exist in salespdb.

Common users have the following characteristics:

- A common user can log in to any container (including CDB$ROOT) in which it has the CREATE_SESSION privilege.
A common user need not have the same privileges in every container. For example, the c##dba user may have the privilege to create a session in hrpdb and in the root, but not to create a session in salespdb. Because a common user with the appropriate privileges can switch between containers, a common user in the root can administer PDBs.

- An application common user does not have the CREATE SESSION privilege in any container outside its own application container.

Thus, an application common user is restricted to its own application container. For example, the application common user created in the saas_sales application can connect only to the application root and the PDBs in the saas_sales application container.

- The names of user-created CDB common users must follow the naming rules for other database users. Additionally, the names must begin with the characters specified by the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter, which are c## or C## by default. Oracle-supplied common user names and user-created application common user names do not have this restriction.

No local user name may begin with the characters c## or C##.

- Every common user is uniquely named across all PDBs within the container (either the system container or a specific application container) in which it was created. A CDB common user is defined in the CDB root, but must be able to connect to every PDB with the same identity. An application common user resides in the application root, and may connect to every application PDB in its container with the same identity.

**See Also:**

- Oracle Database Security Guide to learn about common user accounts
- Oracle Database Reference to learn about COMMON_USER_PREFIX

### 2.2.2.2 Local Users in a CDB

A **local user** is a database user that is not common and can operate only within a single PDB.

Local users have the following characteristics:

- A local user is specific to a PDB and may own a schema in this PDB.
  
  In Figure 2-6, local user hr on hrpdb owns the hr schema. On salespdb, local user rep owns the rep schema, and local user hr owns the hr schema.

- A local user can administer a PDB, including opening and closing it.
  
  A common user with SYSDBA privileges can grant SYSDBA privileges to a local user. In this case, the privileged user remains local.

- A local user in one PDB cannot log in to another PDB or to the CDB root.
  
  For example, when local user hr connects to hrpdb, hr cannot access objects in the sh schema that reside in the salespdb database without using a database link. In the same way, when local user sh connects to the salespdb PDB, sh cannot
access objects in the hr schema that resides in hrpdb without using a database link.

- The name of a local user must not begin with the characters c## or C##.
- The name of a local user must only be unique within its PDB.

The user name and the PDB in which that user schema is contained determine a unique local user. Figure 2-6 shows that a local user and schema named rep exist on hrpdb. A completely independent local user and schema named rep exist on the salespdb PDB.

The following table describes a scenario involving the CDB in Figure 2-6. Each row describes an action that occurs after the action in the preceding row. Common user SYSTEM creates local users in two PDBs.

**Table 2-3 Local Users in a CDB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@hrpdb</td>
<td>SYSTEM connects to the hrpdb container using the service name hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter password: ********</td>
<td>Connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CREATE USER rep IDENTIFIED BY password;</td>
<td>SYSTEM now creates a local user rep and grants the CREATE SESSION privilege in this PDB to this user. The user is local because common users can only be created by a common user connected to the root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User created.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT CREATE SESSION TO rep;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grant succeeded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT rep@salespdb</td>
<td>The rep user, which is local to hrpdb, attempts to connect to salespdb. The attempt fails because rep does not exist in PDB salespdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter password: ********</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERROR:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORA-01017: invalid username/password; logon denied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@salespdb</td>
<td>SYSTEM connects to the salespdb container using the service name salespdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter password: ********</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-3  (Cont.) Local Users in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CREATE USER rep IDENTIFIED BY password;</td>
<td><strong>SYSTEM creates a local user rep in salespdb and grants the CREATE SESSION privilege in this PDB to this user. Because the name of a local user must only be unique within its PDB, a user named rep can exist in both salespdb and hrpdb.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User created.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT CREATE SESSION TO rep;</td>
<td>Grant succeeded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grant succeeded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT rep@salespdb</td>
<td><strong>The rep user successfully logs in to salespdb.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enter password: *******</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

See Also:

*Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn about local user accounts

2.2.3 Overview of Common and Local Roles in a CDB

User-created roles are either local or common. Common roles are either common to the CDB itself or to a specific application container.

Every Oracle-supplied role is common, for example, the predefined `DBA` role. In Oracle-supplied scripts, every privilege or role granted to Oracle-supplied users and roles is granted commonly, with one exception: system privileges are granted locally to the common role `PUBLIC`.

See Also:

"Grants to PUBLIC in a CDB"

2.2.3.1 Common Roles in a CDB

A **common role** exists either in the CDB root or an application root, and applies to every PDB within the root container (either the CDB or the application container).

Common roles are useful for cross-container operations, ensuring that a common user has a role in every PDB. Every common role is one of the following types:

- **Oracle-supplied**
  All Oracle-supplied roles, such as `DBA` and `PUBLIC`, are common to the CDB.
• User-created

Create a common role by executing `CREATE ROLE ... CONTAINER=ALL` in either the CDB root or application root, which determines the container to which the role is common. The standard naming conventions apply. Additionally, the names of CDB common roles must begin with the characters specified by the `COMMON_USER_PREFIX` initialization parameter, which are `c##` or `C##` by default.

The scope of the role is the scope of the root within which it is defined. If you define the role in `CDB$ROOT`, then its scope is the entire CDB. If you define the role within application root, then its scope is the application container.

**See Also:**
- “Cross-Container Operations”
- Oracle Database Security Guide to learn how to manage common roles
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference to learn about the `CREATE ROLE` statement

### 2.2.3.2 Local Roles in a CDB

A **local role** exists only in a single PDB, and is thus completely independent of local roles in any other PDBs.

A local role can only contain roles and privileges that apply within the container in which the role exists. For example, if you create the local role `pdbadmin` in `hrpdb`, then the scope of this role is restricted to this PDB.

PDBs in the same CDB, or in the same application container, may contain local roles with the same name. For example, the user-created role `pdbadmin` may exist in both `hrpdb` and `salespdb`. However, these roles are completely independent of each other.

**See Also:**

Oracle Database Security Guide to learn how to manage local roles

### 2.2.4 Overview of Privilege and Role Grants in a CDB

User accounts in a CDB can grant and be granted roles and privileges. Roles and privileges in a CDB, however, are either locally or commonly granted.

A privilege or role granted locally is exercisable only in the PDB in which it was granted. A privilege or role granted commonly is exercisable in every existing and future PDB in the container—or the CDB or an application container—in which it was granted.

Users and roles may be common or local. However, a privilege is *in itself* neither common nor local. If a user grants a privilege locally using the `CONTAINER=CURRENT` clause, then the grantee has a privilege exercisable only in the current container. If a user connects to either the CDB root or an application root, and if this user grants a
privilege commonly using the `CONTAINER=ALL` clause, then the grantee has this privilege in any existing or future PDB within the current container.

~~~
See Also:

*Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn how to manage common privileges
~~~

### 2.2.4.1 Principles of Privilege and Role Grants in a CDB

In a CDB, every act of granting, whether local or common, occurs within a container. The container may be the CDB root, an application root, or a PDB.

If the current container is the CDB root, then granting commonly means granting to all containers in the CDB. If the current container is an application root, however, then granting commonly means granting to all PDBs in the current application container.

The basic principles of granting are as follows:

- Both common and local phenomena may grant and be granted locally.
- Only common phenomena may grant or be granted commonly.

Local users, roles, and privileges are restricted to a particular PDB. Thus, local users may not grant roles and privileges commonly, and local roles and privileges may not be granted commonly.

The following sections describe the implications of the preceding principles.

### 2.2.4.2 Privileges and Roles Granted Locally in a CDB

Roles and privileges may be granted locally to users and roles *regardless* of whether the grantees, grantors, or roles being granted are local or common.

The following table explains the valid possibilities for locally granted roles and privileges.

**Table 2-4  Local Grants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phenomenon</th>
<th>May Grant Locally</th>
<th>May Be Granted Locally</th>
<th>May Receive a Role or Privilege Granted Locally</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common User</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local User</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Role</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Role</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Privileges in this role are available to the grantee only in the container in which the role was granted, regardless of whether the privileges were granted to the role locally or commonly.

<sup>2</sup> Privileges in this role are available to the grantee only in the container in which the role was granted and created.
2.2.4.2.1 What Makes a Privilege or Role Grant Local

To grant a role or privilege locally, use the GRANT statement with the CONTAINER=CURRENT clause, which is the default.

Specifically, a role or privilege is granted locally only when the following criteria are met:

- The grantor has the necessary privileges to grant the specified role or privileges.
  
  For system roles and privileges, the grantor must have the ADMIN OPTION for the role or privilege being granted. For object privileges, the grantor must have the GRANT OPTION for the privilege being granted.

- The grant applies to only one container.
  
  By default, the GRANT statement includes the CONTAINER=CURRENT clause, which indicates that the privilege or role is granted locally.

Example 2-4  Granting a Privilege Locally

In this example, both SYSTEM and c##hr_admin are common users. The example connects to hrpdb as SYSTEM (which has administrator privileges), and then locally grants read privileges on the employees table to c##hr_admin. This grant applies only to c##hr_admin within hrpdb, not within any other PDBs.

CONNECT SYSTEM@hrpdb
Enter password: password
Connected.

GRANT READ ON employees TO c##hr_admin CONTAINER=CURRENT;

See Also:

Oracle Database Security Guide to learn more about granting local roles and privileges

2.2.4.2.2 Roles and Privileges Granted Locally

A user or role may be locally granted a privilege (CONTAINER=CURRENT). For example, a READ ANY TABLE privilege granted locally to a local or common user in hrpdb applies only to this user in this PDB.

A user or role may be locally granted a role (CONTAINER=CURRENT). As shown in Table 2-4, a common role may receive a privilege granted locally. For example, the common role c##dba may be granted the READ ANY TABLE privilege locally in hrpdb. If the c##cdb common role has local privileges, then these privileges apply only in the container in which the role is granted. In this example, a common user who has the c##cdba role does not, because of a privilege granted locally to this role in hrpdb, have the right to exercise this privilege in any PDB other than hrpdb.
2.2.4.3 Roles and Privileges Granted Commonly in a CDB

Privileges and common roles may be granted commonly.

User accounts or roles may be granted roles and privileges commonly only if the grantees and grantors are both common. If a role is being granted commonly, then the role itself must be common. The following table explains the possibilities for common grants.

Table 2-5 Common Grants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phenomenon</th>
<th>May Grant Commonly</th>
<th>May Be Granted Commonly</th>
<th>May Receive Roles and Privileges Granted Commonly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common User Account</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local User Account</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Role</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes¹</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Role</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Privileges that were granted commonly to a common role are available to the grantee across all containers. In addition, any privilege granted locally to a common role is available to the grantee only in the container in which that privilege was granted to the common role.

See Also:
Oracle Database Security Guide to learn more about common grants

2.2.4.3.1 What Makes a Grant Common

The CONTAINER=ALL clause specifies that the privilege or role is being granted commonly.

A role or privilege is granted commonly when the following criteria are met:

- The grantor is a common user.
  - The user that performs the grant is either common to the CDB itself, or common to a specific application container.
- The grantee is a common user or common role.
  - The recipient of the grant is either common to the CDB itself, or common to a specific application container.
• The grantor has the necessary privileges to grant the specified role or privileges.

For system roles and privileges, the grantor must have the **ADMIN OPTION** for the role or privilege being granted. For object privileges, the grantor must have the **GRANT OPTION** for the privilege being granted.

• The grant applies to all PDBs within the container (either CDB or application container) in which the grant occurred.

  The **GRANT** statement includes a **CONTAINER=ALL** clause specifying that the privilege or role is granted commonly.

• If a role is being granted, then it must be common, and if an object privilege is being granted, then the object on which the privilege is granted must be common.

**Example 2-5  Granting a Privilege Commonly**

In this example, both **SYSTEM** and **c##hr_admin** are common users. **SYSTEM** connects to the CDB root, and then grants the **CREATE ANY TABLE** privilege commonly to **c##hr_admin**. In this case, **c##hr_admin** can now create a table in any PDB in the CDB.

```
CONNECT SYSTEM@root
Enter password: password
Connected.

GRANT CREATE ANY TABLE TO c##hr_admin CONTAINER=ALL;
```

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn how to grant common privileges

### 2.2.4.3.2 Roles and Privileges Granted Commonly

A common user account or role may be granted a **privilege** commonly (**CONTAINER=ALL**).

Within the context of either the CDB root or an application root, the privilege is granted to this common user account or role in all existing and future PDBs within the current container. For example, if **SYSTEM** connects to the CDB root and grants a **SELECT ANY TABLE** privilege commonly to CDB common user account **c##dba**, then the **c##dba** user has this privilege in all PDBs in the CDB. A role or privilege granted **commonly** cannot be revoked **locally**.

A user or role may receive a common role granted commonly. As mentioned in a footnote on Table 2-5, a common role may receive a privilege granted locally. Thus, a common user can be granted a common role, and this role may contain locally granted privileges.

For example, the common role **c##admin** may be granted the **SELECT ANY TABLE** privilege that is local to **hrpdb**. Locally granted privileges in a common role apply *only* in the container in which the privilege was granted. Thus, the common user with the **c##admin** role does not have the right to exercise an **hrpdb**-contained privilege in **salespdb** or any PDB other than **hrpdb**.
2.2.4.4 Grants to PUBLIC in a CDB

In a CDB, PUBLIC is a common role. In a PDB, privileges granted locally to PUBLIC enable all local and common user account to exercise these privileges in this PDB only.

Every privilege and role granted to Oracle-supplied users and roles is granted commonly except for system privileges granted to PUBLIC, which are granted locally. This exception exists because you may want to revoke some grants included by default in Oracle Database, such as EXECUTE on the SYS.UTL_FILE package.

Assume that local user account hr exists in hrpdb. This user locally grants the SELECT privilege on hr.employees to PUBLIC. Common and local users in hrpdb may exercise the privilege granted to PUBLIC. User accounts in salespdb or any other PDB do not have the privilege to query hr.employees in hrpdb.

Privileges granted commonly to PUBLIC enable all local users to exercise the granted privilege in their respective PDBs and enable all common users to exercise this privilege in the PDBs to which they have access. Oracle recommends that users do not commonly grant privileges and roles to PUBLIC.

2.2.4.5 Grants of Privileges and Roles: Scenario

In this scenario, SYSTEM creates common user c##dba and tries to give this user privileges to query a table in the hr schema in hrpdb.

The scenario shows how the CONTAINER clause affects grants of roles and privileges. The first column shows operations in CDB$ROOT. The second column shows operations in hrpdb.

Table 2-6  Granting Roles and Privileges in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>t</th>
<th>Operations in CDB$ROOT</th>
<th>Operations in hrpdb</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t1</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@root Enter password: ******* Connected.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Common user SYSTEM connects to the root container.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-6  (Cont.) Granting Roles and Privileges in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Operations in CDB$ROOT</th>
<th>Operations in hrpdb</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t2</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CREATE USER c##dba IDENTIFIED BY password CONTAINER=ALL;</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM creates common user c##dba. The clause CONTAINER=ALL makes the user a common user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t3</td>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT CREATE SESSION TO c##dba;</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM grants the CREATE SESSION system privilege to c##dba. Because the clause CONTAINER=ALL is absent, this privilege is granted locally and thus applies only to the root, which is the current container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t4</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CREATE ROLE c##admin CONTAINER=ALL;</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM creates a common role named c##admin. The clause CONTAINER=ALL makes the role a common role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t5</td>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT SELECT ANY TABLE TO c##admin; Grant succeeded.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM grants the SELECT ANY TABLE privilege to the c##admin role. The absence of the CONTAINER=ALL clause makes the privilege local to the root. Thus, this common role contains a privilege that is exercisable only in the root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t6</td>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT c##admin TO c##dba; SQL&gt; EXIT;</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM grants the c##admin role to c##dba. Because the CONTAINER=ALL clause is absent, the role applies only to the current container, even though it is a common role. If c##dba connects to a PDB, then c##dba does not have this role.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 2-6  (Cont.) Granting Roles and Privileges in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>t</th>
<th>Operations in CDBSROOT</th>
<th>Operations in hrpdb</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t7</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT c##dba@hrpdb Enter password: ****** ERROR: ORA-01045: user c##dba lacks CREATE SESSION privilege; logon denied</td>
<td>c##dba fails to connect to hrpdb because the grant at t3 was local to the root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t8</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@hrpdb Enter password: ****** Connected.</td>
<td>SYSTEM connects to hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t9</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE TO c##dba; Grant succeeded. SQL&gt; EXIT</td>
<td>SYSTEM grants the CONNECT and RESOURCE roles to common user c##dba. Because the clause CONTAINER=ALL is absent, the grant is local to hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t10</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT c##dba@hrpdb Enter password: ****** Connected.</td>
<td>Common user c##dba connects to hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t11</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(*) FROM hr.employees; select * from hr.employees * ERROR at line 1: ORA-00942: table or view does not exist</td>
<td>The query of hr.employees still returns an error because c##dba does not have select privileges on tables in hrpdb. The SELECT ANY TABLE privilege granted locally at t5 is restricted to the root and thus does not apply to hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t12</td>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@root Enter password: ****** Connected.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>Common user SYSTEM connects to the root container.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-6  (Cont.) Granting Roles and Privileges in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Operations in CDB$ROOT</th>
<th>Operations in hrpdb</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>t13</td>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT SELECT ANY TABLE TO c##admin CONTAINER=ALL; Grant succeeded.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM grants the SELECT ANY TABLE privilege to the c##admin role. The presence of CONTAINER=ALL means the privilege is being granted commonly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t14</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(*) FROM hr.employees; select * from hr.employees * ERROR at line 1: ORA-00942: table or view does not exist</td>
<td>A query of hr.employees still returns an error. The reason is that at t6 the c##admin common role was granted to c##dba in the root only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t15</td>
<td>SQL&gt; GRANT c##admin TO c##dba CONTAINER=ALL; Grant succeeded.</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SYSTEM grants the common role named c##admin to c##dba, specifying CONTAINER=ALL. Now user c##dba has the role in all containers, not just the root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t17</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT COUNT(<em>) FROM hr.employees; COUNT(</em>) -------------------- 107</td>
<td>The query succeeds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:

Oracle Database Security Guide to learn how to manage common and local roles

2.2.5 Overview of Common and Local Objects in a CDB

A common object is defined in either the CDB root or an application root, and can be referenced using metadata links or object links. A local object is every object that is not a common object.
Database-supplied common objects are defined in CDB$ROOT and cannot be changed. Oracle Database does not support creation of common objects in CDB$ROOT.

You can create most schema objects—such as tables, views, PL/SQL and Java program units, sequences, and so on—as common objects in an application root. If the object exists in an application root, then it is called an application common object.

A local user can own a common object. Also, a common user can own a local object, but only when the object is not data-linked or metadata-linked, and is also neither a metadata link nor a data link.

See Also:

• "Application Common Objects"
• "About Application Common Objects"
• Oracle Database Security Guide to learn more about privilege management for common objects

2.2.6 Overview of Common Audit Configurations

For both mixed mode and unified auditing, a common audit configuration is visible and enforced across all PDBs.

Audit configurations are either local or common. The scoping rules that apply to other local or common phenomena, such as users and roles, all apply to audit configurations.

Note:

Audit initialization parameters exist at the CDB level and not in each PDB.

PDBs support the following auditing options:

• Object auditing
  
  Object auditing refers to audit configurations for specific objects. Only common objects can be part of the common audit configuration. A local audit configuration cannot contain common objects.

• Audit policies
  
  Audit policies can be local or common:
  
  – Local audit policies
    
    A local audit policy applies to a single PDB. You can enforce local audit policies for local and common users in this PDB only. Attempts to enforce local audit policies across all containers result in an error.
    
    In all cases, enforcing of a local audit policy is part of the local auditing framework.

  – Common audit policies
A common audit policy applies to all containers. This policy can only contain actions, system privileges, common roles, and common objects. You can apply a common audit policy only to common users. Attempts to enforce a common audit policy for a local user across all containers result in an error.

A common audit configuration is stored in the SYS schema of the root. A local audit configuration is stored in the SYS schema of the PDB to which it applies.

Audit trails are stored in the SYS or AUDSYS schemas of the relevant PDBs. Operating system and XML audit trails for PDBs are stored in subdirectories of the directory specified by the AUDIT_FILE_DEST initialization parameter.

See Also:
Oracle Database Security Guide to learn about common audit configurations

2.2.7 Overview of PDB Lockdown Profiles

A PDB lockdown profile is a named set of features that control operations available to users connected to a PDB. For example, a PDB lockdown profile can disable privileges that come with the ALTER SYSTEM statement.

A potential for elevation of privileges exists when PDBs share an identity. For example, identity can be shared at a network level, or when PDBs access common objects or connect through database links. To increase security, a CDB administrator may want to compartmentalize access, thereby restricting the operations that a user can perform in a PDB.

A use case might be the creation of lockdown profiles at high, medium, and low levels. The high level might greatly restrict access, whereas the low level might enable access.

You can restrict the following types of access:

- Network access
  For example, restrict access to UTL_HTTP or UTL_MAIL.

- Common user and common object access
  For example, restrict operations in which a local user in a PDB can proxy through a common user or access objects in a common schema.

- Operating system access
  For example, restrict access to the UTL_FILE or DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER PL/SQL packages.

- Connections
  For example, you can restrict common users from connecting to the PDB or you can restrict a local user who has the SYSOPER administrative privilege from connecting to a PDB that is open in restricted mode.

- Administrative features
  For example, you can restrict the use of ALTER SYSTEM, ALTER SESSION, and ALTER DATABASE.
• Database options

For example, you can use lockdown profiles to disable access to database options such as Oracle Partitioning or Oracle Database Advanced Queuing.

When logged in to the CDB root or application root, create a lockdown profile by issuing the `CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE` statement, which supports the following optional clauses:

- `FROM static_base_profile` creates a new lockdown profile by using the values from an existing profile. Any subsequent changes to the existing profile will not affect the new profile.

- `INCLUDING dynamic_base_profile` creates a new lockdown profile by using the values from an existing profile, except that this new lockdown profile inherits the `DISABLE STATEMENT` rules that comprise the base profile, and any subsequent changes to the base profile.

The user issuing the statement must have the `CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE` system privilege in the current container. You can add and remove restrictions with the `ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE` statement. The user must issue the `ALTER` statement in the CDB root or application root and must have the `ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE` system privilege in the current container.

Specify a lockdown profile by using the `PDB_LOCKDOWN` initialization parameter. This parameter determines whether the PDB lockdown profile applies to a given PDB. You can set this parameter at the following levels:

- **PDB**
  The profile applies only to the PDB in which it is set.

- **Application container**
  The profile applies to all application PDBs in the application container. The value can be modified only by an application common user who has application common `SYSDBA` or common `ALTER SYSTEM` privileges or a CDB common user who has common `SYSDBA` or common `ALTER SYSTEM` privileges.

- **CDB**
  The profile applies to all PDBs. A common user who has common `SYSDBA` or common `ALTER SYSTEM` privileges can override a CDB-wide setting for a specific PDB.

If the `PDB_LOCKDOWN` parameter in a PDB is set to the name of a lockdown profile different from the container for this PDB (CDB or application container), then a set of rules govern the interaction between restrictions.

**Example 2-6  Creating a PDB Lockdown Profile**

In this example, you connect to the CDB root as a common user with the `CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE` privilege. You create a profile called `medium` that disables all `ALTER SYSTEM` statements except for `ALTER SYSTEM FLUSH SHARED POOL`:

```
CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE medium;
ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE medium DISABLE STATEMENT=('ALTER SYSTEM');
ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE medium ENABLE STATEMENT=('ALTER SYSTEM')
CLAUSE=('FLUSH SHARED POOL');
```
You can connect as the same common user to each PDB that requires this profile, and then use ALTER SYSTEM to set the PDB_LOCKDOWN initialization parameter to medium. For example, you could set PDB_LOCKDOWN to medium for hrpdb, but not salespdb.

The following example creates a medium2 profile from medium:

```
CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE medium2 FROM medium;
```

**Note:**

- “About Restricting PDB Users for Enhanced Security” to learn more about PDB lockdown profiles
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn how to create, enable, and drop PDB lockdown profiles

### 2.3 Overview of Applications in an Application Container

Within an application container, an application is the named, versioned set of common data and metadata stored in the application root.

In this context of an application container, the term “application” means “master application definition.” For example, the application might include definitions of tables, views, and packages.

**See Also:**

- “Overview of Common and Local Objects in a CDB” to learn about application common objects
- “Creating and Removing Application Containers and Seeds”
- “Administering Application Containers”

### 2.3.1 About Application Containers

An application container is an optional, user-created CDB component that stores data and metadata for one or more application back ends. A CDB includes zero or more application containers.

For example, you might create multiple sales-related PDBs within one application container, with these PDBs sharing an application back end that consists of a set of common tables and table definitions. You might store multiple HR-related PDBs within a separate application container, with their own common tables and table definitions.

The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` clause creates the application root of the application container, and thus implicitly creates the application container itself. When you first create the application container, it contains no PDBs. To create application PDBs, you must connect to the application root, and then execute the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.
In the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, you must specify a container name (which is the same as the application root name), for example, `saas_sales_ac`. The application container name must be unique within the CDB, and within the scope of all the CDBs whose instances are reached through a specific listener. Every application container has a default service with the same name as the application container.

See Also:

- "Overview of Applications in an Application Container"
- "Creating and Removing Application Containers and Seeds"
- "Administering Application Containers"

2.3.1.1 Purpose of Application Containers

In some ways, an application container functions as an application-specific CDB within a CDB. An application container, like the CDB itself, can include multiple PDBs, and enables these PDBs to share metadata and data.

The application root enables application PDBs to share an application, which in this context means a named, versioned set of common metadata and data. A typical application installs application common users, metadata-linked common objects, and data-linked common objects.

2.3.1.1.1 Key Benefits of Application Containers

Application containers provide several benefits over storing each application in a separate PDB.

- The application root stores metadata and data that all application PDBs can share. For example, all application PDBs can share data in a central table, such as a table listed default application roles. Also, all PDBs can share a table definition to which they add PDB-specific rows.
- You maintain your master application definition in the application root, instead of maintaining a separate copy in each PDB.

If you upgrade the application in the application root, then the changes are automatically propagated to all application PDBs. The application back end might contain the data-linked common object `app_roles`, which is a table that list default roles: `admin`, `manager`, `sales_rep`, and so on. A user connected to any application PDB can query this table.

- An application container can include an application seed, application PDBs, and proxy PDBs (which refer to PDBs in other CDBs).
- You can rapidly create new application PDBs from the application seed.
- You can query views that report on all PDBs in the application container.
- While connected to the application root, you can use the `CONTAINERS` function to perform DML on objects in multiple PDBs.
For example, if the `products` table exists in every application PDB, then you can connect to the application root and query the products in all application PDBs using a single `SELECT` statement.

- You can unplug a PDB from an application root, and then plug it in to an application root in a higher Oracle database release. Thus, PDBs are useful in an Oracle database upgrade.

**See Also:**

"Overview of Applications in an Application Container"

### 2.3.1.1.2 Application Container Use Case: SaaS

A SaaS deployment can use multiple application PDBs, each for a separate customer, that share metadata and data.

In a pure SaaS environment, the master application definition resides in the application root, but the customer-specific data resides in its own application PDB. For example, `sales_app` is the application model in the application root. The application PDB named `cust1_pdb` contains sales data only for customer 1, whereas the application PDB named `cust2_pdb` contains sales data only for customer 2. Plugging, unplugging, cloning, and other PDB-level operations are available for individual customer PDBs.

**Figure 2-7  SaaS Use Case**
A pure SaaS configuration provides the following benefits:

- Performance
- Security
- Support for multiple customers

The data for each customer resides in its own container, but is consolidated so that you can manage many customers collectively. This model extends the economies of scale of managing many as one to the application administrator, not only the DBA.

### 2.3.1.3 Application Containers Use Case: Logical Data Warehouse

A customer can use multiple application PDBs to address data sovereignty issues. In a sample use case, a company puts data specific to each financial quarter in a separate PDB. For example, the application container named `sales_ac` includes `q1_2016_pdb`, `q2_2016_pdb`, `q3_2016_pdb`, and `q4_2016_pdb`. You define each transaction in the PDB corresponding to the associated quarter. To generate a report that aggregates performance across a year, you aggregate across the four PDBs using the `CONTAINERS()` clause.

Benefits of this logical warehouse design include:

- ETL for data specific to a single PDB does not affect the other PDBs.
- Execution plans are more efficient because they are based on actual data distribution.

### 2.3.1.2 Application Root

An application container has exactly one application root, which is the parent of the application PDBs in the container.

The property of being an application root is established at creation time, and cannot be changed. The only container to which an application root belongs is the CDB root. An application root is like the CDB root in some ways, and like a PDB in other ways:

- Like the CDB root, an application root serves as parent container to the PDBs plugged into it. When connected to the application root, you can manage common users and privileges, create application PDBs, switch containers, and issue DDL that applies to all PDBs in the application container.
- Like a PDB, you create an application root with the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, alter it with `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE`, and change its availability with `STARTUP` and `SHUTDOWN`. You can use DDL to plug, unplug, and drop application roots. The application root has its own service name, and users can connect to the application root in the same way that they connect to a PDB.

An application root differs from both the CDB root and standard PDB because it can store user-created common objects, which are called application common objects. Application common objects are accessible to the application PDBs plugged in to the application root. Application common objects are not visible to the CDB root, other application roots, or PDBs that do not belong to the application root.
Example 2-7  Creating an Application Root

In this example, you log in to the CDB root as administrative common user `c##system`. You create an application container named `saas_sales_ac`, and then open the application root, which has the same name as the container.

```
-- Create the application container called saas_sales_ac
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE saas_sales_ac AS APPLICATION CONTAINER
  ADMIN USER saas_sales_ac_adm IDENTIFIED BY manager;

-- Open the application root
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE saas_sales_ac OPEN;
```

You set the current container to `saas_sales_ac`, and then verify that this container is the application root:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = saas_sales_ac;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>PDB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SAAS_SALES_AC</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

2.3.1.3 Application PDBs

An application PDB is a PDB that resides in an application container. Every PDB in a CDB resides in either zero or one application containers.

For example, the `saas_sales_ac` application container might support multiple customers, with each customer application storing its data in a separate PDB. The application PDBs `cust1_sales_pdb` and `cust2_sales_pdb` might reside in `saas_sales_ac`, in which case they belong to no other application container (although as PDBs they necessarily belong also to the CDB root).

Create an application PDB by executing `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` while connected to the application root. You can either create the application PDB from a seed, or clone a PDB or plug in an unplugged PDB. Like a PDB that is plugged in to CDB root, you can clone, unplug, or drop an application PDB. However, an application PDB must always belong to an application root.
2.3.1.4 Application Seed

An application seed is an optional, user-created PDB within an application container. An application container has either zero or one application seed.

An application seed enables you to create application PDBs quickly. It serves the same role within the application container as PDB$SEED serves within the CDB itself.

The application seed name is always application_container_name$SEED, where application_container_name is the name of the application container. For example, use the CREATE PDB ... AS SEED statement to create saas_sales_ac$SEED in the saas_sales_ac application container.

2.3.2 Application Common Objects

An application common object is a common object created within an application in an application root. Common objects are either data-linked or metadata-linked.

For a data-linked common object, application PDBs share a single set of data. For example, an application for the saas_sales_ac application container is named saas_sales_app, has version 1.0, and includes a data-linked usa_zipcodes table. In this case, the rows are stored once in the table in the application root, but are visible in all application PDBs.

For a metadata-linked common object, application PDBs share only the metadata, but contain different sets of data. For example, a metadata-linked products table has the same definition in every application PDB, but the rows themselves are specific to the PDB. The application PDB named cust1pdb might have a products table that contains books, whereas the application PDB named cust2pdb might have a products table that contains auto parts.

See Also:

- "Overview of Common and Local Objects in a CDB" to learn about common objects
- "About Application Common Objects"
2.3.2.1 Creation of Application Common Objects

To create common objects, connect to an application root, and then execute a `CREATE` statement that specifies a sharing attribute.

You can only create or change application common objects as part of an application installation, upgrade, or patch. You can specify sharing in the following ways:

- **DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter**
  - The setting is the default sharing attribute for all database objects of a supported type created in the root.

- **SHARING clause**
  - You specify this clause in the `CREATE` statement itself. When a `SHARING` clause is included in a SQL statement, it takes precedence over the value specified in the `DEFAULT_SHARING` initialization parameter. Possible values are `METADATA`, `DATA`, `EXTENDED DATA`, and `NONE`.

The following table shows the types of application common objects, and where the data and metadata is stored.

### Table 2-7 Application Common Objects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object Type</th>
<th>SHARING Value</th>
<th>Metadata Storage</th>
<th>Data Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Data-Linked</td>
<td>DATA</td>
<td>Application root</td>
<td>Application root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extended Data-Linked</td>
<td>EXTENDED DATA</td>
<td>Application root</td>
<td>Application root and application PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metadata-Linked</td>
<td>METADATA</td>
<td>Application root</td>
<td>Application PDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also:**
- “Creating Application Common Objects”
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn how to manage privileges for common objects

2.3.2.2 Metadata-Linked Application Common Objects

A **metadata link** is a dictionary object that supports referring to, and granting privileges on, common metadata shared by all PDBs in the application container.

Specifying the `METADATA` value in either the `SHARING` clause or the `DEFAULT_SHARING` initialization parameter specifies a link to an object’s metadata, called a **metadata-linked common object**. The metadata for the object is stored once in the application root.

Tables, views, and code objects (such as PL/SQL procedures) can share metadata. In this context, “metadata” includes column definitions, constraints, triggers, and code. For example, if `sales_mlt` is a metadata-linked common table, then all application PDBs access the *same* definition of this table, which is stored in the application root,
by means of a metadata link. The rows in sales_mlt are different in every application PDB, but the column definitions are the same.

Typically, most objects in an application will be metadata-linked. Thus, you need only maintain one master application definition. This approach centralizes management of the application in multiple application PDBs.

**Example 2-8 Creating a Metadata-Linked Common Object**

In this example, the SYSTEM user logs in to the saas_sales_ac application container. SYSTEM installs an application named saas_sales_app at version 1.0 (see "Application Maintenance"). This application creates a common user account named saas_sales_adm. The schema contains a metadata-linked common table named sales_mlt.

```sql
-- Begin the install of saas_sales_app
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app BEGIN INSTALL '1.0';

-- Create the tablespace for the app
CREATE TABLESPACE saas_sales_tbs DATAFILE SIZE 100M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10M MAXSIZE 200M;

-- Create the user account saas_sales_adm, which will own the app
CREATE USER saas_sales_adm IDENTIFIED BY ****** CONTAINER=ALL;

-- Grant necessary privileges to this user account
GRANT CREATE SESSION, DBA TO saas_sales_adm;

-- Makes the tablespace that you just created the default for saas_sales_adm
ALTER USER saas_sales_adm DEFAULT TABLESPACE saas_sales_tbs;

-- Now connect as the application owner
CONNECT saas_sales_adm/******@saas_sales_ac

-- Create a metadata-linked table
CREATE TABLE saas_sales_adm.sales_mlt SHARING=METADATA
(YEAR NUMBER(4),
 REGION VARCHAR2(10),
 QUARTER VARCHAR2(4),
 REVENUE NUMBER);

-- End the application installation
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END INSTALL '1.0';
```

You can use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC` statement to synchronize the application PDBs to use the same master application definition. In this way, every application PDB has a metadata link to the saas_sales_adm.sales_mlt common table. The middle-tier code that updates `sales_mlt` within the PDB named cust1_pdb adds rows to this table in cust1_pdb, whereas the middle-tier code that updates `sales_mlt` in cust2_pdb adds rows to the copy of this table in cust2_pdb. Only the table metadata, which is stored in the application root, is shared.
2.3.2.2.1 Metadata Links

For metadata-linked application common objects, the metadata for the object is stored once in the application root. A metadata link is a dictionary object whose object type is the same as the metadata it is sharing.

The description of a metadata link is stored in the data dictionary of the PDB in which it is created. A metadata link must be owned by an application common user. You can only use metadata links to share metadata of common objects owned by their creator in the CDB root or an application root.

Unlike a data link, a metadata link depends only on common data. For example, if an application contains the local tables `dow_close_lt` and `nasdaq_close_lt` in the application root, then a common user cannot create metadata links to these objects. However, an application common table named `sales_mlt` may be metadata-linked.

If a privileged common user changes the metadata for `sales_mlt`, for example, adds a column to the table, then this change propagates to the metadata links. Application PDB users may not change the metadata in the metadata link. For example, a DBA who manages the application PDB named `cust1_pdb` cannot add a column to `sales_mlt` in this PDB only: such metadata changes can be made only in the application root.

2.3.2.3 Data-Linked Application Common Objects

A data-linked object is an object whose metadata and data reside in an application root, and are accessible from all application PDBs in this application container.

Specifying the DATA value in either the SHARING clause or the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter specifies a link to a common object, called a data-linked common object. Dimension tables in a data warehouse are often good candidates for data-linked common tables.

A data link is a dictionary object that functions much like a synonym. For example, if `countries` is an application common table, then all application PDBs access the same copy of this table by means of a data link. If a row is added to this table, then this row is visible in all application PDBs.

A data link must be owned by an application common user. The link inherits the object type from the object to which it is pointing. The description of a data link is stored in the dictionary of the PDB in which it is created. For example, if an application container
contains 10 application PDBs, and if every PDB contains a link to the countries application common table, then all 10 PDBs contain dictionary definitions for this link.

**Example 2-9  Creating a Data-Linked Object**

In this example, SYSTEM connects to the saas_sales_ac application container. SYSTEM upgrades the application named saas_sales_app from version 1.0 to 2.0. This application upgrade logs in to the container as common user saas_sales_adm, creates a data-linked table named countries_dlt, and then inserts rows into it.

```sql
-- Begin an upgrade of the application
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app BEGIN UPGRADE '1.0' to '2.0';

-- Connect as application owner to application root
CONNECT saas_sales_adm/manager@saas_sales_ac

-- Create data-linked table named countries_dlt
CREATE TABLE countries_dlt SHARING=DATA
  (country_id   NUMBER,
   country_name VARCHAR2(20));

-- Insert records into countries_dlt
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(1, 'USA');
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(44, 'UK');
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(86, 'China');
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(91, 'India');

-- End application upgrade
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END UPGRADE TO '2.0';
```

Use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC` statement to synchronize application PDBs with the application root (see "Application Synchronization"). In this way, every synchronized application PDB has a data link to the saas_sales_adm.countries_dlt data-linked table.

---

**Note:**

"About Application Common Objects"

---

### 2.3.2.4 Extended Data-Linked Application Objects

An **extended data-linked object** is a hybrid of a data-linked object and metadata-linked object.

In an extended data-linked object, the data stored in the application root is common to all application PDBs, and all PDBs can access this data. However, each application PDB can create its own, PDB-specific data while sharing the common data in application root. Thus, the PDBs supplement the common data with their own data.

For example, a sales application might support several application PDBs. All application PDBs need the postal codes for the United States. In this case, you might create a `zipcodes_edt` extended data-linked table in the application root. The
application root stores the United States postal codes, so all application PDBs can access them. However, one application PDB requires the postal codes for the United States and Canada. This application PDB can store the postal codes for Canada in the extended data-linked object in the application PDB instead of in the application root.

Create an extended data-linked object by connecting to the application root and specifying the `SHARING=EXTENDED DATA` keyword in the `CREATE` statement.

**Example 2-10 Creating an Extended-Data Object**

In this example, `SYSTEM` connects to the `saas_sales_ac` application container, and then upgrades the application named `saas_sales_app` (created in "Example 2-8") from version 2.0 to 3.0. This application logs in to the container as common user `saas_salesadm`, creates an extended data-linked table named `zipcodes_edt`, and then inserts rows into it.

```
-- Begin an upgrade of the app
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app BEGIN UPGRADE '2.0' to '3.0';

-- Connect as app owner to app root
CONNECT saas_salesadm/manager@saas_sales_ac

-- Create a common-data table named zipcodes_edt
CREATE TABLE zipcodes_edt SHARING=EXTENDED DATA
(cod string VARCHAR2(5),
 country_id NUMBER,
 region VARCHAR2(10));

-- Load rows into zipcodes_edt
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('08820','1','East');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('10005','1','East');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('44332','1','North');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('94065','1','West');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('73301','1','South');
COMMIT;

-- End app upgrade
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END UPGRADE TO '3.0';
```

Use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC` statement to synchronize application PDBs with the application (see "Application Synchronization"). In this way, every synchronized application PDB has a data link to the `saas_salesadm.zipcodes_edt` data-linked table. Applications that connect to these PDBs can see the postal codes that were inserted into `zipcodes_edt` during the application upgrade, but can also insert their own postal codes into this table.

---

**Note:**

"About Application Common Objects"
2.3.3 Application Maintenance

In this context, **application maintenance** refers to installing, uninstalling, upgrading, or patching an application.

An application must have a name and version number. This combination of properties determines which maintenance operations you can perform. In all maintenance operations, you perform the following steps:

1. **Begin by executing the** `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... APPLICATION` **statement** with the `BEGIN INSTALL`, `BEGIN UPGRADE`, or `BEGIN PATCH` clauses.

2. **Execute statements to alter the application.**

3. **End by executing the** `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... APPLICATION` **statement** with the `END INSTALL`, `END UPGRADE`, or `END PATCH` clauses.

As the application evolves, the application container maintains all versions and patch changes.

---

**Note:**

"About Application Management"

---

2.3.3.1 About Application Maintenance

Perform application installation, upgrade, and patching operations using an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement.

The basic steps for application maintenance are as follows:

1. **Log in to the application root.**

2. **Begin the operation with an** `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... BEGIN` statement in the application root.

3. **Execute the application maintenance statements.**

4. **End the operation with an** `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... END` statement.

Perform the maintenance using scripts, SQL statements, or GUI tools.

---

**See Also:**

"About Application Management"

---

2.3.3.2 Application Installation

An **application installation** is the initial creation of a master application definition. A typical installation creates user accounts, tables, and PL/SQL packages.
To install the application, specify the following in the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement:

- Name of the application
- Application version number

**Example 2-11 Installing an Application**

This example assumes that you are logged in to the application container named saas_sales_ac as. The example installs an application named saas_sales_app at version 1.0. Note that you specify the version with a string rather than a number. The application creates an application common user named saas_sales_adm, grants necessary privileges, and then connects to the application root as this user. This user creates a metadata-linked table named sales_mlt.

```sql
-- Begin the install of saas_sales_app
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app BEGIN INSTALL '1.0';

-- Create the tablespace for the app
CREATE TABLESPACE saas_sales_tbs DATAFILE SIZE 100M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10M MAXSIZE 200M;

-- Create the user account saas_sales_adm, which will own the application
CREATE USER saas_sales_adm IDENTIFIED BY manager CONTAINER=ALL;

-- Grant necessary privileges to this user account
GRANT CREATE SESSION, DBA TO saas_sales_adm;

-- Make the tablespace that you just created the default for saas_sales_adm
ALTER USER saas_sales_adm DEFAULT TABLESPACE saas_sales_tbs;

-- Now connect as the application owner
CONNECT saas_sales_adm/manager@saas_sales_ac

-- Create a metadata-linked table
CREATE TABLE saas_sales_adm.sales_mlt SHARING=METADATA
(YEAR NUMBER(4),
 REGION VARCHAR2(10),
 QUARTER VARCHAR2(4),
 REVENUE NUMBER);

-- End the application installation
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END INSTALL '1.0';
```

**PDB synchronization** is the user-initiated update of an application PDB with the application in the application root. After you synchronize the application PDBs with the saas_sales_app application, each application PDB will contain an empty table named products_mlt. An application can connect to an application PDB, and then insert PDB-specific rows into this table.
2.3.3.3 Application Upgrade

An application upgrade is a major change to an installed application.

Typically, an upgrade changes the physical architecture of the application. For example, an upgrade might add new user accounts, tables, and packages, or alter the definitions of existing objects.

To upgrade the application, you must specify the following in the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement:

- Name of the application
- Old application version number
- New application version number

Example 2-12 Upgrading an Application Using the Automated Technique

In this example, you connect to the application root as an administrator, and then upgrade the application saas_sales_app from version 1.0 to version 2.0. The upgrade creates a data-linked table named countries_dlt, and then adds rows to it. It also creates an extended data-linked table named zipcodes_edt, and then adds rows to it.

```sql
-- Begin an upgrade of the app
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app
    BEGIN UPGRADE '1.0' to '2.0';

-- Connect as app owner to app root
CONNECT saas_sales_adm/manager@saas_sales_ac

-- Create data-linked table named countries_dlt
CREATE TABLE countries_dlt SHARING=DATA
    (country_id   NUMBER,
     country_name VARCHAR2(20));

-- Insert records into countries_dlt
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(1, 'USA');
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(44, 'UK');
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(86, 'China');
INSERT INTO countries_dlt VALUES(91, 'India');

-- Create an extended data-linked table named zipcodes_edt
CREATE TABLE zipcodes_edt SHARING=EXTENDED DATA
    (code       VARCHAR2(5),
     country_id NUMBER,
     region     VARCHAR2(10));
```
--- Load rows into zipcodes_edt
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('08820','1','East');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('10005','1','East');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('44332','1','North');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('94065','1','West');
INSERT INTO zipcodes_edt VALUES ('73301','1','South');
COMMIT;

--- End app upgrade
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END UPGRADE TO '2.0';
An upgrade occurs as follows:

1. In the initial state, the application root has an application in a specific version.
2. The user executes the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UPGRADE` statement, and then issues the application upgrade statements.

During the upgrade, the database automatically does the following:

- Clones the application root
  
  For example, if the `saas_sales_app` application is at version 1.0 in the application root, then the clone is also at version 1.0

- Points the application PDBs to the application root clone
  
  The clone is in read-only mode. The application remains available to the application PDBs.

3. The user executes the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UPGRADE` statement.

At this stage, the application PDBs are still pointing to the application root clone, and the original application root is at a new version. For example, if the `saas_sales_app` application is at version 1.0 in the application root, then the upgrade might bring it to version 2.0. The application root clone, however, remains at version 1.0.

4. Optionally, the user synchronizes the application PDBs with the upgraded application root by issuing `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.

For example, after the synchronization, some application PDBs are plugged in to the application root at version 2.0. However, the application root clone continues to support application PDBs that must stay on version 1.0, or any new application PDBs that are plugged in to the application root at version 1.0.

See Also:

- "Application Synchronization"
- "Upgrading Applications in an Application Container"

### 2.3.3.3.2 Applications at Different Versions

Different application PDBs might use different versions of the application. For example, one application PDB might have version 1.0 of the `saas_sales_app`. In the same application container, another application PDB has version 2.0 of this application.

A use case is a SaaS application provided to different customers. If each customer has its own application PDB, then some customers might wait longer to upgrade the application. In this case, some application PDBs may use the latest version of the application, whereas other application PDBs use an older version.
2.3.3.4 Application Patch

An application patch is a minor change to an application.

Typical examples of application patching include bug fixes and security patches. New functions and packages are permitted within a patch.

In general, destructive operations are not permitted. For example, a patch cannot include DROP statements, or ALTER TABLE statements that drop a column or change a data type.

Just as the Oracle Database patching process restricts the kinds of operations permitted in an Oracle Database patch, the application patching process restricts the operations permitted in an application patch. If a fix includes an operation that raises an “operation not supported in an application patch" error, then perform an application upgrade instead.

Note:
You cannot patch an application when another application patch or upgrade is in progress.

To patch the application, specify the application name and patch number in the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement. Optionally, you can specify an application minimum version.

Example 2-13    Patching an Application Using the Automated Technique

In this example, SYSTEM logs in to the application root, and then patches the application saas_sales_app at version 1.0 or greater. Patch 101 logs in to the application container as saas_salesadm, and then creates a metadata-linked PL/SQL function named get_total_revenue.

ALTERTABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app BEGIN PATCH 101
MINIMUM VERSION '1.0';

-- Connect to the saas_sales_ac container as saas_salesadm, who owns the application
CONNECT saas_salesadm/*******@saas_sales_ac

-- Now install the get_total_revenue() function
CREATE FUNCTION get_total_revenue SHARING=METADATA (p_year IN NUMBER)
RETURN SYS_REFCURSOR
AS
c1_cursor SYS_REFCURSOR;
BEGIN
OPEN c1_cursor FOR
  SELECT a.year, sum(a.revenue)
  FROM containers(sales_data) a
  WHERE a.year = p_year
  GROUP BY a.year;
RETURN c1_cursor;
END;
/
-- End the patch
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END PATCH 101;

See Also:
“Patching Applications in an Application Container”

2.3.4 Migration of an Existing Application

You can migrate an application that is installed in a PDB to either an application root or to an application PDB.

Typical reasons for migrating a preexisting application include the following:

• Applications that use an installation program

  Some applications use an installation program rather than a script. In this case, you can run the installation program in a new application root, and then use the DBMS_PDB ALTER Sharing package to set the objects to the appropriate sharing mode: METADATA, DATA, or EXTENDED DATA. The root automatically propagates the changes to the application PDBs. Oracle Database creates a statement log of the installation, so PDBs with previous application versions can be plugged into the application root.

• Applications that are defined separately in each PDB

  Some applications are defined in each PDB, but no application container exists. In this case, you can update the installation script to set the appropriate sharing mode. You create an application root, and then create the master application definition in this root. You can adopt the existing PDBs as application PDBs by plugging them into the application root, and then running a SQL script to replace the full definitions with references to the common definitions.

  For example, you can migrate an application installed in a PDB plugged into an Oracle Database 12c CDB to an application container in an Oracle Database 18c CDB.

See Also:
• “About Application Management” to learn how to migrate an existing application
• Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference to learn more about the DBMS_PDB ALTER Sharing package
2.3.5 Implicitly Created Applications

In addition to user-created applications, application containers can also contain implicitly created applications.

An application is created implicitly in an application root when an application common user operation is issued with a CONTAINER=ALL clause without being preceded by an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE BEGIN statement.

Application common user operations include operations such as creating a common user with a CREATE USER statement or altering a common user with an ALTER USER statement. The database automatically names an implicit application APP$guid, where guid is the global unique ID of the application root. An implicit application is created when the application root is opened for the first time.

See Also:
"Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB" to learn more about implicitly created applications

2.3.6 Application Synchronization

Within an application PDB, synchronization is the user-initiated update of the application to the latest version and patch in the application root.

When an application is installed, upgraded, patched, or uninstalled in an application root, the changes do not automatically propagate to the application PDBs. You must synchronize the PDBs manually. When connected to an application PDB, you can synchronize one or more applications by issuing ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC.

2.3.6.1 Synchronization of a Single Application

If you specify one application name before SYNC, then the database synchronizes only the specified application.

The following statement, executed in an application PDB, synchronizes apexapp with the application PDB:

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION apexapp SYNC;

You can use the SYNC TO PATCH patchnum clause to synchronize the application to a specific patch number. This following statement synchronizes an application named saas_sales_app to patch 100 in the application PDB:

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC TO PATCH 100;
To synchronize the application to a specific application version, use `SYNC TO version`. This following statement synchronizes an application named `saas_sales_app` to version 2.0 in the application PDB:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC TO '2.0';
```

### 2.3.6.2 Synchronization of Multiple Applications

You can list multiple applications by name or specify the `ALL` keyword.

**Applications Specified by Name**

If you list multiple application names before `SYNC`, then the database synchronizes the specified applications. The following example synchronizes both `apexapp` and `ordsapp`:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION apexapp, ordsapp SYNC;
```

When specifying multiple applications by name, the `SYNC TO PATCH patchno` and `SYNC TO version` clauses are not supported.

**Applications Specified by ALL**

If you specify `ALL` `SYNC`, then the database synchronizes all applications, including those implicitly created. The following statement synchronizes all applications:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL SYNC;
```

You can synchronize all except a specified subset of applications, as in the following statement:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL EXCEPT apexapp, ordsapp SYNC;
```

When using `ALL`, the `SYNC TO PATCH patchno` and `SYNC TO version` clauses are not supported.

**Order of Replay During Synchronization**

When specifying multiple applications using `ALL` or a list of names, the replay order for application `BEGIN` and `END` blocks is the same as the capture order. Assume that you upgrade applications in the following order:

1. `apexapp` from 1.0 to 2.0
2. `ordsapp` from 1.0 to 2.0
3. `apexapp` from 2.0 to 3.0

The statement `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION apexapp, ordsapp SYNC` replays the statements in the same sequence. If objects in `apexapp` and `ordsapp` depend on one another, then the ordering of replay is important for functional correctness. Executing `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION apexapp SYNC` and then `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ordsapp SYNC` would replay statements in the following sequence:

1. `apexapp` from 1.0 to 2.0
2. `apexapp` from 2.0 to 3.0
3. `ordsapp` from 1.0 to 2.0

See Also:
"Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB"

### 2.3.7 Container Maps

A **container map** enables a session connected to application root to issue SQL statements that are routed to the appropriate PDB, depending on the value of a predicate used in the SQL statement.

A map table specifies a column in a metadata-linked common table, and uses partitions to associate different application PDBs with different column values. In this way, container maps enable the partitioning of data at the PDB level when the data is not physically partitioned at the table level.

The key components for using container maps are:

- **Metadata-linked table**
  This table is intended to be queried using the container map. For example, you might create a metadata-linked table named `countries_mlt` that stores different data in each application PDB. In `amer_pdb`, the `countries_mlt.cname` column stores North American country names; in `euro_pdb`, the `countries_mlt.cname` column stores European country names; and in `asia_pdb`, the `countries_mlt.cname` column stores Asian country names.

- **Map table**
  In the application root, you create a single-column map table partitioned by list, hash, or range. The map table enables the metadata-linked table to be queried using the partitioning strategy that is enabled by the container map. The names of the partitions in the map object table must match the names of the application PDBs in the application container.

  For example, the map table named `pdb_map_tbl` may partition by list on the `cname` column. The partitions named `amer_pdb`, `euro_pdb`, and `asia_pdb` correspond to the names of the application PDBs. The values in each partition are the names of the countries, for example, `PARTITION amer_pdb VALUES ('US','MEXICO','CANADA')`.

  Starting in Oracle Database 18c, for a `CONTAINERS()` query to use a map, the partitioning column in the map table does not need to match a column in the metadata-linked table. Assume that the table `sh.sales` is enabled for the container map `pdb_map_tbl`, and `cname` is the partitioning column for the map table. Even though `sh.sales` does not include a `cname` column, the map table routes the following query to the appropriate PDB: `SELECT * FROM CONTAINERS(sh.sales) WHERE cname = 'US' ORDER BY time_id`.

- **Container map**
  A container map is a database property that specifies a map table. To set the property, you connect to the application root and execute the `ALTER PLUGGABLE...`
Example 2-14 Creating a Metadata-Linked Table, Map Table, and Container Map: Part 1

In this example, you log in as an application administrator to the application root. Assume that an application container has three application PDBs: `amer_pdb`, `euro_pdb`, and `asia_pdb`. Each application PDB stores country names for a different region. A metadata-linked table named `oe.countries_mlt` has a `cname` column that stores the country name. For this partitioning strategy, you use partition by list to create a map object named `salesadm.pdb_map_tbl` that creates a partition for each region. The country name determines the region.

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app BEGIN INSTALL '1.0';

-- Create the metadata-linked table.
CREATE TABLE oe.countries_mlt SHARING=METADATA (region VARCHAR2(30),
cname VARCHAR2(30));

-- Create the partitioned map table, which is list partitioned on the
cname column. The names of the partitions are the names of the
application PDBs.
CREATE TABLE salesadm.pdb_map_tbl (cname VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL)
PARTITION BY LIST (cname) (
    PARTITION amer_pdb VALUES ('US','MEXICO','CANADA'),
    PARTITION euro_pdb VALUES ('UK','FRANCE','GERMANY'),
    PARTITION asia_pdb VALUES ('INDIA','CHINA','JAPAN'));

-- Set the CONTAINER_MAP database property to the map object.
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SET CONTAINER_MAP='salesadm.pdb_map_tbl';

-- Enable the container map for the metadata-linked table to be queried.
ALTER TABLE oe.countries_mlt ENABLE CONTAINER_MAP;

-- Ensure that the table to be queried is enabled for the
CONTAINERS clause.
ALTER TABLE oe.countries_mlt ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT;

-- End the application installation.
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app END INSTALL '1.0';
```

Note:
Although you create container maps using partitioning syntax, the database does not use partitioning functionality. Defining a container map does not require Oracle Partitioning.

In the preceding script, the `ALTER TABLE oe.countries_mlt ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` statement specifies that queries and DML statements issued in
the application root must use the CONTAINERS() clause by default for the database object.

**Example 2-15  Synchronizing the Application, and Adding Data: Part 2**

This example continues from the previous example. While connected to the application root, you switch the current container to each PDB in turn, synchronize the saas_sales_app application, and then add PDB-specific data to the oe.countries_mlt table.

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=amer_pdb;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC;
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('AMER','US');
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('AMER','MEXICO');
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('AMER','CANADA');
COMMIT;

ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=euro_pdb;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC;
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('EURO','UK');
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('EURO','FRANCE');
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('EURO','GERMANY');
COMMIT;

ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=asia_pdb;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC;
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('ASIA','INDIA');
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('ASIA','CHINA');
INSERT INTO oe.countries_mlt VALUES ('ASIA','JAPAN');
COMMIT;
```

**Example 2-16  Querying the Metadata-Linked Table: Part 3**

This example continues from the previous example. You connect to the application root, and then query oe.countries_mlt multiple times, specifying different countries in the WHERE clause. The query returns the correct value from the oe.countries_mlt.region column.

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=saas_sales_ac;
SELECT region FROM oe.countries_mlt WHERE cname='MEXICO';

REGION
-----
AMER

SELECT region FROM oe.countries_mlt WHERE cname='GERMANY';

REGION
-----
EURO

SELECT region FROM oe.countries_mlt WHERE cname='JAPAN';

REGION
```
2.4 Overview of Services in a CDB

Clients must connect to PDBs or application roots using services. A connection using a service name starts a new session in a PDB or application root. A foreground process, and therefore a session, at every moment of its lifetime, has a uniquely defined current container.

The following graphic shows two clients connecting to PDBs using two different listeners.

Figure 2-9 Services in a CDB
2.4.1 Service Creation in a CDB

When you execute the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create a PDB, the database automatically creates and starts a service inside the CDB.

The default service has a property that identifies the PDB as the initial current container for the service. The property is shown in the `DBA_SERVICES.PDB` column.

See Also: 
"Managing Services for PDBs"

2.4.1.1 Default Services in a CDB

The default service has the same name as the PDB. The PDB name must be a valid service name, which must be unique within the CDB.

When you create an application container, which requires specifying the `AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` clause, Oracle Database automatically creates a new default service for the application root. The service has the same name as the application container. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service. Similarly, every application PDB has its own default service name, and an application seed PDB has its own default service name.

Example 2-17  Switching to a PDB Using a Default Service

This example switches to the PDB names `salespdb` using the default service, which has the same name as the PDB:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = salespdb;
```

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Concepts* for information about service names
- "Managing Services for PDBs"

2.4.1.2 Nondefault Services in a CDB

You can create additional services for each PDB, up to a per-CDB maximum of 10,000. Each additional service denotes its PDB as the initial current container.

In Figure 2-9, nondefault services exist for `erppdb` and `hrpdb`. For example, in Figure 2-9 the PDB named `hrpdb` has a default service named `hrpdb`. The default service cannot be dropped.

When you switch to a container using `ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER`, the session uses the default service for the container. Optionally, you can use a different service for the container by specifying `SERVICE = service_name`, where `service_name` is the
name of the service. You might want to use a particular service so that the session can take advantage of its service attributes and features, such as service metrics, load balancing, Resource Manager settings, and so on.

Example 2-18  Switching to a PDB Using a Nondefault Service

In this example, the default service for hrpdb does not support all the service attributes and features such as service metrics, FAN, load balancing, Oracle Database Resource Manager, Transaction Guard, Application Continuity, and so on. You switch to a nondefault service as follows:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = hrpdb SERVICE = hrpdb_full;
```

2.4.2 Connections to Containers in a CDB

Typically, a CDB administrator must have appropriate privileges to provision PDBs and connect to various containers. CDB administrators are common users.

The CDB administrator can use either of the following techniques:

- Connect directly to a PDB or application root.
  The user requires the CREATE SESSION privilege in the container.

- Use the ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER statement, which is useful for both connection pooling and advanced CDB administration, to switch between containers. The syntax is
  
  `ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = container_name [SERVICE = service_name].`

  For example, a CDB administrator can connect to the root in one session, and then in the same session switch to a PDB. In this case, the user requires the SET CONTAINER system privilege in the container.

The following table describes a scenario involving the CDB in Figure 2-9. Each row describes an action that occurs after the action in the preceding row. Common user SYSTEM queries the name of the current container and the names of PDBs in the CDB.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; CONNECT SYSTEM@prod Enter password: ******** Connected.</td>
<td>The SYSTEM user, which is common to all containers in the CDB, connects to the root using service named prod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SHOW CON_NAME</td>
<td>SYSTEM uses the SQL*Plus command SHOW CON_NAME to list the name of the container to which the user is currently connected. CDB$ROOT is the name of the root container.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2-8  (Cont.) Services in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT NAME, PDB FROM V$SERVICES 2 ORDER BY PDB, NAME;</td>
<td>A query of V$SERVICES shows that three PDBs exist with service names that match the PDB name. Both hrpdb and erppdb have an additional service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAME</td>
<td>PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS$BACKGROUND</td>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYS$USERS</td>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prod.example.com</td>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erpppdb.example.com</td>
<td>ERPPDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erp.example.com</td>
<td>ERPPDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hr.example.com</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrpdb.example.com</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salespdb.example.com</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 rows selected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = hrpdb;</td>
<td>SYSTEM uses ALTER SESSION to connect to hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Session altered.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL&gt; SELECT SYS_CONTEXT 2 ('USERENV', 'CON_NAME') 3 AS CUR_CONTAINER FROM DUAL;</td>
<td>A query confirms that the current container is now hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUR_CONTAINER</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.5 Overview of Tablespaces and Database Files in a CDB

In a CDB, each PDB and application root has its own set of tablespaces, including its own SYSTEM, SYSAUX, and undo tablespaces.

A CDB contains the following files:
• One control file
• One online redo log
• One or more undo tablespaces

Only a common user who has the appropriate privileges and whose current container is the CDB root can create an undo tablespace. At any given time, a CDB is either in either of the following undo modes:

– Local undo mode

   In this case, each PDB has its own undo tablespace. If a CDB is using local undo mode, then the database automatically creates an undo tablespace in every PDB. Local undo provides advantages such as the ability to perform a hot clone of a PDB, and relocate PDBs quickly. Also, local undo provides level of isolation and enables faster unplug and point-in-time recovery operations.

   A local undo tablespace is required for each node in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) cluster in which the PDB is open. For example, if you move a PDB from a two-node cluster to a four-node cluster, and if the PDB is open in all nodes, then the database automatically creates the additional required undo tablespaces. If you move the PDB back again, then you can drop the redundant undo tablespaces.

   ![Note:

   By default, Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) creates new CDBs with local undo enabled.]

– Shared undo mode

   In a single-instance CDB, only one active undo tablespace exists. For an Oracle RAC CDB, one active undo tablespace exists for every instance. All undo tablespaces are visible in the data dictionaries and related views of all containers.

   The undo mode applies to the entire CDB, which means that either every container uses shared undo, or every container uses local undo. You can switch between undo modes in a CDB, which necessitates re-starting the database.

• **SYSTEM and SYSAUX tablespaces for every container**

   The CDB root, each application root, and each PDB has its own **SYSTEM and SYSAUX** tablespaces. Each container also has its own set of dictionary tables describing the objects that reside in the container.

• **Zero or more user-created tablespaces**

   In a typical use case, each PDB has its own set of non-system tablespaces. These tablespaces contain the data for user-defined schemas and objects in the PDB. You can limit the amount of storage used by the data files for a PDB by using the **STORAGE clause in a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE or ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.**

   The storage of the data dictionary within the PDB enables it to be portable. You can unplug a PDB from a CDB, and plug it in to a different CDB.

• **A set of temp files for every container**
One default temporary tablespace exists for the CDB root, and one for each application root, application PDB, and PDB.

Example 2-19  CDB in Local Undo Mode

This example shows aspects of the physical storage architecture of a CDB with two PDBs: hrpdb and salespdb. In this example, the database uses local undo mode, and so has undo data files in the CDB root, hrpdb, and salespdb.

Figure 2-10  Physical Architecture of a CDB in Local Undo Mode

See Also:

- "Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB"
- "After Creating a CDB" to learn about the state of a CDB after creation

2.6 Overview of Availability in a CDB

Oracle Database provides availability features for individual PDBs and for the CDB itself.

2.6.1 Overview of Backup and Recovery in a CDB

RMAN and Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control provide full support for backup and recovery of CDBs and PDBs.

You can back up and recover a whole CDB, the root only, or one or more PDBs. You can also back up and recover individual tablespaces and data files within a PDB.
From the perspective of recovery, separately backing up the root and all PDBs is equivalent to backing up the whole CDB. The main difference is in the number of RMAN commands that you must enter and the time to recover. Recovering a whole CDB requires less time than recovering the CDB root plus all PDBs.

You can perform complete recovery of one or more PDBs without affecting operations of other open PDBs. RMAN also provides support for point-in-time recovery at the PDB level.

See Also:

*Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* to learn about the state of a CDB after creation

2.6.2 Overview of Flashback PDB

You can rewind a PDB using the `FLASHBACK PLUGGABLE DATABASE` command in SQL or Recovery Manager.

Flashback PDB protects an individual PDB against data corruption, widespread user errors, and redo corruption. The operation does not rewind data in other PDBs in the CDB.

You can use `CREATE RESTORE POINT ... FOR PLUGGABLE DATABASE` to create a *PDB restore point*, which is only usable within a specified PDB. As with CDB restore points, PDB restore points can be normal or guaranteed. A guaranteed restore point never ages out of the control file and must be explicitly dropped. If you connect to the root, and if you do not specify the `FOR PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clause, then you create a *CDB restore point*, which is usable by all PDBs.

A special type of PDB restore point is a *clean restore point*, which you can only create when a PDB is closed. For PDBs with shared undo, rewinding the PDB to a clean restore point preserves database consistency and improves performance. The database avoids using the automatic infrastructure, which can reduce performance.

See Also:

*Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* to learn about using `FLASHBACK PLUGGABLE DATABASE`

2.7 Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a CDB

Using Oracle Resource Manager (Resource Manager), you can create CDB resource plans and set initialization parameters to allocate resources to PDBs.

In a CDB, multiple workloads within multiple PDBs can complete for system and CDB resources. Resource Manager can manage resources on two levels: CDB and PDB.
CDB Resource Plans

A CDB resource plan allocates resources to its PDBs according to its set of resource plan directives (directives). A parent-child relationship exists between a CDB resource plan and its directives. Each resource plan directive references either a set of PDBs or an individual PDB.

A performance profile specifies shares of system resources for a set of PDBs. PDB performance profiles enable you to manage resources for large numbers of PDBs by specifying Resource Manager directives for profiles instead of individual PDBs.

The directives control allocation of CPU and parallel execution servers. A directive can control the allocation of resources to PDBs based on the share value that you specify for each PDB or PDB performance profile. A higher share value results in more guaranteed resources. For PDBs and PDB performance profiles, you can also set utilization limits for CPU and parallel servers.

You can create a CDB resource plan by using the `CREATE_CDB_PLAN` procedure in the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER` PL/SQL package, and set a CDB resource plan using the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` parameter. You create directives for a CDB resource plan by using the `CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure.

PDB Resource Plans

A CDB resource plan allocates a portion of the system resources to a PDB. A PDB resource plan determines how this portion is allocated within the PDB.

You can create a PDB resource plan by using the `CREATE_PLAN` procedure in the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER` PL/SQL package, and set a PDB resource plan using the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` parameter. You create directives for a PDB resource plan by using the `CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure.

PDB-Level Memory Controls

In a CDB, PDBs may contend for SGA or PGA memory. Several initialization parameters can control the memory usage of a PDB, either guaranteeing memory or limiting memory. When you set the following initialization parameters with the PDB as the current container, the parameters control the memory usage of the current PDB.

Examples of important parameters include:

- `SGA_MIN_SIZE` sets the minimum guaranteed SGA size of the PDB.
- `SGA_TARGET` specifies the maximum SGA that the PDB can use at any time.
- `PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT` sets the maximum PGA that the PDB can use at any time.

PDB-Level I/O Controls

Intensive disk I/O can cause poor performance. Several factors can result in excess disk I/O, such as poorly designed SQL or index and table scans in high-volume transactions. If one PDB generates excessive disk I/O, then it can degrade the performance of other PDBs in the same CDB.

On non-Engineered Systems, use one or both of the following initialization parameters to limit the I/O generated by a particular PDB:

- `MAX_IOPS` limits the number of I/O operations for each second.
• **MAX_MBPS** limits the MB/s for I/O operations.

For Engineered Systems, manage PDB I/Os with I/O Resource Management.

---

**See Also:**

- "Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU"
- *Oracle Database Reference* to learn more about `DB_CACHE_SIZE` and other initialization parameters
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* to learn more about the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER` package
- *Oracle Exadata Storage Server Software User's Guide* to learn more about I/O Resource Management
Part II
Creating and Configuring a Multitenant Environment

You can create and configure a multitenant environment.
Overview of Configuring and Managing a Multitenant Environment

Become familiar with basic concepts related to configuring and managing a multitenant environment.

3.1 About Configuring and Managing a Multitenant Environment

You can use the Oracle Multitenant option to configure and manage a multitenant environment.

You must meet certain prerequisites before configuring and managing a multitenant environment. To do so, you complete some common tasks and use a set of tools to complete those tasks.

The multitenant architecture enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB) that includes zero, one, or many customer-created pluggable databases (PDBs). A PDB is a portable collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects that appears to an Oracle Net client as a separate database.

See Also:

- "Introduction to the Multitenant Architecture"
- "Overview of the Multitenant Architecture"

3.1.1 Common Users and Local Users

A common user is a user that has the same identity in the root and in every existing and future PDB.

A common user can log in to the root and any container in which it has been granted CREATE SESSION privilege. The operations that a common user can perform depend on the privileges granted to the common user. Some administrative tasks, such as creating a PDB or unplugging a PDB, must be performed by a common user.

A CDB also supports local users. A local user is a user that exists in exactly one PDB.
3.1.2 Separation of Duties in CDB and PDB Administration

Some database administrators manage an entire CDB, while others manage individual PDBs.

DBAs who manage an entire CDB connect to the CDB as common users, and manage attributes of the entire CDB and the root, as well as some attributes of PDBs. For example, these CDB DBAs can create, unplug, plug in, and drop PDBs. They can also specify the temporary tablespace and the default tablespace for the CDB root, and they can change the open mode of PDBs.

DBAs can also connect to a specific PDB as a local PDB administrator. The PDB DBA performs tasks required for the PDB to support an application. For example, tasks can include management of tablespaces and schemas in a PDB, specification of storage parameters for that PDB, changing the open mode of the current PDB, and setting PDB-level initialization parameters.

3.2 Prerequisites for a Multitenant Environment

Prerequisites must be met for a multitenant environment.

The following minimum prerequisites must be met before you can create and use a multitenant environment:

- Install or upgrade to Oracle Database 12c or later releases. Oracle Multitenant is not support in Oracle Database 11g and earlier releases.
  The installation includes setting various environment variables unique to your operating system and establishing the directory structure for software and database files.
- Set the database compatibility level to 12.0.0 or later.

3.3 Tasks and Tools for a Multitenant Environment

There are common tasks you perform for a multitenant environment, and you use tools to complete the tasks.
3.3.1 Tasks for a Multitenant Environment

A multitenant environment enables you to achieve several goals. You can complete general tasks to configure and use a multitenant environment.

These goals are described in "Benefits of the Multitenant Architecture". To do so, you must complete the following general tasks:

**Task 1 Plan for the Multitenant Environment**
Creating and configuring any database requires careful planning. A CDB requires special considerations. For example, consider the following factors when you plan for a CDB:

- The number of PDBs that will be plugged into each CDB
- The resources required to support the planned CDB
- Container management policies executed as an aggregate on the entire CDB or executed locally on individual PDBs
- Container database topology, which could consist of application containers with application PDBs or a CDB with PDBs, or a combination of both

See "Planning for CDB Creation" for detailed information about planning for a CDB.

**Task 2 Create One or More CDBs**
When you have completed the necessary planning, you can create one or more CDBs using either the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) or the `CREATE DATABASE` statement. In either case, you must specify the configuration details for each CDB. See “About CDB Creation with DBCA” and “Creating a CDB” for detailed information about creating a CDB.

After a CDB is created, it consists of the root and PDB$SEED, as shown in Figure 3-1. The CDB root contains only Oracle maintained objects and data structures, and PDB$SEED is a generic seed database for cloning purposes.

---

**Figure 3-1  A Newly Created CDB**

![Diagram of a newly created CDB with CDB, Root (CDB$ROOT), and Seed (PDB$SEED)]
Task 3 Optionally, Create Application Containers
An application container is an optional component of a CDB that consists of an application root and the application PDBs associated with it. An application container stores data for one or more applications. The following graphic shows a CDB with one empty application container.

Figure 3-2  An Application Container

See "Overview of Applications in an Application Container".

Task 4 Create, Plug In, and Unplug PDBs
PDBs contain user data. After creating a CDB, you can create PDBs, plug unplugged PDBs into it, and unplug PDBs from it whenever necessary. You can unplug a PDB from a CDB and plug this PDB into a different CDB. You might move a PDB from one CDB to another if, for example, you want to move the workload for the PDB from one server to another.

See "Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers" for information about creating PDBs, plugging in PDBs, and unplugging PDBs.

Figure 3-3 shows a CDB with several PDBs.

Figure 3-3  A CDB with PDBs
Figure 3-4 shows a CDB with PDBs, application containers, and application PDBs.

Figure 3-4   A CDB with PDBs, Application Containers, and Application PDBs

Task 5 Administer and Monitor the CDB and Application Containers
Administering and monitoring a CDB involves managing the entire CDB, the CDB root, and some attributes of PDBs. Administering and monitoring an application container is similar to administering and monitoring a CDB, but your actions only affect the application root and the application PDBs that are part of the application container.

See "After Creating a CDB" for descriptions of tasks that are similar and tasks that are different. Also, see "Administering a CDB" and "Monitoring CDBs and PDBs".

You can use Oracle Resource Manager to allocate and manage resources among PDBs hosted in a CDB, and you can use it to allocate and manage resource use among user processes within a PDB. See "Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU".

You can also use Oracle Scheduler to schedule jobs in a CDB and in individual PDBs. See "Using Oracle Scheduler with a CDB".

Task 6 Administer and Monitor PDBs and Application PDBs
See "Administering PDBs" and "Monitoring CDBs and PDBs".

3.3.2 Tools for a Multitenant Environment

You can use various tools to configure and administer a multitenant environment.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL*Plus</td>
<td>SQL<em>Plus is a command-line tool that enables you to create, manage, and monitor CDBs and PDBs. You use SQL statements and Oracle-supplied PL/SQL packages to complete these tasks in SQL</em>Plus.</td>
<td>SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA)</td>
<td>DBCA is a utility with a graphical user interface that enables you to create and duplicate CDBs. It also enables you to create, relocate, clone, plug in, and unplug PDBs.</td>
<td>Oracle Database 2 Day DBA, Oracle Database Installation Guide, and the DBCA online help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control</td>
<td>Cloud Control is a system management tool with a graphical user interface that enables you to manage and monitor a CDB and its PDBs.</td>
<td>Cloud Control online help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle SQL Developer</td>
<td>Oracle SQL Developer is a client application with a graphical user interface that enables you to configure a CDB, create PDBs, plug and unplug PDBs, modify the state of a PDB, clone a PDB to the Oracle Cloud, hot clone/refresh a PDB, relocate a PDB between application roots, and more. Additionally, Oracle SQL Developer has graphical interfaces for resource management, storage, security, configuration, and reporting of performance metrics on containers and pluggable databases in a CDB.</td>
<td>Oracle SQL Developer User's Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Server Control (SRVCTL) utility</td>
<td>The SRVCTL utility can create and manage services for PDBs.</td>
<td>&quot;Managing Services for PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EM Express</td>
<td>EM Express is a management and monitoring tool with a graphical user interface which ships with Oracle Database. It can be configured for the CDB, individual hosted PDBs, or both. This tool is intended for PDB administrative use, in the context of the PDB, to manage and monitor application development as an application DBA.</td>
<td>Oracle Database 2 Day DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oracle Multitenant Self-Service Provisioning application</td>
<td>This application enables the self-service provisioning of PDBs. CDB administrators control access to this self-service application and manage quotas on PDBs.</td>
<td><a href="http://www.oracle.com/goto/multitenant">http://www.oracle.com/goto/multitenant</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>To access the application, click the Downloads tab, and select Oracle Pluggable Database Self-Service Provisioning application in the Downloads for Oracle Multitenant section.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3-1   Tools for a Multitenant Environment
Creating and Configuring a CDB

Creating and configuring a multitenant container database (CDB) includes tasks such as planning, creating the CDB, and optionally configuring EM Express.

4.1 About Creating a CDB

You can create the CDB either during or after Oracle Database software installation. The following are typical reasons to create a CDB after installation:

- You used Oracle Universal Installer (OUI) to install software only, and did not create a CDB.
- You want to create another CDB on the same host as an existing CDB. In this case, this chapter assumes that the new CDB uses the same Oracle home as the existing database. You can also create the CDB in a new Oracle home by running OUI again.

The specific methods for creating a CDB are:

- With the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA), a graphical tool. See “About CDB Creation with DBCA”.
- With the `CREATE DATABASE` SQL statement. See “Creating a CDB”.

See Also:

- "Planning for CDB Creation"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide

4.2 Planning for CDB Creation

CDB creation prepares several operating system files to work together as a CDB.

Note:

Before planning for CDBs, review the conceptual information about CDBs and PDBs in "Introduction to the Multitenant Architecture".
4.2.1 Decide How to Configure the CDB

Prepare to create the CDB by research and careful planning.

The following sections describe recommended actions and considerations that apply to CDBs:

4.2.1.1 Plan the PDBs

Plan the tables and indexes for the pluggable databases (PDBs) and estimate the amount of space they require.

In a CDB, most user data resides in the PDBs. The root contains no user data or minimal user data. Plan for the PDBs that will be part of the CDB. The disk storage space requirement for a CDB is the space required for the Oracle Database installation plus the sum of the space requirements for all PDBs that will be part of the CDB.

The \texttt{MAX_PDBS} initialization parameter specifies a limit on the total number of PDBs that you can create in a CDB root or application root. The default value and maximum value for \texttt{MAX_PDBS} depend on your Oracle Database offering. See \textit{Oracle Database Licensing Information User Manual} for details on which features are supported for different editions and services.

You can also create application containers in a CDB. An application container is a collection of application PDBs that store the data for one or more applications. In addition, application containers support user-created application common objects that can be shared by the application PDBs in the application container.

\textbf{See Also:}

- "Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers"
- "Overview of Applications in an Application Container"
- \textit{Oracle Database Administrator's Guide} to learn more about database structure and storage and schema objects
- \textit{Oracle Database Reference} to learn more about \texttt{MAX_PDBS}

4.2.1.2 Plan the Physical Layout

Plan the layout of the underlying operating system files your CDB will comprise.

There are separate data files for the CDB root, \texttt{PDB$SEED}, each PDB, each application root, and each application PDB.

There is one redo log for a single-instance CDB, or one redo log for each instance of an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) CDB. Also, for Oracle RAC, all data files and redo log files must be on shared storage.
4.2.1.3 Learn How to Manage Initialization Parameters

Familiarize yourself with the initialization parameters that can be included in an initialization parameter file.

Before creating a CDB, ensure that you are familiar with the concept and operation of a server parameter file (SPFILE). An SPFILE file lets you store and manage your initialization parameters persistently in a server-side binary file.

A CDB uses a single SPFILE or a single text initialization parameter file (PFILE). Values of initialization parameters set for the root can be inherited by PDBs. You can set some initialization parameters for a PDB by using the `ALTER SYSTEM` statement.

The CDB root must be the current container when you operate on an SPFILE. The user who creates or modifies the SPFILE must be a common user with `SYSDBA`, `SYSOPER`, or `SYSBACKUP` administrative privilege, and the user must exercise the privilege by connecting as `SYSDBA`, `SYSOPER`, or `SYSBACKUP` respectively.

The following initialization parameters are important:

- To create a CDB, the `ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE` initialization parameter must be set to `TRUE`.

- Create the global database name for the CDB root by setting both the `DB_NAME` and `DB_DOMAIN` initialization parameters. The global database name of the root is the global database name of the CDB. The global database name of a PDB is defined by the PDB name and the `DB_DOMAIN` initialization parameter.
4.2.1.4 Select the Character Set

You must choose a character set for the CDB.

When selecting the database character set for the CDB, you must consider the current character sets of the databases that you want to consolidate (plug) into this CDB. Oracle recommends AL32UTF8 for the CDB database character set and AL16UTF6 for the CDB national character set because they provide the most flexibility.

When the character set of the CDB root is AL32UTF8, PDBs that are plugged into the CDB can have a different character set from the CDB root. PDBs that are created from PDB$SEED inherit the AL32UTF8 character set from it, but you can migrate the PDB to a different character set. When the character set of the root is not AL32UTF8, all PDBs in the CDB use the character set of the CDB root.

**Note:**

Oracle Multitenant does not support a LOB in one container from being accessed by a container with a different character set using data links, extended data links, or the CONTAINERS() clause. For example, if the CDB root and salespdb have different character sets, then a CONTAINERS() query run in the CDB root should not access LOBs stored in salespdb.

When upgrading a non-CDB to a PDB, it is best to migrate the non-CDB to AL32UTF8 first. You can use Oracle Database Migration Assistant for Unicode (DMU) to migrate a non-CDB to AL32UTF8. After a CDB is created, you cannot migrate the character set of the CDB using DMU.
4.2.1.5 Decide Which Time Zones to Support

Consider which time zones your CDB must support. You can set the time zones for the entire CDB (including all PDBs). You can also set the time zones individually for each PDB.

See Also:

*Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about specifying the database time zone and time zone file

4.2.1.6 Select the Database and Redo Log Block Sizes

Select the standard database block size for the CDB. This is specified at CDB creation by the `DB_BLOCK_SIZE` initialization parameter and cannot be changed after the CDB is created. The standard block size applies to the entire CDB.

If you plan to store online redo log files on disks with a 4K byte sector size, then determine whether you must manually specify the online redo log block size.

- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about specifying database block sizes
- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about planning the block size of redo log files

4.2.1.7 Plan the SYSTEM and SYSAUX Tablespaces

There is a separate SYSAUX and SYSTEM tablespace for the CDB root and for each PDB. You must determine the appropriate initial sizing for the SYSAUX tablespace. Also, plan to use a default tablespace for non-SYSTEM users to prevent inadvertently saving database objects in the SYSTEM tablespace. You can specify a separate default tablespace for the CDB root and for each PDB.

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about the SYSAUX tablespace
- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about creating a default permanent tablespace
- “About Container Modification When Connected to CDB Root”
4.2.1.8 Plan the Temporary Tablespaces

Plan to use default temporary tablespaces.

A default temporary tablespace exists for every container in the CDB. Therefore, the CDB root and every PDB, application root, and application PDB has its own default temporary tablespace.

Oracle Database uses the shared temporary tablespace for recursive SQL only. Hosted PDB tenants do not use this tablespace directly.

See Also:

- "About Container Modification When Connected to CDB Root"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about creating a default temporary tablespace

4.2.1.9 Choose the Undo Mode

Plan to use an undo tablespace to manage your undo data.

A CDB can run in different undo modes. You can configure a CDB to have one active undo tablespace for the entire CDB or a separate undo tablespace for each container in the CDB. You can specify the undo mode during CDB creation, and you can change the undo mode after the CDB is created.

When you choose to have one active undo tablespace for the entire CDB, shared undo is used, and local undo is disabled. In this configuration, there is one active undo tablespace for a single-instance CDB. When local undo is enabled, there is one undo tablespace for each container in a single instance configuration. For an Oracle RAC CDB, each PDB has one undo tablespace in each node in which it is open. With shared undo, only a common user who has the appropriate privileges and whose current container is the root can create an undo tablespace.

The best practice is to use local undo for a CDB. Shared undo is supported primarily for upgrade and transitional purposes only. Although there is minor overhead associated with local undo when compared with shared undo, the benefits of local undo make it preferable in most environments. Local undo makes unplug operations and point in time recovery faster, and it is required for some features, such as relocating a PDB. By default, DBCA creates new CDBs with local undo enabled.

In a CDB, the UNDO_MANAGEMENT initialization parameter must be set to AUTO, and an undo tablespace is required to manage the undo data.

When local undo is not enabled, undo tablespaces are visible in static data dictionary views and dynamic performance (V$) views when the current container is the root. Undo tablespaces are visible only in dynamic performance views when the current container is a PDB.

Also, when local undo is disabled, Oracle Database silently ignores undo tablespace and rollback segment operations when the current container is a PDB.
4.2.1.10 Plan the Services for Your Application

Plan for the database services required to meet the needs of your applications.

The root and each PDB might require several services. You can create services for the root or for individual PDBs.

Database services have an optional PDB property. You can create services and associate them with a particular PDB by specifying the PDB property. Services with a null PDB property are associated with the CDB root.

You can also use the DBMS_SERVICE supplied PL/SQL package to create services and associate them with PDBs. When you run CREATE_SERVICE procedure, the service is associated with the current container.

You can manage services with the SRVCTL utility, Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control, and the DBMS_SERVICE supplied PL/SQL package.

When you create a PDB, a new default service for the PDB is created automatically. The service has the same name as the PDB. You cannot manage this service with the SRVCTL utility. However, you can create user-defined services and customize them for your applications.

See Also:
- "Managing Services for PDBs"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide to learn about database services and using SRVCTL with a single-instance database
- Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide for information about using the SRVCTL utility with an Oracle RAC database

4.2.1.11 Learn How to Start Up and Shut Down a CDB

Familiarize yourself with the principles and options of starting up and shutting down a database instance and mounting and opening a CDB.

In a CDB, the CDB root and all containers share a single database instance, or, when using Oracle RAC, multiple concurrent instances. You can start up and shut down an entire CDB, which in turn determines the state of hosted PDBs. When the CDB is open, you can control the open mode of PDBs by using either an ALTER PLUGGABLE
DATABASE statement in the context of the CDB or PDB to open or close hosted PDBs. To maintain backward compatibility, ALTER DATABASE OPEN and ALTER DATABASE CLOSE statements are supported when they are executed and a PDB is the current container. You can also use the SQL*Plus STARTUP command and the SQL*Plus SHUTDOWN command when a PDB is the current container. However, the SQL*Plus STARTUP MOUNT command is a CDB-only operation and cannot be used when a PDB is the current container.

See Also:
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
- "Modifying a PDB with the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE Statement"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about starting up a database

4.2.1.12 Plan for Oracle RAC

If you plan to use Oracle RAC, then plan for an Oracle RAC environment.

The Oracle RAC documentation describes special considerations for a CDB in an Oracle RAC environment. See your platform-specific Oracle RAC installation guide for information about creating a CDB in an Oracle RAC environment.

See Also:
Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide

4.2.2 Prerequisites for CDB Creation

You must complete prerequisites before creating a new CDB.

Before you can create a new CDB, the following prerequisites must be met:

- Ensure that the prerequisites described in "Prerequisites for a Multitenant Environment" are met.
- Sufficient memory must be available to start the Oracle Database instance. Size the memory required by a CDB to accommodate the workload of each of its containers and the number of containers.
- Sufficient disk storage space must be available for the planned PDBs on the computer that runs Oracle Database. In an Oracle RAC environment, sufficient shared storage must be available.
  The disk storage space required by a CDB is the sum of the space requirements for all PDBs that will reside in the CDB.

These prerequisites are discussed in the Oracle Database Installation Guide or Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation and Upgrade Guide specific to your operating system. If you use the Oracle Universal Installer, then it will guide you through your installation
and provide help in setting environment variables and establishing directory structure and authorizations.

4.3 Creating a CDB

You can create a CDB using DBCA or by manually issuing the CREATE DATABASE SQL statement.

> **Note:**

Oracle strongly recommends using the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) template deployment instead of the CREATE DATABASE SQL statement to create a CDB, because using DBCA is a more automated approach, and your CDB is ready to use when DBCA completes.

4.3.1 About CDB Creation with DBCA

Oracle strongly recommends using the Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) to create a CDB.

DBCA offers the following advantages over alternative techniques:

- Creation is largely automated.
- DBCA enables you to specify the number of PDBs in the CDB when it is created.
- When DBCA completes, the CDB is ready to use.
- After a CDB is created, you can use DBCA to do the following:
  - Clone local PDBs
  - Plug in and unplug PDBs
  - Duplicate a CDB (silent mode only)

Depending on the type of install that you select, Oracle Universal Installer (OUI) can launch DBCA. You can also launch DBCA as a standalone tool at any time after Oracle Database installation.

You can use DBCA to create a CDB in either of the following modes:

- Interactive mode
  This mode provides a graphical interface and guided workflow for creating and configuring a CDB.
- Noninteractive mode (also called *silent mode*)
  This mode enables you to script a preconfigured CDB template deployment with customized PDB seed databases that are suitable for cloning. Run DBCA in silent mode by specifying command-line arguments, a response file, or both.
See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* to learn how to create a database with DBCA
- *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA*
- The DBCA online help

### 4.3.2 About CDB Creation with SQL Statements

This section describes additional requirements for creating a CDB.

To create a CDB using `CREATE DATABASE`, you must meet the following requirements:

- The `ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE` initialization parameter must be set to `true`.
- The names and locations of files for `PDB$SEED` and the CDB root must be set by using Oracle Managed Files (OMF), the `SEED_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause, or the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter.

**Note:**

Using the `CREATE DATABASE` SQL statement is a more manual approach to creating a CDB than using DBCA.

See Also:

*Oracle Database Concepts* for information about the files in a CDB

#### 4.3.2.1 About Enabling PDBs

To create a CDB with the `CREATE DATABASE` command, the `ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE` initialization parameter must be set to `true`.

The `CREATE DATABASE` command creates a CDB with the CDB root and `PDB$SEED`. You must create all other containers manually.

#### 4.3.2.2 About the Names and Locations of Files for the CDB Root and PDB$SEED

To create the CDB, Oracle Database must know the names and locations of the files for the CDB root and `PDB$SEED`.

After the `CREATE DATABASE` statement completes successfully, you can use `PDB$SEED` and its files to create new PDBs. You cannot modify the PDB seed after it is created.

You must specify the names and locations of the files for `PDB$SEED` in one of the following ways:
1. The `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause of `CREATE DATABASE`

2. Oracle Managed Files

3. The `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter

If you use more than one technique, then the `CREATE DATABASE` statement uses one technique in the order of precedence of the list. For example, if you use all techniques, then the `CREATE DATABASE` statement only uses the specifications in the `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause because it is first in the list.

See Also:
"Creating a PDB from Scratch"

4.3.2.2.1 The `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` Clause

The `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause of the `CREATE DATABASE` statement specifies how to generate the names of the PDB$SEED files using the names of the CDB root files.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:

- One or more file name patterns and replacement file name patterns, in the following form:

  `'string1' , 'string2' , 'string3' , 'string4' , ...`

  The `string2` file name pattern replaces the `string1` file name pattern, and the `string4` file name pattern replaces the `string3` file name pattern. You can use as many pairs of file name pattern and replacement file name pattern strings as required.

  If you specify an odd number of strings (the last string has no corresponding replacement string), then an error is returned. Do not specify more than one pattern/replacement string that matches a single file name or directory.

  File name patterns cannot match files or directories managed by Oracle Managed Files.

- `NONE` when no file names should be converted. Omitting the `SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause is the same as specifying `NONE`.

Example 4-1  `SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` Clause

This `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause generates file names for the PDB$SEED files in the `/oracle/pdbseed/` directory using file names in the `/oracle/dbs/` directory.

`ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/oracle/dbs/','/oracle/pdbseed/')`
4.3.2.2 Oracle Managed Files

When Oracle Managed Files is enabled, it can determine the names and locations of the PDB$SEED files.

4.3.2.2.3 The PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT Initialization Parameter

The PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter can specify the names and locations of the seed's files.

To use this technique, ensure that the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is included in the initialization parameter file when you create the CDB.

File name patterns specified in this initialization parameter cannot match files or directories managed by Oracle Managed Files.

4.3.2.3 About the Attributes of the Data Files for PDB$SEED

You can use the PDB seed (PDB$SEED) as a template to create new containers.

The attributes of the data files for the CDB root SYSTEM and SYSAUX tablespaces might not be suitable for the PDB seed. In this case, you can specify different attributes for the PDB seed data files by using the tablespace_datafile clauses. Use these clauses to specify attributes for all data files comprising the SYSTEM and SYSAUX tablespaces in the PDB seed. The values inherited from the root are used for any attributes whose values have not been provided.

The syntax of the tablespace_datafile clauses is the same as the syntax for a data file specification, excluding the name and location of the data file and the REUSE attribute. You can use the tablespace_datafile clauses with any of the methods for specifying the names and locations of the PDB seed's data files described in "About the Names and Locations of Files for the CDB Root and PDB$SEED".

The tablespace_datafile clauses do not specify the names and locations of the PDB seed's data files. Instead, they specify the attributes of SYSTEM and SYSAUX data files in
the PDB seed that differ from those in the root. If SIZE is not specified in the *tablespace_datafile* clause for a tablespace, then data file size for the tablespace is set to a predetermined fraction of the size of a corresponding root data file.

**Example 4-2 Using the *tablespace_datafile* Clauses**

Assume the following CREATE DATABASE clauses specify the names, locations, and attributes of the data files that comprise the SYSTEM and SYSAUX tablespaces in the root.

```
DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/system01.dbf'
    SIZE 325M REUSE
SYSAUX DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/sysaux01.dbf'
    SIZE 325M REUSE
```

You can use the following *tablespace_datafile* clauses to specify different attributes for these data files:

```
SEED
    SYSTEM DATAFILES
        SIZE 125M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10M MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
    SYSAUX DATAFILES
        SIZE 100M
```

In this example, the data files for the PDB seed's SYSTEM and SYSAUX tablespaces inherit the REUSE attribute from the root's data files. However, the following attributes of the PDB seed's data files differ from the root's:

- The data file for the SYSTEM tablespace is 125 MB for the PDB seed and 325 MB for the root.
- AUTOEXTEND is enabled for the PDB seed's SYSTEM data file, and it is disabled by default for the root's SYSTEM data file.
- The data file for the SYSAUX tablespace is 100 MB for the PDB seed and 325 MB for the root.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about data file specifications

### 4.3.2.4 About the CDB Undo Mode

Shared undo is the default. You can use the *undo_mode_clause* to an *ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE* clause to specify the undo mode of the CDB.

The *undo_mode_clause* specifies whether the CDB undo mode is local or shared. Local undo mode means that every container in the CDB uses local undo. To configure local undo mode for the CDB, specify *LOCAL UNDO ON*.

Shared undo mode means that there is one active undo tablespace for a single-instance CDB, or for an Oracle RAC CDB, there is one active undo tablespace for
each instance. To configure shared undo mode for the CDB, either do not specify
undo_mode_clause, or specify LOCAL UNDO OFF.

4.3.3 Creating a CDB with the CREATE DATABASE Statement

When you use the CREATE DATABASE statement to create a CDB, you must complete
additional actions before you have an operational CDB.

These actions include building views on the data dictionary tables and installing
standard PL/SQL packages in the root. Perform these actions by running the supplied
catcdb.sql script, which installs all components required by a CDB.

Prerequisites

Note the following prerequisites:

• The instructions in this section apply to single-instance database installations only.
  See the Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) installation guide for your
  platform for instructions for creating an Oracle RAC CDB.

• If you are using Oracle ASM to manage your disk storage, then you must start the
  Oracle ASM instance and configure your disk groups before performing these
  steps.

• The ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE initialization parameter must be set to true.

To create a CDB with the CREATE DATABASE statement:

1. Complete steps 1 - 8 in the “Creating a Database with the CREATE DATABASE
   Statement” topic in Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide.

   In a CDB, the DB_NAME initialization parameter specifies the name of the root. Also,
   it is common practice to set the SID to the name of the root. The maximum
   number of characters for this name is 30. For more information, see the discussion
   of the DB_NAME initialization parameter in Oracle Database Reference.

2. Use the CREATE DATABASE statement to create a new CDB.

   See the examples in "Creating a CDB Using Oracle Managed Files: Example" and
   "Creating a CDB Without Using Oracle Managed Files".

   Tip:
   If your CREATE DATABASE statement fails, and if you did not complete
   Step 7 in the “Creating a Database with the CREATE DATABASE Statement”
   topic in Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide, then ensure that there is
   not a preexisting server parameter file (SPFILE) for this instance that is
   setting initialization parameters in an unexpected way. For example, an
   SPFILE contains a setting for the complete path to all control files, and
   the CREATE DATABASE statement fails if those control files do not exist.
   Ensure that you shut down and restart the instance (with STARTUP
   NOMOUNT) after removing an unwanted SPFILE.

3. Run the catcdb.sql SQL script.
Enter the following in SQL*Plus to run the script:

@?/rdbms/admin/catcdb.sql

4. When prompted by the script, enter the log file directory for parameter 1 and the log file name for parameter 2.

For following example enters /tmp for the first prompt and create_cdb.log for the second prompt:

SQL> host perl -I &&rdbms_admin &&rdbms_admin_catcdb --logDirectory &&1 --logFilename &&2
Enter value for 1: /tmp
Enter value for 2: create_cdb.log

5. When prompted by the script, enter any other required information.

For example, the scripts prompts for administrator passwords and the temporary tablespace name:

Enter new password for SYS: ********
Enter new password for SYSTEM: ********
Enter temporary tablespace name: TEMP

6. After catcdb.sql completes, perform steps 12 - 14 in the “Creating a Database with the CREATE DATABASE Statement” topic in Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide.

See Also:

• Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide to learn more about CREATE DATABASE clauses and Oracle Managed Files
• Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide for more information on Oracle RAC
• Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator’s Guide
• Oracle Database SQL Language Reference to learn more about the clauses and parameter values for the CREATE DATABASE statement

4.3.4 Creating a CDB with the CREATE DATABASE Statement: Examples

These examples create a CDB named newcdb.

The examples assume that you completed steps 1 - 8 in the “Creating a Database with the CREATE DATABASE Statement” topic in Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide.
4.3.4.1 Creating a CDB Without Using Oracle Managed Files

The following statement creates a CDB named **newcdb**. This name must agree with the `DB_NAME` parameter in the initialization parameter file.

**Assumptions**

This example assumes the following:

- The initialization parameter file specifies the number and location of control files with the `CONTROL_FILES` parameter.
- The directory `/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb` exists.
- The directory `/u01/app/oracle/oradata/pdbseed` exists.
- The directories `/u01/logs/my` and `/u02/logs/my` exist.

This example includes the `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clause to create a CDB with the root and the PDB seed. This example also includes the `SEED_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause to specify the names and locations of the PDB seed's files. This example also includes `tablespace_datafile` clauses that specify attributes of the PDB seed data files for the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` tablespaces that differ from the root data files. This example includes the `undo_mode_clause` to specify that the CDB undo mode is local.

```sql
CREATE DATABASE newcdb
    USER SYS IDENTIFIED BY sys_password
    USER SYSTEM IDENTIFIED BY system_password
    LOGFILE GROUP 1 ('/u01/logs/my/redo01a.log', '/u02/logs/my/redo01b.log')
        SIZE 100M BLOCKSIZE 512,
    GROUP 2 ('/u01/logs/my/redo02a.log', '/u02/logs/my/redo02b.log')
        SIZE 100M BLOCKSIZE 512,
    GROUP 3 ('/u01/logs/my/redo03a.log', '/u02/logs/my/redo03b.log')
        SIZE 100M BLOCKSIZE 512
    MAXLOGHISTORY 1
    MAXLOGFILES 16
    MAXDATAFILES 1024
    CHARACTER SET AL32UTF8
    NATIONAL CHARACTER SET AL16UTF16
    EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL
    DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/system01.dbf'
        SIZE 700M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10240K MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
    SYSAUX DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/sysaux01.dbf'
        SIZE 550M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10240K MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
    DEFAULT TABLESPACE deftbs
        DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/deftbs01.dbf'
        SIZE 500M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
    DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE tempts1
        TEMPFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/temp01.dbf'
        SIZE 20M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 640K MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
    UNDO TABLESPACE undotbs1
        DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/undotbs01.dbf'
        SIZE 200M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 5120K MAXSIZE UNLIMITED

ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE
    SEED
```
FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/','
                     '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/pdbseed/')
SYSTEM DATAFILES SIZE 125M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10M MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
SYSAUX DATAFILES SIZE 100M
USER_DATA TABLESPACE usertbs
   DATAFILE '/u01/app/oracle/oradata/pdbseed/usertbs01.dbf'
   SIZE 200M REUSE AUTOEXTEND ON MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
LOCAL UNDO ON;

A CDB is created with the following characteristics:

- The CDB is named newcdb. Its global database name is newcdb.us.example.com, where the domain portion (us.example.com) is taken from the initialization parameter file. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about determining the global database name.

- Three control files are created as specified by the CONTROL_FILES initialization parameter, which was set before CDB creation in the initialization parameter file. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for a sample initialization parameter file and Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about specifying control files.

- The passwords for user accounts SYS and SYSTEM are set to the values that you specified. The passwords are case-sensitive. The two clauses that specify the passwords for SYS and SYSTEM are not mandatory in this release of Oracle Database. However, if you specify either clause, then you must specify both clauses. For further information about the use of these clauses, see Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about specifying passwords for users SYS and SYSTEM.

- The new CDB has three online redo log file groups, each with two members, as specified in the LOGFILE clause. MAXLOGFILES, MAXLOGMEMBERS, and MAXLOGHISTORY define limits for the redo log. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about choosing the number of redo log files. The block size for the redo logs is set to 512 bytes, the same size as physical sectors on disk. The BLOCKSIZE clause is optional if block size is to be the same as physical sector size (the default). Typical sector size and thus typical block size is 512. Permissible values for BLOCKSIZE are 512, 1024, and 4096. For newer disks with a 4K sector size, optionally specify BLOCKSIZE as 4096. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for more information about planning the block size of redo log files.

- MAXDATAFILES specifies the maximum number of data files that can be open in the CDB. This number affects the initial sizing of the control file. For a CDB, set MAXDATAFILES to a high number that anticipates the aggregate number of data files for all containers, in addition to the CDB root files.
Note:

You can set several limits during CDB creation. Some of these limits are limited by and affected by operating system limits. For example, if you set `MAXDATAFILES`, then Oracle Database allocates enough space in the control file to store `MAXDATAFILES` file names, even if the CDB has only one data file initially. However, because the maximum control file size is limited and operating system dependent, you might not be able to set all `CREATE DATABASE` parameters at their theoretical maximums.

For more information about setting limits during CDB creation, see the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* and your operating system–specific Oracle documentation.

- The `AL32UTF8` character set is used to store data in this CDB.
- The `AL16UTF16` character set is specified as the `NATIONAL CHARACTER SET` used to store data in columns specifically defined as `NCHAR`, `NCLOB`, or `NVARCHAR2`.
- The `SYSTEM` tablespace, consisting of the operating system file `/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/system01.dbf`, is created as specified by the `DATAFILE` clause. If a file with that name already exists, then it is overwritten.
- The `SYSTEM` tablespace is created as a locally managed tablespace. See *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about creating a locally managed `SYSTEM` tablespace.
- A `SYSAUX` tablespace is created, consisting of the operating system file `/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb/sysaux01.dbf` as specified in the `SYSAUX DATAFILE` clause. See *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about the `SYSAUX` tablespace.
- The `DEFAULT TABLESPACE` clause creates and names a default permanent tablespace for this CDB.
- The `DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE` clause creates and names a default temporary tablespace for the root of this CDB. See *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about creating a default temporary tablespace.
- The `UNDO TABLESPACE` clause creates and names an undo tablespace that is used to store undo data for this CDB. In a CDB, an undo tablespace is required to manage the undo data, and the `UNDO_MANAGEMENT` initialization parameter must be set to `AUTO`. If you omit this parameter, then it defaults to `AUTO`. See *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about creating an undo tablespace.
- Redo log files will not initially be archived, because the `ARCHIVELOG` clause is not specified in this `CREATE DATABASE` statement. This is customary during CDB creation. You can later use an `ALTER DATABASE` statement to switch to `ARCHIVELOG` mode. The initialization parameters in the initialization parameter file for `newcdb` relating to archiving are `LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1` and `LOG_ARCHIVE_FORMAT`. See *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about managing archived redo log files.
- The `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clause creates a CDB with the root and the PDB seed.
SEED is required for the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the `tablespace_datafile` clauses.

The `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause generates file names for the PDB seed's files in the `/u01/app/oracle/oradata/pdbseed` directory using file names in the `/u01/app/oracle/oradata/newcdb` directory.

The `SYSTEM DATAFILES` clause specifies attributes of the PDB seed `SYSTEM` tablespace data file(s) that differ from the root's.

The `SYSAUX DATAFILES` clause specifies attributes of the PDB seed `SYSAUX` tablespace data file(s) that differ from the root's.

The `USER_DATA TABLESPACE` clause creates and names the PDB seed's tablespace for storing user data and database options such as Oracle XML DB. PDBs created using the PDB seed include this tablespace and its data file. The tablespace and data file specified in this clause are not used by the root.

The `LOCAL UNDO ON` clause sets the CDB undo mode to local, which means that each container in the CDB uses local undo. When the CDB is created in local undo mode, the PDB seed includes an undo tablespace so that any new PDB created from the PDB seed has an undo tablespace. When a PDB is created by plugging it in or cloning a remote PDB, and the source PDB was in shared undo mode, an undo tablespace is created for the PDB automatically the first time the PDB is opened.

Note:

- Ensure that all directories used in the `CREATE DATABASE` statement exist. The `CREATE DATABASE` statement does not create directories.
- If you are not using Oracle Managed Files, then every tablespace clause must include a `DATAFILE` or `TEMPFILE` clause.
- If CDB creation fails, then you can look at the alert log to determine the reason for the failure and to determine corrective actions. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about viewing the alert log. If you receive an error message that contains a process number, then examine the trace file for that process. Look for the trace file that contains the process number in the trace file name. See Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for more information.
- To resubmit the `CREATE DATABASE` statement after a failure, you must first shut down the instance and delete any files created by the previous `CREATE DATABASE` statement.

4.3.4.2 Creating a CDB Using Oracle Managed Files: Example

This example illustrates creating a CDB with Oracle Managed Files, which enables you to use a much simpler `CREATE DATABASE` statement.

To use Oracle Managed Files, the initialization parameter `DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST` must be set. This parameter defines the base directory for the various CDB files that the CDB creates and automatically names.
The following statement is an example of setting this parameter in the initialization parameter file:

```
DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST='/u01/app/oracle/oradata'
```

This example sets the parameter Oracle ASM storage:

```
DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST = +data
```

This example does not include the `SEED FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause because Oracle Managed Files determines the names and locations of the PDB seed's files. However, this example does include `tablespace_datafile` clauses that specify attributes of the PDB seed data files for the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` tablespace that differ from the CDB root data files.

With Oracle Managed Files and the following `CREATE DATABASE` statement, the CDB creates the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` tablespace, creates the additional tablespace specified in the statement, and chooses default sizes and properties for all data files, control files, and redo log files. Note that these properties and the other default CDB properties set by this method might not be suitable for your production environment, so Oracle recommends that you examine the resulting configuration and modify it if necessary.

```
CREATE DATABASE newcdb
USER SYS IDENTIFIED BY sys_password
USER SYSTEM IDENTIFIED BY system_password
EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL
DEFAULT TABLESPACE users
DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE temp
UNDO TABLESPACE undotbs1
ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE
  SEED
    SYSTEM DATAFILES SIZE 125M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10M MAXSIZE UNLIMITED
    SYSAUX DATAFILES SIZE 100M;
```

A CDB is created with the following characteristics:

- The CDB is named `newcdb`. Its global database name is `newcdb.us.example.com`, where the domain portion (`us.example.com`) is taken from the initialization parameter file. See Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about determining the global database name.
- The passwords for user accounts `SYS` and `SYSTEM` are set to the values that you specified. The passwords are case-sensitive. The two clauses that specify the passwords for `SYS` and `SYSTEM` are not mandatory in this release of Oracle Database. However, if you specify either clause, then you must specify both clauses. For further information about the use of these clauses, see Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about specifying passwords for users `SYS` and `SYSTEM`.
- The `DEFAULT TABLESPACE` clause creates and names a default permanent tablespace for this CDB.
- The `DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE` clause creates and names a default temporary tablespace for the root of this CDB. See Oracle Database
Administrator's Guide for information about creating a default temporary tablespace.

- The UNDO TABLESPACE clause creates and names an undo tablespace that is used to store undo data for this CDB. In a CDB, an undo tablespace is required to manage the undo data, and the UNDO_MANAGEMENT initialization parameter must be set to AUTO. If you omit this parameter, then it defaults to AUTO. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about creating an undo tablespace.

- Redo log files will not initially be archived, because the ARCHIVELOG clause is not specified in this CREATE DATABASE statement. This is customary during CDB creation. You can later use an ALTER DATABASE statement to switch to ARCHIVELOG mode. The initialization parameters in the initialization parameter file for newcdb relating to archiving are LOG_ARCHIVE_DEST_1 and LOG_ARCHIVE_FORMAT. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about managing archived redo log files.

- The ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED clause is required for the tablespace_datafile clauses.

**Note:**

If you do not specify the SYSTEM and SYSAUX clauses, which are optional, then the ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED clause is not required.

- The SYSTEM DATAFILES clause specifies attributes of the PDB seed's SYSTEM tablespace data files that differ from the root's.

- The SYSAUX DATAFILES clause specifies attributes of the PDB seed's SYSAUX tablespace data files that differ from the root's.

### 4.4 Configuring EM Express for a CDB

For a CDB, you can configure Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express (EM Express) for the root and for each PDB by setting a global HTTPS port, or you can set a different port for every container in the CDB.

You can set a global port, which enables you to use EM Express to connect to all PDBs in the CDB using the HTTPS port for the CDB. Alternatively, you can set a different HTTPS port for every container in a CDB.

To configure EM Express for a CDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, access a container in a CDB.
   
   The user must have common SYSDBA administrative privilege, and you must exercise this privilege using AS SYSDBA at connect time. The container can be the root or a PDB.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Set the port in one of the following ways:
• To set the global port, connect to the CDB$ROOT, and issue the following SQL statement to configure the global port for the CDB:

```sql
EXEC DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETGLOBALPORTENABLED(TRUE);
```

• To set the HTTPS port for the current container, run the following procedure:

```sql
exec DBMS_XDB_CONFIG.SETHTTPSPORT(https_port_number);
```

Replace `https_port_number` with the appropriate HTTPS port number.

3. Access EM Express in one of the following ways:

• To use the global port, enter the EM Express URL provided by Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) when it configured the CDB that includes the PDB. When the EM Express login screen appears, specify your administrator credentials, and enter the name of the PDB that you want to connect to in the Container Name field.

• The URL for the HTTPS port for a container:

```
https://database_hostname:https_port_number/em/
```

Replace `database_hostname` with the host name of the computer on which the database instance is running, and replace `https_port_number` with the appropriate HTTPS port number.

When connected to the root, EM Express displays data and enables actions that apply to the entire CDB. When connected to a PDB, EM Express displays data and enables actions that apply to the PDB only.

**Note:**

If the listener is not configured on port 1521, then you must manually configure the port for EM Express. See *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA* for instructions.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database 2 Day DBA* for more information about EM Express

### 4.5 After Creating a CDB

After creation, a CDB consists of the root and the PDB seed.

The root contains system-supplied metadata and common users that can administer the PDBs. The PDB seed is a template that you can use to create new PDBs. The following graphic shows a newly created CDB.
In a CDB, the root contains minimal user data or no user data. User data resides in the PDBs. Therefore, after creating a CDB, one of the first tasks is to add the PDBs that will contain the user data.

The following graphic shows a CDB with PDBs.

You have the option of creating one or more application containers. An application container consists of an application root and application PDBs, and it stores data for one or more applications. An application container can store application common objects, which contain user data that can be shared by the application PDBs in the application container. It can also contain an application seed for fast creation of application PDBs in an application container.
A CDB contains the following files:

- One control file
- One active online redo log for a single-instance CDB, or one active online redo log for each instance of an Oracle RAC CDB
- Sets of temp files
  
  There is one default temporary tablespace for the root of the CDB and one for each PDB, application root, and application PDB.
- Sets of system data files
  
  A CDB includes one set of system data files for each container in the CDB, including a set of system data files for each PDB, application root, and application PDB. In addition, a CDB has one set of user-created data files for each container. If the CDB is in local undo mode, then each container also has its own undo tablespace and associated data files.
- Sets of user-created data files
  
  Each PDB has its own set of non-system data files. These data files contain the user-defined schemas and database objects for the PDB.

For backup and recovery of a CDB, Recovery Manager (RMAN) is recommended. PDB point-in-time recovery (PDB PITR) must be performed with RMAN. By default, RMAN turns on control file autobackup for a CDB. It is strongly recommended that control file autobackup is enabled for a CDB, to ensure that PDB PITR can undo data file additions or deletions.

Video

The following chapters describe tasks for administering CDBs:
• “Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers”
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  – Creating a PDB using the PDB seed
  – Creating a PDB by cloning an existing PDB
  – Creating a PDB by relocating it
  – Creating a PDB as a proxy PDB
  – Plugging in a PDB
  – Unplugging a PDB
  – Dropping a PDB
• "Creating and Removing Application Containers and Seeds"
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  – Creating application containers
  – Creating application seeds
  – Unplugging application containers
  – Unplugging application seeds
  – Dropping application containers
  – Dropping application seeds
• “Administering a CDB”
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  – Connecting to a container
  – Switching into a container
  – Modifying a CDB
  – Modifying the root
  – Changing the open mode of a PDB
  – Executing DDL statements in a CDB
  – Shutting down the CDB instance
• "Administering PDBs"
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  – Connecting to a PDB
  – Modifying a PDB
  – Managing services associated with PDBs
• “Administering Application Containers”
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  – Managing applications in an application container, including installing, upgrading, and patching applications
  – Managing application common objects
  – Issuing DML statements on containers in an application container
- Partitioning by PDB with container maps

• "Monitoring CDBs and PDBs"
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  - Querying views for monitoring a CDB and its PDBs
  - Running sample queries that provide information about a CDB and its PDBs

• "Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU"
  This chapter documents the following tasks:
  - Creating resource plans in a CDB
  - Managing resource plans in a CDB

• "Using Oracle Scheduler with a CDB"
  This chapter documents the following topics:
  - DBMS_SCHEDULER invocations in a CDB
  - Job coordinator and slave processes in a CDB
  - Using DBMS_JOB
  - Processes to close a PDB
  - New and changed views

See Also:

- *Oracle Database Concepts* for a multitenant architecture documentation roadmap
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for information about RMAN
You can create PDBs, application containers, and application seeds using a variety of techniques.

For example, you can create a PDB from scratch, cloning an existing PDB, or plug in an unplugged PDB. You can also remove PDBs from a CDB.

**Note:**

You can complete the tasks in this part using SQL*Plus or Oracle SQL Developer.

**Related Topics**

- [Tools for a Multitenant Environment](#)
  
  You can use various tools to configure and administer a multitenant environment.
Overview of PDB Creation

A CDB supports multiple techniques for creating PDBs.

The created PDB automatically includes a full data dictionary including metadata and internal links to system-supplied objects in the CDB root. You must define every PDB from a single root: either the CDB root or an application root.

Each PDB has a globally unique identifier (GUID). The PDB GUID is primarily used to generate names for directories that store the PDB’s files, including both Oracle Managed Files directories and non-Oracle Managed Files directories.

5.1 Techniques for Creating a PDB

You can create a PDB with various techniques, all of which require the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.

Creating a PDB is the process of associating it with a CDB or an application container.

The following graphic depicts the options for creating a PDB.

---

**Note:**

A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, "database" and "non-CDB" refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, "non-CDB" refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

---

**Figure 5-1   Options for Creating a PDB**
The following table describes the creation techniques. An additional technique, which is not covered in this manual, is to use the `DUPLICATE` command in Recovery Manager to copy a PDB from one CDB to another CDB.

Table 5-1  Techniques for Creating a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>More Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Create a PDB from scratch             | Create a PDB in a CDB using the files of the PDB seed or application seed. This technique copies the files associated with the seed to a new location and associates the copied files with the new PDB. This is the default creation mechanism. The other techniques require either a source PDB or XML. | "Creating a PDB from Scratch"
| Clone an existing PDB                | Create a PDB by cloning a source PDB. A source can be a PDB in the local CDB, a PDB in a remote CDB, or a PDB in a local or remote application container. This technique copies the files associated with the source to a new location and associates the copied files with the new PDB. | "Cloning a PDB"
| Relocate a PDB to a different CDB    | Create a PDB by relocating it from one CDB to another. This technique moves the files associated with the PDB to a new location.                                                                          | "Relocating a PDB"
| Plug an unplugged PDB into a CDB     | Create a PDB by using the XML metadata file that describes the PDB and the files associated with the PDB to plug it into the CDB.                                                                        | "Plugging In an Unplugged PDB"
| Reference a PDB as a proxy PDB       | Create a PDB as a proxy PDB by referencing a different PDB with a database link. The referenced PDB can be in the same CDB as the proxy PDB, or it can be in a different CDB.                              | "Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB"
| Adopting a non-CDB as a PDB using Replay Upgrade | When adopting a non-CDB from a previous release as a PDB in an Oracle Database 20c CDB, the upgrade occurs automatically when the PDB is opened normally. The Replay Upgrade feature automatically captures necessary `CREATE OR REPLACE` statements, replays the statements only for changed objects, and converts the data dictionary. The replay mechanism is the same one used in application synchronization. If you disable Replay Upgrade by executing `ALTER DATABASE UPGRADE SYNC OFF`, which is not recommended, then you can run `catctl.pl` with the `-t` option for classic upgrade. In this case, you must resolve any compatibility errors manually. | Oracle Database Upgrade Guide to learn how to adopt a non-CDB as a PDB using Replay Upgrade |

You can unplug a PDB when you want to plug it into a different CDB. You can unplug or drop a PDB when you no longer need it. An unplugged PDB is not usable until it is plugged into a CDB.
5.1.1 Current Container and PDB Creation

You can use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create PDBs, application containers, application seeds, and application PDBs.

When you create a PDB, the current container—CDB root or application root—determines the association of the PDB. The SQL statements that create PDBs and application PDBs are the same. For example, when you run `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement in the CDB root, the PDB belongs to the CDB root. When you run `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement in an application root, the application PDB belongs to the application root.

When the CDB root is the current container, create an application root by running a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` clause. When cloning, relocating, or plugging in a PDB to an application container, the application name and version of the PDB must match the application name and version of the application container.

5.2 PDB Storage

However you choose to create a PDB, you must decide on the tablespaces and files that will store the data.

5.2.1 Storage Limits

The optional `STORAGE` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement specifies storage limits for PDBs.

The `STORAGE` clause specifies the following limits:

- The amount of storage that can be used by all tablespaces that belong to the PDB
  Use `MAXSIZE` and a size clause to specify a limit, or set `MAXSIZE` to `UNLIMITED` to indicate no limit.

- The amount of storage that can be used by unified audit OS spillover (.bin format) files in the PDB
  Use `MAX_AUDIT_SIZE` and a size clause to specify a limit, or set `MAX_AUDIT_SIZE` to `UNLIMITED` to indicate no limit.
• The amount of diagnostics (trace files and incident dumps) in the Automatic Diagnostic Repository (ADR) that can be used by the PDB

Use MAX_DIAG_SIZE and a size clause to specify a limit, or set MAX_DIAG_SIZE to UNLIMITED to indicate no limit.

If STORAGE UNLIMITED is set, or if there is no STORAGE clause, then there are no storage limits for the PDB.

The following are examples that use the STORAGE clause.

Example 5-1  STORAGE Clause That Specifies a Storage Limit

This STORAGE clause specifies that the storage used by all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.

STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)

Example 5-2  STORAGE Clause That Specifies Unlimited Storage

This STORAGE clause specifies unlimited storage for all tablespaces that belong to the PDB.

STORAGE (MAXSIZE UNLIMITED)

See Also:
Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for the syntax of the STORAGE clause

5.2.2 Default Tablespace

The DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause of the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement specifies the default tablespace for the new PDB.

Oracle Database will assign the default tablespace to any non-SYSTEM users who do not have a different permanent tablespace specified.

When you create the PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed and specify the DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause, Oracle Database creates a smallfile tablespace and sets it as the default tablespace for the PDB. When you create the PDB using a method other than the using the PDB seed or application seed, such as cloning a PDB or plugging in an unplugged PDB, the default tablespace must be a tablespace that already exists in the source PDB.

Example 5-3  DEFAULT TABLESPACE Clause

DEFAULT TABLESPACE sales
5.2.3 User Tablespaces

The `USER_TABLESPACES` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement specifies which tablespaces are available in the new PDB. You can use this clause to separate the data for multiple schemas into different PDBs.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:

- List one or more tablespaces to include.
- Specify `ALL`, the default, to include all tablespaces.
- Specify `ALL EXCEPT` to include all tablespaces, except for the tablespaces listed.
- Specify `NONE` to exclude all tablespaces.
- If the creation mode of the user tablespaces must be different from the creation mode for the Oracle-supplied tablespaces (such as `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX`), then specify one of the following in the `USER_TABLESPACES` clause:
  - `COPY`: The files of the tablespaces are copied to a new location.
  - `MOVE`: The files of the tablespaces are moved to a new location.
  - `NOCOPY`: The files of the tablespaces are not copied or moved.
  - `SNAPSHOT COPY`: The tablespaces are cloned with storage snapshots.
  - `NO DATA`: The data model definition of the tablespaces is cloned but not the tablespaces' data.

When the compatibility level of the CDB is 12.2.0 or higher, the tablespaces that are excluded by this clause are created offline in the new PDB, and they have no data files associated with them. When the compatibility level of the CDB is lower than 12.2.0, the tablespaces that are excluded by this clause are offline in the new PDB, and all data files that belong to these tablespaces are unnamed and offline.

This clause does not apply to the `SYSTEM`, `SYSAUX`, or `TEMP` tablespaces. Do not include these tablespaces in a tablespace list for this clause.

The following are examples that use the `USER_TABLESPACES` clause.

**Example 5-4 USER_TABLESPACES Clause That Includes One Tablespace**

Assume that the PDB from which a PDB is being created includes the following tablespaces: `tbs1`, `tbs2`, and `tbs3`. This `USER_TABLESPACES` clause includes the `tbs2` tablespace, but excludes the `tbs1` and `tbs3` tablespaces.

```
USER_TABLESPACES=('tbs2')
```

**Example 5-5 USER_TABLESPACES Clause That Includes a List of Tablespaces**

Assume that the PDB from which a PDB is being created includes the following tablespaces: `tbs1`, `tbs2`, `tbs3`, `tbs4`, and `tbs5`. This `USER_TABLESPACES` clause includes the `tbs1`, `tbs4`, and `tbs5` tablespaces, but excludes the `tbs2` and `tbs3` tablespaces.

```
USER_TABLESPACES=('tbs1','tbs4','tbs5')
```
Example 5-6  USER_TABLESPACES Clause That Includes All Tablespaces Except for Listed Ones

Assume that the PDB from which a PDB is being created includes the following tablespaces: tbs1, tbs2, tbs3, tbs4, and tbs5. This USER_TABLESPACES clause includes the tbs2 and tbs3 tablespaces, but excludes the tbs1, tbs4, and tbs5 tablespaces.

USER_TABLESPACES=ALL EXCEPT('tbs1','tbs4','tbs5')

Example 5-7  USER_TABLESPACES in a Different Creation Mode

This example shows a full CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement that plugs in a PDB and only includes the tbs3 user tablespace from the PDB. The example copies the files for Oracle-supplied tablespaces (such as SYSTEM and SYSAUX) to a new location, but moves the files of the tbs3 user tablespace.

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ncdb USING '/disk1/oracle/ncdb.xml'
   COPY
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/dbs/', '/disk2/oracle/ncdb/')
   USER_TABLESPACES=('tbs3') MOVE;

5.2.4 PDB File Locations

In the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, you can specify the locations of files used by the new PDB.

The term “file name” means both the name and the location of a file. The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement has the following clauses that indicate the file names of the new PDB being created:

- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause specifies the names of the PDB’s files after the PDB is created. Use this clause when the files are not yet at their ultimate destination, and you want to copy or move them during PDB creation. You can use this clause in any CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

- The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause specifies the default Oracle Managed Files file system directory or Oracle ASM disk group for the PDB’s files. Use this clause to enable Oracle Managed Files for the new PDB, independent of any Oracle Managed Files default location specified in the root for the CDB. You can use this clause in any CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

When necessary, you can use both clauses in the same CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement. In addition, the following initialization parameters can control the location of the new PDB files:

- The DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST initialization parameter set in the root
  This initialization parameter specifies the default location for Oracle Managed Files for the CDB. When this parameter is set in a PDB, it specifies the default location for Oracle Managed Files for the PDB.

- The PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter
This initialization parameter maps names of existing files to new file names when processing a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.

The following table shows the precedence order when both clauses are used in the same `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, and both initialization parameters are set. For each clause and initialization parameter, the table also shows whether the files created by the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement will use Oracle Managed Files or not.

### Table 5-2 Summary of File Location Clauses and Initialization Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause or Initialization Parameter</th>
<th>Precedence Order</th>
<th>Will the Files Created by <code>CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> Use Oracle Managed Files?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>FILE_NAME_CONVERT</code> clause</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>CREATE_FILE_DEST</code> clause</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST</code> initialization parameter</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT</code> initialization parameter</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regarding the use of Oracle Managed Files, the table only applies to files created by the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. Files created for the PDB after the PDB has been created might or might not use Oracle Managed Files.

In addition, if `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` and `CREATE_FILE_DEST` are both specified in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, then the `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` setting is used for the files being placed during PDB creation, and the `CREATE_FILE_DEST` setting is used to set the `DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST` initialization parameter in the PDB. In this case, Oracle Managed Files controls the location of the files for the PDB after PDB creation.

**Note:**

The `PATH_PREFIX` clause does not affect files created by Oracle Managed Files.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database Reference* to learn more about `DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST` and `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT`.

### 5.2.4.1 `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` Clause

If the PDB will not use Oracle Managed Files, then the `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement specifies how to generate the names of files (such as data files) using the names of existing files.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:
One or more file name patterns and replacement file name patterns, in the following form:

'string1', 'string2', 'string3', 'string4', ...

The string2 file name pattern replaces the string1 file name pattern, and the string4 file name pattern replaces the string3 file name pattern. You can use as many pairs of file name pattern and replacement file name pattern strings as required.

If you specify an odd number of strings (the last string has no corresponding replacement string), then an error is returned. Do not specify more than one pattern/replace string that matches a single file name or directory.

- **NONE** when no files should be copied or moved during PDB creation. Omitting the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is the same as specifying NONE.

You can use the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause in any CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

When the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is not specified in a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, either Oracle Managed Files or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter specifies how to generate the names of the files. If you use both Oracle Managed Files and the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter, then Oracle Managed Files takes precedence. The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause takes precedence when it is specified.

File name patterns specified in the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause cannot match files or directories managed by Oracle Managed Files.

**Example 5-8  FILE_NAME_CONVERT Clause**

This FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause generates file names for the new PDB in the /oracle/pdb5 directory using file names in the /oracle/dbs directory.

FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/oracle/dbs/', '/oracle/pdb5/')

### See Also:

- "Example 18-6"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for the syntax of the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause
- Oracle Database Reference for information about the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter

### 5.2.4.2 CREATE_FILE_DEST Clause

The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause of the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement enables Oracle Managed Files for the PDB and specifies the default file system directory or Oracle ASM disk group for the PDB files.
The PDB data files and temp files are restricted to the specified directory and its subdirectories. If a file system directory is specified as the default location in this clause, then the directory must exist. Also, the user who runs the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement must have the appropriate privileges to create files in the specified directory. Alternatively, you can specify the name of a directory object that exists in the CDB root (`CDB$ROOT`). The directory object points to the file system directory used by `CREATE_FILE_DEST`.

If there is a default Oracle Managed Files location for the CDB set in the CDB root, then the `CREATE_FILE_DEST` setting overrides the CDB root’s setting, and the specified `CREATE_FILE_DEST` setting is used for the PDB.

If `CREATE_FILE_DEST=NONE` is specified, then Oracle Managed Files is disabled for the PDB.

When the `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause is set to a value other than `NONE`, the `DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST` initialization parameter is set implicitly in the PDB with `SCOPE=SPFILE`.

If the CDB root uses Oracle Managed Files, and this clause is not specified, then the PDB inherits the Oracle Managed Files default location from the CDB root.

---

**Note:**

This feature is available starting with Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.2).

---

**Example 5-9  CREATE_FILE_DEST Clause**

This `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause specifies `/oracle/pdb2/` as the default Oracle Managed Files file system directory for the new PDB.

```
CREATE_FILE_DEST = '/oracle/pdb2/'
```

---

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide*

---

### 5.2.4.3 Restrictions on PDB File Locations

The `PATH_PREFIX` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement ensures that all directory object paths associated with the PDB are restricted to the specified directory or its subdirectories.

This clause also ensures that the following files associated with the PDB are restricted to the specified directory: the Oracle XML repository for the PDB, files created with a `CREATE PFILE` statement, and the export directory for Oracle wallets. Use this clause when you want to ensure that a PDB’s files reside in a specific directory and its subdirectories.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:
• An absolute path that is used as a prefix for all file paths associated with the PDB.
• The name of a directory object that exists in the CDB root (CDB$ROOT). The directory object points to the absolute path to be used for PATH_PREFIX.
• NONE to indicate that there are no restrictions for the file paths. Omitting the PATH_PREFIX clause is the same as specifying NONE.

After a PDB is created, its PATH_PREFIX setting cannot be modified.

You can use the PATH_PREFIX clause in any CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

Example 5-10 PATH_PREFIX Clause

This PATH_PREFIX clause ensures that all file paths associated with the PDB are restricted to the /disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/ directory.

PATH_PREFIX = '/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/

Be sure to specify the path name so that it is properly formed when file names are appended to it. For example, on UNIX systems, be sure to end the path name with a forward slash (/).

Note:
• After the PATH_PREFIX clause is specified for a PDB, existing directory objects might not work as expected, since the PATH_PREFIX string is always added as a prefix to all local directory objects in the PDB.
• The PATH_PREFIX clause does not affect files created by Oracle Managed Files.
• The PATH_PREFIX clause only applies to user-created directory objects. It does not apply to Oracle-supplied directory objects.
• The PATH_PREFIX clause does not apply to data files or temporary files. If you are using Oracle Managed Files, then use the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause to restrict the locations of data files and temporary files.

See Also:
• "About a Multitenant Environment"
• "Viewing Information About the Containers in a CDB"

5.3 Service Name Conversion

An important aspect of PDB creation is managing the renaming of database services.

When the service name of a new PDB conflicts with an existing service name in the CDB, plug-in violations can result. The SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause of the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement renames the user-defined services of the new PDB.
based on the service names of the source PDB. Using this clause, you can rename services and avoid plug-in violations.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:

• One or more service names and replacement service names, in the following form:

'string1', 'string2', 'string3', 'string4', ...

The string2 service name replaces the string1 service name, and the string4 service name replaces the string3 service name. You can use as many pairs of service names and replacement service names as required.

If you specify an odd number of strings (the last string has no corresponding replacement string), then an error is returned.

• NONE when no service names need to be renamed. Omitting the SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause is the same as specifying NONE.

You can use the SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause in any CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, except for a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement that creates a PDB from the PDB seed. The PDB seed cannot have user-defined services. However, you can use this statement for a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement that creates an application PDB from an application seed in an application container.

Note:
This clause does not apply to the default service for the PDB. The default service has the same name as the PDB.

Example 5-11 SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT Clause

This SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause uses renames the salesrep service to salesperson.

SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT = ('salesrep','salesperson')

See Also:
Oracle Database SQL Language Reference

5.4 Summary of Clauses for Creating a PDB

When you create a PDB with the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, various clauses are available based on different factors.

One factor is the technique you are using to create the PDB. You can determine which clauses to use by answering a series of questions.

The following table describes which CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clauses to specify based on different factors.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to create an application container instead of a PDB?</td>
<td>Specify the AS APPLICATION CONTAINER clause.</td>
<td>Omit the AS APPLICATION CONTAINER clause.</td>
<td>Creating an application container in a CDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you plugging a PDB into a CDB that contains one or more PDBs that were created by plugging in the same PDB?</td>
<td>Specify the AS CLONE clause to ensure that Oracle Database generates a unique PDB DBID, GUID, and other identifiers expected for the new PDB. The PDB is plugged in as a clone of the unplugged PDB to ensure that all of its identifiers are unique.</td>
<td>Omit the AS CLONE clause.</td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to create an application seed in an application container?</td>
<td>Specify the AS SEED clause.</td>
<td>Omit the AS SEED clause.</td>
<td>Creating an application seed in an application container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to use a CREATE_FILE_DEST clause to specify the Oracle Managed Files default location for the PDB files? When creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed, the source files are the files associated with the seed.</td>
<td>Include a CREATE_FILE_DEST clause that specifies the default file system directory or Oracle ASM disk group for the PDB's files.</td>
<td>Omit the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed Cloning a PDB Relocating a PDB Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See "PDB File Locations".
### Table 5-3  (Cont.) Clauses for Creating a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Do you want to specify a default permanent tablespace for the PDB?       | Specify a `DEFAULT TABLESPACE` clause with the appropriate limits. Oracle Database will assign to this tablespace any non-`SYSTEM` users for whom you do not specify a different permanent tablespace. When creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed, Oracle Database creates a smallfile tablespace and sets it as the default tablespace. When using a technique other than creation from the PDB seed or an application seed, the specified tablespace must exist in the source PDB. | Omit the `DEFAULT TABLESPACE` clause. If you do not specify this clause, then the `SYSTEM` tablespace is the default permanent tablespace for non-`SYSTEM` users. Using the `SYSTEM` tablespace for non-`SYSTEM` users is not recommended. | Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed  
Cloning a PDB  
Relocating a PDB  
Plugging in an unplugged PDB |
| Do you want to use a `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause to specify the target locations of the files? When creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed, the source files are the files associated with the seed. | Include a `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause that specifies the target locations of the files based on the names of the source files. | Omit the `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause. Use one of these techniques to specify the target locations of the files:  
- `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause  
- Enable Oracle Managed Files for the CDB for it to determine the target locations.  
- Specify the target locations in the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter. See "PDB File Locations". | Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed  
Cloning a PDB  
Relocating a PDB  
Creating a proxy PDB (Only applies to data files in the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` tablespaces.)  
Plugging in an unplugged PDB |
| Is the PDB a reference PDB with a dependent proxy PDB, and is the host name of its listener changing? | Include a `HOST` clause and specify the host name of the listener for the PDB being created. For example, you might have a listener network for the physical host name and default port and configure a second listener bound to a virtual host name and virtual IP address with a nondefault port number. | Omit the `HOST` clause. | Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed  
Cloning a PDB  
Relocating a PDB  
Plugging in an unplugged PDB |
Table 5-3  (Cont.) Clauses for Creating a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to specify the logging attribute of the tablespaces in the new PDB?</td>
<td>Include the <code>logging_clause</code>.</td>
<td>Omit the <code>logging_clause</code>.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cloning a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Do you want to copy or move the files to a new location?                | Specify `COPY` to copy the files to a new location. `COPY` is the default. Specify `MOVE` to move the files to a new location. Use one of these techniques to specify the target location:  
  • Include a `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause that specifies the target locations based on the names of the source files.  
  • Include a `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause that specifies the Oracle Managed Files default location for the PDB's files.  
  • Enable Oracle Managed Files for it to determine the target locations.  
  • Specify the target locations in the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter. See “PDB File Locations”.
|                                                                         | Specify `NOCOPY`.                        |                                           | Plugging in an unplugged PDB                                     |
| Do you want to specify that the data model definition of the source PDB is cloned but not the data of the source PDB? | Include the `NO_DATA` clause.            | Omit the `NO_DATA` clause.                | Cloning a PDB                                                    |
| Do you want to use multiple parallel execution servers to parallelize PDB creation? | To let the CDB choose the degree of parallelism, include or omit the `PARALLEL` clause.  
  To specify the degree of parallelism, specify the `PARALLEL` clause with an integer. For example, specify `PARALLEL 4` to indicate a degree of parallelism of 4.
<p>|                                                                         | Specify <code>PARALLEL 0</code> or <code>PARALLEL 1</code>.    |                                           | Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed          |
|                                                                         |                                          |                                           | Cloning a PDB                                                    |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to use a PATH_PREFIX clause to restrict file paths for the</td>
<td>Include a PATH_PREFIX clause that specifies an absolute path.</td>
<td>Set the PATH_PREFIX clause to NONE or omit it.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDB for the following: directory objects, the Oracle XML repository for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cloning a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the PDB, files created with a CREATE PFILE statement, and the export</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Relocating a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directory for Oracle wallets?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The PATH_PREFIX clause does not affect files created by Oracle Managed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the PDB a reference PDB with a dependent proxy PDB, and is the port</td>
<td>Include a PORT clause and specify the port number of the listener</td>
<td>Omit the PORT clause.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of its listener changing to a value other than 1521?</td>
<td>for the PDB being created.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cloning a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, you might have a listener network for the physical</td>
<td></td>
<td>Relocating a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>host name and default port and configure a second listener bound to</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a virtual host name and virtual IP address with a nondefault port</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>number.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to be able to refresh the PDB to propagate changes from</td>
<td>Include a REFRESH MODE MANUAL or REFRESH MODE EVERY_minutes clause.</td>
<td>Omit the REFRESH MODE clause or include a REFRESH MODE NONE clause.</td>
<td>Cloning a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the source PDB to the clone PDB? A refreshable PDB must be opened in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read-only mode.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to grant predefined Oracle roles to the PDB_DBA role locally</td>
<td>Include the ROLES clause and specify the predefined Oracle roles to</td>
<td>Omit the ROLES clause.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the PDB? The new administrator for the PDB is granted the PDB_DBA</td>
<td>grant to the PDB_DBA role.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cloning a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>common role locally in the PDB. By default, the CREATE PLUGGABLE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Relocating a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATABASE statement does not grant the administrator or the role any</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>privileges.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 5-3 (Cont.) Clauses for Creating a PDB**
### Table 5-3  (Cont.) Clauses for Creating a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to use a SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause to rename the user-defined services of the new PDB based on the service names of the source PDB?</td>
<td>Include a SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause that specifies the new name of a service and the service name it is replacing. Specify multiple service names and replacement service names if necessary.</td>
<td>Omit the SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the application seed, but not a PDB seed  [Cloning a PDB]  [Relocating a PDB]  [Creating a proxy PDB (Only applies to data files in the SYSTEM and SYSAUX tablespaces.)]  [Plugging in an unplugged PDB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to clone a PDB using a storage-managed snapshot (not a snapshot generated by ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT)?</td>
<td>Specify a SNAPSHOT_COPY clause to clone a PDB using storage-managed snapshots. SNAPSHOT_COPY is supported only if the underlying file system supports storage snapshots. A snapshot copy is nearly instantaneous because it does not require copying the full data files of the source PDB. However, you cannot unplug a snapshot copy PDB from the CDB root or application root. Also, if a snapshot copy PDB exists, then you cannot drop the storage snapshot on which the snapshot copy PDB is based. The process of <strong>materializing</strong> transforms a snapshot copy PDB, which uses sparse files, into a full PDB. Materialize a PDB by running the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE MATERIALIZE command.</td>
<td>Omit the SNAPSHOT_COPY clause.</td>
<td>Cloning a PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Clause Can Be Used Only When</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Do you want to enable PDB-level snapshots using `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT`? | Specify a `SNAPSHOT MODE` clause in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT` command, and specify `MANUAL` or `EVERY snapshot_interval` `[MINUTES|HOURS]`. | Omit the `SNAPSHOT MODE` clause or specify `SNAPSHOT MODE NONE`. | Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed  
Cloning a PDB  
Relocating a PDB  
Creating a proxy PDB (Only applies to data files in the `SYSTEM` and `SYSAUX` tablespaces.)  
Plugging in an unplugged PDB |
| Are all source files in a single directory with new file names that would require multiple `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` entries? | Specify the `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` with the full absolute path to the source files. | Omit the `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` clause. | Plugging in an unplugged PDB using an XML file directly.  
This clause does not apply to plugging in an unplugged PDB with a `.pdb` archive file. |
| Do the contents of the XML file accurately describe the locations of the source files? | Omit the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause. | Use the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause to specify the source file locations. | Plugging in an unplugged PDB using an XML file directly.  
This clause does not apply to plugging in an unplugged PDB with a `.pdb` archive file. |
| Do you want to include the new PDB in one or more standby CDBs? | Specify `ALL`, `ALL EXCEPT`, or a list of standby CDBs.  
When creating a remote clone, you can set the initialization parameter `STANDBY_PDB_SOURCE_FILE_DBLINK` to the name of the database link that points to the source PDB data files. The operation copies the data files only if the source PDB is open read-only. | Omit the `STANDBYS` clause or specify `NONE`. | Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed  
Cloning a PDB  
Relocating a PDB  
Plugging in an unplugged PDB |
Table 5-3  (Cont.) Clauses for Creating a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to limit the amount of storage that the PDB can use?</td>
<td>Specify a STORAGE clause with the appropriate limits.</td>
<td>Omit the STORAGE clause, or specify unlimited storage using the STORAGE clause.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cloning a PDB Relocating a PDB Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to reuse the temp file if a temp file exists in the target location?</td>
<td>Include the TEMPFILE REUSE clause.</td>
<td>Omit the TEMPFILE REUSE clause. Ensure that there is no file with the same name as the new temp file in the target location.</td>
<td>Creating a PDB from the PDB seed or an application seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cloning a PDB Relocating a PDB Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to specify which tablespaces are included in the new PDB and which tablespaces are excluded from the new PDB?</td>
<td>Include the USER_TABLESPACES clause and specify the tablespaces that are included in the new PDB.</td>
<td>Omit the USER_TABLESPACES clause.</td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to plug an unplugged PDB into a CDB?</td>
<td>Include the USING filename clause. If you are plugging in a PDB to a primary CDB in a Data Guard scenario, then set the STANDBY_PDB_SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY initialization parameter to a standby location that contains the source data files for instantiating the PDB. If not found, then the standby database tries to locate the files in the OMF location. If not found in the OMF location, then copy the data files to the OMF location, and restart redo apply on the standby database.</td>
<td>Omit the USING filename clause.</td>
<td>Plugging in an unplugged PDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5-3  (Cont.) Clauses for Creating a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Clause Can Be Used Only When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to create a new PDB based on a PDB snapshot?</td>
<td>Include the USING SNAPSHOT clause and specify either the PDB snapshot name, SCN, or timestamp. The result is a full, standalone PDB. A PDB snapshot is a point-in-time copy of a PDB. The source PDB can be open read-only or read/write while the snapshot is created. To create PDB-level snapshots manually, specify the SNAPSHOT clause of CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE (or ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE). Specifying the EVERY interval clause configures the PDB to create snapshots automatically. <strong>Note:</strong> PDB-level snapshots are different from storage-managed snapshots.</td>
<td>Exclude the USING SNAPSHOT clause.</td>
<td>Cloning a PDB snapshot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to clone a PDB that resides in Oracle ASM by splitting a mirror?</td>
<td>Include the USING MIRROR COPY clause and specify the name of the mirror copy and the source PDB.</td>
<td>Omit the USING MIRROR COPY clause.</td>
<td>Cloning a PDB that uses Oracle ASM storage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.5 General Prerequisites for PDB Creation

Before creating a PDB, you must meet certain prerequisites.

**Note:**

A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, "database" and "non-CDB" refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, "non-CDB" refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before creating a PDB.

Table 5-4  Prerequisites for Creating PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The CDB must exist.</td>
<td>“Creating and Configuring a CDB”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite</td>
<td>See Also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The CDB must be in read/write mode.</td>
<td>“Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The current user must be a common user whose current container is the CDB root or an application container.</td>
<td>“Common Users in a CDB”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The current user must have the <code>CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> system privilege.</td>
<td>“How Commonly Granted System Privileges Work”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You must decide on a unique container name for each container. Each container name must be unique in a single CDB, and each container name must be unique within the scope of all the CDBs whose instances are reached through a specific listener. The PDB name distinguishes a PDB from other PDBs in the CDB. PDB names follow the same rules as service names, which includes being case-insensitive.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Net Services Reference to learn the rules for service names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you are creating a PDB in an Oracle Data Guard configuration with a physical standby database, then you must complete additional tasks before creating a PDB.</td>
<td>Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration for more information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you are creating a PDB that includes data that was encrypted with Transparent Data Encryption, then you must complete additional tasks.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide for instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you are creating a Database Vault-enabled PDB, then you must complete additional tasks.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Vault Administrator's Guide for instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you are creating a PDB by cloning a non-CDB, and if you want the ability to recover the new PDB using backups of the source non-CDB, then you must execute <code>DBMS_PDB.EXPORTRMANBACKUP</code> before cloning. When the source database is opened in read-write mode, execute the procedure as the last step before cloning. This procedure captures all backup metadata in the data dictionary. When relocating a PDB to a different CDB, executing <code>DBMS_PDB.EXPORTRMANBACKUP</code> is not necessary. Unplugging the PDB automatically exports the backup metadata.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide for instructions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also:**

- “About the Current Container”
- Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference to learn more about `DBMS_PDB.EXPORTRMANBACKUP`
6

Creating a PDB from Scratch

Use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create a PDB in a CDB using the files of the PDB seed (`PDB$SEED`).

You can also use this statement to create an application PDB in an application container using the files of an application seed or the PDB seed.

See Also:
`Oracle Database SQL Language Reference` for more information about the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.

6.1 About Creating a PDB from Scratch

Use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create a new PDB by using the files of the PDB seed or an application PDB from the files of an application seed or the PDB seed.

The statement copies these files to a new location and associates them with the new PDB. The following figure illustrates how this technique creates a new PDB in a CDB with the CDB root as the current container.

Figure 6-1  Create a PDB in the CDB Root Using the PDB$SEED Files
The following figure illustrates how this technique creates a new application PDB in an application container with the application root as the current container.

**Figure 6-2  Create a PDB in an Application Root Using the Application Seed Files**

When an application container includes an application seed, and a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement is run in the application root to create an application PDB from the seed, the application PDB is created using the application seed. However, when an application container does not include an application seed, and a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement is run in the application root to create an application PDB from the seed, the application PDB is created using the PDB seed (`PDB$SEED`).

When you create a new PDB or application PDB from the seed, you must specify an administrator for the PDB or application PDB in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. The statement creates the administrator as a local user in the PDB and grants the `PDB_DBA` role locally to the administrator.
Before creating a PDB using the PDB seed or an application seed, address the questions that apply to creating a PDB from the seed in Table 5-3. The table describes which CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clauses you must specify based on different factors.

See Also:

- “PDB Storage”
- “Creating an Application PDB”

### 6.2 Creating a PDB

Using the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, you can create a PDB from the PDB seed, and you can create an application PDB from an application seed or the PDB seed.

**Prerequisites**

Before creating a PDB from the PDB seed (PDB$SEED) or an application PDB from an application seed or the PDB seed, complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation".

**To create a PDB:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or an application root.

   When the current container is the CDB root, the PDB is created in the CDB using the files of the PDB seed.

   When the current container is an application root, the application PDB is created in the application container using the files of the application seed. If there is no application seed in the application container, then the application PDB is created in the application container using the files of the PDB seed.

2. Run the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, and specify a local administrator for the PDB. Specify other clauses when they are required.

   After you create the PDB, it is in mounted mode, and its status is NEW. You can view the open mode of a PDB by querying the OPEN_MODE column in the V$PDBS view. You can view the status of a PDB by querying the STATUS column of the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view.

   A new default service is created for the PDB. The service has the same name as the PDB and can be used to access the PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

3. Open the new PDB in read/write mode.

   You must open the new PDB in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new PDB into the CDB. An error is returned if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode. After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL.

4. Back up the PDB.
A PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up. A local user with the name of the specified local administrator is created and granted the PDB_DBA common role locally in the PDB. If this user was not granted administrator privileges during PDB creation, then use the SYS and SYSTEM common users to administer to the PDB.

**Note:**

If an error is returned during PDB creation, then the PDB being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check a PDB’s state by querying the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view, and you can learn more about PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable PDB can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before a PDB with the same name as the unusable PDB can be created.

**See Also:**

- "About Container Access in a CDB"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs" for more information
- Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide for information about backing up a PDB

### 6.3 Creating a PDB: Examples

These examples create a new PDB named `salespdb` and a `salesadm` local administrator given different factors.

In addition to creating the `salespdb` PDB, this statement grants the PDB_DBA role to the PDB administrator `salesadm` and grants the specified predefined Oracle roles to the PDB_DBA role locally in the PDB.

In each example, the root to which the new PDB belongs depends on the current container when the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is run:

- When the current container is the CDB root, the new PDB is created in the CDB root.
- When the current container is an application root in an application container, the new PDB is created as an application PDB in the application root.

### 6.3.1 Creating a PDB Using No Clauses: Example

This example shows the simplest way to create a PDB.

This example assumes the following factors:

- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
• The PDB does not require a default tablespace.
• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
• The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled for the CDB, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files associated with the PDB seed or application seed will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

• No predefined Oracle roles need to be granted to the PDB_DBA role.

The following statement creates the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb ADMIN USER salesadm IDENTIFIED BY pwd;
```

---

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about using Oracle Managed Files
- *Oracle Database Reference* for information about the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* for guidelines about choosing passwords

---

### 6.3.2 Creating a PDB and Granting Predefined Oracle Roles to the PDB Administrator: Example

This example uses the ROLES parameter to grant a predefined role.

This example assumes the following factors:

• Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
• The PDB does not require a default tablespace.
• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
• The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files associated with the PDB seed or application seed will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.
• The PDB_DBA role should be granted the following predefined Oracle role locally: DBA.

The following statement creates the PDB:

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb
ADMIN USER salesadm IDENTIFIED BY password
    ROLES=(DBA);

See Also:
• Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about using Oracle Managed Files
• Oracle Database Reference for information about the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter
• Oracle Database Security Guide for guidelines about choosing passwords

6.3.3 Creating a PDB Using Multiple Clauses: Example

This example creating a PDB using the STORAGE, DEFAULT TABLESPACE, PATH_PREFIX, and FILE_NAME_CONVERT clauses.

This example assumes the following factors:

• Storage limits must be enforced for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.

• A default permanent tablespace is required for any non-administrative users for which you do not specify a different permanent tablespace. Specifically, this example creates a default permanent tablespace named sales with the following characteristics:
  – The single data file for the tablespace is sales01.dbf, and the statement creates it in the /disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb directory.
  – The SIZE clause specifies that the initial size of the tablespace is 250 megabytes.
  – The AUTOEXTEND clause enables automatic extension for the file.

• The path prefix must be added to the PDB directory object paths. Therefore, the PATH_PREFIX clause is required. In this example, the path prefix /disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/ is added to the PDB’s directory object paths.

• The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause will not be used, Oracle Managed Files is not enabled, and the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is not set. Therefore, the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is required. Specify the location of the data files for the PDB seed or application seed on your system. In this example, Oracle Database copies the files from /disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed to /disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb.
• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

• No predefined Oracle roles need to be granted to the PDB_DBA role.

The following statement creates the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb
  ADMIN USER salesadm IDENTIFIED BY password
  STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
  DEFAULT TABLESPACE sales
    DATAFILE '/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/sales01.dbf' SIZE 250M
    AUTOEXTEND ON
  PATH_PREFIX = '/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/'
  FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/',
                        '/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/');
```

See Also:

• “Example 18-6” to learn how to view the location of the data files for the PDB seed or application seed

• Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for more information about the DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause

• Oracle Database Security Guide for guidelines about choosing passwords
7

Cloning a PDB

You can create a PDB by cloning a local or remote PDB.

7.1 About Cloning a PDB

Cloning means creating a new PDB from a source PDB.

A typical use case is development testing. You can create one or more clones of a PDB and safely test them in isolation. For example, you might test a new or modified application on a cloned PDB before using the application with a production PDB.

See Also:

Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide to learn about cloning a source with encrypted data or a keystore set

7.1.1 How Cloning Works

This technique creates a new PDB from a source PDB. The process automatically plugs the new PDB into the CDB.

To use this technique, you must specify the source in a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement. The source can be a local or remote PDB.

The target PDB is the copy of the source PDB. The copy is called a clone PDB.

The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement copies the files associated with the source to a new location and associates the files with the target PDB. When the CDB is in ARCHIVELOG mode and local undo mode, the source PDB can be open in read/write mode and operational during the cloning process. This technique is known as hot cloning.

Note:

If you clone a PDB, and if the source database has encrypted data or a keystore set, then you must provide the keystore password by including the keystore identified by keystore_password clause in the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM SQL statement. You must provide this password even if the source database is using an auto-login software keystore. You can determine whether the source database has encrypted data or a keystore by querying the DBA_ENCRYPTED_COLUMNS data dictionary view.

In all cloning scenarios, when you run the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement in the application root, the clone PDB is created in the application container. The
application name and version of the source PDB must match the application name and version of the application container.

The following graphic illustrates how this technique creates a new application PDB in an application container by cloning a local source application PDB. The source PDB can also be a PDB plugged into the local CDB root, a PDB plugged into a remote CDB root, or an application PDB plugged into a remote application root.

Figure 7-1  Clone a PDB in an Application Container

See Also:
"PDB Storage"

7.1.2 User Interface for PDB Cloning

All forms of PDB cloning use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.

Cloning requires specifying the source PDB in a `FROM` clause. The following table summarizes the most important clauses.
Table 7-1  CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE Options for PDB Cloning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Cloning Operation</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USING_snapshot</td>
<td>Creates a clone from a PDB-level snapshot (ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT). Specify the PDB snapshot name, SCN, or timestamp.</td>
<td>“Clones from PDB Snapshots”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>You cannot create a snapshot copy PDB that is based on a PDB snapshot by including both the USING SNAPSHOT clause and the SNAPSHOT COPY clause. However, you can create a clone based on a PDB snapshot with USING SNAPSHOT, and then create a SNAPSHOT COPY PDB from the clone.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFRESH MODE</td>
<td>Creates a refreshable clone PDB.</td>
<td>“Refreshable Clone PDBs”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAPSHOT COPY</td>
<td>Creates a snapshot copy PDB from a storage-managed snapshot (not ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT). Storage-managed snapshots are only supported on specific file systems. A snapshot copy PDB does not include a complete copy of the source data files. Rather, Oracle Database creates a storage-level snapshot of the underlying file system, and then creates the clone PDB from the snapshot. Unlike a standard clone PDB, the snapshot copy PDB is dependent on the storage snapshot. Therefore, you cannot unplug a snapshot copy PDB from the CDB root or plug it in to an application root. Also, you cannot drop the storage snapshot on which the PDB is based. Instead, you must materialize the snapshot copy PDB, which converts it into a full PDB with non-sparse files.</td>
<td>“Snapshot Copy PDBs”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USING MIRROR COPY</td>
<td>Creates a new PDB by splitting the ASM storage mirror specified by mirror_name. You can only split one PDB from a prepared mirror copy. If you want to create additional splits, you must prepare a new mirror copy.</td>
<td>Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator’s Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:

- "Materializing a Snapshot Copy PDB"
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference to learn more about CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clauses

7.2 Cloning a Local PDB

You can clone a local PDB by running a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement and specifying a local PDB in the FROM statement.

7.2.1 About Cloning a Local PDB

The simplest form of cloning copies a PDB from a CDB into the same CDB.
**Note:**

You cannot use the `FROM` clause in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create a PDB from the PDB seed (`PDB$SEED`) or from an application seed.

The following figure illustrates how to clone a local PDB.

**Figure 7-2  Clone a Local PDB**

Before cloning a PDB, address the questions that apply to cloning a PDB in "Table 5-3". The table describes which `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clauses to specify based on different factors.

Starting in Oracle Database 18c, you can clone a local PDB using DBCA.

**See Also:**

- "Determining the Current Container ID or Name"
- "Creating a PDB from Scratch" to learn how to create a PDB from the seed
- "Cloning a Local PDB Using DBCA: Example"
- "Creating an Application PDB"
7.2.2 Cloning a Local PDB: Basic Steps

You can clone a local PDB by executing `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` and specify the source PDB in the `FROM` clause.

Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- Complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation".
- The current user must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege in both the root and the source PDB.
- The source PDB cannot be closed.
- If the CDB is not in local undo mode, then the source PDB must be in open read-only mode. This requirement does not apply if the CDB is in local undo mode.
- If the CDB is not in `ARCHIVELOG` mode, then the source PDB must be in open read-only mode. This requirement does not apply if the CDB is in `ARCHIVELOG` mode.
- If you are creating an application PDB, then the application PDB must have the same character set and national character set as the application container.

If the database character set of the CDB is AL32UTF8, then the character set and national character set of the application container can be different from the CDB. However, all application PDBs in an application container must have same character set and national character set, matching that of the application container.

Note:

You can use the `REFRESH MODE` clause to create a refreshable clone of a local PDB, but only if the database link loops back to the same CDB.

To clone a local PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or an application root.

   When the current container is the CDB root, the PDB is created in the CDB. When the current container is an application root, the application PDB is created in the application container.

2. Run the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, and specify the source PDB in the `FROM` clause. Specify other clauses when required.

   After cloning a local PDB, the source and target PDBs are in the same CDB. The new PDB is in mounted mode, and its status is `NEW`. You can view the open mode of a PDB by querying the `OPEN_MODE` column in the `V$PDBS` view. You can view the status of a PDB by querying the `STATUS` column of the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view.

   A new default service is created for the PDB. The service has the same name as the PDB and can be used to access the PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

3. Open the new PDB in read/write mode.
You must open the new PDB in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new PDB into the CDB. An error is returned if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode. After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL.

4. Back up the new PDB.

A PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

___

**Note:**

If an error is returned during PDB creation, then the PDB being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check the PDB state by querying the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view. You can learn more about PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable PDB can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before you can create a PDB with the same name as the unusable PDB.

---

**See Also:**

- "About the Current Container" and "About Container Access in a CDB"
- "About the CDB Undo Mode"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
- Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide to learn how to back up a PDB

---

### 7.2.3 After Cloning a Local PDB

Certain rules regarding users and tablespaces apply after cloning a local PDB.

Users in the new PDB who used the default temporary tablespace of the source PDB use the default temporary tablespace of the new PDB. Users who used nondefault temporary tablespaces in the PDB continue to use the same local temporary tablespaces in the cloned PDB.

---

**See Also:**

- "About Managing Tablespaces in a CDB"

---

### 7.2.4 Cloning a Local PDB: Examples

The following examples clone a local source PDB named pdb1 to a target PDB named pdb2 given different factors.

In each example, the root to which the new PDB belongs depends on the current container when the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is run:
• When the current container is the CDB root, the database creates the PDB in the CDB root.
• When the current container is an application root in an application container, the database creates an application PDB in the application root.

7.2.4.1 Cloning a Local PDB Using No Clauses: Example

This example shows the simplest way to clone a PDB.

This example assumes the following factors:

• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
• The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. Therefore, the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is not required. The files will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.
• Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

The following statement clones the pdb2 PDB from the pdb1 PDB:

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb2 FROM pdb1;

See Also:

• Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for more information about Oracle Managed Files
• Oracle Database Reference for information about the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter

7.2.4.2 Cloning a Local PDB Using DBCA: Example

This example clones a PDB using the silent mode of DBCA. Hot cloning is supported.

This example assumes the following factors:

• The source CDB is a single-instance database with the SID orcl.
• The source PDB is pdb1. You intend for pdb1 to remain open during the cloning operation, which means that local undo and ARCHIVELOG mode are enabled in the CDB. Otherwise, DBCA closes the PDB during the clone operation, and after receiving confirmation, opens the source PDB in read-only mode.
• The new PDB is pdb2.
• You are running DBCA in noninteractive mode.
The following command clones the pdb2 PDB from the pdb1 PDB:

```
./dbca -silent
-createpluggabledatabase
-sourcedb orcl
-createpdbfrom PDB
-pdbName pdb2
-sourcepdb pdb1
```

See Also:
Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for the DBCA command reference

7.2.4.3 Cloning a Local PDB with the PATH_PREFIX Clause: Example

This example explains how to clone a local PDB with the PATH_PREFIX, FILE_NAME_CONVERT, and SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clauses.

This example assumes the following factors:

- The path prefix must be added to the PDB's directory object paths. Therefore, the PATH_PREFIX clause is required. In this example, the path prefix /disk2/oracle/pdb2/ is added to the PDB's directory object paths.
- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is required to specify the target locations of the copied files. In this example, the files are copied from /disk1/oracle/pdb1 to /disk2/oracle/pdb2.

The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause is not used, and neither Oracle Managed Files nor the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is used to specify the target locations of the copied files.

To view the location of the data files for a PDB, run the query in "Example 18-6".

- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.
- The PDB that is being cloned (pdb1) has two user-defined services: salesrep_ca and orders_ca for the sales representatives and order entry personnel in California. The new services will be for the sales representatives and order entry personnel in Oregon, and the service names will be renamed to salesrep_or and orders_or, respectively, in the cloned PDB (pdb2).
- Future tablespaces created within the PDB will be created with the NOLOGGING attribute by default. This feature is available starting with Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.2).

The following statement clones the pdb2 PDB from the pdb1 PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb2 FROM pdb1
  PATH_PREFIX = '/disk2/oracle/pdb2/
  FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/pdb1/', '/disk2/oracle/pdb2/')
```
7.2.4.4 Cloning a Local PDB Using the STORAGE Clause: Example

This example clones a local PDB using the FILE_NAME_CONVERT, STORAGE, and SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clauses.

This example assumes the following factors:

- The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is required to specify the target locations of the copied files. In this example, the files are copied from /disk1/oracle/pdb1 to /disk2/oracle/pdb2.
  
  The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause is not used, and neither Oracle Managed Files nor the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is used to specify the target locations of the copied files.

  To view the location of the data files for a PDB, run the query in Example 18-6.
- Storage limits must be enforced for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.
- The source PDB (pdb1) has two user-defined services: salesrep_ca and orders_ca for the sales representatives and order entry personnel in California. The new services will be for the sales representatives and order entry personnel in Oregon, and the service names will be renamed to salesrep_or and orders_or, respectively, in the cloned PDB (pdb2).
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE_REUSE clause is not required.

The following statement clones the pdb2 PDB from the pdb1 PDB:

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb2 FROM pdb1
  FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/pdb1/', '/disk2/oracle/pdb2/')
  STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
  SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT =
    ('salesrep_ca','salesrep_or','orders_ca','orders_or');
```

7.2.4.5 Cloning a Local PDB with the NO DATA Clause: Example

This example clones the data model definition of the PDB, but does not clone the data in the PDB.

This example assumes the following factors:

- The NO DATA clause is required because the goal is to clone the data model definition of the source PDB without cloning its data.
- The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.
Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter is set. Therefore, the `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause is not required. The process copies the files to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the `STORAGE` clause is not required.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the `TEMPFILE REUSE` clause is not required.

Assume that the source PDB `pdb1` has a large amount of data. The following steps illustrate how the clone does not contain the data of the source PDB when the operation is complete:

1. With the source PDB `pdb1` as the current container, query a table with a large amount of data:

   ```sql
   SELECT COUNT(*) FROM tpch.lineitem;
   
   COUNT(*) 
   --------
   60001215
   
   The table has over sixty million rows.
   ```

2. Clone the source PDB with the `NO DATA` clause:

   ```sql
   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb2 FROM pdb1 NO DATA;
   ```

3. Open the cloned PDB:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb2 OPEN;
   ```

4. With the cloned PDB `pdb2` as the current container, query the table that has a large amount of data in the source PDB:

   ```sql
   SELECT COUNT(*) FROM tpch.lineitem;
   
   COUNT(*) 
   --------
   0
   
   The table in the cloned PDB has no rows.

### 7.3 Cloning a Remote PDB

You can clone a local PDB by running a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, and specifying a database link to the remote PDB in the `FROM` statement.

### 7.3.1 About Cloning a Remote PDB

When the source is a PDB is in a remote CDB, you must use a database link to clone the PDB into the local CDB.
The database link must exist in the local CDB (not the remote CDB). When you issue the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement from the root of the local CDB, you must specify a database link to the remote CDB that contains the PDB being cloned in the `FROM` clause. The database link connects from the local CDB to either to the root of the remote CDB or to the remote source PDB.

The following figure illustrates how this technique creates a new PDB when the source PDB is remote.

**Figure 7-3 Creating a PDB by Cloning a Remote PDB**
Starting in Oracle Database 19c, you can clone a remote PDB using DBCA in silent mode.

### 7.3.2 Cloning a Remote PDB: Basic Steps

You can create a PDB by cloning a remote PDB. After the cloning operation, the source and the target PDB are in different locations.

#### General Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met:

- Complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation".
- The current user must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege in the root of the CDB that will contain the target PDB.
- The source and target platforms must meet the following requirements:
  - They must have the same endianness.
  - The database options installed on the source platform must be the same as, or a subset of, the database options installed on the target platform.
- If you are creating an application PDB, then the application name and version of the source PDB must match the application name and version of the target application container.

#### Prerequisites for Character Sets

- If the character set of the CDB to which the PDB is being cloned is not AL32UTF8, then the source and target must have compatible character sets and national character sets. If the character set of the CDB to which the PDB is being cloned is AL32UTF8, then this requirement does not apply.
- If you are creating an application PDB, then the application PDB must have the same character set and national character set as the application container.

If the database character set of the CDB is AL32UTF8, then the character set and national character set of the application container can differ from the CDB. However, all application PDBs in an application container must have the same character set and national character set, matching that of the application container.

---

**Note:**

Oracle Multitenant does not support a LOB in one container from being accessed by a container with a different character set using data links, extended data links, or the `CONTAINERS()` clause. For example, if the CDB root and `salespdb` have different character sets, then a `CONTAINERS()` query run in the CDB root should not access LOBs stored in `salespdb`.

#### Prerequisites for the Open Mode of the Source PDB

- The source PDB must not be closed.
If the remote CDB is not in local undo mode, then the source PDB must be open in read-only mode. See “About the CDB Undo Mode”. If the remote CDB is not in ARCHIVELOG mode, then the source PDB must be open in read-only mode. If you are creating a refreshable PDB, then the source PDB must be in ARCHIVELOG mode and local undo mode.

Prerequisites for the Database Link

The following prerequisites must be met:

- A database link must enable a connection from the destination CDB (the CDB to which the PDB is being cloned) to the PDB in the source CDB.
- The database link can connect as a common user to the root of the source CDB, or as a common or local user to the source PDB. The source PDB can be either a standard PDB or application PDB.
- The user account specified in the database link must have either of the following privileges:
  - The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE privilege, granted either commonly or locally, on the source PDB
  - The SYSOPER privilege
- In an Oracle Data Guard environment, if you are performing a remote clone of a PDB into a primary CDB, then on the standby CDB set the STANDBY_PDB_SOURCE_FILE_DBLINK initialization parameter. This parameter specifies the name of the database link used in CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE FROM dblink. The standby CDB attempts to copy the data files from the source PDB referenced in the database link, but only if the source PDB is open in read-only mode. Otherwise, you must copy data files to the Oracle Managed Files location on the standby CDB.

To clone a remote PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root of the target CDB or the application root of the target application container.
2. Run the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, and specify the source PDB in the FROM clause. Specify other clauses when required.

After you create the PDB, it is in mounted mode, and its status is NEW. You can view the open mode of a PDB by querying the OPEN_MODE column in the V$PDBS view. You can view the status of a PDB by querying the STATUS column of the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view.

A new default service is created for the PDB. The service has the same name as the PDB and can be used to access the PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.
3. **Note:**

If an error is returned during PDB creation, then the PDB being created might be in an **UNUSABLE** state. You can check the PDB state by querying the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view, and you can learn more about PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable PDB can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before a PDB with the same name as the unusable PDB can be created.

3. Open the new PDB in read/write mode.

You must open the new PDB in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new PDB into the CDB. An error is returned if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode. After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is **NORMAL**.

4. Back up the PDB.

A PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

**See Also:**

- "**Refreshing a PDB**"
- "**Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs**"
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide* for information about backing up a PDB
- *Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration* to learn more about plugging in a PDB in an Oracle Data Guard environment
- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* to learn about the requirements for the compatibility of character sets
- *Oracle Database Reference* for information about the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter

### 7.3.3 After Cloning a Remote PDB

Certain rules regarding users and tablespaces apply after cloning a remote PDB.

The following applies after cloning a remote PDB:

- Users in the new PDB who used the default temporary tablespace of the source PDB use the default temporary tablespace of the new PDB. Users who used nondefault temporary tablespaces in the PDB continue to use the same local temporary tablespaces in the cloned PDB.
- User-created common user accounts that existed in the source CDB but not in the target CDB do not have privileges granted commonly. However, if the target CDB has a common user account with the same name as a common user account in the PDB, then the latter is linked to the former and has the privileges granted to this common user account in the target CDB.
If the cloned or plugged-in PDB has a common user account that does not exist in the target CDB, and if this user does not own objects in the PDB, then Oracle Database drops the user during the synchronization step; otherwise, the user account is locked in the target PDB. You have the following options regarding locked accounts:

- Close the PDB, connect to the root, and create a common user account with the same name. When the PDB is opened in read/write mode, differences in roles and privileges granted commonly to the user account are resolved, and you can unlock the account. Privileges and roles granted locally to the user account remain unchanged during this process.
- Create a new local user account in the PDB and use Data Pump to export/import the locked user’s data into the new local user’s schema.
- Leave the user account locked.
- Drop the user account.

See Also:

- “About Managing Tablespaces in a CDB”
- Oracle Database Security Guide for information about creating a local user
- Oracle Database Utilities for information about using Oracle Data Pump with a CDB

7.3.4 Cloning a Remote PDB: Examples

These examples clone a remote PDB given different factors.

In each example, the root to which the new PDB belongs depends on the current container when the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement is run:

- When the current container is the CDB root, the new PDB is created in the CDB root.
- When the current container is an application root in an application container, the new PDB is created as an application PDB in the application root.

7.3.4.1 Cloning a Remote PDB Using No Clauses: Example

This example clones a remote source PDB named `pdb1` to a target PDB named `pdb2` given different factors.

This example assumes the following factors:

- The database link name to the remote PDB is `pdb1_link`.
- The `PATH_PREFIX` clause is not required.
- The `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause and the `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause are not required.
Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

• Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

The following statement clones the pdb2 PDB from the pdb1 remote PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb2 FROM pdb1@pdb1_link;
```

See Also:

• Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for more information about Oracle Managed Files
• Oracle Database Reference for information about the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter

7.3.4.2 Cloning a Remote PDB Using DBCA: Example

This example uses DBCA to clone a PDB named pdb1 from a remote CDB to the local CDB, where it will be renamed clonepdb1.

Prerequisites

This scenario assumes the following:

• The user in the local database has the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE privilege in the root container.
• The remote CDB is in local undo mode.
• The remote and local CDBs are in ARCHIVELOG mode.
• The common user in the remote CDB to whom the database link connects has the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE, SESSION, and SYSOPER privilege.
• The local and remote CDBs have the same options installed.

Assumptions

This scenario assumes the following:

• You are running DBCA on the host of the CDB that will contain the cloned PDB. The local CDB is named loccd1.
• The remote (source) CDB is named remcdb1 and resides on host remcdb1host. The instance name for the remote CDB is reminst.
• The remote PDB, which is the PDB to be cloned, is named rempdb1.
• The common user c##adminuser_remcdb1 resides in remcdb1.
• The administrative user locSYS has SYSDBA privileges on loccdb1, which is the CDB to which the PDB is being cloned.
• The administrative user remSYS has SYSDBA privileges on remcdb1, which is the CDB that contains the PDB to be cloned.
• After cloning to loccdb1, the PDB will be renamed clonepdb1.

This following silent command clones rempdb1 to loccdb1:

```
./dbca -silent
  -createPluggableDatabase
  -createFromRemotePDB
  -sourceDB remcdb1
  -remotePDBName rempdb1
  -remoteDBConnString remcdb1host:1521/reminst
  -remoteDBSYSDBAUserName remSYS
  -remoteDBSYSDBAUserPassword remsyspwd
  -dbLinkUsername c##adminuser_remcdb1
  -dbLinkUserPassword pwd4dblinkusr
  -sysDBAUserName locSYS
  -sysDBAPassword locsyspwd
  -pdbName clonepdb1
```

See Also:

*Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for syntax and semantics of DBCA commands

### 7.4 About Refreshable Clone PDBs

The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... REFRESH MODE` statement clones a source PDB and configures the clone to be refreshable. Refreshing the clone PDB updates it with redo accumulated since the last redo log apply.

#### 7.4.1 Purpose of Refreshable Clone PDBs

The cloning operation for production PDBs can take significant time. If PDBs are cloned infrequently to avoid a drag on the system, then the cloned data becomes stale. A refreshable clone PDB solves this problem. When a refreshable clone PDB is stale, you can close it and then refresh it with recent redo. When not being refreshed, a refreshable clone PDB can be open read-only. A typical practice is to maintain a “golden master” refreshable clone of a production PDB, take PDB-level snapshots, and then create clones from the PDB snapshots for development and testing.

You can reverse the roles for source and clone PDBs using an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SWITCHOVER` statement. This capability is useful in the following situations:

- Planned switchover
The CDB hosting the source PDB may experience significantly more overhead than the CDB hosting the clone PDB. To achieve load balancing, you can reverse the roles, making the clone the new source PDB, and the source PDB the new clone.

- **Unplanned switchover**
  The source PDB may suffer an unplanned failure. In this case, you can make the clone PDB the new source PDB, and resume normal operations.

**See Also:**
- "Managing Refreshable Clone PDBs"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* to learn more about `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SWITCHOVER`

### 7.4.2 Automatic and Manual Refresh Modes

You can configure the clone PDB to refresh automatically at set intervals, or you can refresh it manually with the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE REFRESH` statement.

The `REFRESH MODE` clause is supported only in a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM` statement. You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:

- **Specify `REFRESH MODE NONE`, the default, to create a PDB that is not refreshable.**

You can change a refreshable clone PDB into an ordinary PDB by including the `REFRESH MODE NONE` clause in an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement and then opening the PDB in read/write mode. You cannot change an ordinary PDB into a refreshable clone PDB. After a refreshable clone PDB is converted to an ordinary PDB, you cannot change it back into a refreshable clone PDB.

- **Specify `REFRESH MODE MANUAL` to create a refreshable PDB that must be refreshed manually.**

- **Specify `REFRESH MODE EVERY number_of_minutes MINUTES` to create a refreshable PDB that is refreshed automatically after the specified number of minutes has passed.** A refreshable PDB that uses automatic refresh can also be refreshed manually.

**Note:**

- When you create a refreshable PDB, you can set the `REMOTE_RECOVERY_FILE_DEST` initialization parameter in the PDB. This initialization parameter specifies a directory from which to read archive log files during refresh operations if the source PDB is not available over its database link.

- If new data files are created in the source PDB, then the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter must be set in the CDB to convert the data file paths from the source PDB to the clone PDB.
Example 7-1   A REFRESH MODE Clause That Specifies Automatic Refresh

This refresh mode clause specifies that a refreshable PDB is refreshed automatically every two hours (120 minutes):

REFRESH MODE EVERY 120 MINUTES

See Also:

• “Cloning a Remote PDB: Basic Steps"
• "Refreshing a PDB"

7.4.3 Requirements for Refreshable Clone PDBs

Creation of a refreshable clone PDB requires a database link. The database link can point to the same CDB or a different CDB.

A refreshable clone PDB must be in either of the following states:

• Closed
  A refreshable PDB must be closed when a refresh is performed. If it is not closed when automatic refresh is attempted, then the refresh is deferred until the next scheduled refresh. If it is not closed when a user attempts to perform manual refresh, then an error is reported.

• Open in read-only mode
  The refreshable PDB must be kept in read-only mode to prevent out-of-sync changes on the refreshable PDB which do not occur on the source PDB. The refreshable PDB is intended to serve as a clone master and as such must accurately reflect the source PDB at the refreshed point in time.

7.4.4 Creating a Refreshable Clone PDB: Scenario

This scenario creates a refreshable clone named pdb1_ref_cln from a remote PDB named pdb1.

The clone PDB is a copy of the source PDB. You can refresh the clone PDB periodically to update it with any changes made to the source PDB.

Assumptions

This scenario assumes the following factors:

• The database link name to the remote PDB is pdb1_link.
• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
• The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.
- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.
- The refreshable clone will be refreshed automatically every 60 minutes.

**Note:**
To create a refreshable PDB, the source PDB must be in ARCHIVELOG mode and local undo mode.

**To create a refreshable clone PDB:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or an application root.

   When the current container is the CDB root, the PDB is created in the CDB. When the current container is an application root, the application PDB is created in the application container.

2. Execute the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

   The following statement creates pdb1_ref_cln from pdb1:

   ```sql
   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1_ref_cln FROM pdb1@pdb1_link REFRESH MODE EVERY 60 MINUTES;
   ```

**See Also:**

"Managing Refreshable Clone PDBs"

### 7.5 Cloning PDBs from PDB Snapshots

You can create PDBs from PDB snapshots by executing the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING SNAPSHOT statement.

#### 7.5.1 About Cloning PDBs from PDB Snapshots

A PDB snapshot is a point-in-time copy of a PDB. The source PDB can be open read-only or read/write while the snapshot is created. A clone from a PDB snapshot is a full, standalone PDB.

#### 7.5.1.1 PDB Snapshot Carousel

A PDB snapshot carousel is a library of up to 8 snapshots.

The carousel enables you to clone a PDB to a specific SCN or point in time. A typical use case is to restore a PDB snapshot from the carousel, typically the most recent snapshot, and then recover it to the required SCN or timestamp.
7.5.1.2 Creation of a PDB with the USING SNAPSHOT Clause

The **USING SNAPSHOT** clause of the **CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE** statement creates an active PDB from a read-only PDB snapshot.

To view the available PDB snapshots, query the **DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS** data dictionary view. To clone a PDB from a snapshot, specify one of the following values in the **USING SNAPSHOT** clause:

- The unique name of the PDB snapshot
- The PDB snapshot SCN in the following form:

  \[ \text{USING SNAPSHOT AT SCN } \text{scn} \]

- The PDB snapshot timestamp in the following form:

  \[ \text{USING SNAPSHOT AT TIME } \text{timestamp} \]

A clone from a PDB snapshot is a full, standalone PDB. Unlike a snapshot copy PDB, which is based on a storage-managed snapshot, you do not need to materialize a snapshot clone PDB.

**Note:**

If underlying file system does not support storage snapshots, and if **CLONEDB=true**, then you can create a snapshot copy PDB. In this case, the source PDB must be in read-only mode for the life of the snapshot copy PDB, which can be opened in read/write mode.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for the syntax and semantics of the **USING SNAPSHOT** clause

7.5.2 Cloning a PDB from a PDB Snapshot: Scenario

This scenario creates a new PDB from a PDB snapshot by executing **CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING SNAPSHOT**.

**Assumptions**

This example assumes the following factors:
A PDB snapshot carousel exists with 8 daily snapshots of source PDB `salespdb`, named after the weekday, day of the month, and time when they were created: `pdb1_mon_2_1201`, `pdb1_tue_3_1201`, `pdb1_wed_4_1201`, and so on.

All snapshots were created when the source `salespdb` was in read/write mode.

The new PDB will be a clone of a snapshot named `pdb1_wed_4_1201`, which is a snapshot of `pdb1` taken last Wednesday on the 4th of the month at 12:01 a.m.

The `PATH_PREFIX` clause is not required.

The `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause and the `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter is set. Therefore, the `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause is not required. The files will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the `STORAGE` clause is not required.

There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the `TEMPFILE REUSE` clause is not required.

To clone a PDB from a PDB snapshot:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or an application root.
   
   When the current container is the CDB root, the PDB is created in the CDB. When the current container is an application root, the application PDB is created in the application container.

2. Execute the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING SNAPSHOT` statement.

   The following statement clones the `pdb1_copy` PDB from the PDB snapshot named `pdb1_wed_4_1201`:

   ```sql
   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1_copy FROM pdb1
   USING SNAPSHOT pdb1_wed_4_1201;
   ```

---

**See Also:**

- "Configuring Automatic PDB Snapshots"
- Oracle Database Licensing Information User Manual for details on which features are supported for different editions and services

---

### 7.6 Creating and Materializing Snapshot Copy PDBs

You can clone a PDB from snapshots of the underlying storage. The PDB files are sparse, but you can materialize the files to create a standalone PDB.
7.6.1 About Snapshot Copy PDBs

You can create a **snapshot copy PDB** by executing a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... SNAPSHOT COPY` statement. The source PDB is specified in the `FROM` clause.

A snapshot copy reduces the time required to create the clone because it does not include a complete copy of the source data files. Furthermore, the snapshot copy PDB occupies a fraction of the space of the source PDB.

Storage clones are named and tagged using the GUID of the target PDB. To view clone tags for storage clones, query the `DBA_PDB_HISTORY.CLONETAG` column.

7.6.1.1 Storage Requirements for Snapshot Copy PDBs

If you use `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM srcpdb ... SNAPSHOT COPY`, then the source PDB data files must reside in the same storage type.

The behavior of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... SNAPSHOT COPY` command depends on the following rules:

1. If the file system supports storage-managed snapshots, then the snapshot copy PDB is based on a storage-level copy of the underlying file system. The snapshot copy PDB contains sparse files. The copy-on-write technology means that only modified blocks require additional storage on disk.

2. If the file system does not support storage snapshots, then the algorithm is as follows:
   - If the storage system uses Oracle Exadata sparse disk groups, then Oracle Database creates a snapshot copy PDB. However, the source PDB must remain read-only for the lifetime of the snapshot copy PDB.
   - If the storage system does not use Oracle Exadata sparse disk groups, then the behavior is as follows:
     - If `CLONEDB=true`, then the underlying file system for the source PDB files can be any local file system, network file system (NFS), or clustered file system that has Direct NFS enabled and supports sparse files. Most UNIX systems meet these requirements, including Oracle ACFS and ZFS.

When `CLONEDB=true`, the open mode of the source PDB has the following effects:

* If the source PDB is open in read-only mode, then Oracle Database creates a snapshot copy PDB using copy-on-write technology. The snapshot copy PDB contains sparse files, not full copies.
* If the source PDB is not open in read-write mode, then Oracle Database issues an error.

Direct NFS Client enables an Oracle database to access network attached storage (NAS) devices directly, rather than using the operating system kernel NFS client. If the files of the source PDB are stored on Direct NFS Client storage, then the following additional requirements must be met:

* The source PDB files must be located on an NFS volume.
• Storage credentials must be stored in a Transparent Data Encryption keystore.

• The storage user must have the privileges required to create and destroy snapshots on the volume that hosts the files of the source PDB.

• **Credentials must be stored in the keystore using an** `ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT ADD SECRET` SQL statement.

The following example configures an Oracle Database secret in a software keystore:

```sql
ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT
  ADD SECRET 'secret' FOR CLIENT 'client_name'
  USING TAG 'storage_user'
  IDENTIFIED BY keystore_password WITH BACKUP;
```

Run this statement to add a separate entry for each storage server in the configuration. In the previous example, the following values must be specified:

- `secret` is the storage password.
- `client_name` is the storage server. On a Linux or UNIX platform, it is the name entered in /etc/hosts or the IP address of the storage server.
- `tag` is the user name passed to the storage server.
- `keystore_password` is the password for the keystore.

**Note:**

Snapshot copy behavior and efficiency are vendor specific and may vary between vendors.

**See Also:**

- Oracle Automatic Storage Management Cluster File System Administrator's Guide for more information about Oracle ACFS
- Oracle Grid Infrastructure Installation and Upgrade Guide for your operating system for information about Direct NFS Client
- Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide for more information about Transparent Data Encryption
- My Oracle Support Note 1597027.1 for more information about supported platforms for snapshot cloning of PDBs
- Oracle Exadata System Software User's Guide for information about Exadata support for PDB clones created using the `SNAPSHOT_COPY` clause

### 7.6.1.2 Restrictions for Snapshot Copy PDBs

You cannot drop the storage snapshot on which a snapshot copy PDB is based.
You cannot unplug snapshot copy PDBs from the CDB root or application container. Attempting to unplug a snapshot copy PDB results in an error. However, you can materialize the snapshot copy PDB, which turns it into a standalone PDB, and then drop it.

**Note:**

A PDB created with the **USING SNAPSHOT** clause and a PDB created with the **SNAPSHOT COPY** clause have different properties. You cannot specify both clauses in a single CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE command. The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... USING SNAPSHOT clause creates a full, standalone PDB that does not need to be materialized. The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... SNAPSHOT COPY clause creates a sparse PDB that must be materialized if you want to drop the storage-level snapshot on which it is based.

### 7.6.2 Creating a Snapshot Copy PDB: Scenario

This scenario create a snapshot copy PDB by specify the **SNAPSHOT COPY** clause in CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE.

**Assumptions**

This scenario assumes the following factors:

- The new snapshot copy PDB will be created from a PDB named `pdb1`.
- The underlying file system supports storage snapshots. Thus, you do not need to set the **CLONEDB** initialization parameter.
- The **PATH_PREFIX** clause is not required.
- The **FILE_NAME_CONVERT** clause and the **CREATE_FILE_DEST** clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the **PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT** initialization parameter is set. Therefore, the **FILE_NAME_CONVERT** clause is not required. The files will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the **STORAGE** clause is not required.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the **TEMPFILE REUSE** clause is not required.

**To create a snapshot copy PDB:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or an application root. When the current container is the CDB root, the PDB is created in the CDB. When the current container is an application root, the application PDB is created in the application container.

2. Execute the **CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SNAPSHOT COPY** statement.
The following statement clones the pdb1_snap_copy PDB from pdb1:

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1_snap_copy FROM pdb1 SNAPSHOT COPY;
```

As long as pdb1_snap_copy exists, you cannot drop the storage snapshot on which pdb1_snap_copy is based.

---

**See Also:**

"Materializing a Snapshot Copy PDB"

### 7.6.3 Materializing a Snapshot Copy PDB

You can materialize a snapshot copy PDB by running an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `MATERIALIZE` clause. Materializing a snapshot copy PDB copies all data blocks.

Materializing a snapshot copy PDB transforms the snapshot copy PDB, which uses sparse files, into a full PDB, which does not use sparse files. The materialized PDB is no longer dependent on the source PDB, which can be dropped or changed to a different open mode.

For example, if pdb1_snap_copy is a snapshot copy PDB, then you can materialize it into a standalone PDB by running an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE MATERIALIZE` command. After materialization, pdb1_snap_copy no longer depends on the storage-level snapshot, enabling you to drop it.

**To materialize a PDB snapshot:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the snapshot copy PDB that is being materialized.
2. Run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `MATERIALIZE` clause.

**Example 7-2 Materializing a Snapshot Copy PDB**

The following SQL statement materializes a snapshot copy PDB:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE MATERIALIZE;
```

---

**See Also:**

- "About Snapshot Copy PDBs" to learn more about snapshot copy PDBs
- "Creating a Snapshot Copy PDB: Scenario"
- My Oracle Support Note 2627975.1 to learn how to revert the source PDB data file permissions after removing all snapshot clone PDBs
7.7 Creating a Split Mirror Clone PDB

In Oracle ASM, a split mirror is the process of detaching a point-in-time media copy from a parent copy. After the split, updates to the parent do not affect the child copy.

Starting in Oracle Database 18c, the parent copy can be a PDB rather than a storage volume. The split mirror clone PDB resides on the same media as the parent. The principal use case is to rapidly provision test and development PDBs in an Oracle ASM environment.

**Note:**

Oracle ASM flex and extended disk groups are required for split mirror clone PDBs.

Mirror refresh is refreshing a split mirror clone PDB with changes from the parent PDB. In effect, this operation is equivalent to deleting the mirror split, and then taking a new mirror split.

To drop a split mirror clone PDB, enter `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... DROP MIRROR COPY`.

**To create a split mirror clone PDB:**

1. Start SQL*Plus, and connect to the CDB root.
2. Prepare the source PDB by issuing the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... PREPARE MIRROR COPY` statement.
3. Create a clone PDB from the source PDB by issuing the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ... USING MIRROR COPY` statement.
4. Optionally, query `V$ASM_DBCLONE_INFO` view to see the relationship between the source PDB, the cloned PDB, and their file groups.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Automatic Storage Management Administrator's Guide* to learn how to create or drop a split mirror clone PDB
- *Oracle Database Reference* to learn more about `V$ASM_DBCLONE_INFO`
Relocating a PDB

You can move a PDB to a different CDB or application container.

8.1 About PDB Relocation

During relocation, the source PDB can be open in read/write mode and fully functional.

PDB relocation executes an online block level copy of the source PDB data files, redo, and undo while the source PDB is open with active sessions. When the target PDB comes online because of an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN` statement, Oracle Database terminates the active sessions and closes the source PDB.

The following graphic shows the relocation of a common PDB (that is, not an application PDB) to a new single-instance CDB. The source PDB is plugged in to the CDB root, and the target PDB is plugged in to the CDB root. Note that the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE` statement copies the data blocks, undo blocks, and redo blocks to the new location. A database link is required.
When the target PDB is an application PDB or application root, you have the following options:

- You can relocate a PDB into an application container as an application PDB. The target PDB can be in the same CDB or a different CDB.
- You can relocate an application PDB from one application root to another. The target PDB can be in the same CDB or a different CDB.
- You can relocate an empty application root from one CDB to another, but the application root must not have any hosted application PDBs.

The following graphic illustrates how this technique creates a new application PDB in an application container.
When you open the relocated PDB for the first time, Oracle Database drains active sessions on the source PDB and redirects client connections to the relocated PDB services. Opening the relocated PDB initiates the shutdown of the original source PDB. The source and relocated PDBs are never open at the same time.
8.2 Purpose of PDB Relocation

This technique is the fastest way to move a PDB with minimal or no down time. Otherwise, unplugging the source PDB requires a PDB outage until the PDB is plugged in to the target CDB.

When moving a PDB between data centers, or from an on-premises environment to a cloud environment, all the data must physically move. For large PDBs, this process may take considerable time, possibly violating availability components of an SLA. PDB relocation eliminates the outage completely. You can relocate the PDB without taking the application offline, changing the application, or changing network connection strings.

8.3 How PDB Relocation Works

The operation moves the files associated with the PDB to a new location, adds the PDB to the target CDB, and then opens the PDB.

8.3.1 Server Session Draining When Relocating or Stopping PDBs

A key requirement of planned maintenance is draining or failing over PDB sessions so that application work is not interrupted.

Automatic Session Failover

In database-generic session draining, active sessions can exit gracefully under a timer. After the timer has expired, Oracle Database terminates all active sessions, and then reconnects them to the relocated PDB.

Starting in Oracle Database 20c, during planned maintenance, the database may decide that a session is unlikely to drain in the drain window. In this case, the database invokes Application Continuity and fails over the session automatically. The draining feature is enabled by default for all maintenance operations invoked at the database service and PDB levels: stop service, relocate service, relocate PDB, and stop PDB.

Note:

If your application server user a Purge Pool property, then disable this property because it disrupts sessions that are not ready to drain.

Rules for Session Draining

The database uses an extensible set of rules to determine when to drain a database session, which persists until a rule is satisfied. The rules include the following:
- Standard application server tests for validity
- Custom SQL tests for validity
- Request boundaries are in use and no request is active
- Request boundaries are in use and the current request has ended
- The session has one or more session states that are recoverable, and can be recreated at failover

A typical use case is application servers and pooled applications that test connections when borrowing from connection pools, returning connections to the pool, and at batch commits. When draining sessions, the database automatically intercepts the connection test, closes the connection, and then returns a failed status for the test. After receiving the failed status, the application layer can request a different connection. In this way, the application is not disrupted.

**Application Continuity with FAN on Oracle RAC**

For an optimal configuration that minimizes the impact on the client, consider configuring Application Continuity with FAN on the Oracle RAC database. In Oracle Clusterware, the Fleet Patching and Provisioning feature automates PDB relocation. An example of finer-grained relocation in an Oracle RAC environment is service relocation between PDB instances. Oracle RAC and Oracle Clusterware offer a rich high availability environment that further minimizes the impact on connected clients during relocation. For example, shared storage may minimize or remove the necessity to copy data files. Transparent Application Continuity, a mode of Application Continuity, is enabled by default in Oracle Cloud.

**Note:**

In an Oracle Clusterware environment, when relocating a PDB between different CDBs, you must create non-database services using SRVCTL.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide* to learn about Application Continuity, SRVCTL, and Fleet Patching and Provisioning

**8.3.2 Stages of PDB Relocation**

The details of PDB relocation vary depending on the listener networks.
8.3.2.1 PDB Relocation in a Common Listener Network

When the source and target location share a common listener network, forwarding client connections is not necessary because the SQL*Net layer forwards client connections implicitly.

**AVAILABILITY NORMAL**

When the listener network is common, specify the **AVAILABILITY NORMAL** clause in CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE. This option is the default. The following situations are typical use cases for **AVAILABILITY NORMAL**:

- **Shared listener**
  If you use the same listener for the PDB in its old and new locations, then new connections are automatically routed to the new location when relocation completes. This situation is typical of a relocation between CDBs in the same host. In this case, the PDB is re-registered with the listener in its new location. Additional connection handling is not required.

- **Cross-registered listeners**
  If the PDBs use different listeners, and if you employ cross-registration of their respective listeners through configuration of the `local_listener` and `remote_listener` parameters, then relocation is seamless. The availability and location of the PDB’s services are automatically registered with both listeners. This situation is typical of relocation between hosts within a data center, perhaps for load balancing purposes.

In shared and cross registered listener environments, services from all databases are published to the common listener network. For this reason, services for relocated PDBs are immediately known to the common listener network. To avoid service name space collisions, PDB service definitions must be unique in the common listener network.

**Stages of Relocation in a Common Listener Network**

1. **The user issues** CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE AVAILABILITY NORMAL.
   
   This step executes a hot clone of the source PDB from its original location to its target location. The source PDB copies data files, undo blocks, and redo blocks to the target PDB as of an implicit begin SCN marker.

   When this step completes, two transactionally consistent copies of this PDB exist: one in the source container and one in the target container. For the duration of the operation, processing continues uninterrupted on the source PDB. Users of an application or applications connected to the source PDB are unaware that a relocation is underway.

   All existing application connections, and new connections created during this step, continue to connect to the source PDB.

2. **The user issues** ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN.

   The following actions occur in the background:

   a. The target PDB implicitly sets the end SCN marker, and applies any redo or undo required to complete media recovery to satisfy the implicit end SCN marker.
b. When media recovery occurs on the target PDB, Oracle Database initiates active session draining on the source PDB.

c. PDB services are registered with the listener and are available on the target CDB.

d. The source PDB is closed.

e. The target PDB opens in read/write mode.
   
   This step completes the relocation of the PDB to the target CDB. At the end of the operation, connections point to the newly relocated PDB.
   
   After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL. The database returns an error if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode.

See Also:

- Oracle Database Net Services Administrator’s Guide for more information about listener redirects
- Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide to learn more about using Application Continuity to drain and migration sessions before planned maintenance

8.3.2.2 PDB Relocation in Isolated Listener Networks

When independent listeners do not use cross-registration, the listener in the target CDB and source CDB have no knowledge of each other or of their respective published services.

**AVAILABILITY MAX**

The `AVAILABILITY MAX` clause in `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE` implicitly instructs the SQL*Net layer to reconfigure the original listener. This situation may be common when relocating a PDB between data centers. This configuration is intended to be temporary while the Oracle Internet Directory (OID) or LDAP server is updated or the client connections are modified.

If a local listener redirects to a Single Client Access Name (SCAN) listener in an Oracle RAC configuration, then this listener may need to further redirect the client connection request to another cluster node. Multiple redirects are not supported by Oracle Net listeners by default. Because any SCAN listener can route the connection request to any node, set the `ALLOW_MULTIPLE_REDIRECTS_LISTENER_NAME` parameter to the `listener_name` of every SCAN listener, and set it in every `listener.ora` file in the cluster. For example, if the SCAN listeners are named `listener_scan1`, `listener_scan2`, and `listener_scan3`, then the `listener.ora` file on every destination host should have the following settings:

```plaintext
ALLOW_MULTIPLE_REDIRECTS_LISTENER_SCAN1=YES
ALLOW_MULTIPLE_REDIRECTS_LISTENER_SCAN2=YES
ALLOW_MULTIPLE_REDIRECTS_LISTENER_SCAN3=YES
```
Caution:

Do not set the ALLOW_MULTIPLE_REDIRECTS_listener_name parameter for node listeners because it may allow infinite redirection loops in certain network configurations.

Stages of Relocation in an Isolated Listener Network

1. The user issues CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE AVAILABILITY MAX.
   This step executes a hot clone of the source PDB from its original location to its target location. The source PDB copies data files, undo blocks, and redo blocks to the target PDB as of an implicit begin SCN marker.

2. The user issues ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN.
   The following actions occur in the background:
   a. The target PDB implicitly sets the end SCN marker, and applies any redo or undo required to complete media recovery to satisfy the implicit end SCN marker.
   b. When media recovery occurs on the target PDB, Oracle Database initiates active session draining on the source PDB.
   c. The LISTENERNETWORKS initialization parameter is implicitly updated in the source PDB with the forwarding address, and the listener PDB services for the source CDB are updated with the forwarding address.
   d. The target PDB opens in read-only mode while media recovery completes.
      At this stage, only queries of the target PDB are permitted. Queries behave exactly as if they had been run on the source PDB. However, connections attempting DML do not complete.
   e. Read-only connections are immediately forwarded to the new hosting listener, and new read/write connections are forwarded to the new hosting listener, where they spin until the target PDB is opened in a consistent state.
   f. The source PDB executes a SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE, terminating persistent connections.
   g. The target PDB opens in read/write mode.
      This step completes the relocation of the PDB to the target CDB. At the end of the operation, connections point to the newly relocated PDB.
      After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL. The database returns an error if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode.
Note:

An artifact known as a tombstone PDB remains in the source CDB to protect the PDB’s namespace and preserve the listener forwarding configuration until the updates are complete. In the root of the source CDB, the tombstone PDB is visible in V$CONTAINERS with a status of RELOCATED. When you change the application connect strings to provide direct connections to the target PDB, you can drop the tombstone PDB from the source CDB.

See Also:

- “Creating an Application PDB”
- Oracle Database Net Services Administrator’s Guide for more information about listener redirects
- Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide to learn more about using Application Continuity to drain and migration sessions before planned maintenance

8.4 User Interface for PDB Relocation

You can relocate PDBs on the command line using SQL, the DBCA utility, or the Fleet Patching and Provisioning utility.

SQL Statement

The form of the SQL statement is as follows:

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM src_pdb_name@link2src ... RELOCATE AVAILABILITY [MAX | NORMAL]
```

The FROM clause identifies the location of the source PDB. For src_pdb_name, specify the name of the source PDB. For link2src, specify a database link that indicates the location of the source PDB. The database link must have been created in the target CDB, which is the CDB to which the PDB will be relocated. The link can connect either to the root of the remote CDB or to the remote PDB.

The AVAILABILITY clause determines how the database handles client connections.

DBCA

You can relocate a PDB by running DBCA in silent mode. The relocatePDB command performs the relocation.
Table 8-1 relocatePDB Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-remotePDBName remote_pdb_name</td>
<td>The name of the PDB that you intend to relocate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-remoteDBConnString remote_db_conn_string</td>
<td>The net service connection to the remote CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sysDBAUserName sysdbusername</td>
<td>The name of the SYS user in the local CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sysDBAPassword sysdbapassword</td>
<td>The password of the SYS user in the local CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-remoteDBSYSDBAUserName</td>
<td>The name of the SYS user in the remote CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-remoteDBSYSDBAPassword</td>
<td>The password of the SYS user in the remote CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dbLinkUsername dblink_common_user_name</td>
<td>The name of the common user in the remote CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dbLinkUserPassword dblink_common_username_pwd</td>
<td>The password of the common user in the remote CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sourceDB dbname_pdb_toberelocated</td>
<td>The name of the source PDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pdbName pdbtoberecreated</td>
<td>The name of the PDB after relocation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fleet Patching and Provisioning Control (RHPCTL)

In Oracle Grid Infrastructure, you can use Fleet Patching and Provisioning to automate relocation of a PDB from one CDB to another.

See Also:

- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE syntax and semantics
- Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for the DBCA command reference for silent mode
- Oracle Clusterware Administration and Deployment Guide to learn more about Fleet Patching and Provisioning

8.5 Relocating a PDB Using CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE

The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE statement moves a PDB to a different container.

The target CDB (also called the destination CDB) is the CDB to which the PDB is being relocated. The target PDB is the PDB being relocated. After the CREATE
PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE operation completes, Oracle Database moves the PDB from the source CDB to the destination CDB.

General Prerequisites

Address the questions that apply to relocating a PDB in "Table 5-3". The table describes which CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clauses you must specify based on different factors. Also, complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation".

Database Mode and State Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- The source CDB must be in local undo mode.
- In the source CDB, you must save the service and open state of the PDBs in all database instances. Log in to the CDB root as an administrator and issue the following statement:

  ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL SAVE STATE INSTANCES=ALL;

  This step ensures that the PDB relocation operation automatically starts the PDB services in the target CDB.
- If the target CDB is not in ARCHIVELOG mode, then the target PDB must be opened read-only during the operation. This requirement does not apply if the target CDB is in ARCHIVELOG mode.

User Privilege Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- In the target CDB, the current user must have the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE system privilege in the CDB root.
- The following prerequisites apply to the database link:
  - A database link must enable a connection from the destination CDB to the source CDB.
  - If the target is a standard PDB, then the database link must connect to the root of the source CDB. If the target PDB is an application PDB, then the database link must connect to its application root.
  - If the database link user connects to the CDB root in the source CDB, then this user must be a common user. If the database link connects to the application root, then this user can be either a CDB-wide common user or an application common user.
  - The database link user must have either the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE system privilege or the SYSOPER administrative privilege.

Platform and Character Set Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- The platforms of the source CDB and the destination CDB must meet the following requirements:
  - They must have the same endianness.
The database options installed on the source platform must be the same as, or a subset of, the database options installed on the destination platform.

- If the character set of the destination CDB is not AL32UTF8, then the source CDB and destination CDB must have compatible character sets and national character sets.

If the character set of the destination CDB is AL32UTF8, then this requirement does not apply.

**Note:**

Oracle Multitenant does not support a LOB in one container from being accessed by a container with a different character set using data links, extended data links, or the `CONTAINERS()` clause. For example, if the CDB root and `salespdb` have different character sets, then a `CONTAINERS()` query run in the CDB root should not access LOBs stored in `salespdb`.

---

**Application Name and Version Prerequisites**

If you are creating an application PDB, then the source PDB and target application container must have the same application name and version.

**To relocate a PDB:**

1. In SQL*Plus, log in to the target CDB as a user with the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege.

2. Ensure that the current container is the root of the target CDB or target application container.

3. Run the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... RELOCATE` statement with the `FROM` clause.

   Specify the source PDB in the `FROM` clause, and include the `RELOCATE` clause. To redirect connections from the old location of the PDB to the new location, specify the `AVAILABILITY` clause. Specify other clauses when they are required.

   After you relocate the PDB, it is in mounted mode, and its status is `RELOCATING`. You can view the open mode of a PDB by querying the `OPEN_MODE` column in the `V$PDBS` view. You can view the status of a PDB by querying the `STATUS` column of the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view.

   A new default service is created for the PDB. The service has the same name as the PDB and can be used to access the PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

4. Optionally, to determine the status of the file copy operation, query `V$SESSION_LONGOPS`.

   The `OPNAMES` column shows `kpdbfCopyTaskCbk` for the data file copy and `kcrfremnoc` for the redo file copy.

5. Open the new PDB in read/write mode.
This step is required to complete the integration of the new PDB into the CDB. After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL. An error is returned if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode.

6. Back up the PDB.

A PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

Note:

If an error is returned during PDB relocation, then the PDB being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check the PDB state by querying the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view, and you can learn more about PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable PDB can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before a PDB with the same name as the unusable PDB can be created.

See Also:

- "About the CDB Undo Mode"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
- Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide for the compatibility requirements for character sets and national character sets
- Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide for information about backing up a PDB

8.6 Relocating a PDB: Examples

The examples in this section demonstration relocation using SQL and DBCA.

8.6.1 Relocating a PDB from a Remote CDB

This example relocates a PDB named pdb1 from a remote CDB to the current CDB.

In this example, the root to which the new PDB belongs depends on the current container when the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is run:

- When the current container is the CDB root, the new PDB is created in the CDB root.
- When the current container is an application root in an application container, the new PDB is created as an application PDB in the application root.

This example relocates a PDB named pdb1 from a remote CDB given different factors. This example assumes the following factors:

- The current user has the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE system privilege in the root of the target CDB.
• The database link name to the source CDB is lnk2src. This database link was created with the following SQL statement:

   CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK lnk2src CONNECT TO c##myadmin IDENTIFIED BY password USING 'MYCDB';

   The common user c##myadmin has SYSOPER administrative privilege and CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE system privilege in the source CDB.

• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.

• The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

   Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files will be moved to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

• Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.

• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

• Connections should be relocated automatically from the source PDB to the relocated PDB. Therefore, the AVAILABILITY MAX clause is included.

The following statement relocates the pdb1 PDB from the source CDB to the current CDB:

   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1 FROM pdb1@lnk2src RELOCATE AVAILABILITY MAX;

8.6.2 Relocating a PDB Using DBCA: Example

This example uses DBCA to relocate a PDB named pdb1 from a remote CDB to the local CDB, where it will be renamed relpdb1.

Prerequisites

This scenario assumes the following:

• The user in the local database has the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE privilege in the root container.

• The remote CDB is in local undo mode.

• The remote and local CDBs are in ARCHIVELOG mode.

• The common user in the remote CDB to whom the database link connects has the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE, SESSION, and SYSOPER privilege.

• The local and remote CDBs have the same options installed.

Assumptions

This scenario assumes the following:

• You are running DBCA on the host of the CDB that will contain the relocated PDB. The local CDB is named loccdb1.

• The remote (source) CDB is named remcdb1 and resides on host remcdb1host. The instance name for the remote CDB is reminst.
• The remote PDB, which is the PDB to be relocated, is named `rempdb1`.
• The common user `c##adminuser_remcdb1` resides in `remcdb1`.
• The administrative user `locSYS` has `SYSDBA` privileges on `loccdb1`, which is the CDB to which the PDB is being relocated.
• The administrative user `remSYS` has `SYSDBA` privileges on `remcdb1`, which is the CDB that contains the PDB to be relocated.
• After relocation to `loccdb1`, the PDB will be renamed `relpdb1`.

This following silent command relocates `rempdb1` to `loccdb1`:

```
./dbca -silent
    -relocatePDB
    -sourceDB remcdb1
    -remotePDBName rempdb1
    -remoteDBConnString remcdb1host:1521/reminst
    -remoteDBSYSDBAUserName remSYS
    -remoteDBSYSDBAUserPassword remspwd
    -dbLinkUsername c##adminuser_remcdb1
    -dbLinkUserPassword pwd4dblinkusr
    -sysDBAUserName locSYS
    -sysDBAPassword locsyspwd
    -pdbName relpdb1
```

See Also:

`Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide` for syntax and semantics of DBCA commands
Plugging In an Unplugged PDB

You can create a PDB by plugging an unplugged PDB into a CDB.

9.1 About PDB Plugin Operations

To plug in a PDB, specify the `USING` clause of `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE`. This clause specifies an XML metadata file or a compressed archive file (.pdb file).

9.1.1 About the XML File and Archive File

An XML metadata file describes the unplugged PDB and the files associated with the PDB (such as the data files and wallet file). An archive file includes both the XML metadata file and the PDB files.

When the XML metadata file is specified, the XML file includes the full paths of the PDB files. When the .pdb archive file is specified, the XML metadata file contains the relative file names only.

The following figure illustrates how to plug in an unplugged PDB.
The following figure illustrates how this technique creates a new application PDB in an application container.
Figure 9-2  Plugging an Unplugged PDB Into an Application Root

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING

OR

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING

Database Files

XML Metadata File

.PDB File

Database Files

XML Metadata File
When you plug in an unplugged PDB, you must address the questions that apply to plugging in an unplugged PDB in Table 5-3. The table describes which CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clauses you must specify based on different factors.

See Also:
- "PDB Storage"
- "Creating an Application PDB"

9.1.2 Source File Locations When Plugging In an Unplugged PDB

Use the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING statement to plug an unplugged PDB into a CDB.

When you use a .pdb archive file when plugging in a PDB, Oracle Database extracts this file when you plug in the PDB, and places the PDB files in the same directory as the .pdb archive file. Therefore, the clauses that specify the source file locations are not required when you use a .pdb archive file.

When you specify an XML metadata file when plugging in a PDB, this file describes the names and locations of an unplugged PDB source files. The XML file might not describe the locations of these files accurately if you transported the unplugged files from one storage system to a different one. The files are in a new location, but the file paths in the XML file still indicate the old location.

When plugging in an unplugged PDB using an XML metadata file (not a .pdb archive file), use either the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause or the SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause. These clauses are mutually exclusive.

9.1.2.1 SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT Clause

The SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause specifies how to locate PDB files when they reside in a location different from that specified in the XML file.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:
- One or more file name patterns and replacement file name patterns, in the following form:

  'string1' , 'string2' , 'string3' , 'string4' , ... 

  The string2 file name pattern replaces the string1 file name pattern, and the string4 file name pattern replaces the string3 file name pattern. You can use as many pairs of file name pattern and replacement file name pattern strings as required.
When you use this clause, ensure that the files you want to use for the PDB reside in the replacement file name patterns. Move or copy the files to these locations if necessary.

- **NONE** when no file names need to be located because the PDB's XML file describes the file names accurately. Omitting the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause is the same as specifying **NONE**.

You can use the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause only in a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with a `USING` clause that specifies an XML metadata file. Therefore, you can use this clause only when you are plugging in an unplugged PDB with an XML metadata file. You cannot use this clause when you are plugging in a PDB with a .pdb archive file.

**Example 9-1  SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT Clause**

This `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause uses the files in the `/disk2/oracle/pdb7` directory instead of the `/disk1/oracle/pdb7` directory. In this case, the XML file describing a PDB specifies the `/disk1/oracle/pdb7` directory, but the PDB should use the files in the `/disk2/oracle/pdb7` directory.

```
SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/pdb7/', '/disk2/oracle/pdb7/')
```

**See Also:**
- Plugging In an Unplugged PDB
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for the syntax of the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause

### 9.1.2.2 SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY Clause

The `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` clause specifies the source directory of the files that will be used to create the new PDB.

The clause specifies a directory that contains all of the files listed in the XML file. Using this clause is convenient when you have many data files and specifying a `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` pattern for each file is not feasible.

When you plug in a PDB, if the source files are all present in a single directory, then you can specify the directory name in this clause. The directory is scanned to find the appropriate files based on the unplugged PDB's XML file.

You can use this clause to specify one of the following options:

- The absolute path of the source file directory.
- **NONE** when no files should be copied or moved during PDB creation. Omitting the `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` clause is the same as specifying **NONE**.

You can use the `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` clause only in a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with a `USING` clause that specifies an XML metadata file. Therefore, you can use this clause only when you are plugging in an unplugged PDB with an XML metadata file. You cannot use this clause when you are plugging in a PDB with a .pdb archive file.
You can specify this clause for configurations that use Oracle Managed Files and for configurations that do not use Oracle Managed Files.

**Example 9-2  SOURCE_FILEDIRECTORY Clause**

This `SOURCE_FILEDIRECTORY` clause generates file names for the new PDB by using the source files in the `/oracle/pdb5/` directory.

```sql
SOURCE_FILEDIRECTORY = '/oracle/pdb5/'
```

**See Also:**
- Plugging In an Unplugged PDB
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for the syntax of the `SOURCE_FILEDIRECTORY` clause

## 9.2 Plugging In an Unplugged PDB

Plug in a PDB with the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING` statement.

### General Prerequisites

To plug in an unplugged PDB, the following prerequisites must be met:

- Complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation".
- Either the XML file that describes the PDB or the .pdb archive file must exist in a location that is accessible to the CDB.
  
The `USING` clause must specify the XML file or the .pdb archive file. If the PDB's XML file is unusable or cannot be located, then use the `DBMS_PDB.RECOVER` procedure to generate an XML file using the PDB's data files.
- If an XML file (not a .pdb file) is specified in the `USING` clause, then the files associated with the PDB (such as the data files and wallet file) must exist in a location that is accessible to the CDB.
- If the target database for the plugin operation is the primary database in an Oracle Data Guard configuration, then ensure that the standby database can locate the files for the plugged-in PDB.
  
On the standby database, set the `STANDBY_PDB_SOURCE_FILEDIRECTORY` initialization parameter to a location that contains the source data files for instantiating the PDB. If the files are not found, then the standby database tries to locate the files in the OMF location. If not found in the OMF location, then you must copy the data files to the OMF location on the standby database, and restart redo apply on the standby database.

- The source and target CDB platforms must meet the following requirements:
  - They must have the sameendianness.
  - The database options installed on the source platform must be the same as, or a subset of, the database options installed on the target platform.
• If you are creating an application PDB, then the application name and version of the unplugged PDB must match the application name and version of the application container into which the application PDB is being plugged.

Character Set Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites for matching the character sets:

• If the character set of the CDB into which the PDB is being plugged is not AL32UTF8, then the CDB that contained the unplugged PDB and the target CDB must have compatible character sets and national character sets. To be compatible, the character sets and national character sets must meet the requirements specified in Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide. If the character set of the CDB into which the PDB is being plugged is AL32UTF8, then this requirement does not apply.

Note:

Oracle Multitenant does not support a LOB in one container from being accessed by a container with a different character set using data links, extended data links, or the CONTAINERS() clause. For example, if the CDB root and salespdb have different character sets, then a CONTAINERS() query run in the CDB root should not access LOBs stored in salespdb.

• If you are creating an application PDB, then the application PDB must have the same character set and national character set as the application container.

If the database character set of the CDB is AL32UTF8, then the character set and national character set of the application container can be different from the CDB. However, all application PDBs in an application container must have same character set and national character set, matching that of the application container.

To determine whether the preceding requirements are met, use the DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY function. Step 2 in the following procedure describes using this function.

To plug in a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or application root of the target CDB.

When the current container is the CDB root, the PDB is created in the CDB. When the current container is an application root, the application PDB is created in the application container.

2. (Optional) Run the DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY function to determine whether the unplugged PDB is compatible with the CDB.

   a. If the PDB is not yet unplugged, then run the DBMS_PDB.DESCRIBE procedure to produce an XML file that describes the PDB.

   If the PDB is already unplugged, then proceed to Step 2b.
For example, to generate an XML file named `salespdb.xml` in the `/disk1/oracle` directory, run the following procedure:

```plsql
BEGIN
    DBMS_PDB.DESCRIBE(
        pdb_descr_file => '/disk1/oracle/salespdb.xml',
        pdb_name => 'SALESPDB');
END;
/
```

If the PDB is in a remote CDB, then you can include `@database_link_name` in the `pdb_name` parameter, where `database_link_name` is the name of a valid database link to the remote CDB or to the PDB. For example, if the database link name to the remote CDB is `rcdb`, then set the `pdb_name` value to `SALESPDB@rcdb`.

b. Run the `DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY` function.

When you run the function, set the following parameters:

- `pdb_descr_file` - Set this parameter to the full path to the XML file.
- `pdb_name` - Specify the name of the new PDB. If this parameter is omitted, then the PDB name in the XML file is used.

For example, to determine whether a PDB described by the `/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml` file is compatible with the current CDB, run the following PL/SQL block:

```plsql
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
    compatible CONSTANT VARCHAR2(3) :=
        CASE DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY(
            pdb_descr_file => '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml',
            pdb_name => 'SALESPDB')
            WHEN TRUE THEN 'YES'
            ELSE 'NO'
        END;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(compatible);
END;
/
```

If the output is `YES`, then the PDB is compatible, and you can continue with the next step. If the output is `NO`, then the PDB is not compatible: check the `PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS` view to see why it is not compatible.

Note:
You can specify a `.pdb` archive file in the `pdb_descr_file` parameter.

3. If the PDB is not unplugged, then unplug it.
4. Run the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING` statement, specifying the XML file or the `.pdb` archive file in the `USING` clause. Specify other clauses when they are required.

After you create the PDB, it is in mounted mode, and its status is `NEW`. You can view the open mode of a PDB by querying the `OPEN_MODE` column in the `V$PDBS` view. You can view the status of a PDB by querying the `STATUS` column of the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view.

A new default service is created for the PDB. The service has the same name as the PDB and can be used to access the PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

5. Open the new PDB in read/write mode.

You must open the new PDB in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new PDB into the CDB. An error is returned if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode. After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is `NORMAL`.

Opening a PDB upgrades it automatically when a version mismatch occurs between the PDB and the CDB root. The Replay Upgrade on PDB Open optimization, which is the default, avoids manual error correction by re-executing statements stored in capture tables. The mechanism is the same used in application synchronization. When the PDB is opened, the database automatically performs a Replay Upgrade.

6. Back up the PDB.

A PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

---

**Note:**

If an error is returned during PDB creation, then the PDB being created might be in an `UNUSABLE` state. You can check a PDB's state by querying the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view, and you can learn more about PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable PDB can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before a PDB with the same name as the unusable PDB can be created.
9.3 After Plugging in an Unplugged PDB

Certain rules regarding users and tablespaces apply after plugging in an unplugged PDB.

The following applies after plugging in an unplugged PDB:

- User accounts in the PDB who used the default temporary tablespace of the source PDB use the default temporary tablespace of the target PDB. User accounts who used nondefault temporary tablespaces in the source PDB continue to use the same local temporary tablespaces in the target PDB.

- Manually created common user accounts that existed in the source CDB but not in the target CDB do not have privileges granted commonly. However, if the target CDB has a common user with the same name as a common user in the PDB, then the latter is linked to the former and has the privileges granted to this common user in the target CDB.

If the cloned or plugged-in PDB has a common user account that does not exist in the target CDB, and if this user does not own objects in the PDB, then Oracle Database drops the user during the synchronization step; otherwise, the user account is locked in the target PDB. You have the following options regarding locked accounts:

  - Close the PDB, connect to the root, and create a common user account with the same name. When the PDB is opened in read/write mode, differences in roles and privileges granted commonly to the user account are resolved, and you can unlock the account. Privileges and roles granted locally to the user account remain unchanged during this process.

  - Create a new local user account in the PDB and use Data Pump to export/import the locked user's data into the new local user's schema.

  - Leave the user account locked.

  - Drop the user account.
9.4 Plugging in an Unplugged PDB: Examples

These examples plug in an unplugged PDB named `salespdb` using the `/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml` file or the `/disk1/usr/sales.pdb` file given different factors.

In each example, the root to which the new PDB belongs depends on the current container when the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement is run:

- When the current container is the CDB root, the new PDB is created in the CDB.
- When the current container is an application root, the new application PDB is created in the application root's application container.

**Example 9-3  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB Using the NOCOPY Clause**

This example assumes the following factors:

- The new PDB is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the `AS CLONE` clause is not required.
- The `PATH_PREFIX` clause is not required.
- The XML file accurately describes the current locations of the files. Therefore, the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause or `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` clause is not required.
- The files are in the correct location. Therefore, `NOCOPY` is included.
- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the `STORAGE` clause is not required.
- A file with the same name as the temp file specified in the XML file exists in the target location. Therefore, the `TEMPFILE REUSE` clause is required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml'
  NOCOPY
  TEMPFILE REUSE;
```
Example 9-4  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB Using the AS CLONE and NOCOPY Clauses

This example assumes the following factors:

• The new PDB is based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the AS CLONE clause is required. The AS CLONE clause ensures that the new PDB has unique identifiers.

• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.

• The XML file accurately describes the current locations of the files. Therefore, the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause or SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause is not required.

• The files are in the correct location. Therefore, NOCOPY is included.

• Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.

• A file with the same name as the temp file specified in the XML file exists in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb AS CLONE USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml'
   NOCOPY
   TEMPFILE REUSE;
```

Example 9-5  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB Using the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT, NOCOPY, and STORAGE Clauses

This example assumes the following factors:

• The new PDB is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the AS CLONE clause is not required.

• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.

• The XML file does not accurately describe the current locations of the files. Therefore, the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause or SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause is required. In this example, the XML file indicates that the files are in /disk1/oracle/sales, but the files are in /disk2/oracle/sales, and the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is used.

• The files are in the correct location. Therefore, NOCOPY is included.

• Storage limits must be enforced for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.

• A file with the same name as the temp file specified in the XML file exists in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml'
   SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/sales/', '/disk2/oracle/sales/')
   NOCOPY
```
STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
TEMPFILE REUSE;

Example 9-6  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB With the COPY, PATH_PREFIX, and FILE_NAME_CONVERT Clauses

This example assumes the following factors:

- The new PDB is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the AS CLONE clause is not required.
- The path prefix must be added to the PDB's directory object paths. Therefore, the PATH_PREFIX clause is required. In this example, the path prefix /disk2/oracle/sales/ is added to the PDB’s directory object paths.
- The XML file accurately describes the current locations of the files. Therefore, the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause or SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause is not required.
- The files are not in the correct location. Therefore, COPY or MOVE must be included. In this example, the files are copied.
- Storage limits are not required for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml'
  COPY
  PATH_PREFIX = '/disk2/oracle/sales/
  FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/sales/', '/disk2/oracle/sales/');
```

Example 9-7  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB Using the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT, MOVE, FILE_NAME_CONVERT, and STORAGE Clauses

This example assumes the following factors:

- The new PDB is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the AS CLONE clause is not required.
- The path prefix clause is not required.
- The XML file does not accurately describe the current locations of the files. Therefore, the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause or SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause is required. In this example, the XML file indicates that the files are in /disk1/oracle/sales, but the files are in /disk2/oracle/sales, and the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is used.
- The files are not in the correct final location for the PDB. Therefore, COPY or MOVE must be included. In this example, MOVE is specified to move the files.
The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause is not used, Oracle Managed Files is not enabled, and the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is not set. Therefore, the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is required. In this example, the files are moved from /disk2/oracle/sales to /disk3/oracle/sales.

- Storage limits must be enforced for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE_REUSE clause is not required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml'
  SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/sales/', '/disk2/oracle/sales/'),
  MOVE
  FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk2/oracle/sales/', '/disk3/oracle/sales/'),
  STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G);
```

**Example 9-8  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB Using the SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY, MOVE, FILE_NAME_CONVERT, and STORAGE Clauses**

This example assumes the following factors:

- The new PDB is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the AS CLONE clause is not required.
- The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
- The XML file does not accurately describe the current locations of the files. Therefore, the SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause or SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause is required. In this example, the XML file indicates that the files are in /disk1/oracle/sales, but the files are in /disk2/oracle/sales, and the SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause is used.
- The files are not in the correct final location for the PDB. Therefore, COPY or MOVE must be included. In this example, MOVE is specified to move the files.

The CREATE_FILE_DEST clause is not used, Oracle Managed Files is not enabled, and the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is not set. Therefore, the FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause is required. In this example, the files are moved from /disk2/oracle/sales to /disk3/oracle/sales.

- Storage limits must be enforced for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.
- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE_REUSE clause is not required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/salespdb.xml'
  SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY = '/disk2/oracle/sales/'
  MOVE
```
FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk2/oracle/sales/', '/disk3/oracle/sales/')
STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G);

Example 9-9  Plugging In an Unplugged PDB Using an Archive File

This example assumes the following factors:

• The unplugged PDB is in a .pdb archive file named sales.pdb. The archive file includes the XML metadata file and the PDB's files (such as the data files and wallet file) in compressed form, and these files are extracted to the current directory of the .pdb archive file when the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is run.

• The new PDB is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB in the CDB. Therefore, the AS CLONE clause is not required.

• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.

• Storage limits must be enforced for the PDB. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the PDB must not exceed 2 gigabytes.

• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPPFILE REUSE clause is not required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement plugs in the PDB using an archive file:

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb USING '/disk1/usr/sales.pdb'
STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G);
10
Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB

You can create a PDB as a proxy PDB by referencing it in a remote CDB.

10.1 About Creating a Proxy PDB

A proxy PDB provides access to a PDB in a remote CDB. It is analogous to a symbolic link.

The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement creates a proxy PDB by referencing a PDB in a different CDB, which is called the referenced PDB. You can use a proxy PDB when you want a local context for a remote PDB. In addition, when application containers in different CDBs have the same application, you can keep their application roots synchronized with a proxy PDB.

To use this technique, run the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement in the CDB that will contain the proxy PDB. You must include:

- The `AS PROXY` clause to specify that you are creating a proxy PDB.
- An `FROM` clause that specifies the PDB that the proxy PDB is referencing.
- A database link to the current location of the referenced PDB in the `FROM` clause. The database link must be created in the root of the CDB that will contain the proxy PDB, and the database link connects either to the root of remote CDB or to the remote referenced PDB.

The following figure illustrates how this technique creates a proxy PDB that references a PDB in a remote CDB.
You can create a proxy PDB in an application container. To do so, the referenced PDB must be an application root or an application PDB in an application container in a different CDB. The database link must be created in the root of the application container that will contain the proxy PDB, and the database link connects either to the root of remote application container or to the remote referenced application PDB.

The following graphic illustrates how this technique creates a proxy PDB in an application container based on a remote referenced PDB in an application container.
Figure 10-2  Create a Remote Proxy PDB in an Application Container

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... AS PROXY ... FROM

Referenced PDB's SYSTEM and SYSAUX Files

Copy to New Location

Proxy PDB's SYSTEM and SYSAUX Files

CDB

Root (CDB$ROOT)

Seed (PDB$SEED)

Application Seed

Application Root

Application PDBs

PDBs and Application Containers

Reference

Database Link

CDB

Root (CDB$ROOT)

Seed (PDB$SEED)

Application Seed

Application Root

Application PDBs

PDBs and Application Containers

Reference

Database Link

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... AS PROXY ... FROM

Referenced PDB's SYSTEM and SYSAUX Files

Copy to New Location

Proxy PDB's SYSTEM and SYSAUX Files
Before creating a proxy PDB, address the questions that apply to creating a proxy PDB in "Table 5-3". The table describes which `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clauses` you must specify based on different factors.

See Also:
- "PDB Storage"
- "Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB"

10.1.1 Proxy PDBs and SQL Statements

As a rule, when the proxy PDB is the current container, SQL statements submitted for execution in the proxy PDB are executed in the referenced PDB.

The results of the remote execution are returned to the proxy PDB. For example, data definition language (DDL) statements, data manipulation language (DML) statements, and queries executed in the proxy PDB are sent to the referenced PDB for execution, and the results are returned to the proxy PDB.

There is one exception to the rule. When the proxy PDB is the current container, and when you execute `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` and `ALTER DATABASE` statements, these statements only affect the proxy PDB. They are not sent to the referenced PDB for execution. Similarly, when the current container is the root to which the proxy PDB belongs, `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements only affect the proxy PDB. For example, an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement executed in a CDB root, application root, or proxy PDB can open or close a proxy PDB, but this statement does not open or close the referenced PDB.

10.1.2 Proxy PDBs and Database Links

A database link is required when you create a proxy PDB.

After the proxy PDB is created, the database link specified during creation is no longer used by the proxy PDB. Instead, the proxy PDB communicates directly with the referenced PDB.

This direct communication requires the port number and host name of the listener of the CDB that contains the referenced PDB. During proxy PDB creation, the proxy PDB uses the following values by default:

- **Listener port number**: 1521
  If the referenced PDB's listener does not use the default port number, then you must use the `PORT` clause to specify the listener's port number. You can specify the port number when you create the proxy PDB, or you can alter the proxy PDB to change the port number.

- **Listener host name**: The host name of the CDB that contains the referenced PDB
  If the referenced PDB's listener does not use the default host name, then you must use the `HOST` clause to specify the listener's host name. You can specify the host name when you create the proxy PDB, or you can alter the proxy PDB to change the host name.
Related Topics

- **Proxy PDBs and the Listener**
  The host name and port number settings for a PDB are important only if proxy PDBs will reference the PDB.

- **Modifying the Listener Settings of a Referenced PDB**
  A PDB that is referenced by a proxy PDB is called a referenced PDB.

### 10.1.3 Proxy PDBs and Authentication

Only password authentication is supported for sessions in a proxy PDB.

### 10.1.4 Proxy PDBs and the Listener

The host name and port number settings for a PDB are important only if proxy PDBs will reference the PDB.

#### 10.1.4.1 HOST Clause

The `HOST` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement specifies the host name of the listener for the PDB being created.

By default, the host name of the listener is the same as the host name of the PDB being created. Specify the `HOST` clause when both of the following conditions are true:

- The host name of the listener is different from the host name of the PDB being created.
- You plan to create proxy PDBs that reference the PDB being created.

A proxy PDB uses a database link to establish communication with its referenced PDB. After communication is established, the proxy PDB communicates directly with the referenced PDB without using a database link. The host name of the listener must be correct for the proxy PDB to function properly.

**Example 10-1  HOST Clause**

HOST='myhost.example.com'

**See Also:**

- "About Creating a Proxy PDB"
- "Altering the Listener Host Name of a Referenced PDB"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* to learn more about the `HOST` clause

### 10.1.4.2 PORT Clause

The `PORT` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement specifies the port number of the listener for the PDB being created.
By default, the port number of the listener for the PDB being created is 1521. Specify the `PORT` clause when both of the following conditions are true:

- The port number of the listener is not 1521.
- You plan to create proxy PDBs that reference the PDB being created.

A proxy PDB uses a database link to establish communication with its referenced PDB. After communication is established, the proxy PDB communicates directly with the referenced PDB without using a database link. The port number of the listener must be correct for the proxy PDB to function properly.

**Example 10-2 PORT Clause**

```plaintext
PORT=1599
```

**Note:**
- "About Creating a Proxy PDB"
- "Altering the Listener Host Name of a Referenced PDB"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* to learn more about the `PORT` clause

### 10.2 Creating a Proxy PDB

Create a proxy PDB by referencing a PDB in a different CDB.

**Prerequisites**

The following prerequisites must be met:

- Complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation".
- The current user must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege in the root of the CDB in which the proxy PDB is being created.
- The CDB that contains the referenced PDB must be in local undo mode.
- The CDB that contains the referenced PDB must be in `ARCHIVELOG` mode.
- The referenced PDB must be in open read/write mode when the proxy PDB is created. The open mode of the referenced PDB can be changed after the proxy PDB is created.
- A database link must enable a connection from the root of the CDB in which the proxy PDB is being created to the location of the referenced PDB. The database link can connect to either the root of the remote CDB or to the remote PDB.
- If the database link connects to the root in a remote CDB that contains the referenced PDB, then the user that the database link connects with must be a common user.
- If the database link connects to the referenced PDB, then the user that the database link connects with in the referenced PDB must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege.
• If you are creating a proxy PDB in an application container, then the following prerequisites apply:
  – The referenced PDB must be an application root or an application PDB in an application container.
  – The application name and version of the proxy PDB’s application container must match the application name and version of the referenced PDB.
  – When the proxy PDB is being created in an application container, a database link must enable a connection from the root of the application container in which the proxy PDB is being created to the location of the referenced PDB. The database link can connect to either the root of the remote application container or to the remote application PDB.
  – If the database link connects to the root in a remote application container that contains the referenced PDB, then the user that the database link connects with must be an application common user.
  – If the database link connects to the referenced application PDB, then the user that the database link connects with in the referenced application PDB must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege.

**Note:**
You can create a proxy PDB in a CDB root that is based on a referenced PDB in an application container.

To create a proxy PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or application root in which the proxy PDB is being created.

   When the current container is the CDB root, the proxy PDB is created in the CDB. When the current container is an application root, the proxy PDB is created in the application container.

2. Run the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. Specify the `AS PROXY` clause, and specify the referenced PDB with the database link name in the `FROM` clause. Specify other clauses when they are required.

   After you create the proxy PDB, it is in mounted mode, and its status is `NEW`. You can view the open mode of a PDB by querying the `OPEN_MODE` column in the `V$PDBS` view. You can view the status of a PDB by querying the `STATUS` column of the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view.

   A new default service is created for the PDB. The service has the same name as the PDB and can be used to access the PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

3. Open the new PDB in read/write mode.

   You must open the new PDB in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new PDB into the CDB. An error is returned if you attempt to open the PDB in read-only mode. After the PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is `NORMAL`.

4. Back up the PDB.

   A PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.
Note:

If an error is returned during creation of the proxy PDB, then the PDB being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check a PDB’s state by querying the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view, and you can learn more about PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable PDB can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before a PDB with the same name as the unusable PDB can be created.

Example 10-3  Creating a Remote Proxy PDB

In this example, the root to which the new PDB belongs depends on the current container when the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is run:

- When the current container is the CDB root, the new PDB is created in the CDB root.
- When the current container is an application root in an application container, the new PDB is created as an application PDB in the application root.

This example creates a remote proxy PDB named pdb1 given different factors. This example assumes the following factors:

- The database link name to the referenced PDB’s CDB is pdb1_link.
- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The SYSTEM and SYSAUX files will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement creates the pdb1 proxy PDB:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1 AS PROXY FROM pdb1@pdb1_link;
```
Removing a PDB

You can remove a plugged-in PDB from a CDB by unplugging it, dropping it, or relocating it.

See Also:
"Relocating a PDB"

11.1 Unplugging a PDB from a CDB

Just as you can plug a PDB into a CDB, you can unplug a PDB from a CDB.

11.1.1 About Unplugging a PDB

Unplugging a PDB disassociates the PDB from a CDB. A PDB is usable only when it is plugged into a CDB.

Unplug a PDB when you want to do any of the following:

• Move the PDB to a different CDB
• Archive the PDB for later use
• Make the PDB unavailable for use

To unplug a PDB, connect to its CDB root or application root and use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to specify either of the following:

• XML file
  An XML file (.xml extension) contains metadata about the PDB after it is unplugged. This metadata contains the required information to enable a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement on a target CDB to plug in the PDB.

• .pdb file
  A .pdb file contains a compressed archive of the XML file that describes the PDB and the files used by the PDB (such as the data files and wallet file). A .pdb file enables you to copy a single, compressed file (instead of multiple files) to a new location to plug the PDB into a CDB.
The following illustration shows how this technique unplugs an application PDB from an application container.
The PDB must be closed before it can be unplugged. When you unplug a PDB, the unplugged PDB is in mounted mode. The unplug operation makes some changes in the PDB’s data files to record, for example, that the PDB was successfully unplugged. Because it is still part of the CDB, the unplugged PDB is included in an RMAN backup.
of the entire CDB. Such a backup provides a convenient way to archive the unplugged PDB in case it is needed in the future.

To completely remove the PDB from the CDB, drop the PDB. The only operation supported on an unplugged PDB is dropping the PDB. The PDB must be dropped from the CDB before it can be plugged back into the same CDB.

**Note:**

You can unplug an application container only if no application PDBs belong to it.

**See Also:**

- "Dropping a PDB"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs" for information about closing a PDB
- "Modifying a PDB at the System Level" for information about initialization parameters and unplugged PDBs
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* for information about common users and local users

### 11.1.2 Unplugging a PDB

Unplug a PDB with a `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... UNPLUG INTO` statement.

**Prerequisites**

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have `SYSDBA` or `SYSOPER` administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user must exercise the privilege using `AS SYSDBA` or `AS SYSOPER` at connect time.
- The PDB must have been opened at least once.

**Note:**

If you are unplugging a PDB that includes data that was encrypted with Transparent Data Encryption, then follow the instructions in *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide*.

**To unplug a PDB:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root of the PDB.
If the PDB is plugged into the CDB root, then the current container must be the CDB root. If the PDB is plugged into an application root, then the current container must be the application root.

If you are unplugging an application container, then the current container must be the CDB root, and the application container must not have any application PDBs plugged into it.

2. Close the PDB.

In an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, the PDB must be closed on all instances.

3. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `UNPLUG INTO` clause, and specify the PDB to unplug and the name and location of the PDB's XML metadata file or .pdb file.

**Example 11-1 Unplugging PDB salespdb Into an XML Metadata File**

This `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement unplugs the PDB `salespdb` and creates the `salespdb.xml` metadata file in the `/oracle/data/` directory:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb UNPLUG INTO '/oracle/data/salespdb.xml';
```

**Example 11-2 Unplugging PDB salespdb Into an Archive File**

This `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement unplugs the PDB `salespdb` and creates the `sales.pdb` archive file in the `/oracle/data/` directory. The `sales.pdb` archive file is a compressed file that includes the XML metadata file and the PDB’s files (such as the data files and wallet file).

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb UNPLUG INTO '/oracle/data/sales.pdb';
```

## 11.2 Dropping a PDB

Drop a PDB when you want to move the PDB to a new CDB or when you no longer need it.

When you drop a PDB, the control file of the CDB is modified to eliminate all references to the dropped PDB. Archived redo log files and backups associated with the PDB are not removed, but you can use Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) to remove them.

When dropping a PDB, you can either keep or delete the PDB’s data files by using one of the following clauses of the `DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement:

- **KEEP DATAFILES**, the default, retains the data files.
  - The PDB temp file is removed even when `KEEP DATAFILES` is specified because the temp file is no longer needed.
  - When `KEEP DATAFILES` is specified, the PDB must be unplugged.

- **INCLUDING DATAFILES** removes the data files from disk.
  - If a PDB was created with the `SNAPSHOT COPY` clause, then you must specify `INCLUDING DATAFILES` when you drop the PDB.
Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The PDB must be in mounted mode, or it must be unplugged.
  See "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs".
  See "Unplugging a PDB from a CDB".
- The current user must have SYSDBA or SYSOPER administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user must exercise the privilege using AS SYSDBA or AS SYSOPER at connect time.

Note:

This operation is destructive.

To drop a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root, or, for an application PDB, the application root that contains the application PDB.
   If the PDB is plugged into the CDB root, then the current container must be the CDB root. If the PDB is plugged into an application root, then the current container must be that application root or the CDB root.
   If you are dropping an application container, then the current container must be the CDB root, and the application container must not have any application PDBs plugged into it.

2. Run the DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement and specify the PDB to drop.

Example 11-3    Dropping PDB salespdb While Keeping Its Data Files

DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb
    KEEP DATAFILES;

Example 11-4    Dropping PDB salespdb and Its Data Files

DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb
    INCLUDING DATAFILES;

See Also:

- "Unplugging a PDB from a CDB"
- "Storage Requirements for Snapshot Copy PDBs"
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference
- Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide for information about RMAN
Creating and Removing Application Containers and Seeds

You can create application containers and application seeds in several different ways. You can also remove application containers from a CDB, and you can remove application seeds from application containers.

See Also:

- "About Application Containers"
- "Administering Application Containers"

12.1 Creating and Removing Application Containers

You can create application containers in several different ways, including using the PDB seed, cloning an existing PDB, and plugging in an unplugged PDB. You can also remove application containers from a CDB.

12.1.1 Creating Application Containers

You can use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create an application container in a CDB.

12.1.1.1 About Creating an Application Container

The `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` statement creates a new application container.

An application container consists of an application root and a collection of application PDBs that store data for one or more applications. The application PDBs are plugged into the application root, and you can optionally create an application seed for quick and easy creation of new application PDBs. The application PDBs and application root can share application common objects.

There are three types of application common objects:

- Metadata-linked application common objects store the metadata for specific objects, such as tables, so that the containers that share the application common object have the same structure but different data.
- Data-linked application common objects are defined once in the application root and shared as read-only objects in the context of hosted application PDBs.
• Extended data-linked application common objects store shared data in the application root but also allow application PDBs to store data appended to that object. The appended data is local data that is unique to each application PDB.

You create an application container by including the `AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` clause in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. You can use the following techniques to create an application container:

• Using the PDB seed
• Cloning an existing PDB
• Relocating a PDB
• Plugging in an unplugged PDB

To create an application container, the current container must be the CDB root and you must specify the `AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` clause in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. You must create the application container using Oracle Managed Files.

**Note:**

An application container cannot be unplugged or dropped if any application PDBs belong to it.

Migrating Existing Applications to an Application Container

You can migrate an application to an application root by creating an application root using an existing PDB. You must complete additional tasks when you are migrating an existing application to an application container. The PDBs that you plug in must contain the application objects, including their data, and you must run procedures in the `DBMS_PDB` package to specify which objects are shared. Also, when application common users, roles, or profiles exist in the application root, you must run procedures in the `DBMS_PDB` package to specify that they are common.

After the application is migrated to the application root, you can create application PDBs in the application root, and create application PDBs using existing PDBs.

**See Also:**

“Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container”

### 12.1.1.2 Preparing for Application Containers

Prerequisites must be met before creating an application container.

• The CDB must exist.
• The CDB must be in read/write mode.
• The current user must be a common user whose current container is the CDB root.
• The current user must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege.
You must decide on a unique application container name for every application container. Every application container name must be unique with respect to all containers in a single CDB, and every application container name must be unique within the scope of all the CDBs whose database instances are reached through a specific listener.

The application container name is used to distinguish an application container from other containers in the CDB. Application container names follow the same rules as service names, which includes being case-insensitive.

You must create the containing using Oracle Managed Files.

If you are creating an application container in an Oracle Data Guard configuration with a physical standby database, then additional tasks must be completed before creating an application container.

If you are migrating an existing application to an application container using installation scripts, then the scripts must be available to run.

If you are migrating an existing application to an application container using a PDB, then it must be possible to clone the PDB to the application root or plug in the PDB into the application root.

See Also:

- "About the Current Container"
- "Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container"
- Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration

12.1.1.3 Creating an Application Container

You can create an application container using the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with the AS APPLICATION CONTAINER clause.

Before creating an application container, complete the prerequisites described in "Preparing for Application Containers".

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root.

2. Run the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, and include the AS APPLICATION CONTAINER clause. Specify other clauses when they are required.

   After you create the application container, it is in mounted mode, and its status is NEW. You can view the open mode of an application container by querying the OPEN_MODE column in the V$SPDBS view. You can view the status of an application container by querying the STATUS column of the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view.

   A new default service is created for the application container. The service has the same name as the application container and can be used to access the application container. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

3. Open the new application container in read/write mode.

   You must open the new application container in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new application container into the
CDB. An error is returned if you attempt to open the application container in read-only mode. After the application container is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL.

4. Back up the application container.
A application container cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

Note:
If an error is returned during application container creation, then the application container being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check an application container's state by querying the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view, and you can learn more about application container creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable application container can only be dropped, and it must be dropped before an application container or PDB with the same name as the unusable application container can be created.

5. If you are migrating an existing application to the application container, then follow the instructions in "Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container".

The application container is created with an application root. You can create application PDBs in the application container.

Example 12-1    Creating an Application Container Using the PDB seed

This example assumes the following factors:

- Storage limits are not required for the application container. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
- The application container does not require a default tablespace.
- The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled for the CDB, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files associated with the PDB seed will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE REUSE clause is not required.
- No predefined Oracle roles need to be granted to the PDB_DBA role.

The following statement creates the application container from the PDB seed:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact AS APPLICATION CONTAINER
    ADMIN USER salesadm IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

Example 12-2    Creating an Application Container by Cloning a Local PDB

This example assumes the following factors:

- The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
• The `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause is required to specify the target locations of the copied files. In this example, the files are copied from `/disk1/oracle/pdb1/` to `/disk2/oracle/hract/`.

The `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause is not used, and neither Oracle Managed Files nor the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter is used to specify the target locations of the copied files.

To view the location of the data files for a PDB, run the query in "Example 18-6".

• Storage limits must be enforced for the application root. Therefore, the `STORAGE` clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the application root must not exceed 2 gigabytes. This storage limit does not apply to the application PDBs that are plugged into the application root.

• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the `TEMPFILE REUSE` clause is not required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement clones `hract` as an application container from `pdb1`:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE hract AS APPLICATION CONTAINER FROM pdb1
  FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/pdb1/', '/disk2/oracle/hract/')
  STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G);
```

Note: If you are migrating an existing application to the new application container, then follow the instructions in "Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container".

Example 12-3 Creating an Application Container by Plugging In an Unplugged PDB

This example assumes the following factors:

• The new application container is not based on the same unplugged PDB that was used to create an existing PDB or application container in the CDB. Therefore, the `AS CLONE` clause is not required.

• The `PATH_PREFIX` clause is not required.

• The XML file does not accurately describe the current locations of the files. Therefore, the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause or `SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY` clause is required. In this example, the XML file indicates that the files are in `/disk1/oracle/payroll/`, but the files are in `/disk2/oracle/payroll/`, and the `SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause is used.

• The files are in the correct location. Therefore, `NOCOPY` is included.

• Storage limits must be enforced for the application container. Therefore, the `STORAGE` clause is required. Specifically, all tablespaces that belong to the application container must not exceed 2 gigabytes.

• A file with the same name as the temp file specified in the XML file exists in the target location. Therefore, the `TEMPFILE REUSE` clause is required.
The following statement plugs in the PDB:

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE payrollact AS APPLICATION CONTAINER
USING '/disk1/usr/payrollpdb.xml'
SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/payroll/',
                             '/disk2/oracle/payroll/')
NOCOPY
STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
TEMPFILE REUSE;
```

**Note:**
If you are migrating an existing application to the new application container, then follow the instructions in "Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container".

**Related Topics**
- **About the Current Container**
  The data dictionary in each container in a CDB is separate, and the current container is the container whose data dictionary is used for name resolution and for privilege authorization.
- **Administering Application Containers**
  You can administer application containers, including application roots and application PDBs. You can also administer the applications installed in application containers.
- **Accessing a Container in a CDB**
  Access a container in a CDB with SQL*Plus by issuing a `CONNECT` or `ALTER SESSION` command.
- **Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs**
  You can modify the open mode of a PDB by using the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` SQL statement or the SQL*Plus `STARTUP` command.

### 12.1.2 Unplugging an Application Container from a CDB

You can unplug an application container from a CDB.

#### 12.1.2.1 About Unplugging an Application Container

Unplugging an application container disassociates the application container from a CDB.

Typically, you unplug an application container when you want to move the application container to a different CDB. Also, you can unplug the application container when you no longer want it to be available.

Unplugging an application container is similar to unplugging a PDB. To unplug an application container, connect to its CDB root and use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to specify an XML file or a `.pdb` file. When you specify an XML file (`.xml` extension), it will contain metadata about the application container after it is
unplugged. The SQL statement creates the XML file, and it contains the required
information to enable a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement on a target CDB to
plug in the application container. When you specify a .pdb file, it contains a
compressed archive of the XML file that describes the application container and the
files used by the application container (such as the data files and wallet file). A .pdb
file enables you to copy a single, compressed file (instead of multiple files) to a new
location to plug the application container into a CDB.

Before it can be unplugged, the application container must not have any application
PDBs plugged into it, and it must be closed. When you unplug an application
container, the unplugged application container is in mounted mode. The unplug
operation makes some changes in the application container’s data files to record, for
example, that the application container was successfully unplugged. Because it is still
part of the CDB, the unplugged application container is included in an RMAN backup
of the entire CDB. Such a backup provides a convenient way to archive the unplugged
application container in case it is needed in the future.

To completely remove the application container from the CDB, you can drop it. The
only operation supported on an unplugged application container is dropping the
application container. The application container must be dropped from the CDB before
it can be plugged back into the same CDB. An application container is usable only
when it is plugged into a CDB.

See Also:

- "Unplugging a PDB from a CDB"
- "Dropping an Application Container"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs" for information about closing a PDB
- "Modifying a PDB at the System Level" for information about initialization
  parameters and unplugged PDBs
- Oracle Database Security Guide for information about common users
  and local users

12.1.2.2 Unplugging an Application Container

Unplug an application container by using an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... UNPLUG
INTO statement.

Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- The current user must have SYSDBA or SYSOPER administrative privilege, and the
  privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user
  must exercise the privilege using AS SYSDBA or AS SYSOPER at connect time.
- The application container must have been opened at least once.
- The application container must not have any application PDBs plugged into it.
- The application container must not have an application seed plugged into it.
To unplug an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root of the CDB.
2. Close the application container.
   - In an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, the application container must be closed on all instances.
3. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `UNPLUG INTO` clause, and specify the application container to unplug and the name and location of the application container’s XML metadata file or .pdb file.

**Example 12-4  Unplugging Application Container salesact**

This `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement unplugs the application container `salesact` and creates the `salesact.xml` metadata file in the `/oracle/data/` directory:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact UNPLUG INTO '/oracle/data/saleact.xml';
```

### 12.1.3 Dropping an Application Container

You can drop an application container when you want to move the application container from one CDB to another or when you no longer need the application container.

Dropping an application container is very similar to dropping a PDB. When you drop an application container, the control file of the CDB is modified to eliminate all references to the dropped application container. Archived redo log files and backups associated with the application container are not removed, but you can use Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) to remove them.

When dropping an application container, you can either keep or delete the application container’s data files by using one of the following clauses in the `DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement:

- **KEEP DATAFILES**, the default, retains the data files.
  - The application container’s temp file is removed even when `KEEP DATAFILES` is specified because the temp file is no longer needed.
- **INCLUDING DATAFILES** removes the data files from disk.
  - If an application container was created with the `SNAPSHOT COPY` clause, then you must specify `INCLUDING DATAFILES` when you drop the application container.

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The application container must be in mounted mode, or it must be unplugged.

See "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs".
To drop an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root.
   
   See "About the Current Container" and "Accessing a Container in a CDB with SQL*Plus".

2. Run the DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement and specify the application container to drop.

   **Example 12-5  Dropping Application Container salesact While Keeping Its Data Files**

   ```sql
   DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact
   KEEP DATAFILES;
   ```

   **Example 12-6   Dropping Application Container salesact and Its Data Files**

   ```sql
   DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact
   INCLUDING DATAFILES;
   ```

**See Also:**

- "Unplugging an Application Container"
- "Dropping a PDB"
- "Storage Requirements for Snapshot Copy PDBs"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* for information about RMAN

---

See “Unplugging an Application Container”.

- The current user must have SYSDBA or SYSOPER administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the application container. The user must exercise the privilege using AS SYSDBA or AS SYSOPER at connect time.
- The application container must not have any application PDBs plugged into it.
- The application container must not have an application seed plugged into it.

**Note:**

This operation is destructive.
12.2 Creating and Removing Application Seeds

You can create application seeds in several different ways, including using the PDB seed, cloning an existing PDB, and plugging in an unplugged PDB. You can also remove application seeds from application containers.

12.2.1 Creating Application Seeds

You can use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to create an application seed in an application container.

12.2.1.1 About Creating an Application Seed

To create a new application seed in an application container, use the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `AS SEED` clause.

You can use an application seed to provision an application container with application PDBs that have the application root's applications installed. Typically, the application container's applications are installed in the application root before seed creation. After the application seed is created, it is synchronized with the application root so that the applications are installed in the application seed. When that is complete, any PDBs created using the application seed have the applications installed. When an application in the application root is upgraded or patched, the application seed must be synchronized with the application root to apply these changes.

An application container can have zero or one application seeds. When you create an application seed using the `AS SEED` clause of `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE`, you do not specify its name. The application seed name is always `application_container_name$SEED`, where `application_container_name` is the name of the application seed's application container. For example, an application seed in the `salesact` application container must be named `salesact$SEED`.

When you create a new application seed, you must specify an administrator for the application container in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. The statement creates the administrator as a local user in the application container and grants the `PDB_DBA` role locally to the administrator.

See Also:

- "Creating a PDB from Scratch"
- "Managing Applications in an Application Container"
- "Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB"
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for syntax and semantics of the `AS SEED` clause
12.2.1.2 Preparing for an Application Seed

Prerequisites must be met before creating an application seed.

Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before creating an application seed:

- The CDB must exist.
  See Creating and Configuring a CDB.
- The CDB must be in read/write mode.
- The application container to which the application seed will belong must be in read/write mode.
- The current user must be a common user whose current container is the application root to which the application seed will belong.
- The current user must have the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege.
- For the application seed to include the application for the application container, the application must be installed in the application root.

See Also:

- "About the Current Container"
- Managing Applications in an Application Container

12.2.1.3 Creating an Application Seed

You create an application seed by including the `AS SEED` clause in the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.

An application seed in an application container is similar to the seed in a CDB. An application seed enables you to create application PDBs that meet the requirements of an application container quickly and easily.

Before creating an application seed, complete the prerequisites described in "Preparing for an Application Seed".

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Run the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, and include the `AS SEED` clause, to create the application seed. Specify other clauses when they are required.
   After you create the application seed, it is in mounted mode, and its status is `NEW`. You can view the open mode of an application seed by querying the `OPEN_MODE` column in the `V$PDBS` view. You can view the status of an application seed by querying the `STATUS` column of the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view.
   A new default service is created for the application seed. The service has the same name as the application seed and can be used to access the application seed. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.
3. Open the new application seed in read/write mode.
4. You must open the new application seed in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new application seed into the application container. An error is returned if you attempt to open the application seed in read-only mode. After the application seed is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL.

5. Perform one or more of the following actions:
   • If the application seed was created from the PDB seed, then switch container to the application seed, and use an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `SYNC` clause to synchronize the application seed. Synchronizing with the application root instantiates one or more of the application root’s applications in the application seed.
   • If the application seed was created from an application root, then switch container to the application seed, and run the `pdb_to_apppdb.sql` script to convert the application root to an application PDB.

These actions are not required when the application seed is created by cloning an application PDB.

6. Close the application seed, and then open it in open read-only mode.

7. Back up the application seed.

An application seed cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

**Note:**

- If an error is returned during application seed creation, then the application seed being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check an application seed's state by querying the `CDB_PDBS` or `DBA_PDBS` view, and you can learn more about application seed creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable application seed can only be dropped.
- When an application in the application root is upgraded or patched in the application root, the application seed must synchronize with the application root to include the changes.

**Example 12-7  Creating an Application Seed from the PDB seed**

This example assumes the following factors:

- The application seed is being created in an application container named `salesact`.
- Storage limits are not required for the application seed. Therefore, the `STORAGE` clause is not required.
- The application seed does not require a default tablespace.
- The `PATH_PREFIX` clause is not required.
- The `FILE_NAME_CONVERT` clause and the `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled for the CDB, or the `PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT` initialization parameter is set. The files associated with
the PDB seed will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPPFILE REUSE clause is not required.
- No predefined Oracle roles need to be granted to the PDB_DBA role.

The following statement creates the application seed from the PDB seed, opens the application seed, switches containers to the application seed, synchronizes the application seed with the applications in the application root, closes the application seed, and then opens the application seed in open read-only mode:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE AS SEED
    ADMIN USER actseedadm IDENTIFIED BY password;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact$SEED OPEN;
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=salesact$SEED;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL SYNC;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;
```

Because the application container name is `salesact`, the application seed name is `salesact$SEED`.

A local user with the name of the specified local administrator is created and granted the PDB_DBA common role locally in the application seed. If this user was not granted administrator privileges during application seed creation, then use the SYS and SYSTEM common users to administer to the application seed.

The application seed was synchronized with the application root when it was created. Therefore, the application seed includes the applications installed in the application root and the application common objects that are part of those applications. When a new application PDB is created using the application seed, the application PDB also includes the installed applications and application common objects.

**Example 12-8 Creating an Application Seed From an Application PDB**

This example assumes the following factors:

- The application seed is being created in an application container named `salesact`.
- The application seed is being created in an application PDB in the application container named `salesapppdb`.
- Storage limits are not required for the application seed. Therefore, the STORAGE clause is not required.
- The application seed does not require a default tablespace.
- The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.
- The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled for the CDB, or the PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files associated with the application root will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

- There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the target location. Therefore, the TEMPPFILE REUSE clause is not required.
Given the preceding factors, the following statement creates the application seed from
the application root, opens the application seed, closes the application seed, and
opens the application seed in open read-only mode:

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE AS SEED FROM salesappdb;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact$SEED OPEN;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;

Because the application container name is salesact, the application seed name is
salesact$SEED.

The application seed was created from an application PDB. Therefore, the application
seed includes the applications installed in the application root and the application
common objects that are part of those applications. When a new application PDB is
created using the application seed, the application PDB also includes the installed
applications and application common objects.

Example 12-9 Creating an Application Seed From an Application Root

This example assumes the following factors:

• The application seed is being created in an application container named salesact.
The application seed is cloned from the root of the application container.

• Storage limits are not required for the application seed. Therefore, the STORAGE
clause is not required.

• The application seed does not require a default tablespace.

• The PATH_PREFIX clause is not required.

• The FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause and the CREATE_FILE_DEST clause are not
required.

Either Oracle Managed Files is enabled for the CDB, or the
PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter is set. The files associated with
the application root will be copied to a new location based on the Oracle Managed
Files configuration or the initialization parameter setting.

• There is no file with the same name as the new temp file that will be created in the
target location. Therefore, the TEMPFILE_REUSE clause is not required.

Given the preceding factors, the following statement creates the application seed from
the application root, opens the application seed, switches containers to the application
seed, runs the pdb_to_apppdb.sql script to convert the application root to an
application PDB, closes the application seed, and opens the application seed in open
read-only mode:

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE AS SEED FROM salesact;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact$SEED OPEN;
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=salesact$SEED;
@$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/pdb_to_apppdb.sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;

Because the application container name is salesact, the application seed name is
salesact$SEED.
The application seed was created from the application root. Therefore, the application seed includes the applications installed in the application root and the application common objects that are part of those applications. When a new application PDB is created using the application seed, the application PDB also includes the installed applications and application common objects.

12.2.2 Unplugging an Application Seed from an Application Container

You can unplug an application seed from an application container.

12.2.2.1 About Unplugging an Application Seed

Unplugging an application seed disassociates the application seed from an application container. You unplug an application seed when you no longer want the application seed to be available.

Unplugging an application seed is similar to unplugging a PDB. To unplug an application seed, connect to its application root and use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to specify an XML file or a `.pdb` file. When you specify an XML file (.xml extension), it will contain metadata about the application seed after it is unplugged. The SQL statement creates the XML file, and it contains the required information to enable a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement on a target CDB to plug it in as a PDB or an application PDB. When you specify a .pdb file, it contains a compressed archive of the XML file that describes the application seed and the files used by the application seed (such as the data files and wallet file). A .pdb file enables you to copy a single, compressed file (instead of multiple files) to a new location to plug in as a PDB or an application PDB.

Before it can be unplugged, the application seed must be closed. When you unplug an application seed, the unplugged application seed is in mounted mode. The unplug operation makes some changes in the application seed’s data files to record, for example, that the application seed was successfully unplugged. Because it is still part of the application container, the unplugged application seed is included in an RMAN backup of the entire CDB. Such a backup provides a convenient way to archive the unplugged application seed in case it is needed in the future.

To completely remove the application seed from the application container, you can drop it. The only operation supported on an unplugged application seed is dropping the application seed. The application seed must be dropped from the application container before it can be plugged back into the same application container. An application seed is usable only when it is plugged into an application container.
12.2.2.2 Unplugging an Application Seed

To unplug an application seed, run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... UNPLUG INTO` statement.

**Prerequisites**

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have `SYSDBA` or `SYSOPER` administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the application container. The user must exercise the privilege using `AS SYSDBA` or `AS SYSOPER` at connect time.
- The application seed must have been opened at least once.

**Note:**

If you are unplugging an application seed that includes data that was encrypted with Transparent Data Encryption, then follow the instructions in *Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide*.

To unplug an application seed:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root of the application container to which the application seed belongs.
2. Close the application seed.
   - In an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, the application seed must be closed on all instances.
3. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `UNPLUG INTO` clause, and specify the application seed to unplug and the name and location of the application seed's XML metadata file or `.pdb` file.
Example 12-10  Unplugging Application Seed salesact$SEED

This ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement unplugs the application seed salesact$SEED and creates the salesact$SEED.xml metadata file in the /oracle/data/directory:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact$SEED
    UNPLUG INTO '/oracle/data/salesact$SEED.xml';
```

12.2.3 Dropping an Application Seed

You can use the DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement to drop an application seed. You can drop an application seed when you no longer need it.

When you drop an application seed, the control file of the CDB is modified to eliminate all references to the dropped application seed. Archived redo log files and backups associated with the application seed are not removed, but you can use Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) to remove them.

When dropping an application seed, you can either keep or delete the application seed’s data files by using one of the following clauses:

- **KEEP DATAFILES**, the default, retains the data files.
  - The application seed’s temp file is removed even when KEEP DATAFILES is specified because the temp file is no longer needed.
- **INCLUDING DATAFILES** removes the data files from disk.
  - If an application seed was created with the SNAPSHOT COPY clause, then you must specify INCLUDING DATAFILES when you drop the application seed.

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The application seed must be in mounted mode, or it must be unplugged.
- The current user must have SYSDBA or SYSOPER administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the application container. The user must exercise the privilege using AS SYSDBA or AS SYSOPER at connect time.

**Note:**

This operation is destructive.

To drop an application seed:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root of the application container to which the application seed belongs.
2. Run the DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement and specify the application seed.
Example 12-11  Dropping Application Seed salesact$SEED While Keeping Its Data Files

DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE salesact$SEED
   KEEP DATAFILES;

Example 12-12  Dropping Application Seed salesact$SEED and Its Data Files

DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE saleact$SEED
   INCLUDING DATAFILES;

See Also:

• "About Container Access in a CDB"
• "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
• "Unplugging an Application Seed"
• "Storage Requirements for Snapshot Copy PDBs"
• Oracle Database SQL Language Reference
• Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide for information about RMAN

12.3 Creating an Application PDB

You create an application PDB by running the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with an application root as the current container.

You can create application PDBs using the same SQL statements that you use to create PDBs in the CDB root. The newly created PDB is an application PDB when the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is run in an application root. The statement must be run in an application root and has an explicit dependency on the application database defined in that application root.

Before creating an application PDB, complete the prerequisites described in "General Prerequisites for PDB Creation". You must also complete the prerequisites for the specific type of PDB you are creating. For example, if you are cloning a PDB, then you must meet the prerequisites PDB cloning.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Run a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

After you create the application PDB, it is in mounted mode, and its status is NEW. You can view the open mode of an application PDB by querying the OPEN_MODE column in the V$PDBS view. You can view the status of an application PDB by querying the STATUS column of the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view.

A new default service is created for the application PDB. The service has the same name as the application PDB and can be used to access the application PDB. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.
3. Open the new application PDB in read/write mode.

4. You must open the new application PDB in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new application PDB into the application container. An error is returned if you attempt to open the application PDB in read-only mode. After the application PDB is opened in read/write mode, its status is NORMAL.

5. Switch container to the application PDB.

6. Use an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with the SYNC clause to synchronize the application PDB.

   Synchronizing with the application PDB instantiates one or more of the application root's applications in the application PDB.

7. Close the application PDB, and then open it in open read-only mode.

8. Back up the application PDB.

   An application PDB cannot be recovered unless it is backed up.

---

**Note:**

- If an error is returned during application PDB creation, then the application PDB being created might be in an UNUSABLE state. You can check an application PDB's state by querying the CDB_PDBS or DBA_PDBS view, and you can learn more about application PDB creation errors by checking the alert log. An unusable application PDB can only be dropped.

- When an application in the application root is upgraded or patched in the application root, the application PDB must synchronize with the application root to include the changes.

---

**Related Topics**

- **Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers**
  You can create PDBs, application containers, and application seeds using a variety of techniques.

- **Administering Application Containers**
  You can administer application containers, including application roots and application PDBs. You can also administer the applications installed in application containers.
Part IV
Administering a Multitenant Environment

You can administer a multitenant environment using SQL*Plus or Enterprise Manager Cloud Control (Cloud Control).
13
Administering a CDB

Administering a multitenant container database (CDB) includes tasks such as accessing a container, modifying a CDB, executing DDL statements, and running Oracle-supplied SQL scripts.

Note:
You can complete the tasks in this chapter using SQL*Plus or Oracle SQL Developer.

See Also:
"Tools for a Multitenant Environment"

13.1 About CDB Administration

Some administrative tasks apply to the entire CDB, whereas others apply to specific containers.

13.1.1 About the Current Container

The data dictionary in each container in a CDB is separate, and the current container is the container whose data dictionary is used for name resolution and for privilege authorization.

The current container can be the CDB root, an application root, a PDB, or an application PDB. Each session has exactly one current container at any point in time. However, a session can switch from one container to another.

Each container has a unique ID and name in a CDB. You can use the CON_ID and CON_NAME parameters in the USERENV namespace to determine the current container ID and name with the SYS_CONTEXT function. For example, the following query returns the current container name:

```
SELECT SYS_CONTEXT ('USERENV', 'CON_NAME') FROM DUAL;
```

You can access a container in various ways. For example, you can use the SQL*Plus CONNECT command, and you can use an ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER statement to switch the container of the current session.

The following rules apply to the current container in a CDB:

• The current container can be CDB$ROOT (CDB root) only for common users.
The current container can be a specific PDB for common users and local users.

The current container can be an application root only for common users or for application common users created in the application root.

The current container can be a specific application PDB for common users, application common users, and local users.

The current container must be the CDB root or an application root when a SQL statement includes `CONTAINER = ALL`.

You can include the `CONTAINER` clause in several SQL statements, such as the `CREATE USER`, `ALTER USER`, `CREATE ROLE`, `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, and `ALTER SYSTEM` statements. Note the following rules about `CONTAINER = ALL`:

- When a SQL statement includes `CONTAINER = ALL` and the current container is the CDB root, the SQL statement affects all containers in the CDB, including all PDBs, application roots, and application PDBs.

- When a SQL statement includes `CONTAINER = ALL` and the current container is an application root, the SQL statement affects all containers in the application container, including the application root and all the application PDBs that belong to the application root. The SQL statement does not affect the CDB root or any PDBs or application PDBs that do not belong to the current application root.

- Only a common user or application common user with the commonly granted `SET CONTAINER` privilege can run a SQL statement that includes `CONTAINER = ALL`.

**See Also:**

- "About Container Access in a CDB"
- "Executing Code in Containers Using the DBMS_SQL Package"
- "Determining the Current Container ID or Name"
- "Namespaces in a CDB"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Security Guide*

### 13.1.2 About Administrative Tasks in a CDB

Common users perform administrative tasks for a CDB.

A common user has a single identity and can log in to the CDB root, any application root, PDB, or application PDB in which it has privileges. Some tasks, such as starting up a CDB instance, can be performed only by a common user.
A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, "database" and "non-CDB" refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, "non-CDB" refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

The following table describes some CDB administrative tasks and provides pointers to the relevant documentation.

### Table 13-1 Administrative Tasks for CDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Starting up a CDB instance</td>
<td>To start a CDB instance, the current user must be a common user whose current container is the CDB root. When you open a CDB, the CDB root is opened, but its other containers are mounted. Use the <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> statement to modify the open mode of one or more containers.</td>
<td><em>Oracle Database Administrator's Guide</em> for information about starting up a database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>&quot;Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs&quot;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>&quot;Modifying a PDB with the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE Statement&quot;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>&quot;About the Current Container&quot;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing processes</td>
<td>A CDB has one set of background processes shared by the CDB root and all containers.</td>
<td><em>Oracle Database Administrator's Guide</em> for information about managing processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing memory</td>
<td>A CDB has a single system global area (SGA) and a single aggregate program global area (PGA). The memory required by a CDB is the sum of the memory requirements for all containers that will be part of the CDB.</td>
<td><em>Oracle Database Administrator's Guide</em> for information about managing memory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Managing security           | You can create and drop common users, application common users, and local users in a CDB. You can also grant privileges to and revoke privileges from these users. You can also manage the `CONTAINER_DATA` attributes of common users and application common users. In addition, grant the following roles to the appropriate users:  
• Grant the `CDB_DBA` role to CDB administrators.  
• Grant the `PDB_DBA` role to application container administrators and PDB administrators. | *Oracle Database Security Guide*                                                                            |
| Monitoring errors and alerts| A CDB has one alert log for the entire CDB. The name of an application container, PDB, or application PDB is included in records in trace files, when appropriate.                                         | *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about monitoring errors and alerts                |
### Table 13-1  (Cont.) Administrative Tasks for CDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Managing diagnostic data</td>
<td>In a CDB, you can use the Oracle Database fault diagnosability infrastructure and the Automatic Diagnostic Repository (ADR).</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing diagnostic data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing control files</td>
<td>A CDB has one control file.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing control files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing the online redo log and the archived redo log files</td>
<td>A CDB has one online redo log and one set of archived redo log files.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing the redo log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing the online redo log and the archived redo log files</td>
<td>A CDB has one online redo log and one set of archived redo log files.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing archived redo log files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing tablespaces</td>
<td>You can create, modify, and drop tablespaces and temporary tablespaces for the CDB root and for individual containers. You can also specify a default sequence, default sequence type, and a default temporary tablespace for the CDB root. The CDB root has its own set of Oracle-supplied tablespaces, such as the SYSTEM tablespace, and other containers have their own set of Oracle-supplied tablespaces.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing tablespaces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Managing data files and temp files            | The CDB root has its own data files, and other containers have their own data files. Note the following:  
  - You can limit the amount of storage used by the data files for a container by using the STORAGE clause in a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE or ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.  
  - There is a default temporary tablespace for the CDB root and for individual containers. | Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing data files and temp files |
| Managing undo                                  | A CDB can run in local undo mode or shared undo mode. Local undo mode means that every container in the CDB uses local undo. Shared undo mode means that there is one active undo tablespace for a single-instance CDB, or for an Oracle RAC CDB, there is one active undo tablespace for each instance. In a CDB, the UNDO_MANAGEMENT initialization parameter must be set to AUTO, and an undo tablespace is required to manage the undo data. | “Setting the Undo Mode in a CDB Using ALTER DATABASE”  
Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing undo  
“About the Current Container” |
## Table 13-1  (Cont.) Administrative Tasks for CDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moving data between containers</td>
<td>You can move data between containers within a CDB using the same methods that you would use to move data between CDBs. For example, you can transport the data or use Data Pump export/import to move the data.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about transporting data Oracle Database Utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Oracle Managed Files</td>
<td>Using Oracle Managed files can simplify administration for a CDB.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about using Oracle Managed Files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Transparent Data Encryption</td>
<td>Transparent Data Encryption is a feature that enables encryption of individual table columns before storing them in the data file, or enables encryption of entire table spaces. In a CDB, each container has its own master key for Transparent Data Encryption, and, where applicable, the ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT SQL statement enables key management at the CDB level and for individual containers.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Advanced Security Guide “About the Current Container”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using a standby database</td>
<td>Oracle Data Guard can configure a physical standby or a logical standby of a CDB. Data Guard operates on the entire CDB, not on individual containers in a CDB.</td>
<td>Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Oracle Database Vault</td>
<td>Oracle Database Vault common realms can be scoped to an application root on common objects. Database Vault common command rules can be scoped to either the CDB or an application root. Local realms and command rules can be locally scoped to individual PDBs or application PDBs. When Oracle Database Vault security objects are in the CDB root or an application root, enforcement of the security objects only applies to the containers that have Oracle Database Vault enabled.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Vault Administrator’s Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dropping a database</td>
<td>When you drop a CDB, all containers in the CDB are dropped along with their data. These containers include the CDB root and PDB seed and all application containers, application seeds, PDBs, and application PDBs. You can also drop individual application containers, application seeds, PDBs, and application PDBs with the DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about dropping a database “Dropping a PDB”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.1.3 About Using Manageability Features in a CDB

For each of Oracle Database's manageability features in a CDB, it is important to understand the data location and the data visibility.

When feature data resides in the CDB root, the data is not included when a PDB is unplugged. When the data resides in a PDB, however, the data remains both when the PDB is unplugged and when it is plugged in.

Generally, in a CDB, a common user can view data for the CDB root and for multiple PDBs when the common user's current container is the CDB root. A common user can view this data by querying container data objects. The specific data that is visible varies for the manageability features. A user whose current container is a PDB can view data for that PDB only.

The following table describes how the manageability features work in a CDB.

### Table 13-2 Manageability Features in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manageability Feature</th>
<th>Data Location</th>
<th>Data Visibility</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Session History (ASH)</td>
<td>Most of the ASH data is stored in memory. A small percentage of the ASH data samples are stored in the CDB root. ASH data related to a PDB is not included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view ASH data for the CDB root and for PDBs.</td>
<td>Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alerts</td>
<td>Threshold settings that pertain to a PDB are stored in the PDB. Alerts posted when thresholds are violated are enqueued into the alert queue in the CDB root. Threshold settings that pertain to a PDB are included if the PDB is unplugged. Alerts related to a PDB are not included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td>A user whose current container is a PDB can view ASH data for the PDB only.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table 13-2  (Cont.) Manageability Features in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manageability Feature</th>
<th>Data Location</th>
<th>Data Visibility</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automated Database Maintenance Tasks</td>
<td>A user can schedule maintenance windows and enable or disable maintenance tasks for the current container only. If the current container is the CDB root, then the changes only apply to the CDB root. If the current container is a PDB, then the changes only apply to the PDB. Data related to a PDB is stored in the PDB for automatic optimizer statistics collection and the Automatic Segment Advisor. This data is included if the PDB is unplugged. Automatic SQL Tuning Advisor runs only in the CDB root. See the SQL Tuning Advisor row in this table for information about data collected by Automatic SQL Tuning Advisor.</td>
<td>See the appropriate row in this table for data visibility information about the following manageability features: automatic optimizer statistics collection, Optimizer Statistics Advisor, Automatic Segment Advisor, and Automatic SQL Tuning Advisor.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing automated database maintenance tasks Oracle Database Reference for information about the ENABLE_AUTOMATIC_MAIN TENANCE_PDB initialization parameter Oracle Database Reference for information about the AUTOTASK_MAX_ACTIVE_P DBS initialization parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manageability Feature</td>
<td>Data Location</td>
<td>Data Visibility</td>
<td>Additional Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Automatic Database Diagnostic Monitor (ADDM) | ADDM executions occur in a PDB or in the CDB root. ADDM analyzes data using one of the following sources:  
  - AWR data stored inside the PDB through an AWR snapshot taken inside the PDB  
  - AWR data from a CDB root or PDB that is imported into the AWR storage of a PDB  
  - AWR data stored in the root container through an AWR snapshot taken in root  
  Before the start of the analysis, ADDM determines the source of the AWR data (PDB or CDB root) and applies the rules applicable to each data type.  
  **Note:** Automatic ADDM for a PDB is enabled only when automatic snapshots are enabled for the PDB. | A common user whose current container is the CDB root can review results for the entire CDB. The ADDM results can include information about multiple PDBs. ADDM results related to a PDB are not included if the PDB is unplugged. The ADDM results cannot be viewed when the current container is a PDB.  
  A user whose current container is a PDB can view ADDM results data for the current PDB only. The results exclude findings that apply to the CDB as a whole, for example, I/O problems relating to the buffer cache size. | Oracle Database 2 Day DBA  
Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide |
| Automatic Optimizer Statistics Collection     | When an automatic optimizer statistics collection task gathers data for a PDB, it stores this data in the PDB. This data is included if the PDB is unplugged. | A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view optimizer statistics data for PDBs.  
  A user whose current container is a PDB can view optimizer statistics data for the PDB only. | "Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU"  
Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide |
| Automatic Segment Advisor                    | When Automatic Segment Advisor gathers data for a PDB, it stores this data in the PDB. This data is included if the PDB is unplugged. | A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view Automatic Segment Advisor data for PDBs.  
  A user whose current container is a PDB can view the Automatic Segment Advisor data for the PDB only. | Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about reclaiming unused space  
"Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU" |
### Table 13-2 (Cont.) Manageability Features in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manageability Feature</th>
<th>Data Location</th>
<th>Data Visibility</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Workload Repository (AWR)</td>
<td>AWR reports can be generated in the CDB root or in any PDB. AWR reports generated in the CDB root pertain to the entire CDB, while AWR reports generated when a PDB is the current container only pertain to that PDB.</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view AWR data for the CDB root and for PDBs. A user whose current container is a PDB can view AWR data for the PDB only.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Performance Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The AWR collects, processes, and maintains performance statistics for problem detection and self-tuning purposes. This data is stored in the database. The gathered data can be displayed in both reports and views.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database Replay</td>
<td>Capture files are always stored in operating system files, regardless of whether the capture and replay is at the CDB level or PDB level.</td>
<td>For CDB-level workloads, a common user whose current container is the CDB root can view database capture and replay information. For PDB-level workloads, a local or common PDB administrator with the SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE privilege can view this information in DBA_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES and DBA_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Testing Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Database Replay is a feature of Oracle Real Application Testing. Database Replay captures the workload for a CDB or PDB and replays it exactly on a test database.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimizer Statistics Advisor</td>
<td>Data related to a PDB is stored in the PDB for Optimizer Statistics Advisor. This data is included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view Optimizer Statistics Advisor data for PDBs. A user whose current container is a PDB can view the Optimizer Statistics Advisor data for the PDB only.</td>
<td>Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optimizer Statistics Advisor analyzes how statistics are being gathered and suggests changes that can be made to fine tune statistics collection.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manageability Feature</td>
<td>Data Location</td>
<td>Data Visibility</td>
<td>Additional Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL Management Base (SMB)</td>
<td>SMB data related to a PDB is stored in the PDB. The SMB data related to a PDB is included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view SMB data for PDBs. A user whose current container is a PDB can view the SMB data for the PDB only.</td>
<td>Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL Performance Analyzer (SPA)</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can run SPA for any PDB. In this case, the SPA results data is stored in the CDB root and is not included if the PDB is unplugged. A user whose current container is a PDB can run SPA on the PDB. In this case, the SPA results data is stored in the PDB and is included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view SPA results data for PDBs. A user whose current container is a PDB can view the SPA results data for the PDB only.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Testing Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL Tuning Sets (STS)</td>
<td>An STS can be stored in the CDB root or in any PDB. If it is stored in the CDB root, then you can load SQL statements from any PDB into it. When a PDB is unplugged, an STS stored in the CDB root is not included, even if the STS contains SQL statements from the PDB. When a PDB is unplugged, an STS stored in the PDB is included.</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can view STS data stored in the CDB root only. A user whose current container is a PDB can view STS data for the PDB only.</td>
<td>Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 13-2  (Cont.) Manageability Features in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manageability Feature</th>
<th>Data Location</th>
<th>Data Visibility</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL Tuning Advisor</td>
<td>Automatic SQL Tuning Advisor data is stored in the CDB root. It might have results about SQL statements executed in a PDB that were analyzed by the advisor, but these results are not included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td>When SQL Tuning Advisor is run automatically, the results are visible only to a common user whose current container is the CDB root. These results cannot be viewed when the current container is a PDB.</td>
<td>Oracle Database 2 Day + Performance Tuning Guide Oracle Database SQL Tuning Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL Tuning Advisor</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can run SQL Tuning Advisor manually for SQL statements from any PDB. When a statement is tuned, it is tuned in any container that runs the statement.</td>
<td>When SQL Tuning Advisor is run manually by a user whose current container is a PDB, the results are only visible to a user whose current container is that PDB.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQL Tuning Advisor</td>
<td>A user whose current container is a PDB can also run SQL Tuning Advisor manually for SQL statements from the PDB. When SQL Tuning Advisor is run manually from a PDB, the results are stored in the PDB from which it is run. In this case, a statement is tuned only for the current PDB, and the results related to a PDB are included if the PDB is unplugged.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To run SPA or SQL Tuning Advisor for SQL statements from a PDB, a common user must have the following privileges:

- Common `SET CONTAINER` privilege or local `SET CONTAINER` privilege in the PDB
- The privileges required to execute the SQL statements in the PDB

**See Also:**

- “About the Current Container”
- “About CDB and Container Information in Views” for an overview of container data objects
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* for detailed information about container data objects
13.1.4 About Managing Tablespaces in a CDB

A tablespace is a logical storage container for database objects, such as tables and indexes, that consume storage space.

At the physical level, a tablespace stores data in one or more data files or temp files. You can use the `ALTER DATABASE` statement to manage tablespaces in a CDB.

The following are considerations for tablespaces in a CDB:

- A permanent tablespace can be associated with exactly one container.
- When you create a tablespace in a container, the tablespace is associated with that container.
- When local undo is disabled for a CDB, the CDB has only one active undo tablespace, or one active undo tablespace for each instance of an Oracle RAC CDB. When local undo is enabled for a CDB, each container in the CDB has its own undo tablespace.
- A local undo tablespace is required for each node in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) cluster in which the PDB is open.
- There is one default temporary tablespace each container in the CDB, including the CDB root, each PDB, each application root, and each application PDB.

13.1.4.1 About Managing Permanent Tablespaces in a CDB

A permanent tablespace can be associated with only one container. Therefore, a permanent tablespace can be associated with the root or with one PDB.

Each container in a CDB must have its own default permanent tablespace, and default permanent tablespaces cannot be shared between containers. Users connected to the container who are not explicitly assigned a tablespace use the default permanent tablespace for the container.

13.1.4.2 About Managing Temporary Tablespaces in a CDB

Each container in a CDB has its own default temporary tablespace (or tablespace group).

You also can create additional temporary tablespaces for individual containers, and you can assign specific users in containers to these temporary tablespaces. When you unplug a PDB, its temporary tablespaces are also unplugged.

When a user is not assigned a temporary tablespace explicitly in a container, the user’s temporary tablespace is the default temporary tablespace for the container.
13.1.5 About Managing Database Objects in a CDB

In a CDB, different containers can contain different database objects. An Oracle database stores database objects, such as tables, indexes, and directories. Database objects that are owned by a schema are called schema objects, while database objects that are not owned by a schema are called nonschema objects. The CDB root and PDBs contain schemas, and schemas contain schema objects. The CDB root and PDBs can also contain nonschema objects, such as users, roles, tablespaces, directories, and editions.

The CDB root contains Oracle-supplied schemas and database objects. Oracle-supplied common users, such as SYS and SYSTEM, own these schemas and common database objects. They can also own local objects, both in the CDB root and in a PDB.

You can create common user accounts in the CDB root to administer PDBs and application containers. User-created common user accounts can create database objects in the CDB root. Oracle recommends that, in the CDB root, schemas owned by user-created common user accounts contain only database triggers and the objects used in their definitions. A user-created common user account can also own any type of local object in a PDB.

You can create local user accounts in a PDB. A local user in a PDB can create schema objects and nonschema objects in the PDB. You cannot create local user accounts in the CDB root.

In a CDB, names are resolved in the context of the dictionary of the user’s current container.

See Also:

- "About the Current Container"
- "Overview of Common and Local Users in a CDB"
- Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing schema objects
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for information about schema objects and nonschema objects
- Oracle Database Security Guide for information about creating common users and local users
13.1.6 About Flashing Back a PDB

You can use the `FLASHBACK PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement to return a PDB to a past time or system change number (SCN).

You can create restore points for a PDB and flash back the PDB to the restore point without affecting the CDB or other PDBs.

**Note:**

*Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide*

13.1.7 About Restricting PDB Users for Enhanced Security

There are several ways to restrict PDB users for enhanced security.

A PDB lockdown profile restricts the features and options available to users in a PDB. The `PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL` initialization parameter can specify a unique operating system user for a PDB to limit operating system access. Also, when the `PATH_PREFIX` and `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clauses are specified during PDB creation, they limit file system access.

13.1.7.1 PDB Lockdown Profiles

When identities are shared between PDBs, elevated privileges might exist. You can use lockdown profiles to prevent this elevation of privileges.

Identities can be shared in the following situations:

- At the operating system level, when the database interacts with operating system resources such as files or processes
- At the network level, when the database communicates with other systems
- Inside the database, as PDBs access or create common objects or communicate across container boundaries using features such as database links

To increase security, a CDB administrator can use PDB lockdown profiles to restrict users in particular PDBs. A PDB lockdown profile can disable users from running specified SQL statements, such as `ALTER SYSTEM` statements, or disable access to a package that can access the network, such as `UTL_SMTP`. A PDB lockdown profile can also restrict access to common users, common objects, administrative tools such as Oracle XML DB, administrative features such as cursor sharing, and database options such as Oracle Database Advanced Queuing. PDB lockdown profiles can prohibit the use of the XDB protocols (FTP, HTTP, HTTPS) by a PDB with the `XDB_PROTOCOLS` feature.

When logged in to the CDB root or application root, create a lockdown profile by issuing the `CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE` statement, which supports the following optional clauses:
• **FROM static_base_profile** creates a new lockdown profile by using the values from an existing profile. Any subsequent changes to the existing profile will not affect the new profile.

• **INCLUDING dynamic_base_profile** creates a new lockdown profile by using the values from an existing profile, except that this new lockdown profile inherits the **DISABLE STATEMENT** rules that comprise the base profile, and any subsequent changes to the base profile.

The user issuing the statement must have the **CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE** system privilege in the current container. You can add and remove restrictions with the **ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE** statement. The user must issue the **ALTER** statement in the CDB root or application root and must have the have **ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE** system privilege in the current container.

Specify a lockdown profile by using the **PDB_LOCKDOWN** initialization parameter. This parameter determines whether the PDB lockdown profile applies to a given PDB. You can set this parameter at the following levels:

• **PDB**
  The profile applies only to the PDB in which it is set.

• **Application container**
  The profile applies to all application PDBs in the application container. The value can be modified only by an application common user who has application common **SYSDBA** or common **ALTER SYSTEM** privileges or a CDB common user who has common **SYSDBA** or common **ALTER SYSTEM** privileges.

• **CDB**
  The profile applies to all PDBs. A common user who has common **SYSDBA** or common **ALTER SYSTEM** privileges can override a CDB-wide setting for a specific PDB.

If the **PDB_LOCKDOWN** parameter in a PDB is set to the name of a lockdown profile different from the container for this PDB (CDB or application container), then a set of rules govern the interaction between restrictions.

---

### See Also:

- **Oracle Database Security Guide** for complete information about lockdown profiles
- **Oracle Database SQL Language Reference** for more information about the **CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE** statement
- **Oracle Database Reference** for more information about the **PDB_LOCKDOWN** initialization parameter

---

### 13.1.7.2 The PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL Initialization Parameter

When the database accesses an external procedure with the **extproc** agent, the **PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL** initialization parameter determines the identity of the operating system user employed when interacting with the operating system from a PDB.
Using an OS user described by a credential whose name is specified as a value of the PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL initialization parameter can ensure that operating system interactions are performed as a less powerful user. In this way, the feature protects data belonging to one PDB from being accessed by users connected to another PDB.

A credential is an object that is created using the CREATE_CREDENTIAL procedure in the DBMS_CREDENTIAL package.

The Oracle OS user is usually a highly privileged user. Using this account for operating system interactions is not recommended. Also, using the same OS user for operating system interactions from different PDBs might compromise data belonging to a given PDB.

**See Also:**
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about managing processes for external procedures
- *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL initialization parameter
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*

### 13.1.7.3 The PATH_PREFIX and CREATE_FILE_DEST PDB Creation Clauses

The `PATH_PREFIX` clause of `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` ensures that all directory object paths associated with the PDB are restricted to the specified directory or its subdirectories.

`PATH_PREFIX` also ensures that the following files associated with the PDB are restricted to specified directory:

- The Oracle XML repository for the PDB
- Files created with a `CREATE PFILE` statement
- The export directory for Oracle wallets
- Library object created with a `CREATE LIBRARY` statement

**Note:**

The library must use a directory object. If a PDB uses a predefined `PATH_PREFIX`, attempts to use a library object that does not use a directory object result in an ORA-65394 error. The library object is not invalidated, but to make it usable you must recreate it using a directory object.

The `CREATE_FILE_DEST` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement ensures that all the database files belonging to the PDB are restricted to the specified directory and its subdirectories. The clause enables Oracle Managed Files for the PDB and specifies the default file system directory or Oracle ASM disk group for the PDB files.
13.1.8 Overview of Oracle Multitenant with Oracle RAC

Oracle Multitenant is an option with Oracle Database 12c that simplifies consolidation, provisioning, upgrades, and more.

It is based on an architecture that allows a multitenant container database (CDB) to hold several pluggable databases (PDBs). You can adopt an existing database as a PDB without having to change the application tier. In this architecture, Oracle RAC provides the local high availability that is required when consolidating various business-critical applications on one system.

When using PDBs with Oracle RAC, the multitenant CDB is based on Oracle RAC. You can make each PDB available on either every instance of the Oracle RAC CDB or a subset of instances. In either case, access to and management of the PDBs are regulated using dynamic database services, which will also be used by applications to connect to the respective PDB, as they would in a single instance Oracle database using Oracle Net Services for connectivity.

You can isolate PDBs to prevent certain operations from being performed on or within a particular PDB that may interfere with other PDBs sharing the same Oracle RAC database or database instance. PDB isolation allows for a higher degree of consolidation using Oracle Multitenant.

If you create an Oracle RAC database as a CDB and plug one or more PDBs into the CDB, then, by default, a PDB is not started automatically on any instance of the Oracle RAC CDB. With the first dynamic database service assigned to the PDB (other than the default database service which has the same name as the database name), the PDB is made available on those instances on which the service runs.

Whether a PDB is available on more than one instance of an Oracle RAC CDB, the CDB is typically managed by the services running on the PDB. You can manually enable PDB access on each instance of an Oracle RAC CDB by starting the PDB manually on that instance.

Related Topics
• Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide

13.2 Accessing Containers in a CDB

You can connect to a container by using the SQL*Plus CONNECT command. Alternatively, you can switch into a container with an ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER SQL statement.

13.2.1 About Container Access in a CDB

You can use SQL*Plus to access the root or a PDB in a CDB.
13.2.1.1 Services in a CDB

Clients access the root or a PDB through database services.

Database services have an optional PDB property. When a PDB is created, a new default service for the PDB is created automatically. The service has the same name as the PDB. With the service name, you can access the PDB using the easy connect syntax or the net service name from the tnsnames.ora file. Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access this service.

When a user connects using a service with a non-null PDB property, the user name is resolved in the context of the specified PDB. When a user connects without specifying a service or using a service name with a null PDB property, the user name is resolved in the context of the root. You can view the PDB property for a service by querying the CDB_SERVICES data dictionary view or by running the config service command in the SRVCTL utility.

**Note:**

When two or more CDBs on the same computer system use the same listener and two or more PDBs have the same service name in these CDBs, a connection that specifies this service name connects randomly to one of the PDBs with the service name. To avoid incorrect connections, ensure that all service names for PDBs are unique on the computer system, or configure a separate listener for each CDB on the computer system.

**See Also:**

- "Overview of Services in a CDB"
- "Managing Services for PDBs"
- "Example 18-8"

13.2.1.2 Session Limits in a CDB

The setting for the SESSIONS initialization parameter limits the total number of sessions available in a CDB, including the sessions connected to PDBs.
If the limit is reached for the CDB, then users cannot connect to PDBs. To ensure that one PDB does not use too many sessions, you can limit the number of sessions available to a PDB by setting the `SESSIONS` initialization parameter in the PDB.

**See Also:**
"Listing the Modifiable Initialization Parameters in PDBs"

### 13.2.1.3 User Names in a Multitenant Environment

Within each PDB, a user name must be unique with respect to other user names and roles in that PDB.

Note the following restrictions:

- For **common user names**, names for user-created common users must begin with a common user prefix. By default, for CDB common users, this prefix is `C##`. For application common users, this prefix is an empty string. This means that there are no restrictions on the name that can be assigned to an application common user other than that it cannot start with the prefix reserved for CDB common users. For example, you could name a CDB common user `C##hr_admin` and an application common user `hr_admin`.

  The `COMMON_USER_PREFIX` parameter in `CDB$ROOT` defines the common user prefix. You can change this setting, but do so only with great care.

- For **local user names**, the name cannot start with `C##` (or `c##`).

- A user and a role cannot have the same name.

**Related Topics**

- *Oracle Database Security Guide*

### 13.2.1.4 How the Multitenant Option Affects Password Files for Administrative Users

The password information for the local and common administrative users is stored in different locations.

- **For CDB common administrative users**: The password information (hashes of the password) for the CDB common administrative users to whom administrative privileges were granted in the CDB root is stored in the password file.

- **For all users in a CDB to whom administrative privileges were granted outside the CDB root**: To view information about the password hash information of these users, query the `SPFILE_USERS` dynamic view.

**Related Topics**

- *Oracle Database Security Guide*
13.2.2 Accessing a Container in a CDB

Access a container in a CDB with SQL*Plus by issuing a CONNECT or ALTER SESSION command.

13.2.2.1 Connecting to a Container Using the SQL*Plus CONNECT Command

You can use the SQL*Plus CONNECT command to connect to the root or to a PDB.

13.2.2.1.1 Connecting to the CDB Root Using the SQL*Plus CONNECT Command

You can connect to the CDB root in several ways. Specifically, you can use the following techniques to connect to the root with the SQL*Plus CONNECT command:

• Local connection
• Local connection with operating system authentication
• Database connection using easy connect
• Database connection using a net service name
• Remote database connection using external authentication

The following prerequisites must be met for the user connecting to the CDB root:

• The user must be a common user.
• The user must be granted CREATE SESSION privilege in the CDB root.

To connect to the root using the SQL*Plus CONNECT command:

1. Configure your environment so that you can open SQL*Plus.
2. Start SQL*Plus with the /NOLOG argument:

   sqlplus /nolog

3. Issue a SQL*Plus CONNECT command to connect to the root, as shown in the following examples.

Example 13-1 Connecting to the Root with a Local Connection

This example connects to the root in the local CDB as user SYSTEM. SQL*Plus prompts for the SYSTEM user password.

   connect system

Example 13-2 Connecting to the Root with Operating System Authentication

This example connects locally to the root with the SYSDBA administrative privilege with operating system authentication.

   connect / as sysdba
Example 13-3 Connecting to the Root with a Net Service Name

Assume that clients are configured to have a net service name for the root in the CDB. For example, the net service name can be part of an entry in a `tnsnames.ora` file.

This example connects as common user `c##dba` to the database service designated by the net service name `mycdb`. SQL*Plus prompts for the `c##dba` user password.

```
connect c##dba@mycdb
```

See Also:

Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about submitting commands and SQL to the database

13.2.2.1.2 Connecting to a PDB Using the SQL*Plus CONNECT Command

To connect to a PDB with the SQL*Plus CONNECT command, you can use easy connect or a net service name.

To connect to a PDB, a user must be one of the following:

- A common user with a CREATE SESSION privilege granted commonly or granted locally in the PDB
- A local user defined in the PDB with CREATE SESSION privilege

Only a user with `SYSDBA`, `SYSOPER`, `SYSBACKUP`, or `SYSDG` privilege can connect to a PDB that is in mounted mode. To change the open mode of a PDB, see "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs".

To connect to a PDB using the SQL*Plus CONNECT command:

1. Configure your environment so that you can open SQL*Plus.
2. Start SQL*Plus with the `/NOLOG` argument:

   ```
   sqlplus /nolog
   ```

3. Issue a SQL*Plus CONNECT command using easy connect or a net service name to connect to the PDB.

Example 13-4 Connecting to a PDB

Assume that clients are configured to have a net service name for each PDB that matches each PDB name. For example, the net service name can be part of an entry in a `tnsnames.ora` file.

The following command connects to the `sh` local user in the `salespdb` PDB:

```
CONNECT sh@salespdb
```
The following command connects to the `SYSTEM` common user in the `salespdb` PDB:

```
CONNECT system@salespdb
```

### See Also:

*Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about submitting the SQL*Plus `CONNECT` command

---

**13.2.2.2 Switching to a Container Using the ALTER SESSION Statement**

When you are connected to a container as a common user, you can switch to a different container and application service using the `ALTER SESSION` statement.

You can use the following statement to switch to a different container and application service:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = container_name [SERVICE = service_name]
```

For `container_name`, specify one of the following:

- `CDB$ROOT` to switch to the CDB root
- `PDB$SEED` to switch to the PDB seed
- A PDB name to switch to the PDB

When the current container is the root, you can view the names of the PDBs in a CDB by querying the `DBA_PDBS` view.

For `service_name`, specify a service that is running in the PDB. You can list the services running in the containers of a CDB, excluding the CDB root, by issuing the following query with the CDB root as the current container:

```
COL NAME FORMAT A30
COL CON_NAME FORMAT A20

SELECT NAME, CON_NAME, CON_ID
FROM V$ACTIVE_SERVICES
WHERE UPPER(NAME) != CON_NAME
AND CON_ID != 1
ORDER BY CON_ID;
```

By default, when you switch to a container, the session uses the default service for the container. However, the default PDB service does not support all service attributes and features such as service metrics, Fast Application Notification (FAN), load balancing, Resource Manager, Transaction Guard, Application Continuity, and so on. It is best practice to use a nondefault service for the container by specifying `SERVICE = service_name`, where `service_name` is the name of the service.

With this new capability, connection pools can switch the service, and, when needed the PDB, on a connection when a connection is borrowed from the pool. Starting with Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2.0.1), connection pools support more than one
database service with universal connection pools (UCPs). It can also be used standalone.

When switching to a service, applications can consolidate to a CDB, while keeping the database services identified, prioritized, measured, and highly available. Switching to a nondefault service provides the following benefits:

- It preserves the service attributes and features.
- It eliminates too many connection pools with too many connections serving these tenants.
- It allows applications to use more database services for workload control without consuming too many connection pools. Customers can identify and prioritize workloads using services without over sizing the database connections.

The following are considerations for using the **ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER** statement:

- After the statement completes successfully, the current schema of the session is set to the schema owned by the common user in the specified container.
- After the statement completes successfully, the security context is reset to that of the schema owned by the common user in the specified container.
- After the statement completes successfully, login triggers for the specified container do not fire.

  If you require a trigger, then you can define a before or after **SET CONTAINER** trigger in a PDB to fire before or after the **ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER** statement is executed.

- After the statement completes successfully and the service clause specifies a nondefault service for the PDB, the session is using a new service with attributes set, including metrics, FAN, TAF, Application Continuity, Transaction Guard, **drain_timeout**, and **stop_option** for the new service.

- Package states are not shared across containers.
- When closing a PDB, sessions that switched into the PDB and sessions that connected directly to the PDB are handled identically.
- A transaction cannot span multiple containers. If you start a transaction and use **ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER** to switch to a different container, then you cannot issue DML, DDL, **COMMIT**, or **ROLLBACK** statements until you switch back to the container in which you started the transaction.
- If you open a cursor and use **ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER** to switch to different container, then you cannot fetch data from that cursor until you switch back to the container in which the cursor was opened.
- You can use the **ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER** statement with the service clause for connection pooling as well as advanced CDB administration.

  For example, you can use this statement for connection pooling with PDBs for a multitenant application. A multitenant application uses a single instance of the software on a server to serve multiple customers (tenants). In a CDB, each tenant can have its own PDB. You can use the **ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER** statement in a connection pooling configuration.

- When working with connection pools that serve applications, the applications may be using data sources with different services. Using the **ALTER SESSION SET**
The CONTAINER statement with the SERVICE clause enables the connection pool to use the same connections for many applications, sharing the services.

The following prerequisites must be met to use the ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER statement:

- The current user must be a common user. The initial connection must be made using the SQL*Plus CONNECT command.
- When altering a session to switch to a PDB as a common user that was not supplied with Oracle Database, the current user must be granted the SET CONTAINER privilege commonly or must be granted this privilege locally in the PDB.

**Note:**

When an ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER statement is used to switch to the current container, these prerequisites are not enforced, and no error message is returned if they are not met.

Before issuing an ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER statement with the SERVICE clause, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The service switched to must be active. You cannot switch to a service that is not running.
- When switching between services, the service attributes of the service being switched from and the service being switched to must match. For example, the services switched from and to must all have TAF, or must all use Application Continuity, or must all have drain_timeout set.

To switch to a container using the ALTER SESSION statement:

1. In SQL*Plus, connect to a container as a common user with the required privileges.
2. Check the current open mode of the container to which you are switching.
   - To check the current open mode of the root or a PDB, query the OPEN_MODE column in the V$CONTAINERS view when the current container is the root.
   - If the open mode of the root should be changed, then follow the instructions in Oracle Database Administrator's Guide about altering database availability to change the open mode.
   - If the open mode of the PDB should be changed, then follow the instructions in "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs" to change the open mode.
   - The open mode of the root imposes limitations on the open mode of PDBs. For example, the root must be open before any PDBs can be open. Therefore, you might need to change the open mode of the root before changing the open mode of a PDB.
3. If you are switching to a specific service, then ensure that the service is running.
   - To check the active status of the service, query the V$ACTIVE_SERVICES view when the current container is the CDB root.
   - If the service is not running, then use the SRVCTL utility or the DBMS_SERVICE package to start the service.
4. Run the ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER statement and specify the container to which you want to switch.

   Include the SERVICE clause to switch to a specific application service.

The following examples switch to various containers using ALTER SESSION.

**Example 13-5**  Switching to the PDB salespdb and Using the salesrep Service

```sql
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = salespdb SERVICE = salesrep;
```

**Example 13-6**  Switching to the PDB salespdb and Using the Default Service

```sql
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = salespdb;
```

**Example 13-7**  Switching to the CDB Root

```sql
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = CDB$ROOT;
```

**Example 13-8**  Switching to the PDB Seed

```sql
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = PDB$SEED;
```

**Example 13-9**  Switching Services Using a Dummy Service in the CDB Root

To design connection pooling that switches the container and the service, one method is to create a dummy service in the CDB root and set all required service attributes on this dummy service (for example, `drain_timeout`, TAF or Application Continuity). The service attributes must match across the CDB root and the PDB. To use this method, complete the following steps:

1. Connect to the dummy service when first creating the connection pool and when creating new connections.
2. As services are added to each PDB, set the same attributes on these real services.
3. When an application requires a connection, complete one of the following actions:
   - Create a new connection to the dummy service, and switch to the PDB and service.
   - Borrow a free connection in the pool and switch to the PDB and service.

You do not need to return to the CDB root when switching across PDBs.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* for information about database resident connection pooling
13.3 Modifying a CDB at the System Level

You can set initialization parameters at the CDB level. In some cases, you can override these parameters at the PDB level.

13.3.1 About System-Level Modifications of a CDB

The `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement dynamically sets an initialization parameter in one or more containers.

A CDB uses an inheritance model for initialization parameters in which PDBs inherit initialization parameter values from the root. In this case, inheritance means that the value of a specific parameter in the root applies to a specific PDB.

A PDB can override the root setting for some parameters. In such cases, a PDB has an inheritance property for each initialization parameter that is either true or false. The inheritance property is true for a parameter when the PDB inherits the root's value for the parameter; otherwise, the property is false.

The inheritance property for some parameters must be true. For other parameters, when the current container is the PDB, you can change the inheritance property by running the `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement. If `V$SYSTEM_PARAMETER.ISPDB_MODIFIABLE` is `TRUE` for an initialization parameter, then the inheritance property can be false for the parameter.

When the current container is the root, the `CONTAINER` clause of the `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement controls which PDBs inherit the parameter value being set. The `CONTAINER` clause has the following syntax:

```
CONTAINER = { CURRENT | ALL }
```

The following settings are possible:

- **CURRENT**
  
  The parameter setting applies only to the current container. This is the default setting for `CONTAINER`. When the current container is the root, the parameter setting applies to the root and to any PDB with an inheritance property of true for the parameter.

- **ALL**
  
  The parameter setting applies to all containers in the CDB, including the root and all PDBs. Specifying `ALL` sets the inheritance property to true for the parameter in all PDBs.

See Also:

“About the Current Container” for more information about the `CONTAINER` clause and rules that apply to it
13.3.2 Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM

To modify a CDB at the system level, use the `ALTER SYSTEM` statement.

**Prerequisites**

The current user must have the commonly granted `ALTER SYSTEM` privilege.

To use `ALTER SYSTEM SET` in the root in a CDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Run the `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement.

**Note:**

To change the inheritance property for a parameter in a PDB from false to true, run the `ALTER SYSTEM RESET` statement to reset the parameter when the current container is the PDB. The following sample statement resets the `OPEN_CURSORS` parameter:

```
ALTER SYSTEM RESET OPEN_CURSORS SCOPE = SPFILE;
```

**Example 13-10  Setting an Initialization Parameter for All Containers**

This `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement sets the `OPEN_CURSORS` initialization parameter to 200 for all containers and sets the inheritance property to `TRUE` in each PDB.

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET OPEN_CURSORS = 200 CONTAINER = ALL;
```

**Example 13-11  Setting an Initialization Parameter for the Root**

This `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement sets the `OPEN_CURSORS` initialization parameter to 200 for the root and for PDBs with an inheritance property of `TRUE` for the parameter.

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET OPEN_CURSORS = 200 CONTAINER = CURRENT;
```

**See Also:**

- "Modifying a PDB at the System Level"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about the `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement
13.4 Modifying Containers When Connected to the CDB Root

You can modify the entire CDB or the root with the `ALTER DATABASE` statement.

13.4.1 About Container Modification When Connected to CDB Root

The `ALTER DATABASE` statement modifies a CDB. When you are connected to the CDB root, the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement can modify the open mode of one or more PDBs.

The behavior of `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` depends on which container you are connected to when you use the statement:

- Connected as a common user to CDB root
  
  When an `ALTER DATABASE` statement with the `RENAME GLOBAL_NAME` clause modifies the domain of a CDB, it affects the domain of each PDB with a domain that defaults to that of the CDB. The `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `pdb_change_state` clause modifies the open mode of one or more PDBs.

- Connected to a PDB
  
  In this case, the `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements modify the current PDB only.

The following table lists which containers are modified by clauses in `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements.

Table 13-3     Statements That Modify Containers in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modify Entire CDB</th>
<th>Modify Root Only</th>
<th>Modify One or More PDBs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| When connected as a common user whose current container is the root, `ALTER DATABASE` statements with the following clauses modify the entire CDB:  
  
  - `startup_clauses`  
  - `recovery_clauses`  
  - `logfile_clauses`  
  - `controlfile_clauses`  
  - `standby_database_clauses`  
  - `instance_clauses`  
  - `security_clause`  
  - `RENAME GLOBAL_NAME clause`  
  - `ENABLE BLOCK CHANGE TRACKING clause`  
  - `DISABLE BLOCK CHANGE TRACKING clause` | When connected as a common user whose current container is the root, `ALTER DATABASE` statements with the following clauses modify the root only:  
  
  - `database_file_clauses`  
  - `DEFAULT EDITION clause`  
  - `DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause`  
  - `DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE clause`  
  - `flashback_mode_clause`  
  - `SET DEFAULT {BIGFILE|SMALLFILE} TABLESPACE clause`  
  - `set_time_zone_clause`  
  - You can use these clauses to set nondefault values for specific PDBs. | When connected as a common user whose current container is the root, `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements with the following clause can modify the open mode of one or more PDBs:  
  
  - `pdb_change_state`  
  
  When the current container is a PDB, `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements with this clause can modify the open mode of the current PDB.  
  
  When connected as a common user whose current container is the root, `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements with the following clause can preserve or discard the open mode a PDB when the CDB restarts:  
  
  - `pdb_save_or_discard_state` |
13.4.2 Modifying an Entire CDB Using ALTER DATABASE

You can use the `ALTER DATABASE` statement to modify an entire CDB, including the root and all PDBs. Most `ALTER DATABASE` statements modify the entire CDB.

For a list of statements that modify the entire CDB rather than the root or individual PDBs, see the "Modify Entire CDB" column of "About Container Modification When Connected to CDB Root".

**Prerequisites**

To modify an entire CDB, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must be a common user with the `ALTER DATABASE` privilege.
- To use an `ALTER DATABASE` statement with a `recovery_clause`, the current user must have the `SYSDBA` administrative privilege commonly granted. In this case, you must exercise this privilege using `AS SYSDBA` at connect time.

To modify an entire CDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Use an `ALTER DATABASE` statement with a clause that modifies an entire CDB.

**Example 13-12 Backing Up the Control File for a CDB**

The following `ALTER DATABASE` statement uses a `recovery_clause` to back up a control file.

```
ALTER DATABASE BACKUP CONTROLFILE TO '+DATA/dbs/backup/control.bkp';
```

**Example 13-13 Adding a Redo Log File to a CDB**

The following `ALTER DATABASE` statement uses a `logfile_clause` to add redo log files.

```
ALTER DATABASE cdb ADD LOGFILE
    GROUP 4 ('/u01/logs/orcl/redo04a.log','/u02/logs/orcl/redo04b.log')
SIZE 100M BLOCKSIZE 512 REUSE;
```
13.4.3 Setting the Undo Mode in a CDB Using ALTER DATABASE

When local undo is enabled, each container has its own undo tablespace for every instance in which it is open. When local undo is disabled, there is one undo tablespace for the entire CDB.

13.4.3.1 About the CDB Undo Mode

You can configure a CDB to use local undo in every container or to use shared undo (default) for the entire CDB.

A CDB runs either in local or shared undo mode. The undo mode applies to the entire CDB. Therefore, every container either uses shared undo or local undo.

You can specify the undo mode of a CDB during CDB creation in the `ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clause of the `CREATE DATABASE` statement. If you do not specify the `UNDO` clause, then shared undo mode is the default. You can change the undo mode of a CDB after it is created by issuing an `ALTER DATABASE` statement and restarting the CDB.

To determine the current CDB undo mode, run the following query in the CDB root:

```
SELECT PROPERTY_NAME, PROPERTY_VALUE
FROM   DATABASE_PROPERTIES
WHERE  PROPERTY_NAME = 'LOCAL_UNDO_ENABLED';
```

If the query returns `TRUE` for the `PROPERTY_VALUE`, then the CDB is in local undo mode. Otherwise, the CDB is in shared undo mode.

13.4.3.1.1 About Local Undo Mode

Local undo mode means that each container has its own undo tablespace for every instance in which it is open.

In this mode, Oracle Database automatically creates an undo tablespace for every container in the CDB. For an Oracle RAC CDB, there is one active undo tablespace for each instance for each PDB in local undo mode.

Local undo mode provides increased isolation for each container and improves the efficiency of some operations, such as unplugging the container or performing point-in-time recovery on the container. In addition, local undo mode is required for some operations to be supported, such as relocating a PDB or cloning a PDB that is in open read/write mode.

When a CDB is in local undo mode, the following applies:

- Any user who has the appropriate privileges for the current container can create an undo tablespace for the container.
- Undo tablespaces are visible in static data dictionary views and dynamic performance (V$) views in every container in the CDB.
13.4.3.2 About Shared Undo Mode

Shared undo mode means that only one active undo tablespace exists for a single-instance CDB. For an Oracle RAC CDB, there is one active undo tablespace for each instance.

When a CDB is in shared undo mode, the following applies:

• Only a common user who has the appropriate privileges and whose current container is the CDB root can create an undo tablespace.
• When the current container is not the CDB root, an attempt to create an undo tablespace fails and returns an error.
• Undo tablespaces are visible in static data dictionary views and dynamic performance (V$) views when the current container is the CDB root. Undo tablespaces are visible only in dynamic performance views when the current container is a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB.

Note:

• When you change the undo mode of a CDB, the new undo mode applies to an individual container the first time the container is opened after the change.
• When you change the undo mode of a CDB, containers in the CDB cannot flash back to a time or SCN that is prior to the change.

13.4.3.2 Configuring a CDB to Use Local Undo Mode

You can change a CDB to local undo mode by issuing an `ALTER DATABASE LOCAL UNDO ON` statement and restarting the database.

When a CDB is in local undo mode, each container has its own undo tablespace for every instance in which it is open. Oracle Database automatically creates an undo tablespace in any container in the CDB that does not have one. If a PDB without an undo tablespace is cloned, relocated, or plugged into a CDB that is configured to use local undo mode, then Oracle Database automatically creates an undo tablespace for the PDB the first time it is opened.

When a CDB is changed from shared undo mode to local undo mode, Oracle Database creates the required undo tablespaces automatically.

1. If the CDB instance is open, then shut it down.
2. Start up the CDB instance in `OPEN UPGRADE` mode. For example:

   `STARTUP UPGRADE`
3. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root. For example, enter the following:

   SHOW CON_NAME

   CON_NAME
   ------------------------------
   CDB$ROOT

4. Query the current undo mode of the CDB:

   SELECT PROPERTY_NAME, PROPERTY_VALUE
   FROM DATABASE_PROPERTIES
   WHERE PROPERTY_NAME = 'LOCAL_UNDO_ENABLED';

5. To enable local undo, issue the following SQL statement:

   ALTER DATABASE LOCAL UNDO ON;

6. Shut down and restart the CDB instance.

7. Optional: Manually create an undo tablespace in the PDB seed.
   While Oracle Database creates an undo tablespace in the PDB seed automatically in local undo mode, you might want to control the size and configuration of the undo tablespace by creating an undo tablespace manually. To ensure the PDBs created from the PDB seed use the manually-created undo tablespace and not the automatically-created undo tablespace, you must set the UNDO_TABLESPACE initialization parameter to the manually-created undo tablespace, or drop the automatically-created undo tablespace.
   
a. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   
b. Place the PDB seed in open read/write mode:

      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE PDB$SEED OPEN READ WRITE FORCE;

   c. Switch container to the PDB seed:

      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=PDB$SEED;

   d. Create an undo tablespace in the PDB seed. For example:

      CREATE UNDO TABLESPACE seedundots1
      DATAFILE 'seedundotbs_1a.dbf'
      SIZE 10M AUTOEXTEND ON
      RETENTION GUARANTEE;

   e. Switch container to the root:

      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=CDB$ROOT;

   f. Place the PDB seed in open read-only mode:

      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE PDB$SEED OPEN READ ONLY FORCE;

13.4.3.3 Configuring a CDB to Use Shared Undo Mode

   To change a CDB to use shared undo mode, use an ALTER DATABASE LOCAL UNDO OFF statement.
1. If the CDB instance is open, then shut it down.

2. Start up the CDB instance in **OPEN UPGRADE** mode. For example:

   STARTUP UPGRADE

3. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root. For example, enter the following:

   SHOW CON_NAME

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Optionally, query the current undo mode of the CDB:

   SELECT PROPERTY_NAME, PROPERTY_VALUE
   FROM   DATABASE_PROPERTIES
   WHERE  PROPERTY_NAME = 'LOCAL_UNDO_ENABLED';

5. To turn off local undo, issue the following SQL statement:

   ALTER DATABASE LOCAL UNDO OFF;

6. Shut down and restart the CDB instance.

   When in shared undo mode, the CDB ignores any local undo tablespaces that were created when it was in local undo mode. Oracle recommends that you delete the unused local undo tablespaces.

### 13.4.4 Modifying the CDB Root Using ALTER DATABASE

To modify only the root of a CDB, use the **ALTER DATABASE** statement.

When the current container is the root, some **ALTER DATABASE** statements modify the root without directly modifying any of the PDBs. See the "Modify Root Only" column of Table 13-3 for a list of these statements.

Some statements set the defaults for the PDBs in the CDB. You can overwrite these defaults for a PDB by using the **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE** statement.

**Prerequisites**

To modify the root, the current user must have the **ALTER DATABASE** privilege in the root.

**To modify the root:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.

2. Run an **ALTER DATABASE** statement with a clause that modifies the root.

The following examples modify the root.

A user whose current container is the root that is not explicitly assigned a tablespace uses the default permanent tablespace for the root. The tablespace specified in the **ALTER DATABASE** statement must exist in the root.
After executing this statement, the default type of subsequently created tablespaces in the root is bigfile. This setting is also the default for PDBs.

The tablespace or tablespace group specified in the ALTER DATABASE statement must exist in the root.

**Example 13-14  Changing the Default Permanent Tablespace for the Root**

This ALTER DATABASE statement uses a DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause to set the default permanent tablespace to *root_tbs* for the root.

```
ALTER DATABASE DEFAULT TABLESPACE root_tbs;
```

**Example 13-15  Bringing a Data File Online for the Root**

This ALTER DATABASE statement uses a `database_file_clause` to bring the `/u02/oracle/cdb_01.dbf` data file online.

```
ALTER DATABASE DATAFILE '/u02/oracle/cdb_01.dbf' ONLINE;
```

**Example 13-16  Changing the Default Tablespace Type for the Root**

This ALTER DATABASE statement uses a SET DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause to change the default tablespace type to bigfile for the root.

```
ALTER DATABASE SET DEFAULT BIGFILE TABLESPACE;
```

**Example 13-17  Changing the Default Temporary Tablespace for the Root**

This ALTER DATABASE statement uses a DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE clause to set the default temporary tablespace to *root_temp* for the root.

```
ALTER DATABASE DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE root_temp;
```

See Also:

- "Modifying a PDB at the Database Level"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*

### 13.5 Executing SQL in a Different Container

To execute SQL in a different container, use the CONTAINERS clause for DML or the CONTAINER clause for DDL.

#### 13.5.1 Issuing DML Statements on a Container in a CDB

A DML (data manipulation language) statement issued in a CDB or application root can modify a different container in the CDB. In addition, you can specify a default container target for DML statements.
13.5.1.1 About Issuing DML Statements on a Container in a CDB

DML statements can affect database objects in a specified container in a CDB. The container is specified by container ID. Because the container ID can appear in more than one location, the database uses the following order of precedence:

1. The CON_ID specified in the WHERE clause of a DML statement
2. The CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET database property
3. The current container, which is either the CDB root or application root

In a CDB root or an application root, a DML statement that includes the CONTAINERS clause can modify a table or view in a single container in the CDB or application container. To use the CONTAINERS clause, specify the table or view being modified in the CONTAINERS clause and the container ID affected in the WHERE clause.

You can specify a target container in an INSERT VALUES statement by specifying a value for CON_ID in the VALUES clause. Also, you can specify a target container in an UPDATE or DELETE statement by specifying a CON_ID predicate in the WHERE clause. For example, the following DML statement updates the sales.customers table in the container with a CON_ID of 7:

```
UPDATE CONTAINERS(sales.customers) ctab
  SET ctab.city_name='MIAMI'
  WHERE ctab.CON_ID=7
  AND CUSTOMER_ID=3425;
```

The following restrictions apply to the CONTAINERS clause:

- The specified schema must exist both in the container specified by CON_ID and in the CDB or application root where the statement is executed.
- The value specified for the CON_ID in the WHERE clause must refer to a PDB, application root, or application PDB within the CDB.
- INSERT as SELECT statements where the target of the INSERT is in CONTAINERS() is not supported.
- A multitable INSERT statement where the target of the INSERT is in CONTAINERS() is not supported.
- DML statements using the CONTAINERS clause require that the database listener is configured using TCP (instead of IPC) and that the PORT and HOST values are specified for each target PDB using the PORT and HOST clauses, respectively.

13.5.1.2 Specifying the Default Container for DML Statements in a CDB

To specify the default container for DML statements in a CDB, issue the ALTER DATABASE statement with the CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET clause.

When a DML statement is issued in a CDB root without specifying containers in the WHERE clause, the DML statement affects the default container for the CDB. The default container can be any container in the CDB, including the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. Only one default container is allowed.
The `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET` database property sets the default container. By default, this property is not set. You can determine the default target containers for a CDB by running the following query:

```sql
SELECT PROPERTY_VALUE
FROM   DATABASE_PROPERTIES
WHERE  PROPERTY_NAME='CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET';
```

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the CDB root or application root. The current user must have the commonly granted `ALTER DATABASE` privilege.

2. Run the `ALTER DATABASE` statement with the `CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET` clause.

**Example 13-18  Specifying the Default Container for DML Statements in a CDB**

This example specifies that `PDB1` is the default container for DML statements in the CDB.

```
ALTER DATABASE CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET = (PDB1);
```

**Example 13-19  Clearing the Default Container**

This example clears the default container setting. When it is not set, the default container is the CDB root.

```
ALTER DATABASE CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET = NONE;
```

### 13.5.2 Executing DDL Statements in a CDB

In a CDB, you can execute a data definition language (DDL) statement in the current container or in all containers.

#### 13.5.2.1 About Executing DDL Statements in a CDB

In a CDB, some DDL statements can apply to all containers or to the current container only.

To specify which containers are affected, use the `CONTAINER` clause:

```sql
CONTAINER = { CURRENT | ALL }
```

The following settings are possible:

- `CURRENT` means that the statement applies only to the current container.
- `ALL` means that the statement applies to all containers in the CDB, including the root and all PDBs.

The following restrictions apply to the `CONTAINER` clause in DDL statements:

- The restrictions described in "About the Current Container".
- You can use the `CONTAINER` clause only with the DDL statements listed in Table 13-4.
Table 13-4 DDL Statements and the CONTAINER Clause in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DDL Statement</th>
<th>CONTAINER = CURRENT</th>
<th>CONTAINER = ALL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CREATE USER</td>
<td>Creates a local user in the current PDB.</td>
<td>Creates a common user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER USER</td>
<td>Alters a local user in the current PDB.</td>
<td>Alters a common user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE ROLE</td>
<td>Creates a local role in the current PDB.</td>
<td>Creates a common role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRANT</td>
<td>Grants a privilege in the local container to a local user, common user, or local role.</td>
<td>Grants a system privilege or object privilege on a common object to a common user or common role. The specified privilege is granted to the user or role across the entire CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The SET CONTAINER privilege can be granted to a user-created common user in the current PDB.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVOKE</td>
<td>Revokes a privilege in the local container from a local user, common user, or local role.</td>
<td>Revokes a system privilege or object privilege on a common object from a common user or common role. The specified privilege is revoked from the user or role across the entire CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This statement can revoke only a privilege granted with CURRENT specified in the CONTAINER clause from the specified user or role in the local container. The statement does not affect privileges granted with ALL specified in the CONTAINER clause.</td>
<td>This statement can revoke only a privilege granted with ALL specified in the CONTAINER clause from the specified common user or common role. The statement does not affect privileges granted with CURRENT specified in the CONTAINER clause. However, any privileges granted locally that depend on the privilege granted commonly that is being revoked are also revoked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The SET CONTAINER privilege can be revoked from a user-created common user in the current PDB.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All other DDL statements apply to the current container only.

In addition to the usual rules for user, role, and profile names, the following rules and best practices apply when you create a user, role, or profile in a CDB:

- It is best practice for common user, role, and profile names to start with a prefix to avoid naming conflicts between common users, roles, and profiles and local users, roles, and profiles. You specify this prefix with the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter in the CDB root. By default, the prefix is C## or c## in the CDB root.

- In an application container, it is best practice for application common user, role, and profile names to start with a prefix to avoid naming conflicts between application common users, roles, and profiles and local users, roles, and profiles. You specify this prefix with the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter in the application root. By default, the prefix is NULL in an application root.

- When the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter is set in an application root, the setting applies to the application common user, role, and profile names in the application container. The prefix can be different in the CDB root and in an application root, and the prefix can be different in different application containers.
Common user, role, and profile names must consist only of ASCII characters. This restriction does not apply to application common user, role, and profile names.

Local user, role, and profile names cannot start with the prefix specified for common users with the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter.

Local user, role, and profile names cannot start with C## or c##.

Regardless of the value of COMMON_USER_PREFIX in the CDB root, application common user, role, and profile names cannot start with C## or c##.

Application common user, role, and profile names cannot start with the prefix specified for common users with the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter.

See Also:

- "Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM" for information about using the ALTER SYSTEM statement in a CDB
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference
- Oracle Database Concepts
- Oracle Database Security Guide for more information about managing users in a CDB
- Oracle Database Reference for more information about the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter

13.5.2.2 Executing a DDL Statement in the Current Container

Specify CURRENT in the CONTAINER clause of a DDL statement to execute the statement in the current container.

The supported DDL statements are listed in Table 13-4.

The current user must be granted the required privileges to execute the DDL statement in the current container. For example, to create a user, the current user must be granted the CREATE USER system privilege in the current container.

To execute a DDL statement in the current container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access a container.
   See "Accessing a Container in a CDB with SQL*Plus".
2. Execute the DDL statement with CONTAINER set to CURRENT.

A local user's user name cannot start with the prefix specified by the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter. By default, in the CDB root, the prefix is C## or c##. An application root can specify its own prefix for an application container. In addition, a common user's name must consist only of ASCII characters. The specified tablespace must exist in the PDB.
Example 13-20  Creating Local User in a PDB

This example creates the local user testpdb in the current PDB.

```
CREATE USER testpdb IDENTIFIED BY password
    DEFAULT TABLESPACE pdb1_tbs
    QUOTA UNLIMITED ON pdb1_tbs
    CONTAINER = CURRENT;
```

13.5.2.3 Executing a DDL Statement in All Containers in a CDB

Specify ALL in the CONTAINER clause of a DDL statement to execute the statement in all containers in a CDB.

The supported DDL statements are listed in Table 13-4.

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must be a common user.
- The current user must be granted the required privileges commonly to execute the DDL statement. For example, to create a user, the current user must be granted the CREATE USER system privilege commonly.

To execute a DDL statement in all containers in a CDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root. See "About Container Access in a CDB".
2. Execute the DDL statement with CONTAINER set to ALL.

A common user's user name must start with the prefix specified by the COMMON_USER_PREFIX initialization parameter. By default, in the CDB root, the prefix is C## or c##. An application root can specify its own prefix for an application container. In addition, a common user's name must consist only of ASCII characters. The specified tablespace must exist in the root and in all PDBs.

Example 13-21  Creating Common User in a CDB

This example creates the common user c##testcdb.

```
CREATE USER c##testcdb IDENTIFIED BY password
    DEFAULT TABLESPACE cdb_tbs
    QUOTA UNLIMITED ON cdb_tbs
    CONTAINER = ALL;
```

13.5.3 Running Oracle-Supplied SQL Scripts in a CDB

You can use the catcon.pl script to run Oracle-supplied SQL or SQL scripts within a CDB. You can run the script against any specified containers.

13.5.3.1 About Running Oracle-Supplied SQL Scripts in a CDB

In a CDB, the catcon.pl script is the best way to run SQL scripts and SQL statements.
An Oracle Database installation includes several SQL scripts. These scripts perform operations such as creating data dictionary views and installing options.

The \texttt{catcon.pl} script can run scripts in the root and in specified PDBs in the correct order, and it generates log files that you can view to confirm that the SQL script or SQL statement did not generate unexpected errors. It also starts multiple processes and assigns new scripts to them as they finish running scripts previously assigned to them.

\begin{note}

Unless you exclude the PDB seed when you run \texttt{catcon.pl}, the SQL script or SQL statement is run on the PDB seed.

\end{note}

**13.5.3.2 Syntax and Parameters for catcon.pl**

The \texttt{catcon.pl} script is a Perl script that must be run at an operating system prompt.

The \texttt{catcon.pl} script has the following syntax and parameters:

\begin{verbatim}
$ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl
[---usr username[/password]]
[---int_usr username[/password]]
[---script_dir directory]
[---log_dir directory]
[---incl_con|--excl_con] container
[---echo]
[---spool]
[---error_logging { ON | errorlogging-table-other-than-SPERRORLOG } ]
[---app_con application_root]
[---no_set_errlog_ident]
[---diag]
[---ignore_unavailable_pdbs]
[---verbose]
[---force_pdb_mode pdb_mode]
[---recover]
---log_file_base log_file_name_base
-- { SQL_script [arguments] | --x'SQL_statement' }
\end{verbatim}

Ensure that \texttt{--x SQL_statement} is preceded by \texttt{--} if it follows any single-letter parameter. If \texttt{--x SQL_statement} is preceded by a script name or another \texttt{--x SQL_statement}, then do not precede it with \texttt{--}. Also, note that the SQL statement must be inside single quotation marks.

Command line parameters to SQL scripts can be introduced using \texttt{--p}. Interactive (or secret) parameters to SQL scripts can be introduced using \texttt{--P}.

To view the help for the \texttt{catcon.pl} script, change directories to \texttt{$ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/}, and then run the following command:

\begin{verbatim}
perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl --help
\end{verbatim}
The following table describes the catcon.pl parameters. A parameter is optional unless it is indicated that it is required.

The short parameter names in the following table are for backward compatibility. Some parameters do not have short names.

Table 13-5  catcon.pl Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Short Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--usr</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>Specifies the user name and password to connect to the root and the specified PDBs. Specify a common user with the required privileges to run the SQL script or the SQL statement. The default is &quot;/ AS SYSDBA&quot;. If no password is supplied, then catcon.pl prompts for a password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--int_usr</td>
<td>-U</td>
<td>Specifies the user name and password to connect to the root and the specified PDBs. Specify a common user with the required privileges to perform internal tasks, such as querying CDB metadata. The default is / AS SYSDBA. If no password is supplied, then catcon.pl prompts for a password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--script_dir</td>
<td>-d</td>
<td>Directory that contains the SQL script. The default is the current directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--log_dir</td>
<td>-l</td>
<td>Directory into which catcon.pl writes log files. The default is the current directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{--incl_con</td>
<td>--excl_con}</td>
<td>{-c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--echo</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>Sets echo ON while running the script. The default is echo OFF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--spool</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>Spools the output of every script into a file with the following name: log-file-name-base_script-name-without-extension_[container-name-if-any].default-extension</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table 13-5  (Cont.) catcon.pl Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Short Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| --error_logging               | -E         | When set to ON, the default error logging table is used. ON is the default setting. When set to ON, errors are written to the table SPERRORLOG in the current schema in each container in which the SQL script runs. If this table does not exist in a container, then it is created automatically.  
When a table other than SPERRORLOG is specified, errors are written to the specified table. The table must exist in each container in which the SQL script runs, and the current user must have the necessary privileges to perform DML operations on the table in each of these containers.  
See SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference for more information about the error logging table. |
| --app_con                     | -F         | Specify an application root. The scripts are run in the application root and in the application PDBs that are plugged into the application root.  
When this parameter is used, the --incl_con and --excl_con parameters cannot be used.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| --no_set_errlog_ident         | -I         | Do not issue a SET ERRORLOGGING identifier. This option is intended for cases in which the SET ERRORLOGGING identifier is already set and should not be overwritten.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| --diag                        | -g         | Turns on the generation of debugging information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| --verbose                     | -v         | Turns on verbose output.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| --ignore_unavailable_pdb      | -f         | Ignore PDBs that are closed or, if the --incl_con or --excl_con option is used, do not exist and process only open PDBs that were specified explicitly or implicitly.  
When this option is not specified and some specified PDBs do not exist or are not open, an error is returned and none of the containers are processed.                                                                                                                                 |
| --force_pdb_mode              | n/a        | The required open mode for all PDBs against which the scripts are run. Specify one of the following values:  
• UNCHANGED  
• READ WRITE  
• READ ONLY  
• UPGRADE  
• DOWNGRADE  
When a value other than UNCHANGED is specified, all of the PDBs against which the script is run are changed to the specified open mode. If a PDB is open in a different mode, then the PDB is closed and re-opened in the specified mode. After all of the scripts are run, each PDB is restored to its original open mode.  
When UNCHANGED, the default, is specified, the open mode of the PDBs is not changed. |
| --recover                     | -R         | Causes catcon.pl to attempt to recover if a SQL*Plus process that it spawned ends unexpectedly. When this parameter is not specified, catcon.pl does not attempt to recover the process and closes.                                                                                                                                           |
Table 13-5 (Cont.) catcon.pl Parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Short Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--log_file_base</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>(Required) The base name for log file names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.5.3.3 Running the catcon.pl Script

Examples illustrate running the catcon.pl script.

If a SQL script or SQL statement run by catcon.pl performs data manipulation language (DML) or data definition language (DDL) operations, then the containers being modified must be in read/write mode.

To run the catcon.pl script:

1. Open a command line prompt.
2. Run the catcon.pl script and specify one or more SQL scripts or SQL statements:

   cd $ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/
   perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl parameters SQL_script
   perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl parameters -- --xSQL_statement

Example 13-22 Running the catblock.sql Script in All Containers in a CDB

The following example runs the catblock.sql script in all of the containers of a CDB (the backslash indicates line continuation):

$ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl \
--usr SYS --script_dir $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin \
--log_file_base catblock_output catblock.sql

The following parameters are specified:

- The --usr parameter specifies that SYS user runs the script in each container.
- The --script_dir parameter specifies that the SQL script is in the $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin directory.
- The --log_file_base parameter specifies that the base name for log file names is catblock_output.

Default parameter values are used for all other parameters. Neither the --incl_con nor the --excl_con parameter is specified. Therefore, catcon.pl runs the script in all containers by default.

Example 13-23 Running the catblock.sql Script in Specific PDBs

The following example runs the catblock.sql script in the hrpdb and salespdb PDBs in a CDB.

$ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl \
--usr SYS --int_usr SYS --script_dir $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin \
--log_dir '/disk1/script_output' --incl_con 'HRPDB SALESpdb' \
--log_file_base catblock_output catblock.sql
The following parameters are specified:

- The `--usr` parameter specifies that `SYS` user runs the script in each container.
- The `--int_usr` parameter specifies that `SYS` user performs internal tasks.
- The `--script_dir` parameter specifies that the SQL script is in the `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin` directory.
- The `--log_dir` parameter specifies that the output files are placed in the `/disk1/script_output` directory.
- The `--incl_con` parameter specifies that the SQL script is run in the `hrpdb` and `salespdb` PDBs. The script is not run in any other containers in the CDB.
- The `--log_file_base` parameter specifies that the base name for log file names is `catblock_output`.

**Example 13-24 Running the catblock.sql Script in All Containers Except for Specific PDBs**

The following example runs the `catblock.sql` script in all of the containers in a CDB except for the `hrpdb` and `salespdb` PDBs.

```bash
$ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl --usr SYS --script_dir $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin --log_dir /disk1/script_output --excl_con HRPDB SALESPDB --log_file_base catblock_output catblock.sql
```

The following parameters are specified:

- The `--usr` parameter specifies that `SYS` user runs the script in each container.
- The `--script_dir` parameter specifies that the SQL script is in the `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin` directory.
- The `--log_dir` parameter specifies that the output files are placed in the `/disk1/script_output` directory.
- The `--excl_con` parameter specifies that the SQL script is run in all of the containers in the CDB except for the `hrpdb` and `salespdb` PDBs.
- The `--log_file_base` parameter specifies that the base name for log file names is `catblock_output`.

**Example 13-25 Running a SQL Script with Command Line Parameters**

The following example runs the `custom_script.sql` script in all of the containers of a CDB.

```bash
cd $ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl --usr SYS --script_dir /u01/scripts --log_file_base custom_script_output custom_script.sql --phr --PEnter password for user hr:
```

The following parameters are specified:

- The `--usr` parameter specifies that `SYS` user runs the script in each container.
The --script_dir parameter specifies that the SQL script is in the /u01/scripts directory.

The --log_file_base parameter specifies that the base name for log file names is custom_script_output.

The --p parameter specifies hr for a command line parameter

The --P parameter specifies an interactive parameter that prompts for the password of user hr.

Default parameter values are used for all other parameters. Neither the -incl_con nor the -excl_con parameter is specified. Therefore, catcon.pl runs the script in all containers by default.

Example 13-26  Running a SQL Statement in All Containers in a CDB

The following example runs a SQL statement in all of the containers of a CDB.

```
cd $ORACLE_HOME/perl/bin/
perl $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catcon.pl --usr SYS --echo --log_file_base select_output -- --x"SELECT * FROM DUAL"
```

The following parameters are specified:

- The --usr parameter specifies that SYS user runs the script in each container.
- The --echo parameter shows output for the SQL statement.
- The --log_file_base parameter specifies that the base name for log file names is select_output.
- The SQL statement SELECT * FROM DUAL is inside quotation marks and is preceded by --x. Because --x is preceded by a parameter (--log_file_base), it must be preceded by --.

Default parameter values are used for all other parameters. Neither the -incl_con nor the -excl_con parameter is specified. Therefore, catcon.pl runs the SQL statement in all containers by default.

See Also:

- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about the catblock.sql script
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for more information about SQL scripts
13.5.4 Executing Code in Containers Using the DBMS_SQL Package

When you are executing PL/SQL code in a container in a CDB, and you want to execute one or more SQL statements in a different container, use the DBMS_SQL package to switch containers.

For example, you can use the DBMS_SQL package to switch containers when you need to perform identical actions in more than one container.

The following are considerations for using DBMS_SQL to switch containers:

- A transaction cannot span multiple containers.
  
  If the set of actions you must perform in the target container requires a transaction, then consider using an autonomous transaction and perform a commit or rollback as the last action.

- SET ROLE statements are not allowed.

**Example 13-27 Performing Identical Actions in More Than One Container**

This example includes a PL/SQL block that creates the identact table in the hr schema in two PDBs (pdb1 and pdb2). The example also inserts a row into the identact table in both PDBs.

```sql
DECLARE
  c1 INTEGER;
  rowcount INTEGER;
  taskList VARCHAR2(32767) := 'DECLARE
  PRAGMA AUTONOMOUS TRANSACTION;
BEGIN
  -- Create the hr.identact table.
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
  '"CREATE TABLE hr.identact
  (actionno NUMBER(4) NOT NULL,
  action VARCHAR2 (10))'';
  EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
  '"INSERT INTO identact VALUES(1, 'ACTION1')'';
  -- A commit is required if the tasks include DML.
  COMMIT;
EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
  -- If there are errors, then drop the table.
  BEGIN
    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE '"DROP TABLE identact'';
  EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
      NULL;
END;
END;
'
    TYPE containerListType IS TABLE OF VARCHAR2(128) INDEX BY PLS_INTEGER;
  containerList containerListType;
BEGIN
  containerList(1) := 'PDB1';
  containerList(2) := 'PDB2';
```
cl := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR;
FOR conIndex IN containerList.first..containerList.last LOOP
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Creating in container: ' ||
    containerList(conIndex));
  DBMS_SQL.PARSE(
    c => cl ,
    statement                  => taskList,
    language_flag              => DBMS_SQL.NATIVE,
    edition                    => NULL,
    apply_crossedition_trigger => NULL,
    fire_apply_trigger         => NULL,
    schema                     => 'HR',
    container                  => containerList(conIndex));
  rowcount := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(c=>c1);
END LOOP;
DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(c=>c1);
END;
/

See Also:

- Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference for more information about the DBMS_SQL package
- Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference for more information about autonomous transactions

13.6 Shutting Down a CDB Instance

You can shut down a CDB instance using the SHUTDOWN command.

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The CDB instance must be mounted or open.
- The current user must be a common user with SYSDBA, SYSOPER, SYSBACKUP, or SYSDG administrative privilege. To shut down a CDB, you must exercise this privilege using AS SYSDBA, AS SYSOPER, AS SYSBACKUP, or AS SYSDG, respectively, at connect time.

To shut down a CDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   See "Connecting to a Container Using the SQL*Plus CONNECT Command".
2. Shut down the CDB instance with the SHUTDOWN command.
See Also:

- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
- "About the Current Container"
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* to learn how to shut down an instance
14

Administering a CDB Fleet

A **CDB fleet** is a collection of CDBs and hosted PDBs that you can manage as one logical CDB.

### 14.1 About CDB Fleets

A **lead CDB** is the central location for monitoring and managing the CDBs in the fleet. Designate one CDB in the fleet to be the lead CDB by setting its **LEAD_CDB** database property to `TRUE`. The other CDBs in the fleet point to the lead CDB by setting the **LEAD_CDB_URI** database property. After you configure the CDB fleet, PDB information from the various CDBs is synchronized with the lead CDB. All PDBs in the CDBs are now “visible” in the lead CDB, enabling you to access the PDBs in the fleet as a single, logical CDB from the lead CDB.

The following figure shows a CDB fleet consisting of CDB1, CDB2, and CDB3. The lead CDB is CDB1. CDB2 hrpdb, which resides in CDB2, is visible in CDB1. CDB3 hrpdb, which resides in CDB3, is also visible in CDB1.

**Figure 14-1  CDB Fleet**

All Oracle Database features, such as Oracle Real Application Cluster (Oracle RAC), RMAN, point-in-time recovery, and flashback features, are supported for CDBs in the fleet.
You can use the following cross-container features to access the CDBs and PDBs in a CDB fleet:

- **CDB views**
- **GV$ views**
- The **CONTAINERS clause**
- **Container maps**

If a common application schema is configured with application containers, then these cross-container features enable query and data aggregation across PDBs in different CDBs managed in the fleet.

**Note:**

- Each PDB name must be unique across all CDBs in a CDB fleet.
- You can create a PDB in any CDB in the fleet, but you can only open a PDB in the CDB where it was created.

**See Also:**

- "Monitoring CDBs and PDBs"
- "Partitioning by PDB with Container Maps"

### 14.2 Purpose of a CDB Fleet

A CDB fleet provides the database infrastructure for scalability and centralized management of many CDBs.

A CDB fleet is useful in the following situations:

- The number of PDBs you must provision exceeds the `MAX_PDBS` initialization parameter setting, requiring you to create multiple CDBs.
- Different PDBs in a single configuration require different types of servers to function optimally.
  
  For example, some PDBs might process a large transaction load, while other PDBs are used mainly for monitoring, and you want the appropriate server resources for these PDBs, such as CPU, memory, I/O rate, and storage systems.
- Different PDBs that use the same application must reside in different locations.

**Monitoring and Diagnostic Collection Across CDBs**

The lead CDB can run monitoring and reporting applications that execute across the CDBs in the fleet. You can install a monitoring application in one container, and then use **CDB views** and **GV$ views** to monitor and process diagnostic data for the entire CDB fleet. A cross-container query issued in the lead CDB can automatically execute in all PDBs across the CDB fleet.
Software as a Service (SaaS) Applications

Using a common schema and common application objects in different application containers across the CDB fleet, you can use the `CONTAINERS` clause or a container map to run queries across all PDBs in the CDB fleet. To ensure a common application schema across the CDBs, the application can be installed in an application root.

A typical use case involves installing the master application root in the lead CDB. An application root clone resides in every other CDB in the fleet. Proxy PDBs for the application root clones reside in the master application root.

Database as a Service (DBaaS) Applications

The lead CDB can serve as a central location where you can collect and view usage metrics and status of all or a subset of the PDBs provisioned in the CDB fleet.

Microservices

Microservices are a specialization of service-oriented architectures used to build flexible, independently deployable software systems. With microservices, each team can deploy and manage a CDB fleet with customized scaling and availability SLAs. The CDBs can use different storage systems and configuration settings and cater to different types of workloads. The lead CDB can help the central DBA manage the collection of CDBs associated with each individual microservice.

**See Also:**
- "Monitoring CDBs and PDBs"
- "Partitioning by PDB with Container Maps"
- *Oracle Database Reference* to learn more about `MAX_PDBS`

### 14.3 Setting the Lead CDB in a CDB Fleet

Set the lead CDB in a CDB fleet by setting the `LEAD_CDB` database property to `true`.

To set the lead CDB in a CDB fleet:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root of the CDB that will be the lead CDB.
2. Optionally, check the current `LEAD_CDB` database property by running the following query:

   ```sql
   SELECT PROPERTY_VALUE
   FROM DATABASE_PROPERTIES
   WHERE PROPERTY_NAME='LEAD_CDB';
   ```

3. Set the `LEAD_CDB` database property to `TRUE`.

---

Oracle"
Example 14-1  Setting the Lead CDB Database Property to true

1. Access the CDB root:

   ```sql
   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = CDB$ROOT;
   ```

2. Run the following SQL statement:

   ```sql
   ALTER DATABASE SET LEAD_CDB = TRUE;
   ```

See Also:

"About Container Access in a CDB"

14.4 Designating a CDB Fleet Member

Designate a fleet member by setting the `LEAD_CDB_URI` database property to a database link that points to the lead CDB.

Prerequisites

You must use a database link with fixed user semantics, which means that the user name and password are in the link definition. The link cannot use connected user semantics, in which case the user name and password are not in the link definition.

To designate a CDB fleet member:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root of the CDB that you want to designate as a fleet member.

2. Optionally, check the current `LEAD_CDB_URI` database property by running the following query:

   ```sql
   SELECT PROPERTY_VALUE FROM DATABASE_PROPERTIES WHERE PROPERTY_NAME='LEAD_CDB_URI';
   ```

3. If a database link does not exist, then create a link to the root of the lead CDB in the fleet.

   The database link must be a fixed common user database link.

4. Set the `LEAD_CDB_URI` database property to the name of the database link to the lead CDB.

Example 14-2  Designating a CDB Fleet Member

This example assumes that the lead CDB is `cdb1` and that the database link to the lead CDB does not exist. It also assumes that the network is configured so that the current CDB can connect to `cdb1` using the `lead_pod` service name.

1. Access the root of the CDB that you want to designate as a fleet member:

   ```sql
   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = CDB$ROOT;
   ```
2. Create the database link to `cdb1`:

   ```sql
   CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK lead_link
   CONNECT TO C##CF1 IDENTIFIED BY password
   USING 'lead_pod';
   ```

3. Set the `LEAD_CDB_URI` property to the name of the database link:

   ```sql
   ALTER DATABASE SET LEAD_CDB_URI = 'dblink:LEAD_LINK';
   ```

See Also:

- "About Container Access in a CDB"
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about fixed user database links
15

Administering PDBs

Administering PDBs includes tasks such as connecting to a PDB, modifying a PDB, and managing services associated with PDBs.

Related Topics
- Tools for a Multitenant Environment
  You can use various tools to configure and administer a multitenant environment.

15.1 About PDB Administration

Administering a pluggable database (PDB) involves a subset of the tasks required to administer a CDB.

In this subset of tasks, most are the same for a PDB and a CDB, but differences exist. For example, there are differences when you modify the open mode of a PDB. Also, a PDB administrator is limited to managing a single PDB and cannot manage other PDBs in the multitenant container database (CDB).

See Also:
"Modifying a PDB at the Database Level" for more information about changing the open mode of the current PDB

15.1.1 Tasks Common to PDBs and CDBs

Most administrative tasks are the same for a PDB and a CDB.

When you are administering a PDB, you can modify the PDB with an ALTER DATABASE, ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE, or ALTER SYSTEM statement. You can also execute DDL statements on the PDB. The following table describes some of these tasks common to a PDB and CDB.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Managing tablespaces</td>
<td>You can create, modify, and drop tablespaces for a PDB. You can specify a default tablespace and default tablespace type for each PDB. Also, there is a default temporary tablespace for each PDB. You optionally can create additional temporary tablespaces for use by individual PDBs.</td>
<td>&quot;Modifying a PDB at the Database Level&quot; Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing tablespaces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15-1  (Cont.) Administrative Tasks Common to PDBs and CDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Managing data files and temp files | Each PDB has its own data files. You can manage data files and temp files in the same way that you would manage them for a CDB. You can also limit the amount of storage used by the data files for a PDB by using the STORAGE clause in a CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE or ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement. | "Modifying a PDB at the Database Level"  
Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about managing data files and temp files |
| Managing schema objects       | You can create, modify, and drop schema objects in a PDB in the same way that you would in a CDB. You can also create triggers that fire for a specific PDB. When you manage database links in a CDB, the root has a unique global database name, and so does each PDB. The global name of the root is defined by the DB_NAME and DB_DOMAIN initialization parameters. The global database name of a PDB is defined by the PDB name and the DB_DOMAIN initialization parameter. The global database name of each PDB must be unique within the domain. | Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for more information about schema objects  
Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide  
Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference for information about creating triggers in a CDB |

15.1.2 Tasks Specific to CDBs

Some administrative tasks cannot be performed when the current container is a PDB.

The following tasks are performed by a common user for the entire CDB or for the CDB root when the current container is the root:

- Starting up and shutting down a CDB instance
- Modifying the CDB or the root with an ALTER DATABASE statement
- Modifying the CDB or the root with an ALTER SYSTEM statement
- Executing data definition language (DDL) statements on a CDB or the root
- Managing the following components:
  - Processes
  - Memory
  - Errors and alerts
  - Diagnostic data
  - Control files
  - The online redo log and the archived redo log files
• Creating, plugging in, unplugging, and dropping PDBs

A common user whose current container is the root can also change the open mode of one or more PDBs. Similarly, a common user or local user whose current container is a PDB can change the open mode of the current PDB.

See Also:

• “About the Current Container”
• “Administering a CDB” for more information about this task and other tasks related to administering a CDB or the root

15.2 Managing Connections to a PDB

You manage connections for a PDB in the same way as for a CDB, with some special considerations.

15.2.1 Connecting to a PDB

You can use several techniques to connect to a PDB with the SQL*Plus CONNECT command.

This section assumes that you understand how to connect to a CDB in SQL*Plus.

You can use the following techniques to connect to a PDB with the SQL*Plus CONNECT command:

• Local connection with operating system authentication
• Database connection using easy connect
• Database connection using a net service name

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met:

• The user connecting to the PDB must be granted the CREATE SESSION privilege in the PDB.
• To connect to a PDB as a user that does not have SYSDBA, SYSOPER, SYSBACKUP, or SYSDG administrative privilege, the PDB must be open.

Note:

This section assumes that the user connecting to the PDB using a local user account. You can also connect to the PDB as a common user, and you can connect to the root as a common user and switch to the PDB.
To connect to a PDB using the SQL*Plus CONNECT command:

1. Configure your environment so that you can open SQL*Plus.
2. Start SQL*Plus with the `/NOLOG` argument:
   
   ```
   sqlplus /nolog
   ```
3. Issue a `CONNECT` command using easy connect or a net service name to connect to the PDB.

   To connect to a PDB, connect to a service with a `PDB` property.

**Example 15-1 Connecting to a PDB in SQL*Plus Using the PDB's Net Service Name**

The following command connects to the `hr` user using the `hrapp` service. The `hrapp` service has a `PDB` property for the `hrpdb` PDB. This example assumes that the client is configured to have a net service name for the `hrapp` service.

```sql
CONNECT hr@hrapp
```

See Also:

- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs" and "Modifying a PDB at the Database Level" for information about changing the open mode of a PDB.
- "About Container Access in a CDB" for information about connecting to a PDB as a common user
- "Managing Services for PDBs"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about connecting to the database with SQL*Plus

---

**15.2.2 Managing Services for PDBs**

You can create, modify, or remove services for a PDB.

See Also:

Oracle Database Administrator's Guide

---

**15.2.2.1 About Services for PDBs**

Each PDB has a default service, but you can create your own using SRVCTL or DBMS_SERVICE.
15.2.2.1.1 The PDB Property

The PDB property associates a service with a PDB. When a client connects to a service with a PDB property, the current container for the connection is the PDB.

The PDB property is required only when you do either of the following:

• Create a service
• Modify the PDB property of a service

You do not specify a PDB property when you start, stop, or remove a service. Also, you do not need to specify a PDB property when you modify a service without modifying its PDB property.

You can view the PDB property for a service by querying the ALL_SERVICES data dictionary view. Alternatively, when using the SRVCTL utility, you can use the srvctl config service command.

See Also:

"About the Current Container"

15.2.2.1.2 Default and User-Defined Services

Creating a PDB creates a new default service for the PDB automatically.

Each database service name must be unique in a CDB, and each database service name must be unique within the scope of all the CDBs whose instances are reached through a specific listener. The default service has the same name as the PDB. You cannot manage this service, which you should only use for administrative tasks.

Always use user-defined services for applications. The reason is that you can customize user-defined services to fit the requirements of your applications. Oracle recommends that you not use the default PDB service for applications.

Note:

Do not associate a service with a proxy PDB.

In an Oracle Clusterware environment, you must create an Oracle Clusterware resource for each service that is created for the PDB. When your database is being managed by Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware, and when you use the SRVCTL utility to start a service with a PDB property for a PDB that is closed, the PDB is opened in read/write mode on the nodes where the service is started. However, stopping a PDB service does not change the open mode of the PDB.

When you unplug or drop a PDB, the services of the unplugged or dropped PDB are not removed automatically. You can remove these services manually.
15.2.2.1.3 Tools for Managing Services

Oracle recommends using the SRVCTL utility to create and modify services. Alternatively, you can use the DBMS_SERVICE package.

**SRVCTL**

If your single-instance database is being managed by Oracle Restart or your Oracle RAC database is being managed by Oracle Clusterware, then use the Server Control (SRVCTL) utility to create, modify, or remove the service.

To create a service for a PDB using the SRVCTL utility, use the `add service` command and specify the PDB in the `-pdb` parameter. If you do not specify `-pdb`, then the service is associated with the root.

To modify the PDB property of a service using the SRVCTL utility, use the `modify service` command and specify the PDB in the `-pdb` parameter. To remove a service for a PDB using the SRVCTL utility, use the `remove service` command.

You can use other SRVCTL commands to manage the service, such as the `start service`, `stop service`, and `relocate service` commands, even if they do not include the `-pdb` parameter.

The PDB name is not validated when you create or modify a service with the SRVCTL utility. However, an attempt to start a service with invalid PDB name results in an error.

**DBMS_SERVICE**

If your database is not being managed by Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware, then use the DBMS_SERVICE package to create or remove a database service.

DBMS_SERVICE exists at the root level and in each PDB. It is owned and executed by SYS at each level. A PDB administrator cannot stop, relocate, or test the connection for a service that is owned by another PDB.

When you create a service with the DBMS_SERVICE package, the PDB property of the service is set to the current container. Therefore, to create a service with a PDB property set to a specific PDB using the DBMS_SERVICE package, run the `CREATE_SERVICE` procedure when the PDB is the current container. If you create a service using the `CREATE_SERVICE` procedure when the current container is the root, then the service is associated with the root.

You cannot modify the PDB property of a service with the DBMS_SERVICE package. However, you can remove a service in one PDB and create a similar service in a different PDB. In this case, the new service has the PDB property of the PDB in which it was created.
You can also use other DBMS_SERVICE subprograms to manage the service, such as the START_SERVICE and STOP_SERVICE procedures. You can use DBMS_SERVICE.*_CONNECTION_TEST procedures to check the health of a database connection during planned maintenance. Use the DELETE_SERVICE procedure to remove a service.

See Also:

- "Example 18-8"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about configuring automatic restart of an Oracle database
- Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference for information about the DBMS_SERVICE package
- Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide for information about creating services in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment

15.2.2.2 Managing Services for a PDB Using SRVCTL and DBMS_SERVICE

You can create, modify, or remove a service with a PDB property.

To manage a service with a PDB property using the SRVCTL utility:
1. Log in to the host computer with the correct user account.
2. Ensure that you run SRVCTL from the correct Oracle home.
3. Perform one of the following operations:
   - To create or modify a service, run the add service command, and specify the PDB in the -pdb parameter.
   - To modify the PDB property of a service, run the modify service command, and specify the PDB in the -pdb parameter.
   - To remove a service, run the remove service command.

To create or remove a service for a PDB using the DBMS_SERVICE package:
1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
   See "Connecting to a PDB".
2. Run the appropriate subprogram in the DBMS_SERVICE package.

Note:
If your database is being managed by Oracle Restart or Oracle Clusterware, then use the SRVCTL utility to manage services. Do not use the DBMS_SERVICE package.
Example 15-2  Creating a Service for a PDB Using the SRVCTL Utility

This example adds the salesrep service for the PDB salespdb in the CDB with DB_UNIQUE_NAME mycdb:

```
srvctl add service -db mycdb -service salesrep -pdb salespdb
```

Example 15-3  Modifying the PDB Property of a Service Using the SRVCTL Utility

This example modifies the salesrep service in the CDB with DB_UNIQUE_NAME mycdb to associate the service with the hrpdb PDB:

```
srvctl modify service
    -db mycdb
    -service salesrep
    -pdb hrpdb
```

Example 15-4  Relocating a Service in Oracle RAC Using the SRVCTL Utility

You can use the relocate service command to relocate a service from one Oracle RAC instance, where the service is currently running, to another instance, where it can run. This technique applies both to services for administrator-managed databases as well as singleton services for policy-managed databases.

The following command relocates service svc1 from Oracle RAC instance cdb_inst1, where it is currently running, to instance cdb_inst2, where it is currently not running:

```
srvctl relocate service
    db cdb
    service svc1
    oldinst cdb_inst1
    newinst cdb_inst2
    -drain_timeout NNN
    -stopoption immediate
```

The following command performs the same operation for a policy-managed database:

```
srvctl relocate service
    db cdb
    service svc1
    currentnode cdb_inst1
    targetnode cdb_inst2
    -drain_timeout NNN
    -stopoption immediate
```

Example 15-5  Removing a Service Using the SRVCTL Utility

This example removes the salesrep service in the CDB with DB_UNIQUE_NAME mycdb:

```
srvctl remove service
    -db mycdb
    -service salesrep
```
Example 15-6  Creating a Service for a PDB Using the DBMS_SERVICE Package

This example creates the **salesrep** service for the current PDB:

```plsql
BEGIN
    DBMS_SERVICE.CREATE_SERVICE(
        service_name => 'salesrep',
        network_name => 'salesrep.example.com');
END;
/
```

The **PDB** property of the service is set to the current container. For example, if the current container is the **salespdb** PDB, then the PDB property of the service is **salespdb**.

Example 15-7  Removing a Service Using the DBMS_SERVICE Package

This example removes the **salesrep** service in the current PDB.

```plsql
BEGIN
    DBMS_SERVICE.DELETE_SERVICE(
        service_name => 'salesrep');
END;
/
```

See Also:

- "Example 18-8"
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for information about the **DBMS_SERVICE** package
- *Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide* for information about managing services in an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment

15.2.3 Modifying the Listener Settings of a Referenced PDB

A PDB that is referenced by a proxy PDB is called a referenced PDB.

When the port or host name changes for the listener of the referenced PDB, you must modify the listener settings of the referenced PDB so that its proxy PDBs continue to function properly.

Related Topics

- Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB
  You can create a PDB as a proxy PDB by referencing it in a remote CDB.
15.2.3.1 Altering the Listener Host Name of a Referenced PDB

When the host name of the listener for a referenced PDB changes, you must run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS HOST` statement to reset the host name of the referenced PDB so that its proxy PDBs continue to function properly.

A proxy PDB uses a database link to establish communication with its referenced PDB during PDB creation. After communication is established, the proxy PDB communicates directly with the referenced PDB without using a database link, and the database link can be dropped. When the listener host name changes for the referenced PDB, each proxy PDB must reestablish communication with its referenced PDB.

The listener host name of a referenced PDB is a database property. When it is set, you can view the current setting by querying the `DATABASE_PROPERTIES` data dictionary view.

The current user must have the `ALTER DATABASE` system privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the referenced PDB. See "Connecting to a PDB".

2. Run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS HOST` statement and specify the new host name, or include the `RESET` keyword to return the host name to its default setting, which is the host name of the referenced PDB.

3. Drop and re-create the proxy PDBs that reference the referenced PDB to reestablish communication for each proxy PDB and its referenced PDB.

Example 15-8  Altering the Listener Host Name of a Referenced PDB

This example changes the host name for the referenced PDB to `myhost.example.com`.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS HOST='myhost.example.com';
```

Example 15-9  Resetting the Listener Host Name to the Default Value

This example resets the host name for the referenced PDB to its default value. The default value is the host name of the referenced PDB.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS HOST RESET;
```

See Also:

- "Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB"
- "HOST Clause"
15.2.3.2 Altering the Listener Port Number of a Referenced PDB

When the port number of the listener for a referenced PDB changes, you must run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS PORT` statement to reset the port number of the referenced PDB so that its proxy PDBs continue to function properly.

A proxy PDB uses a database link to establish communication with its referenced PDB during PDB creation. After communication is established, the proxy PDB communicates directly with the referenced PDB without using a database link, and the database link can be dropped. When the listener port number changes for the referenced PDB, each proxy PDB must re-establish communication with its referenced PDB.

The listener port number of a referenced PDB is a database property. When it is set, you can view the current setting by querying the `DATABASE_PROPERTIES` data dictionary view.

The current user must have the `ALTER DATABASE` system privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the referenced PDB.
2. Run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS PORT` statement and specify the new port number, or include the `RESET` keyword to return the port number to its default setting, which is 1521.
3. Drop and re-create the proxy PDBs that reference the referenced PDB to re-establish communication for each proxy PDB and its referenced PDB.

**Example 15-10  Altering the Listener Port Number of a Referenced PDB**

This example changes the port number for the referenced PDB to 1543.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS PORT=1543;
```

**Example 15-11  Resetting the Listener Port Number to the Default Value**

This example resets the port number for the referenced PDB to its default value. The default value for the port number is 1521.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS PORT RESET;
```

**Related Topics**

- **Connecting to a PDB**
  You can use several techniques to connect to a PDB with the SQL*Plus `CONNECT` command.

- **Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB**
  You can create a PDB as a proxy PDB by referencing it in a remote CDB.

- **PORT Clause**
  The `PORT` clause of the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement specifies the port number of the listener for the PDB being created.
15.3 Modifying a PDB at the System Level

You can use the `ALTER SYSTEM` statement to modify a PDB.

15.3.1 About System-Level Modifications of a PDB

The `ALTER SYSTEM` statement can dynamically alter a PDB. You can issue an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement when you want to change the way a PDB operates.

When the current container is a PDB, you can run the following `ALTER SYSTEM` statements:

- `ALTER SYSTEM FLUSH { SHARED_POOL | BUFFER_CACHE | FLASH_CACHE }`
- `ALTER SYSTEM { ENABLE | DISABLE } RESTRICTED SESSION`
- `ALTER SYSTEM SET USE_STORED_OUTLINES`
- `ALTER SYSTEM ( SUSPEND | RESUME )`
- `ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT`
- `ALTER SYSTEM CHECK DATAFILES`
- `ALTER SYSTEM REGISTER`
- `ALTER SYSTEM ( KILL | DISCONNECT ) SESSION`
- `ALTER SYSTEM SET initialization_parameter` (for a subset of initialization parameters)

All other `ALTER SYSTEM` statements affect the entire CDB and must be run by a common user in the root.

The `ALTER SYSTEM SET initialization_parameter` statement can modify only some initialization parameters for PDBs. All initialization parameters can be set for the root. For any initialization parameter that is not set explicitly for a PDB, the PDB inherits the parameter value from the root.

You can modify an initialization parameter for a PDB when the `ISPDB_MODIFIABLE` column is `TRUE` for the parameter in the `V$SYSTEM_PARAMETER` view. The following query lists all initialization parameters that are modifiable for a PDB:

```
SELECT NAME
FROM V$SYSTEM_PARAMETER
WHERE ISPDB_MODIFIABLE='TRUE'
ORDER BY NAME;
```

When the current container is a PDB, run the `ALTER SYSTEM SET initialization_parameter` statement to modify the PDB. The statement does not affect the root or other PDBs. The following table describes the behavior of the `SCOPE` clause when you use a server parameter file (SPFILE) and run the `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement on a PDB.
The initialization parameter setting is changed in memory and takes effect immediately in the PDB. The new setting affects only the PDB. The setting reverts to the value set in the root in any of the following cases:

- An `ALTER SYSTEM SET` statement sets the value of the parameter in the root with `SCOPE` equal to `BOTH` or `MEMORY`, and the PDB is closed and re-opened. The parameter value in the PDB is not changed if `SCOPE` is equal to `SPFILE`, and the PDB is closed and re-opened.
- The PDB is closed and re-opened.
- The CDB is shut down and re-opened.

When a PDB is unplugged from a CDB, the values of the initialization parameters that were specified for the PDB with `SCOPE=BOTH` or `SCOPE=SPFILE` are added to the PDB’s XML metadata file. These values are restored for the PDB when it is plugged in to a CDB.

### Note:

A text initialization parameter file (PFILE) cannot contain PDB-specific parameter values.

### See Also:

- "Unplugging a PDB from a CDB"
- "About the Current Container"
- "Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*

#### 15.3.2 Modifying a PDB with ALTER SYSTEM

To modify a PDB at the system level, use the `ALTER SYSTEM` statement.
Prerequisites
The current user must be granted the following privileges, which must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB:

- CREATE SESSION
- ALTER SYSTEM

To use ALTER SYSTEM to modify a PDB:
1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB. See "Connecting to a PDB".
2. Run the ALTER SYSTEM statement.

Example 15-12 Enable Restricted Sessions in a PDB
To restrict sessions in a PDB, issue the following statement:

ALTER SYSTEM ENABLE RESTRICTED SESSION;

Example 15-13 Changing the Statistics Gathering Level for the PDB
This ALTER SYSTEM statement sets the STATISTICS_LEVEL initialization parameter to ALL for the current PDB:

ALTER SYSTEM SET STATISTICS_LEVEL = ALL SCOPE = MEMORY;

See Also:
- "Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM"
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference

15.4 Modifying a PDB at the Database Level
You can modify a PDB using the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

15.4.1 About PDB-Level Modifications
The ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE for a PDB is analogous to the ALTER DATABASE for a CDB.
Note:

An `ALTER DATABASE` statement issued when the current container is a PDB that includes clauses that are supported for an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement have the same effect as the corresponding `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement. However, these statements cannot include clauses that are specific to PDBs, such as the `pdb_storage_clause`, the `pdb_change_state_clause`, the `logging_clause`, and the `pdb_recovery_clause`.

15.4.1.1 Storage Clauses

Use `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` to configure storage at the PDB level.

The following clauses of `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` modify PDB storage:

- **database_file_clauses**
  These clauses work the same as they would in an `ALTER DATABASE` statement, but the statement applies to the current PDB.

- **DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause**
  For users created while the current container is a PDB, this clause specifies the default tablespace for the user if the default tablespace is not specified in the `CREATE USER` statement.

- **DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE clause**
  For users created while the current container is a PDB, this clause specifies the default temporary tablespace for the user if the default temporary tablespace is not specified in the `CREATE USER` statement.

- **SET DEFAULT { BIGFILE | SMALLFILE } TABLESPACE clause**
  This clause changes the default type of subsequently created tablespaces in the PDB to either bigfile or smallfile. This clause works the same as it would in an `ALTER DATABASE` statement, but it applies to the current PDB.

- **pdb_storage_clause**
  This clause sets a limit on the amount of storage used by all tablespaces that belong to a PDB. This limit applies to the total size of all data files and temp files comprising tablespaces that belong to the PDB.

  This clause can also set a limit on the amount of storage that can be used by unified audit OS spillover (.bin format) files in the PDB. If the limit is reached, then no additional storage is available for these files.

  This clause can also set a limit on the amount of storage in a shared temporary tablespace that can be used by sessions connected to the PDB. If the limit is reached, then no additional storage in the shared temporary tablespace is available to sessions connected to the PDB.
15.4.1.2 Logging and Recovery Clauses

Use `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` to set logging and recovery and recovery modes at the PDB level.

`logging_clause`

**Note:**
This clause is available starting with Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.2).

This clause specifies the logging attribute of the PDB. The logging attribute controls whether certain DML operations are logged in the redo log file (`LOGGING`) or not (`NOLOGGING`).

You can use this clause to specify one of the following attributes:

- `LOGGING` indicates that any future tablespaces created within the PDB will be created with the `LOGGING` attribute by default. You can override this default logging attribute by specifying `NOLOGGING` at the schema object level, in a `CREATE TABLE` statement for example.

- `NOLOGGING` indicates that any future tablespaces created within the PDB will be created with the `NOLOGGING` attribute by default. You can override this default logging attribute by specifying `LOGGING` at the schema object level, in a `CREATE TABLE` statement for example.

The specified attribute is used to establish the logging attribute of tablespaces created within the PDB if the `logging_clause` is not specified in the `CREATE TABLESPACE` statement.

The `DBA_PDBS` view shows the current logging attribute for a PDB.

**Note:**
The PDB must be open in restricted mode to use this clause.

`pdb_force_logging_clause`

**Note:**
This clause is available starting with Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.2).

This clause places a PDB into force logging or force nologging mode or takes a PDB out of force logging or force nologging mode.
You can use this clause to specify one of the following attributes:

- **ENABLE FORCE LOGGING** places the PDB in force logging mode, which causes all changes in the PDB, except changes in temporary tablespaces and temporary segments, to be logged. Force logging mode cannot be overridden at the schema object level.

  PDB-level force logging mode takes precedence over and is independent of any NOLOGGING or FORCE LOGGING settings you specify for individual tablespaces in the PDB and any NOLOGGING settings you specify for individual database objects in the PDB.

  ENABLE FORCE LOGGING cannot be specified if a PDB is in force nologging mode. **DISABLE FORCE NOLOGGING** must be specified first.

- **DISABLE FORCE LOGGING** takes a PDB which is currently in force logging mode out of that mode. If the PDB is not in force logging mode currently, then specifying DISABLE FORCE LOGGING results in an error.

- **ENABLE FORCE NOLOGGING** places the PDB in force nologging mode, which causes no changes in the PDB to be logged. Force nologging mode cannot be overridden at the schema object level.

  CDB-wide force logging mode supersedes PDB-level force nologging mode. PDB-level force nologging mode takes precedence over and is independent of any LOGGING or FORCE LOGGING settings you specify for individual tablespaces in the PDB and any LOGGING settings you specify for individual database objects in the PDB.

  ENABLE FORCE NOLOGGING cannot be specified if a PDB is in force logging mode. **DISABLE FORCE LOGGING** must be specified first.

- **DISABLE FORCE NOLOGGING** takes a PDB that is currently in force nologging mode out of that mode. If the PDB is not in force nologging mode currently, then specifying DISABLE FORCE NOLOGGING results in an error.

  The **DBA_PDBS** view shows whether a PDB is in force logging or force nologging mode.

---

**Note:**

The PDB must be open in restricted mode to use this clause.

---

**pdb_recovery_clause**

**Note:**

This clause is available starting with Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.2).

**ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE DISABLE RECOVERY** takes the data files that belong to the PDB offline and disables recovery of the PDB. The PDB data files are not part of any recovery session until it is enabled again. Any new data files created while recovery is disabled are created as unnamed files for the PDB.
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ENABLE RECOVERY brings the data files that belong to the PDB online and marks the PDB for active recovery. Recovery sessions include these files.

Check the recovery status of a PDB by querying the RECOVERY_STATUS column in the V$PDBS view.

See Also:

- Oracle Data Guard Concepts and Administration for more information about the pdb_recovery_clause.
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about controlling the writing of redo records
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for more information about the logging attribute

15.4.1.3 Miscellaneous Clauses

You can use ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE to modify the open mode, global name, time zone, and default edition.

When the current container is a PDB, an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with any of the following clauses modifies the PDB:

- **pdb_change_state_clause**
  This clause changes the open mode of the current PDB.
  If you specify the optional RESTRICTED keyword, then the PDB is accessible only to users with the RESTRICTED SESSION privilege in the PDB.
  Specifying FORCE in this clause changes semantics of the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement so that, in addition to opening a PDB that is currently closed, it can be used to change the open mode of a PDB that is already open.

- **RENAME GLOBAL_NAME clause**
  This clause changes the unique global database name for the PDB. The new global database name must be different from that of any container in the CDB. When you change the global database name of a PDB, the PDB name is changed to the name before the first period in the global database name.
  You must change the PDB property of database services used to connect to the PDB when you change the global database name.

- **set_time_zone_clause**
  This clause works the same as it would in an ALTER DATABASE statement, but it applies to the current PDB.

- **DEFAULT EDITION clause**
  This clause works the same as it would in an ALTER DATABASE statement, but it applies to the current PDB. Each PDB can use edition-based redefinition, and editions in one PDB do not affect editions in other PDBs. In a multitenant
environment in which each PDB has its own application, you can use edition-based redefinition independently for each distinct application.

See Also:

- "Managing Services for PDBs"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE"

15.4.2 Modifying a PDB with the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE Statement

To modify the attributes of a single PDB, use the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

When the current container is a PDB, an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement modifies the PDB. The modifications overwrite the defaults set for the root in the PDB. The modifications do not affect the CDB root or other PDBs.

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met:

- To change the open mode of the PDB from mounted to opened or from opened to mounted, the current user must have SYSDBA, SYSOPER, SYSBACKUP, or SYS DG administrative privilege. The privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user must exercise the privilege using AS sys_privilege_name at connect time.
- For all other operations performed using the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, the current user must have the ALTER DATABASE system privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB.
- To close a PDB, the PDB must be open.

Note:

This section does not cover changing the global database name of a PDB using the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

To modify a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Run an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.
Example 15-14  Changing the Open Mode of a PDB

This ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement changes the open mode of the current PDB to mounted.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;

The following statement changes the open mode of the current PDB to open read-only.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;

A PDB must be in mounted mode to change its open mode to read-only or read/write unless you specify the FORCE keyword.

The following statement changes the open mode of the current PDB from mounted or open read-only to open read/write.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN FORCE;

The following statement changes the open mode of the current PDB from mounted to migrate.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN UPGRADE;

Example 15-15  Bringing a Data File Online for a PDB

This ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement uses a database_file_clause to bring the /u03/oracle/pdb1_01.dbf data file online.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE DATAFILE '/u03/oracle/pdb1_01.dbf' ONLINE;

Example 15-16  Changing the Default Tablespaces for a PDB

This ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement uses a DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause to set the default permanent tablespace to pdb1_tbs for the PDB.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE DEFAULT TABLESPACE pdb1_tbs;

This ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement uses a DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE clause to set the default temporary tablespace to pdb1_temp for the PDB.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE pdb1_temp;

The tablespace or tablespace group specified in the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement must exist in the PDB. Users whose current container is a PDB that are not explicitly assigned a default tablespace or default temporary tablespace use the default tablespace or default temporary tablespace for the PDB.
Example 15-17  Changing the Default Tablespace Type for a PDB

This ALTER DATABASE statement uses a SET DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause to change the default tablespace type to bigfile for the PDB.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SET DEFAULT BIGFILE TABLESPACE;

Example 15-18  Setting Storage Limits for a PDB

This statement sets the storage limit for all tablespaces that belong to a PDB to two gigabytes.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE STORAGE(MAXSIZE 2G);

This statement specifies that there is no storage limit for the tablespaces that belong to the PDB.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE STORAGE(MAXSIZE UNLIMITED);

This statement specifies that there is no storage limit for the tablespaces that belong to the PDB and that there is no storage limit for the shared temporary tablespace that can be used by sessions connected to the PDB.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE STORAGE UNLIMITED;

Example 15-19  Setting the Logging Attribute of a PDB

With the PDB open in restricted mode, this statement specifies the NOLOGGING attribute for the PDB:

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE NOLOGGING;

Example 15-20  Setting the Force Logging Mode of a PDB

This statement enables force logging mode for the PDB:

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ENABLE FORCE LOGGING;

Example 15-21  Setting the Default Edition for a PDB

This example sets the default edition for the current PDB to PDB1E3.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE DEFAULT EDITION = PDB1E3;
15.4.3 Changing the Global Database Name of a PDB

You can change the global database name of a PDB with the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE RENAME GLOBAL_NAME TO` statement.

When you change the global database name of a PDB, the new global database name must be different from that of any container in the CDB.

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have the `ALTER DATABASE` system privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB.
- For an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) database, the PDB must be open on the current instance only. The PDB must be closed on all other instances.
- The PDB being modified must be opened on the current instance in read/write mode with `RESTRICTED` specified so that it is accessible only to users with `RESTRICTED SESSION` privilege in the PDB.

To change the global database name of a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE RENAME GLOBAL_NAME TO` statement. The following example changes the global database name of the PDB to `salespdb.example.com`:

   ```
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE RENAME GLOBAL_NAME TO salespdb.example.com;
   ```

3. Close the PDB.
4. Open the PDB in read/write mode.

When you change the global database name of a PDB, the PDB name is changed to the first part of the new global name, which is the part before the first period. Also, Oracle Database changes the name of the default database service for the PDB automatically. Oracle Database also changes the `PDB` property of all database services in the PDB to the new global name of the PDB. You must close the PDB and open it in read/write mode for Oracle Database to complete the integration of the new PDB service name into the CDB.
Oracle Net Services must be configured properly for clients to access database services. You might need to alter your Oracle Net Services configuration because of the PDB name change.

See Also:

- "Connecting to a PDB"
- "Managing Services for PDBs" for information about PDBs and database services

15.4.4 Managing Refreshable Clone PDBs

A refreshable clone PDB is a read-only clone that can periodically synchronize with its source PDB.

15.4.4.1 Refreshing a PDB

You can refresh a PDB that was created as a refreshable clone.

When you refresh a PDB manually, changes made to the source PDB since the last refresh are propagated to the PDB being refreshed. You can manually refresh a PDB that is configured for automatic refresh.

Prerequisites

To refresh a PDB, the PDB must have been created as a clone with the REFRESH MODE MANUAL or REFRESH MODE EVERY minutes clause included.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the PDB you want to refresh.

2. If the PDB is not closed, then close the PDB. For example, issue the following SQL statement:

   \[
   \text{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;}
   \]

3. Issue the following SQL statement:

   \[
   \text{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE REFRESH;}
   \]

Related Topics

- About Refreshable Clone PDBs

  The CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... REFRESH MODE statement clones a source PDB and configures the clone to be refreshable. Refreshing the clone PDB updates it with redo accumulated since the last redo log apply.

15.4.4.2 Switching Over a Refreshable Clone PDB

You can switch the roles of a source PDB and its refreshable clone PDB.

The following statement performs a switchover:

\[
\text{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE refresh_mode FROM clonepdb@dblink SWITCHOVER;}
\]
You must not specify REFRESH MODE NONE for refresh_mode. The database link specified in the FROM clause must point to the root of the CDB in which the clone PDB resides.

After the switchover completes, the source PDB becomes the refreshable clone PDB, which can only be opened in READ ONLY mode.

Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- You must be connected to the source PDB when you issue ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SWITCHOVER.
- If the source PDB and clone PDB are in separate CDBs, then the user specified in the database link must have the same name and password in the source PDB and clone PDB.

To switch the roles of the source and clone PDBs:

1. In SQL*Plus or SQL Developer, log in to the source PDB.
2. Execute the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE refresh_mode FROM clonepdb@dblink SWITCHOVER statement.
   After the statement completes, the currently connected PDB is now the refreshable clone PDB.
3. Optionally, refresh the clone PDB:
   
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE REFRESH;

Example 15-22  Switching Over a Refreshable Clone PDB

This example assumes that your data center contains CDBs named cdb1 and cdb2. The PDB named cdb1_pdb1 resides in cdb1. You want to create a refreshable clone of this PDB in cdb2 and name it cdb1_pdb1_ref. Your goal is to switch over cdb1_pdb1_ref so that it becomes the source PDB and cdb1_pdb1 becomes the clone PDB.

1. In SQL*Plus, connect to cdb1 as a user with administrator privileges, and then ensure sure that cdb1_pdb1 is open in read/write mode (sample output included):

   CONNECT SYS@cdb1 AS SYSDBA
   Enter password: ********
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL CLOSE;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE cdb1_pdb1 OPEN READ WRITE;
   SHOW PDBS;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>CON_NAME</th>
<th>OPEN MODE</th>
<th>RESTRICTED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
<td>READ ONLY</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CDB1_PDB1</td>
<td>READ WRITE</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Create a common user named c##u1 (replace pwd with a user-specified password):

```
DROP USER c##u1 CASCADE;
CREATE USER c##u1 IDENTIFIED BY pwd;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, RESOURCE, CREATE ANY TABLE, UNLIMITED TABLESPACE
TO c##u1 CONTAINER=ALL;
GRANT CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE TO c##u1 CONTAINER=ALL;
GRANT SYSOPER TO c##u1 CONTAINER=ALL;
```

3. Set the container to cdb1_pdb1, and then create a table t1 to use for testing (sample output included):

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = cdb1_pdb1;
CREATE TABLE t1(n1 NUMBER);
INSERT INTO t1 VALUES(1);
COMMIT;
SELECT * FROM t1;
```

```
N1
1
```

4. Connect to cdb2 as a user with administrator privileges, and then create the common user named c##u1 (replace pwd with a user-specified password):

```
CONNECT SYS@cdb2 AS SYSDBA
Enter password: ******
```

```
DROP USER c##u1 CASCADE;
CREATE USER c##u1 IDENTIFIED BY pwd;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, RESOURCE, CREATE ANY TABLE, UNLIMITED TABLESPACE
TO c##u1 CONTAINER=ALL;
GRANT CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE TO c##u1 CONTAINER=ALL;
GRANT SYSOPER TO c##u1 CONTAINER=ALL;
```

Now cdb1 and cdb2 both have a common user with the same name (c##u1) and password.

5. Create a database link to cdb1.

The following command specifies user c##u1, password pwd, and service name cdb1:

```
CREATE DATABASE LINK cdb1_datalink CONNECT TO c##u1 IDENTIFIED BY pwd
USING 'cdb1';
```

6. Create the manually refreshable PDB named cdb1_pdb1_ref.
The following statement specifies the database link `cdb1_datalink` and the file destination `/dsk1/df`:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE cdb1_pdb1_ref FROM cdb1_pdb1@cdb1_datalink
    CREATE_FILE_DEST='/dsk1/df'
    REFRESH MODE MANUAL;
```

7. **Refresh** `cdb1_pdb1_ref`:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = cdb1_pdb1_ref;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE REFRESH;
```

8. **Query** `t1` to check that the refreshable clone PDB contains the correct contents (sample output included):

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;
SELECT * FROM t1;
```

```
N1  1
```

9. **Connect to** `cdb1` as a user with administrator privileges, and then create a database link to `cdb2`:

```
CONNECT SYS@cdb1 AS SYSDBA
Enter password: *******

CREATE DATABASE LINK cdb2_datalink CONNECT TO c##u1 IDENTIFIED BY pwd
    USING 'cdb2';
```

The preceding statement specifies user `c##u1`, password `pwd`, and service name `cdb2`.

10. **Set the container to** `cdb1_pdb1`, and then **switch over so that** `cdb1_pdb1_ref` **is the primary PDB and the current PDB is the clone**:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = cdb1_pdb1;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE
    REFRESH MODE MANUAL
    FROM cdb1_pdb1_ref@cdb2_datalink
SWITCHOVER;
```

11. **Query** `t1` to check that the current PDB, which is now the refreshable clone PDB, contains the correct contents (sample output included):

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;
SELECT * FROM t1;
```

```
N1  1
```
12. Connect to cdb2 as a user with administrator privileges, set the container to the new source PDB cdb1_pdb1_ref, and then insert a new row into table t1 (sample output included):

```
CONNECT SYS@cdb2 AS SYSDBA
Enter password: ********
ALTER SELECTION CONTAINER = cdb1_pdb1_ref;
SELECT * FROM t1;

----------
  1

INSERT INTO t1 VALUES(2);
COMMIT;
SELECT * FROM t1;

----------
  1
   2
```

13. Connect to cdb1 as a user with administrator privileges, set the container to cdb1_pdb1 (which is the new clone), refresh it, and then query t1:

```
CONNECT SYS@cdb1 AS SYSDBA
Enter password: ********
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER = cdb1_pdb1;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE REFRESH;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY;
SELECT * FROM t1;

----------
  1
   2
```

The preceding output shows that the clone cdb1_pdb1 was refreshed from the source cdb1_pdb1_ref.

15.5 Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs

You can modify the open mode of a PDB by using the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SQL statement or the SQL*Plus STARTUP command.

15.5.1 About the Open Mode of a PDB

When a PDB is mounted, you can open it in read/write, read-only, or MIGRATE mode. You can also mount a PDB without opening it.
15.5.1.1 Summary of PDB Open Modes

Depending on the options that you specify in `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN`, the PDB opens in different modes.

You can view the current open mode of PDBs by querying the `V$PDBS.OPEN_MODE` column. The following table describes the possible PDB open modes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Read/Write</td>
<td>When you run <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ WRITE</code>, the PDB allows queries and user transactions to proceed and allows users to generate redo logs. This is the default open mode except when a PDB belongs to a physical standby database.</td>
<td>If you specify the optional <code>RESTRICTED</code> keyword, then the PDB is accessible only to users with the <code>RESTRICTED SESSION</code> privilege in the PDB. If you also specify <code>FORCE</code>, then all sessions connected to the PDB that do not have the <code>RESTRICTED SESSION</code> privilege in the PDB are terminated, and their transactions are rolled back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-Only</td>
<td>When you run <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY</code>, the PDB allows queries but not user changes. This is the default open mode when a PDB belongs to a physical standby database.</td>
<td>Database administrators can create, modify, or drop common users and roles in the CDB. The CDB applies these changes to the PDB when its open mode is changed to read/write mode. Before the changes are applied, descriptions of common users and roles in the PDB might be different from the descriptions in the rest of the CDB. If you specify the optional <code>RESTRICTED</code> keyword, then the PDB is accessible only to users with the <code>RESTRICTED SESSION</code> privilege in the PDB. If you also specify <code>FORCE</code>, then all sessions connected to the PDB that do not have the <code>RESTRICTED SESSION</code> privilege in the PDB are terminated, and their transactions are rolled back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migrate</td>
<td>When you run <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN UPGRADE</code>, the PDB is in MIGRATE mode. You can run database upgrade scripts on the PDB.</td>
<td>If you specify the optional <code>RESTRICTED</code> keyword, then the PDB is accessible only to users with the <code>RESTRICTED SESSION</code> privilege in the PDB.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15-2  (Cont.) PDB Mount and Open Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mounted</td>
<td>When you run <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE</code> in an open PDB, then the PDB is mounted. The PDB does not allow changes to any objects. In this state, the PDB is accessible only to database administrators. The PDB cannot read from or write to data files. Information about the PDB is removed from memory caches. Consistent backups of the PDB are supported.</td>
<td>Database administrators can create, modify, or drop common users and roles in the CDB. The CDB applies these changes to the PDB when its open mode is changed to read/write mode. Before the changes are applied, descriptions of common users and roles in the PDB might be different from the descriptions in the rest of the CDB.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also:**

`Oracle Database SQL Language Reference` to learn more about the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN` command

#### 15.5.1.2 Clauses for Changing the Open State of PDBs

To change the open mode of a PDB when the current container is the CDB root, specify the `pdb_change_state` clause of `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE`.

#### 15.5.1.2.1 OPEN and CLOSE Clauses

`READ WRITE` is the default for `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN` unless a PDB being opened belongs to a CDB used as a physical standby database, in which case `READ ONLY` is the default.

When you specify PDBs to open or close, you can do the following:

- List one or more PDBs.
- Specify `ALL` to modify all PDBs.
- Specify `ALL EXCEPT` to modify all PDBs, except for the PDBs listed.

The following table describes the clauses of the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement that modify the mode of a PDB.
Table 15-3  ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE Clauses That Modify the Mode of a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OPEN READ WRITE [RESTRICTED] [FORCE]</td>
<td>Opens the PDB in read/write mode. When RESTRICTED is specified, the PDB is accessible only to users with RESTRICTED SESSION privilege in the PDB. All sessions connected to the PDB that do not have RESTRICTED SESSION privilege on it are terminated, and their transactions are rolled back. When FORCE is specified, the statement opens a PDB that is currently closed and changes the open mode of a PDB that is in open read-only mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEN READ ONLY [RESTRICTED] [FORCE]</td>
<td>Opens the PDB in read-only mode. When RESTRICTED is specified, the PDB is accessible only to users with RESTRICTED SESSION privilege in the PDB. All sessions connected to the PDB that do not have RESTRICTED SESSION privilege on it are terminated. When FORCE is specified, the statement opens a PDB that is currently closed and changes the open mode of a PDB that is in open read/write mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEN UPGRADE [RESTRICTED]</td>
<td>Opens the PDB in migrate mode. When RESTRICTED is specified, the PDB is accessible only to users with RESTRICTED SESSION privilege in the PDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOSE [IMMEDIATE] [ABORT]</td>
<td>Places the PDB in mounted mode. The CLOSE statement is the PDB equivalent of the SQL<em>Plus SHUTDOWN command. If you do not specify IMMEDIATE or ABORT, then the PDB is shut down with the normal mode. When IMMEDIATE is specified, this statement is the PDB equivalent of the SQL</em>Plus SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE command. If the CDB is in ARCHIVELOG mode, and if ABORT is specified, then the PDB is forcefully closed. The PDB data files are not checkpointed or accessed during this process. If other instances have the PDB open, then an available instance performs instance recovery automatically. During this time, access to the PDB on other instances may observe a brown-out time. If no instance has the PDB open, then the next PDB open may cause automatic media recovery. If automatic media recovery fails (for example, because of inaccessible files), then you must manually recover the PDB before opening it. If the PDB keystore was in an open state, then ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE does not close it. To close the keystore, run the ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT SET KEYSTORE CLOSE IDENTIFIED BY &quot;pdb_ks_pwd&quot; command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.5.1.2.2 SERVICES Clause

You can use the services clause to specify the services that are started when a single PDB is opened.

The clause has the following variations:

- List one or more services in the services clause in the following form:

  SERVICES = ('service_name' [, 'service_name'] ... )
• Specify **ALL** in the *services* clause to start all PDB’s services, as in the following example:

```
SERVICES = ALL
```

• Specify **ALL EXCEPT** in the *services* clause to start all PDB’s services, except for the services listed, in the following form:

```
SERVICES = ALL EXCEPT('service_name' [, 'service_name'] ... )
```

• Specify **NONE** in the *services* clause to start only the PDB’s default service and none of the other PDB’s services, as in the following example:

```
SERVICES = NONE
```

**NONE** is the default setting for the *services* clause. A PDB’s default service is always started, regardless of the setting for the *services* clause.

### 15.5.1.2.3 INSTANCES Clause

In an Oracle RAC CDB, you can use the *instances* clause to specify the instances on which the PDB is modified.

You can close a PDB in some instances and leave it open in others. The *instances* clause has the following variations:

• List one or more instances in the *instances* clause in the following form:

```
INSTANCES = ('instance_name' [, 'instance_name'] ... )
```

• Specify **ALL** in the *instances* clause to modify the PDB in all running instances, as in the following example:

```
INSTANCES = ALL
```

• Specify **ALL EXCEPT** in the *instances* clause to modify the PDB in all instances, except for the instances listed, in the following form:

```
INSTANCES = ALL EXCEPT('instance_name' [, 'instance_name'] ... )
```

### 15.5.1.2.4 The RELOCATE Clause

In an Oracle Real Application Clusters environment, use **RELOCATE** to instruct the database to reopen the PDB on a different Oracle RAC instance.

You can use the following options:

• Specify **NORELOCATE**, the default, to close the PDB in the current instance.

• Specify **RELOCATE TO** and specify an instance name to reopen the PDB in the specified instance.

• Specify **RELOCATE** to reopen the PDB on a different instance that is selected by Oracle Database.
Note:
If both the services clause and the instances clause are specified in the same ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, then the specified services are started on the specified instances.

15.5.1.3 Compatibility Checks When a PDB Is Opened

When a PDB is opened, Oracle Database checks the compatibility of the PDB with the CDB.

Opening a PDB upgrades it automatically when a version mismatch occurs between the PDB and the CDB root. The Replay Upgrade on PDB Open optimization, which is the default, avoids manual error correction by re-executing statements stored in capture tables. The mechanism is the same used in application synchronization. Oracle Database 20c uses Replay Upgrade on PDB Open in the following scenarios:

- You plug in a PDB that was unplugged from a CDB in a previous release. When the PDB is opened, the database automatically performs a Replay Upgrade.
- A CDB from a previous release was upgraded to Oracle Database 20c, but a PDB in the CDB was not upgraded. If you open this PDB without the OPEN UPGRADE option, then the CDB automatically performs a Replay Upgrade of the PDB.

The Replay Upgrade on PDB Open feature requires that database properties PDB_UPGRADE_SYNC and UPGRADE_PDB_ON_OPEN be set to the default value of true. If either property is false, then a classic upgrade is required before you can open the PDB. If a problem occurs during replay upgrade or classic upgrade, then the CDB records a compatibility violation.

A compatibility violation is either of the following:

- Warning
  The database records the warning in the alert log, and then opens the PDB normally without displaying a warning message.

- Error
  The database displays a message when the PDB is opened stating that the PDB was altered with errors, and records the errors in the alert log. You must correct the condition that caused each error. When there are errors, the PDB is opened, but access to the PDB is limited to users with RESTRICTED SESSION privilege so that the compatibility violations can be addressed. You can view descriptions of violations by querying the PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS view.

See Also:

- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs" to learn how to modify the open mode of one or more PDBs when the current container is the root
- Oracle Database Reference to learn about the PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS view
15.5.1.4 How to Disable or Enable Replay Upgrade

By default, the Oracle Multitenant Replay Upgrade (Replay Upgrade) method is enabled for upgrades on PDBs and CDBs. However, you can enable or disable the use of the Replay Upgrade method.

To disable the Parallel Upgrade Utility (catctl.pl) default of performing a Replay Upgrade, run the following command, on either CDB$ROOT or a particular PDB:

```
ALTER DATABASE UPGRADE SYNC OFF
```

To re-enable the Replay Upgrade behavior, enter the following command:

```
ALTER DATABASE UPGRADE SYNC ON
```

You can also select a non-replay upgrade by setting the Parallel Upgrade Utility (catctl.pl) parameter `--t`, which forces a non-replay upgrade that uses the classic scripting method.

**Note:**

You can manage use of the Replay Upgrade method on the entire CDB, or on individual PDBs, depending on whether you are connected to CDB$ROOT, or to a particular PDB:

- **If** `UPGRADE SYNC` **is set to OFF** in CDB$ROOT, **then** the Replay Upgrade method is not used for any PDBs plugged into the CDB.
- **If** `UPGRADE SYNC` **is set to ON** in CDB$ROOT, **but set to OFF** for a PDB, **then** the Replay Upgrade method is not used for the PDB where `UPGRADE SYNC` **is OFF**, but the Replay Upgrade method is used for all other PDBs plugged into the CDB.
- **If** `UPGRADE SYNC` **is set to ON** in CDB$ROOT, **and set to ON** for all PDBs (the default), **then** the Replay Upgrade method is used for all PDBs plugged into the CDB.

15.5.2 Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE

You can modify the open mode of PDBs with the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with a `pdb_change_state` clause.

**Prerequisites**

To change the open mode of PDBs with the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- The current user must have one of the following administrative privileges, which must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB:
- SYSDBA, exercised using AS SYSDBA at connect time
- SYSAUX, exercised using AS SYSAUX at connect time
- SYSBACKUP, exercised using SYSBACKUP at connect time
- SYSDG, exercised using AS SYSDG at connect time

**Note:**
You can modify the open mode of a PDB when the current container is the PDB.

- When RESTRICTED SESSION is enabled, you must specify RESTRICTED when a PDB is opened.
- In an Oracle RAC CDB, if a PDB is open in one or more Oracle RAC instances, then it can be opened in additional instances. However, the PDB must be opened in the same mode as in the instances in which it is already open. A PDB can be closed in some instances and opened on others.

To place PDBs in a target mode with the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, you must meet the requirements described in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Mode of PDBs</th>
<th>ALL Keyword Included</th>
<th>FORCE Keyword Included</th>
<th>Required Mode for the Root</th>
<th>Required Mode for Each PDB Being Modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Mounted, read-only, or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Mounted or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Mounted, read-only, or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted, read-only, or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted or read-only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted, read-only, or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migrate</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migrate</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounted</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted, read-only, migrate, or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mounted</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Read-only, migrate, or read/write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To modify the open mode:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
See “About Container Access in a CDB”.

2. Run an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with a pdb_change_state clause.

Example 15-23  Changing the Open Mode of Listed PDBs

This statement changes the open mode of PDBs `salespdb` and `hrpdb` to open in read/write mode.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb, hrpdb
    OPEN READ WRITE;
```

This statement changes the open mode of PDB `salespdb` to open in read-only mode. `RESTRICTED` specifies that the PDB is accessible only to users with RESTRICTED SESSION privilege in the PDB.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb
    OPEN READ ONLY RESTRICTED;
```

This statement changes the open mode of PDB `salespdb` to open in migrate mode:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb
    OPEN UPGRADE;
```

Example 15-24  Changing the Open Mode of All PDBs

Run the following query to display the open mode of each PDB associated with a CDB:

```
SELECT NAME, OPEN_MODE FROM V$PDBS WHERE CON_ID > 2;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>OPEN_MODE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>READ WRITE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALESpdb</td>
<td>MOUNTED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DWpdb</td>
<td>MOUNTED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that `hrpdb` is already in read/write mode. To change the open mode of `salespdb` and `dwpdb` to open in read/write mode, use the following statement:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL
    OPEN READ WRITE;
```

The `hrpdb` PDB is not modified because it is already in open read/write mode. The statement does not return an error because two PDBs are in mounted mode and one PDB (`hrpdb`) is in the specified mode (read/write). Similarly, the statement does not return an error if all PDBs are in mounted mode.
However, if any PDB is in read-only mode, then the statement returns an error. To avoid an error and open all PDBs in the CDB in read/write mode, specify the `FORCE` keyword:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL
    OPEN READ WRITE FORCE;
```

With the `FORCE` keyword included, all PDBs are opened in read/write mode, including PDBs in read-only mode.

**Example 15-25  Changing the Open Mode of All PDBs Except for Listed Ones**

This statement changes the mode of all PDBs except for `salespdb` and `hrpdb` to mounted mode.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL EXCEPT salespdb, hrpdb
    CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
```

---

**Note:**

An `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement modifying the open mode of a PDB is instance-specific. Therefore, if this statement is issued when connected to an Oracle RAC instance, then it affects the open mode of the PDB only in that instance.

---

**See Also:**

- "Clauses for Changing the Open State of PDBs"
- "Modifying a PDB at the Database Level" for information about modifying the other attributes of a PDB
- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for information about database modes and their uses
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Concepts* for more information about shutdown modes

15.5.3 Preserving or Discarding the Open Mode of PDBs When the CDB Restarts

You can preserve the open mode of one or more PDBs when the CDB restarts by using the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` SQL statement with a `pdb_save_or_discard_state` clause.

You can do this in the following way:

- Specify `SAVE STATE` to preserve the PDBs' mode when the CDB is restarted.
For example, if a PDB is in open read/write mode before the CDB is restarted, then the PDB is in open read/write mode after the CDB is restarted; if a PDB is in mounted mode before the CDB is restarted, then the PDB is in mounted mode after the CDB is restarted.

- Specify **DISCARD STATE** to ignore the PDBs' open mode when the CDB is restarted.

  When **DISCARD STATE** is specified for a PDB, the PDB is always mounted after the CDB is restarted.

You can specify which PDBs to modify in the following ways:

- List one or more PDBs.
- Specify **ALL** to modify all PDBs.
- Specify **ALL EXCEPT** to modify all PDBs, except for the PDBs listed.

For an Oracle RAC CDB, you can use the *instances* clause in the *pdb_save_or_discard_state* clause to specify the instances on which a PDB's open mode is preserved in the following ways:

- List one or more instances in the *instances* clause in the following form:

  \[
  \text{INSTANCES} = (\text{"instance\_name" \[,\text{"instance\_name"}\] } ...
  \]

- Specify **ALL** in the *instances* clause to modify the PDB in all running instances, as in the following example:

  \[
  \text{INSTANCES} = \text{ALL}
  \]

- Specify **ALL EXCEPT** in the *instances* clause to modify the PDB in all instances, except for the instances listed, in the following form:

  \[
  \text{INSTANCES} = \text{ALL EXCEPT(\"instance\_name" \[,\text{"instance\_name"}\] ...)
  \]

For a PDB in an Oracle RAC CDB, **SAVE STATE** and **DISCARD STATE** only affect the mode of the current instance. They do not affect the mode of other instances, even if more than one instance is specified in the *instances* clause.

To issue an *ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE* SQL statement with a *pdb_save_or_discard_state* clause, the current user must have the **ALTER DATABASE** privilege in the root.

You can check the saved states for the PDBs in a CDB by querying the *DBA_PDB_SAVED_STATES* view.

To preserve or discard a PDB's open mode when the CDB restarts:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Run an *ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE* statement with a *pdb_save_or_discard_state* clause.

The following examples either preserve or discard the open mode of one or more PDBs when the CDB restarts.
Example 15-26  Preserving the Open Mode of a PDB When the CDB Restarts
This statement preserves the open mode of the salespdb when the CDB restarts.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb SAVE STATE;

Example 15-27  Discarding the Open Mode of a PDB When the CDB Restarts
This statement discards the open mode of the salespdb when the CDB restarts.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb DISCARD STATE;

Example 15-28  Preserving the Open Mode of All PDBs When the CDB Restarts
This statement preserves the open mode of all PDBs when the CDB restarts.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL SAVE STATE;

Example 15-29  Preserving the Open Mode of Listed PDBs When the CDB Restarts
This statement preserves the open mode of the salespdb and hrpdb when the CDB restarts.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE salespdb, hrpdb SAVE STATE;

Example 15-30  Preserving the Open Mode of All PDBs Except for Listed Ones When the CDB Restarts
This statement preserves the open mode of all PDBs except for salespdb and hrpdb.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ALL EXCEPT salespdb, hrpdb SAVE STATE;

15.6 Altering the Open Mode of a PDB Using STARTUP and SHUTDOWN

When the current container is a PDB, you can use the SQL*Plus STARTUP command to open the PDB and the SQL*Plus SHUTDOWN command to close the PDB.

15.6.1 About Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with the SQL*Plus STARTUP Command

When the current container is the root, the STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE command can open a single PDB.

Use the following options of the STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE command to open a PDB:

•    FORCE
Closes an open PDB before re-opening it in read/write mode. When this option is specified, no other options are allowed.

- **RESTRICT**

  Enables only users with the RESTRICTED SESSION system privilege in the PDB to access the PDB.

  If neither OPEN READ WRITE nor OPEN READ ONLY is specified, then the PDB is opened in read-only mode when the CDB to which it belongs is a physical standby database. Otherwise, the PDB is opened in read/write mode.

- **OPEN open_pdb_options**

  Opens the PDB in either read/write mode or read-only mode. You can specify OPEN READ WRITE or OPEN READ ONLY. When you specify OPEN without any other options, READ WRITE is the default.

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have SYSDBA, SYSOPER, SYSBACKUP, or SYSDG administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user must exercise the privilege using AS SYSDBA, AS SYSOPER, AS SYSBACKUP, or AS SYSDG, respectively, at connect time.

- When RESTRICTED SESSION is enabled, RESTRICT must be specified when a PDB is opened.

In addition, to place PDBs in a target mode with the STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE command, you must meet the requirements described in the following table.

### Table 15-5 Modifying the Open Mode of a PDB with STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Mode of the PDB</th>
<th>FORCE Option Included</th>
<th>Required Mode for the Root</th>
<th>Required Mode of the PDB Being Modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Mounted, read-only, or read/write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Read/write</td>
<td>Mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Read-only or read/write</td>
<td>Mounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

You can also use the STARTUP command to modify the open mode of a PDB when the current container is the PDB.

**See Also:**

- “Starting Up a PDB Using the STARTUP Command”
- “Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with the SQL*Plus STARTUP Command”
15.6.2 Starting Up a PDB Using the STARTUP Command

When the current container is a PDB, the SQL*Plus `STARTUP` command opens the PDB.

Use the following options of the `STARTUP` command to open a PDB:

- **FORCE**
  Closes an open PDB before re-opening it in read/write mode. When this option is specified, no other options are allowed.

- **RESTRICT**
  Enables only users with the RESTRICTED SESSION system privilege in the PDB to access the PDB. If neither `OPEN READ WRITE` nor `OPEN READ ONLY` is specified and `RESTRICT` is specified, then the PDB is opened in read-only mode when the CDB to which it belongs is a physical standby database. Otherwise, the PDB is opened in read/write mode.

- **OPEN open_pdb_options**
  Opens the PDB in either read/write mode or read-only mode. Specify `OPEN READ WRITE` or `OPEN READ ONLY`. When `RESTRICT` is not specified, `READ WRITE` is always the default.

To issue the `STARTUP` command when the current container is a PDB, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have SYSDBA, SYSOPER, SYSBACKUP, or SYSDG administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user must exercise the privilege using `AS SYSDBA`, `AS SYSOPER`, `AS SYSBACKUP`, or `AS SYSDG`, respectively, at connect time.

- Excluding the use of the `FORCE` option, the PDB must be in mounted mode to open it.

- To place a PDB in mounted mode, the PDB must be in open read-only or open read/write mode.

To modify a PDB with the `STARTUP` command:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Run the `STARTUP` command.

**Example 15-31  Opening a PDB in Read/Write Mode with the STARTUP Command**

```
STARTUP OPEN
```

**Example 15-32  Opening a PDB in Read-Only Mode with the STARTUP Command**

```
STARTUP OPEN READ ONLY
```
Example 15-33  Opening a PDB in Read-Only Restricted Mode with the STARTUP Command

STARTUP RESTRICT OPEN READ ONLY

Example 15-34  Opening a PDB in Read/Write Mode with the STARTUP Command and the FORCE Option

This example assumes that the PDB is currently open. The FORCE option closes the PDB and then opens it in the read/write mode.

STARTUP FORCE

See Also:

- "About the Current Container"
- "Connecting to a PDB".
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about starting up a database
- SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference

15.6.3 Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with the SQL*Plus STARTUP Command

You can use the STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE command to open a single PDB.

To modify a PDB with the STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE command:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   See “About Container Access in a CDB”.
2. Run the STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE command.

Note:

When the current container is the root, the SQL*Plus SHUTDOWN command always shuts down the CDB instance. It cannot be used to close individual PDBs.

Example 15-35  Opening a PDB in Read/Write Mode with the STARTUP Command

STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb OPEN
Example 15-36  Opening a PDB in Read/Write Restricted Mode with the STARTUP Command

STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb RESTRICT

Example 15-37  Opening a PDB in Read-Only Restricted Mode with the STARTUP Command

STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb OPEN READ ONLY RESTRICT

Example 15-38  Opening a PDB in Read-Only Mode with the STARTUP Command

STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb OPEN READ ONLY

Example 15-39  Opening a PDB in Read/Write Mode with the STARTUP Command and the FORCE Option

This example assumes that the hrpdb PDB is currently open. The FORCE option closes the PDB and then opens it in the read/write mode.

STARTUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb FORCE

See Also:

• "About Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with the SQL*Plus STARTUP Command"
• "Altering the Open Mode of a PDB Using STARTUP and SHUTDOWN" for information about using the STARTUP or SHUTDOWN command when the current container is a PDB
• Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide
• SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference

15.6.4 Shutting Down a PDB Using the SHUTDOWN Command

When the current container is a PDB, the SQL*Plus SHUTDOWN command closes the PDB.

After the SHUTDOWN command is issued on a PDB successfully, it is in mounted mode.

The following SHUTDOWN modes are possible:

• When you specify SHUTDOWN only, then the PDB is shut down with the normal mode.
• When you specify SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE, the PDB is shut down with the immediate mode.
• When you specify SHUTDOWN ABORT, the PDB is forcefully closed.
For a single-instance CDB, PDB media recovery is required when you specify `SHUTDOWN ABORT`. For an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) CDB, PDB media recovery is required if the `SHUTDOWN ABORT` command closes the last open instance.

Note that if the PDB keystore was in an open state, then issuing `SHUTDOWN` at the PDB level does not close it. To close the keystore, run the `ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT` `SET KEystore CLOSE IDENTIFIED BY "pdb_ks_pwd"` command.

Prerequisites

To issue the `SHUTDOWN` command when the current container is a PDB, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have `SYSDBA`, `SYSOPER`, `SYsBACKUP`, or `SYSDG` administrative privilege, and the privilege must be either commonly granted or locally granted in the PDB. The user must exercise the privilege using `AS SYSDBA`, `AS SYSOPER`, `AS SYsBACKUP`, or `AS SYSDG`, respectively, at connect time.

- To close a PDB, the PDB must be open.

To modify a PDB with the `SHUTDOWN` command:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Run the `SHUTDOWN` command.

\[ Note: \]

- When the current container is a PDB, the `SHUTDOWN` command only closes the PDB, not the CDB instance.
- There is no `SHUTDOWN` command for a PDB that is equivalent to `SHUTDOWN TRANSACTIONAL` for a CDB.

**Example 15-40  Closing a PDB with the SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE Command**

`SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE`

**See Also:**

- "About the Current Container"
- "Connecting to a PDB"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for more information about shutdown modes
- SQL*Plus User's Guide and Reference
15.7 Starting and Stopping PDBs in Oracle RAC

You can use SRVCTL commands to manage PDBs.

**Note:**

Starting with Oracle Database 20c, installation of non-CDB Oracle Database architecture is no longer supported. Starting with Oracle Grid Infrastructure 20c, policy-managed databases are deprecated.

Starting in Oracle Database 20c, PDBs are a resource managed by Oracle Clusterware. Consider a CDB called `raccont` that has a policy-managed PDB called `spark`.

**Note:**

If you attempt to create the service without first creating the PDB, then you will get an error message indicating you must create the PDB resource first.

If the `spark` PDB was created with cardinality set to 1, 2, or ALL, then if you create a service named `plug` for the PDB, the service can use the `-cardinality` argument, too. If the `spark` PDB was created using the `-preferred` or `-available` arguments, then new services you create for the PDB use the `-preferred` or `-available` arguments, not the `-cardinality` argument.

Because PDBs are managed as an Oracle Clusterware resource, typical Oracle RAC-based management practices apply. For this reason, if the PDB `spark` is in the online state when Oracle Clusterware is shut down on a server hosting this service, then the PDB is restored to its original state after the restart of Oracle Clusterware on this server. Thus, starting PDBs is automated as with any other Oracle RAC database.

To start a pluggable database:

```bash
$ srvctl start pdb -db db_name -pdb pdb_name [-startoption start_options]
```

To start a pluggable database on specific nodes:

```bash
$ srvctl start pdb -db db_name -pdb pdb_name -node node_list [-startoption start_options]
```

To stop a PDB and all its services on all nodes within a database using the IMMEDIATE option:

```bash
$ srvctl stop pdb -db db_name -pdb pdb_name -stopoption IMMEDIATE -drain_timeout 0 -stopsvcoption IMMEDIATE
```
To stop a pluggable database on specific nodes:

```
$ srvctl stop pdb -db db_name -pdb pdb_name -node node_list
   [-stopoption stop_options] [-stopsvcoption stop_service_options]
   [-drain_timeout timeout]
```

If you do not want the spark PDB to restart when the Oracle RAC database is restarted on all, or on a specific node, use the following command:

```
srvctl disable pdb -db raccont -pdb spark [-node node_name]
```

To view the status of the PDB service plug, use the following command:

```
srvctl status service -db raccont -service plug -verbose
```

To view the status of the PDB spark, use the following command:

```
srvctl status pdb -db raccont -pdb plug -detail
```

To modify the configuration of the PDB, use the following command:

```
srvctl modify pdb -db db_unique_name -pdb pdb_name
   [-cardinality {num_of_instances | ALL}]
   [-maxcpu max_cpu_usage] [-mincpuunit min_cpu_usage]
   [-rank rank] [-startoption start_options]
   [-stopoption stop_options] [-policy policy]
```

Related Topics

• Oracle Real Application Clusters Administration and Deployment Guide

15.8 Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU

Oracle Resource Manager (Resource Manager) allocates resources to pluggable databases (PDBs) in a multitenant container database (CDB).

This chapter assumes that you meet the following prerequisites:

• You understand how to configure and manage a CDB.

Note:

• You can complete the tasks in this chapter using SQL*Plus or Oracle SQL Developer.

• You can also administer the Resource Manager with the graphical user interface of Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control (Cloud Control).

• For simplicity, this chapter refers to PDBs, application roots, and application PDBs as “PDBs.”
15.8.1 Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment

In a CDB, workloads within multiple PDBs can compete for system and CDB resources. Resource plans solve this problem.

In a multitenant environment, Resource Manager operates on two levels:

- **CDB level**
  Resource Manager can manage the workloads for multiple PDBs that are contending for system and CDB resources. You can specify how resources are allocated to PDBs, and you can limit the resource utilization of specific PDBs. The principal tool is a CDB resource plan.

- **PDB level**
  Resource Manager can manage the workloads within each PDB. The principal tool is a PDB resource plan.

Resource Manager allocates the resources in two steps:

1. It allocates a portion of the system resources to each PDB.
2. In a specific PDB, it allocates a portion of system resources obtained in the preceding step to each session connected to the PDB.

**Note:**

Resource Manager manages activity in the CDB root automatically.

To use Resource Manager in a multitenant environment, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- The CDB must exist and must contain PDBs.
- To complete a task that uses the **DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER** package, you must have **ADMINISTER_RESOURCE_MANAGER** system privilege.
15.8.1.1 Purpose of Resource Management in a Multitenant Environment

Resource Manager can provide more efficient use of resources for a CDB.

When resource allocation decisions for a CDB are left to the operating system, you may encounter the following problems with workload management:

- Inappropriate allocation of resources among PDBs
  The operating system distributes resources equally among all active processes and cannot prioritize one task over another. Therefore, one or more PDBs might use an inordinate amount of the system resources, leaving the other PDBs starved for resources.

- Inappropriate allocation of resources within a single PDB
  One or more sessions connected to a single PDB might use an inordinate amount of the system resources, leaving other sessions connected to the same PDB starved for resources.

- Inconsistent performance of PDBs
  A single PDB might perform inconsistently when other PDBs are competing for more system resources or less system resources at various times.

- Lack of resource usage data for PDBs
  Resource usage data is critical for monitoring and tuning PDBs. Operating system monitoring tools are typically not useful because there are multiple PDBs running on the system.

Resource Manager helps to overcome these problems by enabling you to prioritize and limit the resource usage of specific PDBs. With the Resource Manager, you can:

- Specify that different PDBs should receive different shares of the system resources so that more resources are allocated to the more important PDBs
- Limit the CPU usage of a particular PDB
- Limit the number of parallel execution servers that a particular PDB can use
- Limit the memory usage of a particular PDB
- Specify the amount of memory guaranteed for a particular PDB
- Specify the maximum amount of memory a particular PDB can use
- Use PDB performance profiles for different sets of PDB

A performance profile for a set of PDBs can specify shares of system resources, CPU usage, and number of parallel execution servers. PDB performance profiles enable you to manage resources for large numbers of PDBs by specifying Resource Manager directives for profiles instead of individual PDBs.
• Limit the resource usage of different sessions connected to a single PDB
• Limit the I/O generated by specific PDBs
• Monitor the resource usage of PDBs

15.8.1.2 How Resource Management Works in a Multitenant Environment

A **CDB resource plan** allocates resources to its PDBs according to its set of resource plan directives (directives).

A parent-child relationship exists between a CDB resource plan and its resource plan directives. Each directive references either a set of PDBs in a performance profile, or a single PDB.

You can specify directives for both individual PDBs and for PDB performance profiles in the same CDB. No two directives for the currently active plan can reference the same PDB or the same PDB performance profile.

15.8.1.2.1 Performance Profiles for PDBs

A **PDB performance profile** configures resource plan directives for a set of PDBs that have the same priorities and resource controls.

For example, you might create a performance profiles called Gold, Silver, and Bronze. Each profile specifies a different set of directives depending on the importance of the type of PDB. Gold PDBs are more mission critical than Silver PDBs, which are more mission critical than Bronze PDBs. A PDB specifies its performance profile with the `DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE` initialization parameter.

You can use PDB lockdown profiles to specify PDB initialization parameters that control resources, such as `SGA_TARGET` and `PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT`. A lockdown profile prevents the PDB administrator from modifying the settings.

Oracle recommends using matching names for performance profiles and lockdown profiles. To prevent PDB owners from switching profiles, Oracle recommends putting the PDB performance profile in the PDB lockdown profile.

15.8.1.2.2 Resource Plan Directives for PDBs

Directives control allocation of CPU and parallel execution servers.

A directive can control the allocation of resources to PDBs based on the share value that you specify for each PDB or PDB performance profile. A higher share value results in more resources. The settings apply to the set of PDBs that use each profile.

For example, you can specify that `salespdb` is allocated double the resources allocated to `hrpdb` by setting the share value for `salespdb` twice as high as the share value for `hrpdb`. Similarly, you can specify that the `salespdb` performance profile is allocated double the resources allocated to the `hrpdb` performance profile by setting the share value for the `salespdb` performance profile twice as high as the share value for the `hrpdb` performance profile.

You can also specify utilization limits for PDBs and PDB performance profiles. The limit controls allocation to the PDB or performance profile. For example, the limit can control how much CPU `salespdb` gets as a percentage of the total CPU available to the CDB.
You can use both shares and utilization limits together for precise control over the resources allocated to each PDB and PDB performance profile in a CDB.

**See Also:**

"About Restricting PDB Users for Enhanced Security" for more information about PDB lockdown profiles

---

### 15.8.1.2.3 Consumer Groups for PDBs

In a CDB, background and administrative tasks map to the Resource Manager consumer groups that run them optimally.

Resource Manager uses the following rules to map a task to a consumer group:

- A task is mapped to a consumer group in the container that starts the task.
  - If a task starts in the CDB root, then the task maps to a consumer group in the CDB root. If the task starts in a PDB, then the task maps to a consumer group in the PDB.
- Many maintenance and administrative tasks automatically map to a consumer group.
  - For example, automated maintenance tasks map to ORA$AUTOTASK. In certain cases, the tasks map to a consumer group, but the mapping is modifiable. Such tasks include RMAN backup, RMAN image copy, Oracle Data Pump, and In-Memory population.

**Note:**

*Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* to learn more about the mapping rules for predefined consumer groups

---

### 15.8.1.3 User Interface for PDB Resource Management

You can manage PDB resources using the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER` package and initialization parameters.

#### 15.8.1.3.1 DBMSRESOURCE_MANAGER for CDBs and PDBs

- The `DBMSRESOURCE_MANAGER` package maintains plans, consumer groups, and plan directives for CDBs and PDBs.
- The following table describes the program units related to managing resources in PDBs.
Table 15-6 DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER Program Units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PL/SQL Program Unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE</td>
<td>This procedure creates the plan directives of the CDB resource plan. Plan directives specify the resource allocation policy for PDBs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE</td>
<td>This procedure creates the performance profile directives of the CDB resource plan. The directives specify the resource allocation policy for PDBs that use the performance profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE_CDB_PLAN</td>
<td>This procedure creates entries that define CDB resource plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE</td>
<td>This procedure updates the plan directives of the CDB resource plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE_CDB_PLAN</td>
<td>This procedure updates the CDB resource plan.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 

Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference to learn more about DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER

15.8.1.3.2 Initialization Parameters for PDB-Level Resources

Use initialization parameters to control CPU, memory, sessions, and I/O in a PDB.

15.8.1.3.2.1 CPU-Related Initialization Parameters for PDBs

The CPU_COUNT initialization parameter specifies the number of CPU threads available to a PDB.

The term CPU thread refers to a thread of execution on a CPU core. For example, a server might have 4 CPU sockets. Each CPU in a socket might have 2 cores, making a total of 8 cores. If each CPU core were multithreaded, with 2 threads of execution in each core, then the server would have a total of 16 CPU threads.

If CPU Resource Management is enabled for the CDB, then the PDB-level CPU_MIN_COUNT and CPU_COUNT initialization parameters manage CPU resources for the PDB. CPU Resource Management is enabled, for example, when the DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN is set at the CDB level. The CPU Resource Manager cages (restricts) the CPU for the PDB according to the lesser of CPU_COUNT and the PDB-level utilization_limit directive, if it exists. If the CDB resource plan has no shares or utilization limits set in non-default directives, then the CPU Resource Manager uses the PDB-level CPU_MIN_COUNT to set the PDB shares in its CDB resource plan.
Note:

CPU_COUNT and CPU_MIN_COUNT do not specify where the threads must be obtained, that is, on which specific CPU or core.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initialization Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default Value at PDB Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU_COUNT</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of CPU threads that the PDB can use at one time. If set to a nonzero value, then Oracle Database uses this count rather than the actual number of CPUs, thus disabling dynamic CPU reconfiguration. CPU_COUNT works the same way as the utilization_limit directive in the CDB plan. However, the CPU_COUNT limit is expressed in terms of number of CPU threads rather than utilization percentage. If both the utilization_limit and CPU_COUNT are specified, then the lower limit is enforced. <strong>Note:</strong> When the PDB is plugged into a new container, the CPU_COUNT setting remains with the plugged-in PDB.</td>
<td>0. In this case, Oracle Database continuously monitors the number of CPUs reported by the operating system and uses the current count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU_MIN_COUNT</td>
<td>Specifies the minimum number of CPU threads for the PDB. Valid values are 0.1 to the CPU_COUNT setting. The value must be a multiple of 0.05. When less than 1, the value specifies the minimum percentage of time that the PDB requires a thread. For example, a setting of 0.1 means that over a span of 10 seconds, the PDB requires a CPU thread at least 1 second. The CDB is oversubscribed when the sum of the PDB-level CPU_MIN_COUNT settings across all PDBs that are open on a database instance exceeds the CDB-level CPU_MIN_COUNT setting. For example, if a single-instance CDB containing 100 PDBs has a CPU_MIN_COUNT of 8, and if each PDB has a CPU_MIN_COUNT setting of .1, then the CDB is oversubscribed. The minimum CPU is only guaranteed when the CDB is not oversubscribed.</td>
<td>CPU_COUNT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.8.1.3.2.2 Memory-Related Initialization Parameters for PDBs

Several initialization parameters control the SGA and PGA usage of a PDB.

When the PDB is the current container, the initialization parameters in the following table control the memory usage of the current PDB. When one or more of these parameters is set for a PDB, ensure that the CDB and the other PDBs have sufficient memory for their operations.

The initialization parameters in the following table control the memory usage of PDBs only if the following conditions are met:

- The NONCDB_COMPATIBLE initialization parameter is set to FALSE in the CDB root.
- The MEMORY_TARGET initialization parameter is not set or is set to 0 (zero) in the CDB root.
Table 15-8  Initialization Parameters That Control the Memory Usage of PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initialization Parameter</th>
<th>Description (When Set at PDB Level)</th>
<th>Default at PDB Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DB_CACHE_SIZE</td>
<td>Sets the minimum guaranteed buffer cache size for the PDB. This parameter is optional at the PDB level.</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the SGA_TARGET initialization parameter is not set, and if the DB_CACHE_SIZE initialization parameter is set at the CDB level, then the following requirements must be met:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of DB_CACHE_SIZE set in a PDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the DB_CACHE_SIZE value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sum of the DB_CACHE_SIZE values across all the PDBs in the CDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the DB_CACHE_SIZE value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If SGA_TARGET is set at the CDB level, then the following requirements must be met to avoid an error:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The values of DB_CACHE_SIZE plus SHARED_POOL_SIZE in a PDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the PDB’s SGA_TARGET value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The values of DB_CACHE_SIZE plus SHARED_POOL_SIZE in a PDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the SGA_TARGET value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sum of DB_CACHE_SIZE plus SHARED_POOL_SIZE across all the PDBs in a CDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the SGA_TARGET value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15-8 (Cont.) Initialization Parameters That Control the Memory Usage of PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initialization Parameter</th>
<th>Description (When Set at PDB Level)</th>
<th>Default at PDB Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHARED_POOL_SIZE</td>
<td>Sets the minimum guaranteed shared pool size for the PDB.</td>
<td>When the SGA_TARGET initialization parameter is not set at the PDB level, the PDB has no limit for the amount of shared pool it can use, other than the CDB’s shared pool size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the SGA_TARGET initialization parameter is not set, but the SHARED_POOL_SIZE initialization parameter is set at the CDB level, then the following requirements must be met:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of SHARED_POOL_SIZE set in a PDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the SHARED_POOL_SIZE value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sum of the SHARED_POOL_SIZE values across all the PDBs in the CDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the SHARED_POOL_SIZE value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the SGA_TARGET initialization parameter is set to a nonzero value at the CDB level, the following requirements must be met to avoid an error:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The values of DB_CACHE_SIZE plus SHARED_POOL_SIZE in a PDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the PDB’s SGA_TARGET value.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The values of DB_CACHE_SIZE plus SHARED_POOL_SIZE in a PDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the SGA_TARGET value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sum of DB_CACHE_SIZE plus SHARED_POOL_SIZE across all the PDBs in a CDB must be less than or equal to 50% of the SGA_TARGET value at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGA_MIN_SIZE</td>
<td>Sets the minimum SGA size for the PDB.</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The setting must meet the following requirements:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SGA_TARGET initialization parameter must not be set or must be set to 0 (zero) in the CDB root. Otherwise, setting SGA_MIN_SIZE in a PDB has no effect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• It must be less than or equal to 50% of the setting for the SGA_TARGET in the CDB root.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• It must be less than or equal to 50% of the setting for the SGA_TARGET in the PDB.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sum of the SGA_MIN_SIZE settings for all PDBs must be less than or equal to 50% of the setting for the SGA_TARGET in the CDB root.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note that setting SGA_MIN_SIZE at the CDB level has no effect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15-8 (Cont.) Initialization Parameters That Control the Memory Usage of PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initialization Parameter</th>
<th>Description (When Set at PDB Level)</th>
<th>Default at PDB Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SGA_TARGET</td>
<td>Sets the maximum SGA size for the PDB. The PDB enforces the PDB-level SGA_TARGET setting only if the SGA_TARGET initialization parameter is set to a nonzero value in the CDB root. The SGA_TARGET setting in the PDB must be less than or equal to the SGA_TARGET setting in the CDB root.</td>
<td>SGA_TARGET at the CDB level multiplied by ratio of PDB-level CPU_COUNT / CDB-level CPU_COUNT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT      | Sets the maximum PGA size for the PDB. If you set PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT manually, then the value must meet the following requirements:  
  • It must be less than or equal to the setting for the PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT in the CDB root.  
  • It must be greater than or equal to two times the setting for the PGA_AGGREGATE_TARGET in the PDB. | PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT at the CDB level multiplied by ratio of PDB-level CPU_COUNT / CDB-level CPU_COUNT |
| PGA_AGGREGATE_TARGET     | Sets the target aggregate PGA size for the PDB. If you set PGA_AGGREGATE_TARGET manually, then the value must meet the following requirements:  
  • It must be less than or equal to the PGA_AGGREGATE_TARGET value set at the CDB level.  
  • It must be less than or equal to 50% of the PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT initialization parameter value set at the CDB level.  
  • It must be less than or equal to 50% of the PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT value set in the PDB. | PGA_AGGREGATE_TARGET at the CDB level multiplied by ratio of PDB-level CPU_COUNT / CDB-level CPU_COUNT |

### Example 15-41 Setting the Maximum Aggregate PGA Memory Available for a PDB

With the PDB as the current container, run the following SQL statement to set the PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT initialization parameter both in memory and in the SPFILE to 90 MB:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET PGA_AGGREGATE_LIMIT = 90M SCOPE = BOTH;
```

### Example 15-42 Setting the Minimum SGA Size for a PDB

With the PDB as the current container, run the following SQL statement to set the SGA_MIN_SIZE initialization parameter both in memory and in the SPFILE to 500 MB:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET SGA_MIN_SIZE = 500M SCOPE = BOTH;
```

### 15.8.1.3.2.3 Session-Related Initialization Parameters for PDBs

Several initialization parameters control how sessions consume resources in a PDB.
Table 15-9 Initialization Parameters That Control the Session Usage of PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initialization Parameter</th>
<th>Description (When Set at PDB Level)</th>
<th>Default at PDB Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SESSIONS</td>
<td>Sets the maximum of number of sessions that a PDB can use.</td>
<td>SESSIONS at the CDB level multiplied by ratio of PDB-level CPU_COUNT / CDB-level CPU_COUNT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the PDB tries to use more sessions than configured by its SESSIONS parameter, then an ORA-00018 error message is generated. For PDBs, the SESSIONS parameter does not count recursive sessions and therefore does not require the 10% adjustment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The SESSIONS parameter for a PDB can only be modified by the PDB. It cannot be set higher than the SESSIONS value set at the CDB level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_IDLE_TIME</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of minutes that a session can be idle. After the maximum is reached, Oracle Database automatically terminates the session.</td>
<td>0 (not set)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX_IDLE_BLOCKER_TIME</td>
<td>Sets the number of minutes that a session can be idle before it is a candidate for termination. With this parameter, an idle session is terminated if it is blocking another session. Oracle Database considers a session blocked in any of the following situations:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The session is holding a lock needed by another session.</td>
<td>0 (not set)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The session is a parallel operation and its consumer group, PDB, or CDB has either reached its maximum parallel server limit or has queued parallel operations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The PDB or database instance for the session is about to hit its sessions or processes limit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unlike MAX_IDLE_TIME, MAX_IDLE_BLOCKER_TIME terminates resources only when they are needed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.8.1.3.2.4 I/O-Related Initialization Parameters for PDBs

The `MAX_IOPS` and `MAX_MBPS` initialization parameters limit the disk I/O generated by a PDB.

A large amount of disk I/O can cause poor performance. Several factors can result in excess disk I/O, such as poorly designed SQL or index and table scans in high-volume transactions. If one PDB is generating heavy disk I/O, then it can degrade the performance of other PDBs.

Use one or both of the following initialization parameters to limit the I/O generated by a specific PDB:

- The `MAX_IOPS` initialization parameter limits the number of I/O operations for each second.
- The `MAX_IOPS` initialization parameter limits the megabytes for I/O operations for each second.
If you set both preceding initialization parameters for a single PDB, then Oracle Database enforces both limits. The `MAX_IOPS` and `MAX_IOMBS` limits are not enforced for Oracle Exadata, which uses I/O Resource Management (IORM) to manage I/Os between PDBs.

If these initialization parameters are set with the CDB root as the current container, then the values become the default values for all containers in the CDB. If they are set with an application root as the current container, then the values become the default values for all application PDBs in the application container. When they are set with a PDB or application PDB as the current container, then the settings take precedence over the default settings in the CDB root or the application root.

The default for both initialization parameters is 0 (zero). If these initialization parameters are set to 0 (zero) in a PDB, and the CDB root is set to 0, then there is no I/O limit for the PDB. If these initialization parameters are set to 0 (zero) in an application PDB, and its application root is set to 0, then there is no I/O limit for the application PDB.

Critical I/O operations, such as ones for the control file and password file, are exempted from the limit and continue to run even if the limit is reached. However, all I/O operations, including critical I/O operations, are counted when the number of I/O operations and the megabytes for I/O operations are calculated.

You can use the `DBA_HIST_RSRC_PDB_METRIC` view to calculate a reasonable I/O limit for a PDB. Consider the values in the following columns when calculating a limit: `IOPS`, `IOMBS`, `IOPS_THROTTLE_EXEMPT`, and `IOMBS_THROTTLE_EXEMPT`. The `rsmgr:io rate limit wait event` indicates that a limit was reached.

**Example 15-43 Limiting the I/O Generated by a PDB**

With the PDB as the current container, run the following SQL statement to set the `MAX_IOPS` initialization parameter both in memory and in the SPFILE to a limit of 1,000 I/O operations for each second:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET MAX_IOPS = 1000 SCOPE = BOTH;
```

**Example 15-44 Limiting the Megabytes of I/O Generated by a PDB**

With the PDB as the current container, run the following SQL statement to set the `MAX_IOMBS` initialization parameter both in memory and in the SPFILE to a limit of 200 MB of I/O for each second:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET MAX_IOMBS = 200 SCOPE = BOTH;
```

---

**See Also:**

- "Modifying a PDB at the System Level"
- *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the `MAX_IOPS` initialization parameter
- *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the `MAX_IOMBS` initialization parameter
15.8.2 Managing CDB Resource Plans

In a CDB, PDBs might have different levels of priority. You can create CDB resource plans to distribute resources to different PDBs based on these priorities.

15.8.2.1 About CDB Resource Plans

Create CDB resource plans that allocate shares and resource limits for PDBs.

15.8.2.1.1 Shares for Allocating Resources to PDBs

To allocate resources among PDBs, assign a share value to each PDB or performance profile. A higher share value results in more guaranteed resources for a PDB or the PDBs that use the performance profile.

Specify a share value for a PDB using the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure and for a PDB performance profile using the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE` procedure. In both cases, the `shares` parameter specifies the share value for the PDB. Multiple PDBs can use the same PDB performance profile.

The following figure shows an example of three PDBs with share values specified for them in a CDB resource plan.

![Diagram showing shares in a CDB resource plan]

The preceding figure shows that the total number of shares is seven (3 plus 3 plus 1). The `salespdb` and the `servicespdb` PDB are each guaranteed 3/7 of the resources, while the `hrpdb` PDB is guaranteed 1/7 of the resources. However, any PDB can use more than the guaranteed amount of a resource when no resource contention exists.

The following table shows the resource allocation to the PDBs in the preceding figure based on the share values. The table assumes that loads of the PDBs consume all system resources allocated.
Table 15-10 Resource Allocation for Sample PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Resource Allocation</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>The <code>salespdb</code> and <code>servicespdb</code> PDBs can consume the same amount of CPU resources. The <code>salespdb</code> and <code>servicespdb</code> PDBs are each guaranteed three times more CPU resource than the <code>hrpdb</code> PDB.</td>
<td><em>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide</em> for more information about this resource</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel execution servers</td>
<td>Queued parallel queries from the <code>salespdb</code> and <code>servicespdb</code> PDBs are selected equally. Queued parallel queries from the <code>salespdb</code> and <code>servicespdb</code> PDBs are selected three times as often as queued parallel queries from the <code>hrpdb</code> PDB.</td>
<td><em>Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide</em> for more information about this resource</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.8.2.1.2 Utilization Limits for PDBs

A utilization limit restrains the system resource usage of a specific PDB or a specific PDB performance profile.

You can specify utilization limits for CPU and parallel execution servers. Utilization limits for a PDB are set by the CDB resource plan.

The following table describes utilization limits for PDBs and the Resource Manager action taken when a PDB reaches a utilization limit. For limits specified with a PDB performance profile, the limit applies to every PDB that uses the PDB performance profile. For example, if `pdb1` and `pdb20` have a performance profile `BRONZE`, and if `BRONZE` has a limit set to 10%, then `pdb1` has a 10% limit and `pdb20` has a 10% limit.
Table 15-11    Utilization Limits for PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Resource Utilization Limit</th>
<th>Resource Manager Action When Limit Is Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>The CPU utilization limit for sessions connected to a PDB is set by the utilization_limit parameter in subprograms of the DBMSRESOURCE_MANAGER package. The utilization_limit parameter specifies the percentage of the system resources that a PDB can use. The value ranges from 0 to 100. You can also limit CPU for a PDB by setting the initialization parameters CPU_COUNT (upper limit) and CPU_MIN_COUNT (lower limit). For example, if you set CPU_COUNT to 8 and CPU_MIN_COUNT to .1 at the PDB level, then the PDB cannot use more than 8 CPU threads at any time and must have at least 1 CPU thread 10% of the time. If both utilization_limit and CPU_COUNT are specified, then the more restrictive (lower) value is enforced.</td>
<td>Resource Manager throttles the PDB sessions so that the CPU utilization for the PDB does not exceed the utilization limit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15-11 (Cont.) Utilization Limits for PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Resource Utilization Limit</th>
<th>Resource Manager Action When Limit Is Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Parallel execution</td>
<td>You can limit the number of parallel execution servers in a PDB by means of parallel</td>
<td>Resource Manager queues parallel queries when the number of parallel execution servers used by the PDB would exceed the limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servers</td>
<td>statement queuing. The limit is a &quot;queuing point&quot; because the database queues parallel</td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> In a CDB, parallel statements are queued based on the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET settings at both the PDB and CDB level. A statement is queued when the number of parallel servers used by the PDB exceeds the target for the PDB or when the number of parallel servers used by all PDBs exceeds the target for the CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>queries when the limit is reached.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can set the limit (queuing point) in either of the following ways:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter setting in the PDB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The value of the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter setting in the CDB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>root multiplied by the value of the parallel_server_limit directive set for the PDB in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the CDB resource manager plan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For example, if the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter is set to 200 in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the CDB root, and if the parallel_server_limit directive for a PDB is set to 10%, then</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>utilization limit for the PDB is 20 parallel execution servers (200 * .10).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the limit is set in both preceding ways, then the lower limit of the two is used.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Oracle recommends using the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>instead of the parallel_server_limit directive in a CDB plan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following figure shows an example of three PDBs with shares and utilization limits specified for them in a CDB resource plan.
The preceding figure shows that there are no utilization limits on the `salespdb` and `servicespdb` PDBs because `utilization_limit` and `parallel_server_limit` are both set to 100% for them. However, the `hrpdb` PDB is limited to 70% of the applicable system resources because `utilization_limit` and `parallel_server_limit` are both set to 70%.

**Note:**

This scenario assumes that the `PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET` initialization parameter does not specify a lower limit in a PDB. When the `PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET` initialization parameter specifies a lower limit for parallel execution servers in a PDB, the lower limit is used.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide*
- *Oracle Database Reference* to learn about `CPU_COUNT`

### 15.8.2.1.3 The Default Directive for PDBs

When you do not explicitly define directives for a PDB, the PDB uses the default directive for PDBs.

The following table shows the attributes of the initial default directive for PDBs.

**Table 15-12 Initial Default Directive Attributes for PDBs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>shares</code></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15-12  (Cont.) Initial Default Directive Attributes for PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utilization_limit</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallel_server_limit</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a PDB is plugged into a CDB and no directive is defined for it, the PDB uses the default directive for PDBs.

You can create new directives for the new PDB. You can also change the default directive attribute values for PDBs by using the `UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE` procedure in the `DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER` package.

When a PDB is unplugged from a CDB, the directive for the PDB is retained. If the same PDB is plugged back into the CDB, then it uses the directive defined for it if the directive was not deleted manually.

Figure 15-3 shows an example of the default directive in a CDB resource plan.

Figure 15-3  Default Directive in a CDB Resource Plan

Figure 15-3 shows that the default PDB directive specifies that the `share` is 1, the `utilization_limit` is 50%, and the `parallel_server_limit` is 50%. Any PDB that is part of the CDB and does not have directives defined for it uses the default PDB directive. Figure 15-3 shows the PDBs `marketingpdb` and `testingpdb` using the...
default PDB directive. Therefore, marketingpdb and testingpdb each get 1 share and utilization limits of 50.

See Also:

- “Creating New CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB”
- "Updating the Default Directive for PDBs in a CDB Resource Plan"
- “Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers”
- “Unplugging a PDB from a CDB”
- Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about the parallel server limit

15.8.2.2 Creating a CDB Resource Plan for Managing PDBs

To create a CDB resource plan for individual PDBs and define the directives for the plan, use the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package.

The general steps for creating a CDB resource plan for individual PDBs are the following:

1. Create the pending area using the CREATE_PENDING_AREA procedure.
2. Create the CDB resource plan using the CREATE_CDB_PLAN procedure.
3. Create directives for the PDBs using the CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure.
4. (Optional) Update the default PDB directive using the UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE procedure.
5. Validate the pending area using the VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA procedure.
6. Submit the pending area using the SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA procedure.

15.8.2.3 Creating a CDB Resource Plan for Managing PDBs: Scenario

This scenario illustrates each of the steps involved in creating a CDB resource plan for individual PDBs.

The scenario assumes that you want to create a CDB resource plan for a CDB named newcdb. The plan includes a directive for each PDB. In this scenario, you also update the default directive and the AutoTask directive.

The directives are defined using various procedures in the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package. The attributes of each directive are defined using parameters in these procedures. Table 15-13 describes the types of directives in the plan.

Table 15-13 Attributes for PDB Directives in a CDB Resource Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shares</td>
<td>Resource allocation share for CPU and parallel execution server resources.</td>
<td>“Shares for Allocating Resources to PDBs”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 15-13  (Cont.) Attributes for PDB Directives in a CDB Resource Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utilization_limit</td>
<td>Resource utilization limit for CPU.</td>
<td>&quot;Utilization Limits for PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallel_server_limit</td>
<td>Maximum percentage of parallel execution servers that a PDB can use before queuing parallel statements. When the parallel_server_limit directive is specified for a PDB, the limit is the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET value of the CDB root multiplied by the value of the parallel_server_limit parameter in the CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure.</td>
<td>&quot;Utilization Limits for PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Oracle recommends using the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter instead of the parallel_server_limit directive in a CDB plan.

Table 15-14 describes how the CDB resource plan allocates resources to its PDBs using the directive attributes described in Table 15-13.

### Table 15-14  Sample Directives for PDBs in a CDB Resource Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>salespdb</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servicespdb</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrpdb</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoTask</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The salespdb and servicespdb PDBs are more important than the other PDBs in the CDB. Therefore, they get a higher share (3), unlimited CPU utilization resource, and unlimited parallel execution server resource.

The default directive applies to PDBs for which specific directives have not been defined. For this scenario, assume that the CDB has several PDBs that use the default directive. This scenario updates the default directive.

In addition, this scenario updates the AutoTask directive. The AutoTask directive applies to automatic maintenance tasks that are run in the root maintenance window.
To create a CDB resource plan:

1. Create a pending area using the `CREATE_PENDING_AREA` procedure:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

2. Create a CDB resource plan named `newcdb_plan` using the `CREATE_CDB_PLAN` procedure:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN(
     plan    => 'newcdb_plan',
     comment => 'CDB resource plan for newcdb');
   END;
   /
   ```

3. Create the CDB resource plan directives for the PDBs using the `CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure. Each directive specifies how resources are allocated to a specific PDB.

   Table 15-14 describes the directives for the `salespdb`, `servicespdb`, and `hrpdb` PDBs in this scenario. Run the following procedures to create these directives:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
     plan                  => 'newcdb_plan',
     pluggable_database    => 'salespdb',
     shares                => 3,
     utilization_limit     => 100,
     parallel_server_limit => 100);
   END;
   /
   
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
     plan                  => 'newcdb_plan',
     pluggable_database    => 'servicespdb',
     shares                => 3,
     utilization_limit     => 100,
     parallel_server_limit => 100);
   END;
   /
   
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
     plan                  => 'newcdb_plan',
     pluggable_database    => 'hrpdb',
     shares                => 1,
     utilization_limit     => 70,
     parallel_server_limit => 70);
   END;
   /
   ```

All other PDBs in this CDB use the default PDB directive.
4. If the current default CDB resource plan directive for PDBs does not meet your requirements, then update the directive using the UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE procedure.

The default directive applies to PDBs for which specific directives have not been defined. See "The Default Directive for PDBs" for more information.

Table 15-14 describes the default directive that PDBs use in this scenario. Run the following procedure to update the default directive:

```
BEGIN
  DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE(
    plan         => 'newcdb_plan',
    new_shares   => 1,
    new_utilization_limit => 50,
    new_parallel_server_limit => 50);
END;
/
```

5. Validate the pending area using the VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA procedure:

```
exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
```

6. Submit the pending area using the SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA procedure:

```
exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
```

15.8.2.4 Creating a CDB Resource Plan with PDB Performance Profiles

Use the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package to create a CDB resource plan for PDB performance profiles and define the directives for the plan. Each PDB that uses a profile adopts the CDB resource plan directive.

The general steps for creating a CDB resource plan with PDB performance profiles are the following:

1. Create the pending area using the CREATE_PENDING_AREA procedure.
2. Create the CDB resource plan using the CREATE_CDB_PLAN procedure.
3. Create directives for the PDB performance profiles using the CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE procedure.
4. (Optional) Update the default PDB directive using the UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE procedure.
5. Validate the pending area using the VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA procedure.
6. Submit the pending area using the SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA procedure.
7. For each PDB that will use a profile, set the DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE initialization parameter and specify the profile name.
15.8.2.5 Creating a CDB Resource Plan for PDB Performance Profiles:
Scenario

This scenario illustrates the steps involved in creating a CDB resource plan for PDB performance profiles.

The scenario assumes that you want to create a CDB resource plan for a CDB named newcdb. The plan includes a directive for each PDB performance profile. In this scenario, you also update the default directive and the AutoTask directive.

In the CDB resource plan, you give each profile a name. In each PDB, you set the DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE initialization parameter to specify which PDB performance profile the PDB uses.

The directives are defined using various procedures in the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package. The attributes of each directive are defined using parameters in these procedures. The following table describes the types of directives in the plan.

### Table 15-15   Attributes for PDB Performance Profile Directives in a CDB Resource Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>See Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shares</td>
<td>Resource allocation share for CPU and parallel execution server resources.</td>
<td>&quot;Shares for Allocating Resources to PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilization_limit</td>
<td>Resource utilization limit for CPU.</td>
<td>&quot;Utilization Limits for PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parallel_server_limit</td>
<td>Maximum percentage of parallel execution servers that a PDB can use. When the parallel_server_limit directive is specified for a PDB performance profile, the limit is the value of the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter setting in the CDB root multiplied by the value of the parallel_server_limit parameter in the CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE procedure.</td>
<td>&quot;Utilization Limits for PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table describes how the CDB resource plan allocates resources to its PDB performance profiles using the directive attributes described in Table 15-15.

### Table 15-16   Sample Directives for PDB Performance Profiles in a CDB Resource Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gold</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silver</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 15-16  (Cont.) Sample Directives for PDB Performance Profiles in a CDB Resource Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bronze</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoTask</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The default directive applies to PDBs for which specific directives have not been defined. For this scenario, assume that the CDB has several PDBs that use the default directive. This scenario updates the default directive.

In addition, this scenario updates the AutoTask directive. The AutoTask directive applies to automatic maintenance tasks that are run in the root maintenance window.

To create a CDB resource plan for PDB performance profiles:

1. For each PDB that will use a profile, set the `DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE` initialization parameter to the name of the profile that the PDB will use.
   a. Run an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement to set the parameter.

      For example, with the PDB as the current container, run the following SQL statement:

      ```sql
      ALTER SYSTEM SET DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE=gold SCOPE=spfile;
      ```
   b. Close the PDB:

      ```sql
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
      ```
   c. Open the PDB:

      ```sql
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE OPEN;
      ```

2. Create a pending area using the `CREATE_PENDING_AREA` procedure:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Create a CDB resource plan named `newcdb_plan` using the `CREATE_CDB_PLAN` procedure:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
       DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN( plan => 'newcdb_plan',
                                               comment => 'CDB resource plan for newcdb');
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Create the CDB resource plan directives for the PDBs using the `CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure. Each directive specifies how resources are allocated to a specific PDB.
Table 15-14 describes the directives for the gold, silver, and bronze profiles in this scenario. Run the following procedures to create these directives:

BEGIN
  DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE(
    plan => 'newcdb_plan',
    profile => 'gold',
    shares => 3,
    utilization_limit => 100,
    parallel_server_limit => 100);
END;
/

BEGIN
  DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE(
    plan => 'newcdb_plan',
    profile => 'silver',
    shares => 2,
    utilization_limit => 40,
    parallel_server_limit => 40);
END;
/

BEGIN
  DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE(
    plan => 'newcdb_plan',
    profile => 'bronze',
    shares => 1,
    utilization_limit => 20,
    parallel_server_limit => 20);
END;
/

All other PDBs in this CDB use the default PDB directive.

5. If the current default CDB resource plan directive for PDBs does not meet your requirements, then update the directive using the UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE procedure.

The default directive applies to PDBs for which specific directives have not been defined.

Table 15-14 describes the default directive that PDBs use in this scenario. Run the following procedure to update the default directive:

BEGIN
  DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE(
    plan => 'newcdb_plan',
    new_shares => 1,
    new_utilization_limit => 10,
    new_parallel_server_limit => 10);
END;
/

Chapter 15
Managing PDB Resources: Memory, I/O, and CPU

15-69
6. Validate the pending area using the `VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA` procedure:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

7. Submit the pending area using the `SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA` procedure:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

---

### See Also:

"The Default Directive for PDBs"

---

### 15.8.2.6 Enabling a CDB Resource Plan

You enable the Resource Manager for a CDB by setting the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter in the root.

This parameter specifies the top plan, which is the plan to be used for the current CDB instance. If no plan is specified with this parameter, then the Resource Manager is not enabled.

**Prerequisites**

Before enabling a CDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To enable a CDB resource plan:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.

2. Perform one of the following actions:
   
   - **Use an ALTER SYSTEM statement to set the** `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` **initialization parameter to the CDB resource plan.**
     
     The following example sets the CDB resource plan to `newcdb_plan` using an ALTER SYSTEM statement:
     
     ```sql
     ALTER SYSTEM SET RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN = 'newcdb_plan';
     ```
   
   - **In a text initialization parameter file, set the** `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` **initialization parameter to the CDB resource plan, and restart the CDB.**
     
     The following example sets the CDB resource plan to `newcdb_plan` in an initialization parameter file:
     
     ```ini
     RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN = 'newcdb_plan'
     ```
15.8.2.7 Modifying a CDB Resource Plan

Modifying a CDB resource plan includes tasks such as updating the plan, creating, updating, or deleting plan directives for PDBs, and updating default directives.

15.8.2.7.1 Updating a CDB Resource Plan

You can update a CDB resource plan to change its comment using the `UPDATE_CDB_PLAN` procedure.

**Prerequisites**

Before updating a CDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To update a CDB resource plan:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:
   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
3. Run the `UPDATE_CDB_PLAN` procedure, and enter a new comment in the `new_comment` parameter.
   For example, the following procedure changes the comment for the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:
   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_PLAN(
   plan => 'newcdb_plan',
   new_comment => 'CDB plan for PDBs in newcdb');
   END;
   /
   
   4. Validate the pending area:
   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
5. Submit the pending area:
   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.7.2 Managing CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB

You can create, update, and delete CDB resource plan directives for a PDB.

15.8.2.7.2.1 Creating New CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB

When you create a PDB in a CDB, you can create a CDB resource plan directive for the PDB using the CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure. The directive specifies how resources are allocated to the new PDB.

Prerequisites

Before creating a new CDB resource plan directive for a PDB, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To create a new CDB resource plan directive for a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.

2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure, and specify the appropriate values for the new PDB.

   For example, the following procedure allocates resources to a PDB named operpdb in the newcdb_plan CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
       DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
           plan => 'newcdb_plan',
           pluggable_database => 'operpdb',
           shares => 1,
           utilization_limit => 20,
           parallel_server_limit => 30);
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.7.2.2 Updating CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB

You can update the CDB resource plan directive for a PDB using the `UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure. The directive specifies how resources are allocated to the PDB.

**Prerequisites**

Before updating a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB, ensure that you meet the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To update a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the `UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure, and specify the new resource allocation values for the PDB.

   For example, the following procedure updates the resource allocation to a PDB named `operpdb` in the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
     plan => 'newcdb_plan',
     pluggable_database => 'operpdb',
     new_shares => 1,
     new_utilization_limit => 10,
     new_parallel_server_limit => 20);
   END;
   /
   
   4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.7.2.3 Deleting CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB

You can delete the CDB resource plan directive for a PDB using the DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure.

You might delete the directive for a PDB if you unplug or drop the PDB. However, you can retain the directive, and if the PDB is plugged into the CDB in the future, the existing directive applies to the PDB.

Prerequisites

Before deleting a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To delete a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure, and specify the CDB resource plan and the PDB.

   For example, the following procedure deletes the directive for a PDB named operpdb in the newcdb_plan CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
       DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
           plan => 'newcdb_plan',
           pluggable_database => 'operpdb');
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.7.3 Managing CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB Performance Profile

You can create, update, and delete CDB resource plan directives for a PDB performance profile.

15.8.2.7.3.1 Creating New CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB Performance Profile

You can create a CDB resource plan directive for the a new PDB performance profile using the `CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE` procedure. The directive specifies how resources are allocated to the all PDBs that use the new profile.

Prerequisites

Before creating a new CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To create a new CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.

2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the `CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE` procedure, and specify the appropriate values for the new PDB performance profile.

   For example, the following procedure allocates resources to a PDB performance profile named `copper` in the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE(
     plan => 'newcdb_plan',
     profile => 'copper',
     shares => 1,
     utilization_limit => 20,
     parallel_server_limit => 30);
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
5. Submit the pending area:

exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();

**Note:**
For a PDB to use the new profile, the PDB must have the DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE initialization parameter set to the profile name.

**See Also:**
- "About CDB Resource Plans"
- "About Container Access in a CDB"

### 15.8.2.7.3.2 Updating CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB Performance Profile

Update the CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile using the UPDATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE procedure. The directive specifies how resources are allocated to the PDBs that use the PDB performance profile.

Before updating a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To update a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();

3. Run the UPDATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE procedure, and specify the new resource allocation values for the PDB performance profile.

For example, the following procedure updates the resource allocation for a PDB performance profile named copper in the newcdb_plan CDB resource plan:

```
BEGIN
    DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE (plan => 'newcdb_plan',
                                                         profile => 'copper',
                                                         new_shares => 1,
                                                         new_utilization_limit => 10,
                                                         new_parallel_server_limit => 20);
END;
/```
4. Validate the pending area:

   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();

5. Submit the pending area:

   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();

**See Also:**

- “About CDB Resource Plans”
- “About Container Access in a CDB”

### 15.8.2.7.3.3 Deleting CDB Resource Plan Directives for a PDB Performance Profile

You can delete the CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile using the `DELETE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE` procedure.

If no PDBs use a performance profile, then you might delete the directive for the profile.

**Prerequisites**

Before deleting a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To delete a CDB resource plan directive for a PDB performance profile:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();

3. Run the `DELETE_CDB_PROFILE_DIRECTIVE` procedure, and specify the CDB resource plan and the PDB performance profile.

   For example, the following procedure deletes the directive for a PDB named `operpdb` in the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:

   ```
   BEGIN
     DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE(
       plan    => 'newcdb_plan',
       profile => 'operpdb');
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
15.8.2.7.4 Updating the Default Directive for PDBs in a CDB Resource Plan

You can update the default directive for PDBs in a CDB resource plan using the `UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE` procedure. The default directive applies to PDBs for which specific directives have not been defined.

**Prerequisites**

Before updating the default directive for PDBs in a CDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To update the default directive for PDBs in a CDB resource plan:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the `UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE` procedure, and specify the appropriate default resource allocation values.

   For example, the following procedure updates the default directive for PDBs in the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_DEFAULT_DIRECTIVE(
       plan => 'newcdb_plan',
       new_shares => 2,
       new_utilization_limit => 40);
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.7.5 Updating the Default Directive for Maintenance Tasks in a CDB Resource Plan

You can update the AutoTask directive in a CDB resource plan using the `UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE` procedure. The AutoTask directive applies to automatic maintenance tasks that are run in the root maintenance window.

Prerequisites

Before updating the default directive for maintenance tasks in a CDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To update the AutoTask directive for maintenance tasks in a CDB resource plan:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the `UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE` procedure, and specify the appropriate AutoTask resource allocation values.

   For example, the following procedure updates the AutoTask directive for maintenance tasks in the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.UPDATE_CDB_AUTOTASK_DIRECTIVE(
       plan => 'newcdb_plan',
       new_shares => 2,
       new_utilization_limit => 60);
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.7.6 Deleting a CDB Resource Plan

You can delete a CDB resource plan using the `DELETE_CDB_PLAN` procedure.

The resource plan must be disabled. You might delete a CDB resource plan if the plan is no longer needed. You can enable a different CDB resource plan, or you can disable Resource Manager for the CDB.

Prerequisites

Before deleting a CDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To delete a CDB resource plan:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Run the `DELETE_CDB_PLAN` procedure, and specify the CDB resource plan.
   
   For example, the following procedure deletes the `newcdb_plan` CDB resource plan:

   ```sql
   BEGIN
       DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.DELETE_CDB_PLAN(
           plan => 'newcdb_plan');
   END;
   /
   ```

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.2.8 Disabling a CDB Resource Plan

Disable the Resource Manager for a CDB by unsetting the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter in the CDB root.

A CDB resource plan that specifies shares or utilization limits for PDBs is required to enable CPU management, both between PDBs and within a PDB. If a resource plan with shares or utilization limits is enabled for a PDB, and if the CDB resource plan is not specified, then the CDB resource plan is set to `DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN`. This setting gives equal shares to all PDBs and specifies no utilization limits. To disable CPU resource management throughout the CDB, set `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` to `ORA$INTERNAL_CDB_PLAN`.

**Prerequisites**

Before disabling a CDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To disable a CDB resource plan:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
2. Perform one of the following actions:
   - Use an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement to unset the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter for the CDB.
     
     The following example unsets the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter using an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement:
     
     ```sql
     ALTER SYSTEM SET RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN = '';
     ```
   - In an initialization parameter file, unset the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter, and restart the CDB.
     
     The following example unsets the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter in an initialization parameter file:
     
     ```ini
     RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN =
     ```
15.8.2.9 Viewing Information About Plans and Directives in a CDB

You can view information about CDB resource plans, CDB resource plan directives, and predefined resource plans in a CDB.

See Also:

Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about monitoring Oracle Database Resource Manager

15.8.2.9.1 Viewing CDB Resource Plans

An example illustrates using the `DBA_CDB_RSRC_PLANS` view to display all CDB resource plans defined in the CDB.

The `DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN` is supplied with Oracle Database. You can use this default plan if it meets your requirements.

To view CDB resource plans:

1. Start SQL*Plus or SQL Developer, and log in to the CDB root.
2. Run the following query:

   ```sql
   COLUMN PLAN FORMAT A30
   COLUMN STATUS FORMAT A10
   COLUMN COMMENTS FORMAT A35
   
   SELECT PLAN, STATUS, COMMENTS
   FROM   DBA_CDB_RSRC_PLANS
   ORDER BY PLAN;
   
   Your output looks similar to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLAN</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default CDB plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT_MAINTENANCE_PLAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Default CDB maintenance plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEWCDB_PLAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>CDB plan for PDBs in newcdb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORA$INTERNAL_CDB_PLAN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Internal CDB plan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.8.2.9.2 Viewing CDB Resource Plan Directives

An example illustrates using the `DBA_CDB_RSRC_PLAN_DIRECTIVES` view to display all directives defined in all CDB resource plans in the CDB.

The `DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN` is a default CDB plan that is supplied with Oracle Database. With `DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN`, every PDB has 1 share and a utilization limit of 100. If the CDB resource plan has no CPU directives configured, that is, the `shares` and `utilization_limits` directives are unset, then CPU Resource Manager uses the PDB-level `CPU_MIN_COUNT` and `CPU_COUNT` parameters to manage CPU. Note that `ORA$DEFAULT_PDB_DIRECTIVE` is the default directive for PDBs.

To view CDB resource plan directives:

1. Start SQL*Plus or SQL Developer, and log in to the CDB root.
2. Run the following query:

   ```sql
   COLUMN PLAN HEADING 'Plan' FORMAT A24
   COLUMN PLUGGABLE_DATABASE HEADING 'Pluggable Database' FORMAT A25
   COLUMN SHARES HEADING 'Shares' FORMAT 999
   COLUMN UTILIZATION_LIMIT HEADING 'Utilization|Limit' FORMAT 999
   COLUMN PARALLEL_SERVER_LIMIT HEADING 'Parallel|Server|Limit' FORMAT 999
   
   SELECT PLAN,
       PLUGGABLE_DATABASE,
       SHARES,
       UTILIZATION_LIMIT,
       PARALLEL_SERVER_LIMIT
   FROM DBA_CDB_RSRC_PLAN_DIRECTIVES
   ORDER BY PLAN;
   
   Your output looks similar to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plan</th>
<th>Pluggable Database</th>
<th>Shares</th>
<th>Utilization Limit</th>
<th>Parallel Server Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN</td>
<td>ORA$DEFAULT_PDB_DIRECTIVE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN</td>
<td>ORA$AUTOTASK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
   ```
The preceding output shows the directives for the `newcdb_plan` created in "Creating a CDB Resource Plan for Managing PDBs: Scenario" and modified in "Modifying a CDB Resource Plan".

### See Also:

- "About CDB Resource Plans"
- "The Default Directive for PDBs"

### 15.8.3 Managing PDB Resource Plans

You can create, enable, and modify resource plans for individual PDBs.

#### 15.8.3.1 About PDB Resource Plans

A PDB resource plan determines how the resources for a specific PDB are allocated to consumer groups within this PDB.

A PDB resource plan differs from a CDB resource plan, which determines the amount of resources allocated to each PDB. The following restrictions apply to PDB resource plans:

- A PDB resource plan cannot have subplans.
- A PDB resource plan cannot have a multiple-level scheduling policy.

If you create a PDB by upgrading a non-CDB from a previous release, and if the non-CDB contains resource plans, then these resource plans might not conform to the preceding restrictions. In this case, Oracle Database automatically transforms these resource plans into equivalent PDB resource plans that meet these requirements. The original resource plans and directives are recorded in the `DBA_RSRC_PLANS` and `DBA_RSRC_PLAN_DIRECTIVES` views with the `LEGACY` status.

### See Also:

- "About CDB Resource Plans"
- *Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide* to learn more about resource plans
15.8.3.1.1 CDB Resource Plan Requirements When Creating PDB Resource Plans

When you create PDB resource plans, the CDB resource plan must meet certain requirements.

Create directives for a CDB resource plan by using the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure. Create directives for a PDB resource plan using the CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure in the same package. When you create one or more PDB resource plans and there is no CDB resource plan, the CDB uses the DEFAULT_CDB_PLAN that is supplied with Oracle Database.

The following table describes the requirements for the CDB resource plan and the results when the requirements are not met. The parameter values described in the "CDB Resource Plan Requirements" column are for the CREATE_CDB_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure. The parameter values described in the "Results When Requirements Are Not Met" column are for the CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure.

Table 15-17 CDB Resource Plan Requirements for PDB Resource Plans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>CDB Resource Plan Requirements</th>
<th>Results When Requirements Are Not Met</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>One of the following requirements must be met:</td>
<td>The CPU allocation policy of the PDB resource plan is not enforced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A share value must be specified for the PDB using the shares parameter.</td>
<td>The CPU limit specified by the utilization_limit parameter in the PDB resource plan is not enforced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A utilization limit for CPU below 100 must be specified for the PDB using the utilization_limit parameter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These values can be set in a directive for the specific PDB or in a default directive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel execution servers</td>
<td>One of the following requirements must be met:</td>
<td>The parallel execution server allocation policy of the PDB resource plan is not enforced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A share value must be specified for the PDB using the shares parameter.</td>
<td>The parallel server limit specified by parallel_server_limit in the PDB resource plan is not enforced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A parallel server limit below 100 must be specified for the PDB using the parallel_server_limit parameter.</td>
<td>However, you can set the PARALLEL_SERVERS_TARGET initialization parameter in a PDB to enforce the parallel limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These values can be set in a directive for the specific PDB or in a default directive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.8.3.1.2 PDB Resource Plan: Example

A one-to-many relationship exists between CDB resource plans and PDB resource plans.

The following figure shows an example of a CDB resource plan and a PDB resource plan.
The preceding figure shows some of the directives in a PDB resource plan for the servicespdb PDB. Other PDBs in the CDB can also have PDB resource plans.

15.8.3.2 Creating a PDB Resource Plan

You create a PDB resource plan by using procedures in the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER PL/SQL package.

A CDB resource plan allocates a portion of the system's resources to a PDB. A PDB resource plan determines how this portion is allocated within the PDB.

The following is a summary of the steps required to create a PDB resource plan:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Create a pending area using the CREATE_PENDING_AREA procedure.
3. Create, modify, or delete consumer groups using the CREATE_CONSUMER_GROUP procedure.
4. Map sessions to consumer groups using the SET_CONSUMER_GROUP_MAPPING procedure.
5. Create the PDB resource plan using the CREATE_PLAN procedure.
6. Create PDB resource plan directives using the `CREATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE` procedure.

7. Validate the pending area using the `VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA` procedure.

8. Submit the pending area using the `SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA` procedure.

Ensure that the current container is a PDB and that the user has the required privileges when you complete these steps. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for detailed information about completing these steps.

You also have the option of creating a simple resource plan that is adequate for many situations using the `CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN` procedure. See Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about creating a simple resource plan.

**Note:**

Some restrictions apply to PDB resource plans. See "About PDB Resource Plans" for information.

### 15.8.3.3 Enabling a PDB Resource Plan

Enable a PDB resource plan by setting the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter to the plan with an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement when the current container is the PDB.

If no plan is specified with this parameter, then no PDB resource plan is enabled for the PDB.

**Prerequisites**

Before enabling a PDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To enable a PDB resource plan:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.

2. Use an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement to set the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter to the PDB resource plan.

You can also schedule a PDB resource plan change with Oracle Scheduler.

**Example 15-45  Enabling a PDB Resource Plan**

The following example sets the PDB resource plan to `salespdb_plan`.

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN = 'salespdb_plan';
```
15.8.3.4 Modifying a PDB Resource Plan

You can use the DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER package to modify a PDB resource plan.

Prerequisites

Before modifying a PDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

To modify a PDB resource plan:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Create a pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.CREATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

3. Modify the PDB resource plan by completing one or more of the following tasks:
   - Update a consumer group using the UPDATE_CONSUMER_GROUP procedure.
   - Delete a consumer group using the DELETE_CONSUMER_GROUP procedure.
   - Update a resource plan using the UPDATE_PLAN procedure.
   - Delete a resource plan using the DELETE_PLAN procedure.
   - Update a resource plan directive using the UPDATE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure.
   - Delete a resource plan directive using the DELETE_PLAN_DIRECTIVE procedure.

4. Validate the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.VALIDATE_PENDING_AREA();
   ```

5. Submit the pending area:

   ```sql
   exec DBMS_RESOURCE_MANAGER.SUBMIT_PENDING_AREA();
   ```
15.8.3.5 Disabling a PDB Resource Plan

You disable a PDB resource plan by unsetting the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter in the PDB.

**Prerequisites**

Before disabling a PDB resource plan, complete the prerequisites described in "Overview of Oracle Resource Manager in a Multitenant Environment".

**To disable a PDB resource plan:**

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Use an `ALTER SYSTEM` statement to unset the `RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN` initialization parameter for the PDB.

**Example 15-46   Disabling a PDB Resource Plan**

The following example disables the PDB resource plan.

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET RESOURCE_MANAGER_PLAN = '';
```

---

15.8.4 Monitoring PDBs Managed by Oracle Database Resource Manager

A set of dynamic performance views enables you to monitor the results of your Oracle Database Resource Manager settings for PDBs.

15.8.4.1 About Resource Manager Views for PDBs

You can monitor the results of your Oracle Database Resource Manager settings for PDBs using views.

The following views are available:
15.8.4.2 Monitoring CPU Usage for PDBs

The V$RSRCPDBMETRIC view enables you to track CPU metrics in milliseconds, in terms of number of sessions, or in terms of utilization for the past one minute.

The view provides real-time metrics for each PDB and is very useful in scenarios where you are running workloads and want to continuously monitor CPU resource utilization.

The active CDB resource plan manages CPU usage for a PDB. Use this view to compare the maximum and average CPU utilization for PDBs with other PDB settings such as the following:

- CPU time used
- Time waiting for CPU
• Average number of sessions that are consuming CPU
• Number of sessions that are waiting for CPU allocation

For example, you can view the amount of CPU resources a PDB used and how long it waited for resource allocation. Alternatively, you can view how many sessions from each PDB are executed against the total number of active sessions.

### Tracking CPU Consumption in Terms of CPU Utilization for PDBs

To track CPU consumption in terms of CPU utilization, query the `CPU_UTILIZATION_LIMIT` and `AVG_CPU_UTILIZATION` columns. `AVG_CPU_UTILIZATION` lists the average percentage of the server’s CPU that is consumed by a PDB. `CPU_UTILIZATION_LIMIT` represents the maximum percentage of the server’s CPU that a PDB can use. This limit is set using the `UTILIZATION_LIMIT` directive attribute.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (`CON_ID`) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10
SELECT r.CON_ID,
       p.PDB_NAME,
       r.CPU_UTILIZATION_LIMIT,
       r.AVG_CPU_UTILIZATION
FROM   V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r,
        CDB_PDBS p
WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```

### Tracking CPU Consumption and Throttling for PDBs

Use the `CPU_CONSUMED_TIME` and `CPU_WAIT_TIME` columns to track CPU consumption and throttling in milliseconds for each PDB. The column `NUM_CPUS` represents the number of CPUs that Resource Manager is managing.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (`CON_ID`) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10
SELECT r.CON_ID,
       p.PDB_NAME,
       r.CPU_CONSUMED_TIME,
       r.CPU_WAIT_TIME,
       r.NUM_CPUS
FROM   V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r,
        CDB_PDBS p
WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```

### Tracking CPU Consumption and Throttling in Terms of Number of Sessions for PDBs

To track the CPU consumption and throttling in terms of number of sessions, use the `RUNNING_SESSIONS_LIMIT`, `AVG_RUNNING_SESSIONS`, and `AVG_WAITING_SESSIONS` columns. `RUNNING_SESSIONS_LIMIT` lists the maximum number of sessions from a particular PDB that can be running at any time. This limit is defined by the
UTILIZATION_LIMIT directive attribute that you set for the PDB.

AVG_RUNNING_SESSIONS lists the average number of sessions that are consuming CPU, and AVG_WAITING_SESSIONS lists the average number of sessions that are waiting for CPU.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (CON_ID) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10

SELECT r.CON_ID,
       p.PDB_NAME,
       r.RUNNING_SESSIONS_LIMIT,
       r.AVG_RUNNING_SESSIONS,
       r.AVG_WAITING_SESSIONS
FROM   V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r,
       CDB_PDBS p
WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```

### 15.8.4.3 Monitoring Parallel Execution for PDBs

The V$RSRCPDBMETRIC view enables you to track parallel statements and parallel server use for PDBs.

Parallel execution servers for a PDB are managed with the active CDB resource plan of the PDB's CDB. To track parallel statements and parallel server use for PDBs, use the AVG_ACTIVE_PARALLEL_STMTS, AVG_QUEUED_PARALLEL_STMTS, AVG_ACTIVE_PARALLEL_SERVERS, AVG_QUEUED_PARALLEL_SERVERS, and PARALLEL_SERVERS_LIMIT columns.

AVG_ACTIVE_PARALLEL_STMTS and AVG_ACTIVE_PARALLEL_SERVERS list the average number of parallel statements running and the average number of parallel servers used by the parallel statements. AVG_QUEUED_PARALLEL_STMTS and AVG_QUEUED_PARALLEL_SERVERS list the average number of parallel statements queued and average number of parallel servers that were requested by queued parallel statements. PARALLEL_SERVERS_LIMIT lists the number of parallel servers allowed to be used by the PDB.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (CON_ID) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10

SELECT r.CON_ID, p.PDB_NAME, r.AVG_ACTIVE_PARALLEL_STMTS,
       r.AVG_QUEUED_PARALLEL_STMTS,
       r.AVG_ACTIVE_PARALLEL_SERVERS, r.AVG_QUEUED_PARALLEL_SERVERS,
       r.PARALLEL_SERVERS_LIMIT
FROM V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r, CDB_PDBS p
WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```
15.8.4.4 Monitoring the I/O Generated by PDBs

The `V$RSRCPDBMETRIC` view enables you to track the amount of I/O generated by PDBs.

I/O is limited for a PDB by setting the `MAX_IOPS` initialization parameter or the `MAX_MBPS` initialization parameter in the PDB. Use this view to compare the I/O generated by PDBs in terms of the number of operations each second and the number of megabytes each second.

Tracking the Number of I/O Operations Generated Each Second by PDBs

To track the I/O operations generated each second by PDBs during the previous minute, use the `IOPS` column.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (`CON_ID`) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10

SELECT r.CON_ID, p.PDB_NAME, r.IOPS
  FROM V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r, CDB_PDBS p
  WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```

Tracking the Number Megabytes Generated for I/O Operations Each Second by PDBs

To track number of megabytes generated for I/O operations each second by PDBs during the previous minute, use the `IOMBPS` column.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (`CON_ID`) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10

SELECT r.CON_ID, p.PDB_NAME, r.IOMBPS
  FROM V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r, CDB_PDBS p
  WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```

15.8.4.5 Monitoring Memory Usage for PDBs

The `V$RSRCPDBMETRIC` view enables you to track the amount memory used by PDBs.

Use this view to track the amount of SGA, PGA, buffer cache, and shared pool memory currently used by PDBs.

To track the current memory usage, in bytes, for specific PDBs, use the `SGA_BYTES`, `PGA_BYTES`, `BUFFER_CACHE_BYTES`, and `SHARED_POOL_BYTES` columns.

The following query displays this information by showing the container ID (`CON_ID`) and name of each PDB:

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A10

SELECT r.CON_ID, p.PDB_NAME, r.SGA_BYTES, r.PGA_BYTES, r.BUFFER_CACHE_BYTES, r.SHARED_POOL_BYTES
  FROM V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r, CDB_PDBS p
  WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
```
SELECT r.CON_ID, p.PDB_NAME, r.SGA_BYTES, r.PGA_BYTES,
 r.BUFFER_CACHE_BYTES, r.SHARED_POOL_BYTES
FROM V$RSRCPDBMETRIC r, CDB_PDBS p
WHERE r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID;
Administering a PDB Snapshot Carousel

You can configure a PDB snapshot carousel for a specified PDB, create snapshots manually or automatically, and set the maximum number of snapshots.

16.1 About PDB Snapshot Carousel

A PDB snapshot carousel is a library of PDB snapshots.

A PDB snapshot is a point-in-time copy of a PDB. The source PDB can be open read-only or read/write while the snapshot is created. You can create snapshots manually using the SNAPSHOT clause of CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE (or ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE), or automatically using the EVERY interval clause. If the storage system supports sparse clones, then the preceding command creates a sparse copy. Otherwise, the command creates a full copy.

See Also:
Oracle Database Licensing Information User Manual for details on which features are supported for different editions and services

16.1.1 Purpose of PDB Snapshot Carousel

A PDB snapshot carousel is useful for maintaining a library of recent PDB copies for point-in-time recovery and cloning.

Cloning PDBs for Development and Testing

In a typical development use case, you clone a production PDB for testing using a command of the form CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE newpdb FROM srcpdb. When the CDB is in ARCHIVELOG mode and local undo mode, the source production PDB can be opened in read/write mode and fully functional when you clone it, a technique known as hot cloning. The hot clone PDB is transactionally consistent with the source PDB as of the SCN at the completion of the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... OPEN statement.

The following steps illustrate a typical development scenario:

1. While the production PDB named pdb1_prod is open and in use, create a refreshable clone PDB named pdb1_test_master.
   
   A refreshable clone PDB can only be opened in read/only mode. To refresh the clone PDB from pdb1_prod, you must close it.

2. Run ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb1_test_master SNAPSHOT MODE EVERY 24 HOURS, which configures the PDB to generate automatic snapshots of pdb1_test_master every day.
3. When you need new PDBs for testing, create a full clone PDB by using the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING SNAPSHOT` command.

4. Create sparse snapshot copy PDBs of the full clone PDB using `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SNAPSHOT COPY`.

The following figure shows the creation of the clone `pdb1_test_full1` from the PDB snapshot taken on April 5. The figure shows three snapshot copy PDBs created from `pdb1_test_full1`.

**Figure 16-1  Automatic Snapshots of a Refreshable Clone PDB**

**Point-in-Time Restore with PDB Snapshot Carousel**

One strategy is to take a snapshot of a PDB every day at the same time. Another strategy is to take a PDB snapshot manually before data loads. In either case, a PDB snapshot carousel enables you to restore a PDB using any available PDB snapshot.

For example, a sales history PDB named `pdb1_prod` generates an automatic snapshot every day at 12:01 a.m. On the daily data load on the afternoon of Monday 4/9, you
accidentally load the wrong data, corrupting the PDB. You can create a new production PDB based on the Monday 4/9 snapshot, drop the corrupted PDB, and then retry the data load.

Figure 16-2  Restore a Production PDB Using a Snapshot
16.1.2 How PDB Snapshot Carousel Works

The carousel for a specific PDB is a circular library of copies for this PDB.

The database creates successive copies in the carousel either on demand or automatically. The database overwrites the oldest snapshot when the snapshot limit is reached.

16.1.2.1 Contents of a PDB Snapshot

The contents of a PDB snapshot depend on whether the underlying file system supports sparse files.

Snapshot Names

The name of a database-managed PDB snapshot is either user-specified or system-generated. For system-generated snapshot names, SNAP_ is prefixed to a unique identifier, which contains the snapshot SCN. For example, the following query shows three snapshots with system-generated names and the SCNs at which they were taken:

```sql
SET LINESIZE 200
SET PAGESIZE 50000
COL CON_ID FORMAT 999999
COL CON_NAME FORMAT a15
COL SNAPSHOT_NAME FORMAT a27
SELECT CON_ID, CON_NAME, SNAPSHOT_NAME, SNAPSHOT_SCN FROM DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>CON_NAME</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_NAME</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_SCN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>SNAP_1389467754_993556301</td>
<td>2925293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>SNAP_1389467754_993556306</td>
<td>2925679</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>SNAP_1389467754_993556309</td>
<td>2925698</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Full and Sparse Snapshots

The content of snapshots generated by `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SNAPSHOT` depends on the underlying file system. If the underlying file system supports sparse copies, then the PDB-level snapshots are sparse. Only the first PDB-managed PDB snapshot is full. Otherwise, the PDB snapshots contain full copies of the data files. The snapshot includes other files necessary to create a PDB from the snapshot.

Snapshot Directories

Every PDB has its own snapshot directory. Within this directory, each snapshot has its own subdirectory named after the SCN at which it was taken. The following query shows the sparse PDB snapshots for `hrpdb`, which has a DBID of 1389467754:

```sql
SET LINESIZE 200
SET PAGESIZE 50000
COL SNAPSHOT_NAME FORMAT a27
COL FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH FORMAT a65
SELECT SNAPSHOT_NAME, SNAPSHOTS_SCN, FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH FROM DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SNAPSHOT_NAME</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_SCN</th>
<th>FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SNAP_1389467754_993556301</td>
<td>2925293</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/pdb_1389467754/2925293/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAP_1389467754_993556306</td>
<td>2925679</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/pdb_1389467754/2925679/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAP_1389467754_993556309</td>
<td>2925698</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/pdb_1389467754/2925698/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

If the snapshot were full instead of sparse, then the full snapshot path would specify an archive with the `.pdb` suffix.

The directory for `/d1/snapshots/pdb_1389467754/2925698/` contains the following files:

- `archparlog_1_63_52d1986a_993552590.arc`
- `o1_mf_salestbs_g03341t2_.dbf`
- `o1_mf_sysext_g0333vqw_.dbf`
- `o1_mf_undo_1_g033gd2j_.dbf`
- `o1_mf_sysaux_g0333vqv_.dbf`
- `o1_mf_system_g0333vqt_.dbf`
- `HRPDB.xml`
The set includes the data files, archived redo log files, and an XML file that contains metadata about the PDB snapshot. The following `du` command shows that the size of the snapshot data files, which are sparse, is small relative to the size of the data files:

```bash
% du -h *dbf
16K   o1_mf_salestbs_g03341t2_.dbf
16K   o1_mf_sysaux_g0333vqv_.dbf
16K   o1_mf_sysext_g0333vqw_.dbf
16K   o1_mf_system_g0333vqt_.dbf
16K   o1_mf_undo_1_g033gd2j_.dbf
```

The following data dictionary join shows the snapshot file names and types for snapshot 2925698:

```
SELECT f.SNAPSHOT_FILENAME, f.SNAPSHOT_FILETYPE
FROM DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS s, DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE f
WHERE s.SNAPSHOT_SCN=f.SNAPSHOT_SCN
AND s.CON_ID=f.CON_ID
ORDER BY s.SNAPSHOT_SCN DESC;
```

---

### 16.1.2.2 Contents of a PDB Snapshot Carousel

The PDB snapshot carousel is the set of all existing snapshots for a PDB.

The `MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS` property specifies the maximum number of snapshots permitted in the carousel. The current setting is visible in the `CDB_PROPERTIES` view.

The following figure shows a carousel for `cdb1_pdb1`. In this example, the database takes a PDB snapshot automatically every day, maintaining a set of 8. After the first 8 snapshots have been created, every new snapshot replaces the oldest snapshot. For
example, the Tuesday 4/10 snapshot replaces the Monday 4/2 snapshot; the Wednesday 4/11 snapshot replaces the Tuesday 4/3 snapshot; and so on.

Figure 16-3   PDB Snapshot Carousel

If the file system supports sparse files, then all PDB snapshots in the carousel except the first one are sparse. The source PDB can remain in read/write mode. Sparse files significantly reduce the carousel storage space.

See Also:
Oracle Database Licensing Information User Manual for details on which features are supported for different editions and services

16.1.3 User Interface for PDB Snapshot Carousel

The SNAPSHOT MODE clause controls creation of snapshots, and determines whether creation is manual, automatic, or disabled.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... SNAPSHOT Statement

To set the snapshot mode for a PDB, use one of the following values in the SNAPSHOT MODE clause of ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE or CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE:

- MANUAL

This clause, which is the default, enables the creation of manual snapshots of the PDB. To create a snapshot on demand, specify the SNAPSHOT snapshot_name clause in an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE or CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.
EVERY `snapshot_interval` [MINUTES|HOURS]

This clause enables the automatic creation of snapshots after an interval of time. The following restrictions apply to the interval specified:

- The minutes value must be less than 3000.
- The hours value must be less than 2000.

The database assigns each automatic snapshot a system-generated name. Note that manual snapshots are also supported for the PDB when EVERY is specified.

NONE

This clause disables snapshot creation for the PDB.

See Also:

- "About Cloning PDBs from PDB Snapshots"
- Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for the syntax and semantics of the `SNAPSHOT` clause

MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS Database Property

To set the maximum number of snapshots for a PDB, specify the `MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS` property in `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` or `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE`. The default is for the property is 8, which is also the maximum value. When the maximum allowed number of snapshots has been created, the database purges the oldest snapshot. The `CDB_PROPERTIES` view shows the setting of `MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS`.

See Also:

Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for the syntax of the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement

Snapshot-Related Data Dictionary Views

The following data dictionary views provide snapshot information:

- The `DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS` view records metadata about PDB snapshots, including snapshot name, creation SCN, creation time, and file name.
- The `DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE` view lists the names and types of the files in a PDB snapshot. This view is only populated when the snapshots are sparse.
- The `DBA_PDBS` view has a `SNAPSHOT_MODE` and `SNAPSHOT_INTERVAL` column.

See Also:

Oracle Database Reference to learn about `DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS`, `DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE`, and `DBA_PDBS`
16.2 Setting the Maximum Number of Snapshots in a PDB Snapshot Carousel

You can set the maximum number of PDB snapshots for a PDB.

The `MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS` database property sets the maximum number of snapshots for every PDB in a PDB snapshot carousel. The default maximum is 8. You cannot set the property to a number greater than 8.

Prerequisites

The PDB must be open in read/write mode.

To set the maximum number of PDB snapshots for a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the PDB for which you want to set the limit.
2. Optionally, query `CDB_PROPERTIES` for the current setting of the `SET MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS` property.
3. Run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` or `ALTER DATABASE` statement with the `SET MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS` clause.

Example 16-1 Setting the Maximum Number of PDB Snapshots for a PDB

The following query shows the maximum in the carousel for `cdb1_pdb1` (sample output included):

```
SET LINESIZE 150
COL ID FORMAT 99
COL PROPERTY_NAME FORMAT a17
COL PDB_NAME FORMAT a9
COL VALUE FORMAT a3
COL DESCRIPTION FORMAT a43

SELECT r.CON_ID AS id, p.PDB_NAME, PROPERTY_NAME, PROPERTY_VALUE AS value, DESCRIPTION
FROM   CDB_PROPERTIES r, CDB_PDBS p
WHERE  r.CON_ID = p.CON_ID
AND    PROPERTY_NAME LIKE 'MAX_PDB%'
ORDER BY PROPERTY_NAME;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>PROPERTY_NAME</th>
<th>VAL</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>CDB1_PDB1</td>
<td>MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>maximum number of snapshots for a PDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following SQL statement sets the maximum number of PDB snapshots for the current PDB to 7:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SET MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS=7;
```
Example 16-2 Dropping All Snapshots in a PDB Snapshot Carousel

To drop all snapshots in a PDB snapshot carousel, set the \texttt{MAX\_PDB\_SNAPSHOTS} database property to 0 (zero), as shown in the following statement:

\begin{verbatim}
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SET MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS=0;
\end{verbatim}

This technique is faster than executing \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... DROP SNAPSHOT snapshot\_name} for every snapshot.

\textbf{See Also:}

"About Container Access in a CDB"

16.3 Configuring Automatic PDB Snapshots

Configure a PDB for automatic snapshots by using the \texttt{SNAPSHOT MODE EVERY} clause when creating or altering a PDB.

By default, a PDB is configured for manual snapshots.

\textbf{Prerequisites}

Note the following prerequisites for the \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT} statement:

- The CDB must be in local undo mode.
- The administrator must have the privileges to create a PDB and drop a PDB.

To configure automatic snapshots when altering a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, log in as an administrator to the PDB whose snapshot mode you intend to configure.
2. Optionally, query \texttt{DBA\_PDBS} to determine the current snapshot mode.
3. Run \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE with the SNAPSHOT MODE EVERY interval clause}, specifying either \texttt{MINUTES} or \texttt{HOURS}.

To configure automatic snapshots when creating a PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, log in as an administrator to the CDB root or application root.
2. Optionally, query \texttt{DBA\_PDBS} to determine the current snapshot mode.
3. Run \texttt{CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE with the SNAPSHOT MODE EVERY interval clause}, specifying either \texttt{MINUTES} or \texttt{HOURS}.
Example 16-3  Configuring an Automatic Snapshot Every Day for an Existing PDB

This example assumes that you are logged in to the PDB whose snapshot mode you intend to change. Query the data dictionary to confirm that the PDB is currently in MANUAL mode (sample output included):

```
SELECT SNAPSHOT_MODE "S_MODE", SNAPSHOT_INTERVAL/60 "SNAP_INT_HRS"
FROM DBA_PDBS;
```

```
S_MODE SNAP_INT_HRS
------ ------------
MANUAL
```

Change the snapshot mode to every 24 hours:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT MODE EVERY 24 HOURS;
```

Confirm the change to automatic mode:

```
SELECT SNAPSHOT_MODE "S_MODE", SNAPSHOT_INTERVAL/60 "SNAP_INT_HRS"
FROM DBA_PDBS;
```

```
S_MODE SNAP_INT_HRS
------ ------------
AUTO 24
```

Example 16-4  Creating a PDB That Takes Snapshots Every Two Hours

This example assumes that you are logged in to the CDB root. The following statement creates cdb1_pdb3 from an existing PDB named cdb1_pdb1, and configures it to take snapshots automatically every 2 hours:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE cdb1_pdb3 FROM cdb1_pdb1
FILE_NAME_CONVERT=('cdb1_pdb1','cdb1_pdb3')
SNAPSHOT MODE EVERY 120 MINUTES;
```

See Also:

- “Cloning a PDB from a PDB Snapshot: Scenario”
- “Configuring a CDB to Use Local Undo Mode”
16.4 Creating PDB Snapshots Manually

To create a PDB snapshot manually, specify the \texttt{SNAPSHOT} \texttt{snapshot\_name} clause in \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE} or \texttt{CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE}.

**Prerequisites**

Note the following prerequisites for the \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT} statement:

- The CDB must be in local undo mode. You can check the mode by using the following query, which returns \texttt{TRUE} when local undo is enabled:

  ```sql
  SELECT * FROM DATABASE_PROPERTIES WHERE PROPERTY_NAME='LOCAL\_UNDO\_ENABLED';
  ```

- The DBA must have the privileges to create and drop a PDB.

- If you want the snapshots to be sparse, then the underlying storage system must support sparse files. In this case, only the first snapshot will be full.

**To create a PDB snapshot:**

1. In SQL*Plus, log in as an administrator to the PDB whose snapshot you intend to create.
2. Optionally, query \texttt{DBA\_PDBS\_SNAPSHOT\_MODE} to confirm that the snapshot mode is not set to \texttt{NONE}.
3. Run an \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE} statement with the \texttt{SNAPSHOT} clause.

**Example 16-5 Creating a PDB Snapshot with a User-Specified Name**

The following SQL statements create two PDB snapshots of \texttt{cdb1\_pdb1}, one before and one after a Wednesday data load:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT cdb1\_pdb1\_b4WLOAD;
-- data load
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT cdb1\_pdb1\_afWLOAD;
```

The following query of \texttt{DBA\_PDB\_SNAPSHOTS} shows the locations of two snapshots of the PDB named \texttt{cdb1\_pdb1} (sample output included):

```sql
SET LINESIZE 150
COL CON\_NAME FORMAT a9
COL ID FORMAT 99
COL SNAPSHOT\_NAME FORMAT a17
COL SNAP\_SCN FORMAT 9999999
COL FULL\_SNAPSHOT\_PATH FORMAT a61

SELECT CON\_ID AS ID, CON\_NAME, SNAPSHOT\_NAME,
    SNAPSHOT\_SCN AS snap\_scn, FULL\_SNAPSHOT\_PATH
FROM   DBA\_PDB\_SNAPSHOTS
ORDER BY SNAP\_SCN;
```
If you do not specify a PDB snapshot name, then the database generates a unique name.

**Example 16-6  Creating a PDB Snapshot with a System-Specified Name**

The following SQL statement creates a snapshot, but does not specify a name:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT;
```

The following sample query shows that the database assigned the snapshot a name prefixed with `SNAP_`:

```
SET LINESIZE 150
COL CON_NAME FORMAT a9
COL ID FORMAT 99
COL SNAPSHOT_NAME FORMAT a26
COL SNAP_SCN FORMAT 9999999
COL FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH FORMAT a61
SELECT CON_ID AS id, CON_NAME, SNAPSHOT_NAME,
      SNAPSHOT_SCN AS snap_scn, FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH
FROM   DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS
ORDER BY SNAP_SCN;
```

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_NAME</th>
<th>SNAP_SCN</th>
<th>FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>CDB1_PDB1_B4WLOAD</td>
<td>5056465</td>
<td>/ade/b/813544604/oracle/dbs/snapshots/pdb_2935056285/5056465/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>CDB1_PDB1_AFWLOAD</td>
<td>5056501</td>
<td>/ade/b/813544604/oracle/dbs/snapshots/pdb_2935056285/5056501/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SNAP_2935056285_1031574118</td>
<td>5057389</td>
<td>/ade/b/813544604/oracle/dbs/snapshots/pdb_2935056285/5057389/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

See Also:

- “About Container Access in a CDB”
- “Configuring a CDB to Use Local Undo Mode”
16.5 Dropping a PDB Snapshot

You can drop a PDB snapshot by running an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with the DROP SNAPSHOT clause.

To drop all PDB snapshots based on a PDB, set the MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS property in the PDB to 0 (zero).

To drop a PDB snapshot:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the PDB from which you created the PDB snapshot.
2. Run an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement with the DROP SNAPSHOT clause.

Example 16-7    Dropping a PDB Snapshot

The following SQL statement drops a PDB snapshot named sales_snap:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE DROP SNAPSHOT sales_snap;
```

See Also:

"About Container Access in a CDB"

16.6 Viewing Metadata for PDB Snapshots

The data dictionary views DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS and DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE show the metadata for PDB snapshots.

**DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS** contains general information about the snapshot, including name, SCN, time, and path. **DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE** shows the path and file type of every file in a snapshot: data files, archived redo log files, and XML files.

**Note:**

**DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE** only shows sparse clone PDBs. To create sparse clones, the CLONEDB initialization parameter must be set to TRUE.

To view metadata for PDB snapshots:

1. In SQL*Plus, log in to the database as an administrative user.
2. Query DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS.

For example, run the following query (sample output included):

```
COL SNAPSHOT_NAME FORMAT a30
SELECT SNAPSHOT_NAME, SNAPSHOT_SCN, SNAPSHOT_TIME FROM DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS;
```
3. **Query** `DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE`.

For example, run the following join query (sample output included):

```sql
SET LINESIZE 120
COL SNAPSHOT_NAME FORMAT a12
COL SNAPSHOT_FILENAME FORMAT a54

SELECT SNAPSHOT_NAME, SNAPSHOT_FILENAME, SNAPSHOT_FILETYPE AS TYPE
FROM   DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS s, DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE f
WHERE  s.SNAPSHOT_SCN=f.SNAPSHOT_SCN;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SNAPSHOT_NAME</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_FILENAME</th>
<th>TYPE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/o1_mf_undo_1_fry1l5bq_.dbf</td>
<td>DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/o1_mf_salestbs_fry19m6h_.dbf</td>
<td>DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/o1_mf_sysext_fry19d1n_.dbf</td>
<td>DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/o1_mf_sysaux_fry19d1m_.dbf</td>
<td>DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/o1_mf_system_fry19d1k_.dbf</td>
<td>DATA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/HRPDB.xml</td>
<td>XML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB_SNAP_S</td>
<td>/d1/snapshots/4954803/archparlog_1_274_b87ca51e_985963814.arc</td>
<td>ARCH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 16-8**  Querying Metadata for Full PDB Snapshots

The following query shows two PDB snapshots. The snapshots are full, not sparse, as indicated by the `.pdb` extension.

```sql
SET LINESIZE 200
SET PAGESIZE 50000
COL ID FORMAT 99
COL CON_NAME FORMAT a7
COL SNAPSHOT_NAME FORMAT a25
COL SNAPSHOT_SCN FORMAT a7
COL FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH FORMAT a65

SELECT CON_ID AS ID, CON_NAME, SNAPSHOT_NAME, SNAPSHOT_SCN, FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH
FROM   DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ID</th>
<th>CON_NAME</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_NAME</th>
<th>SNAPSHOT_SCN</th>
<th>FULL_SNAPSHOT_PATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>SNAP_3286480866_994766895</td>
<td>3160319</td>
<td>/d1/snap_3286480866_3160319.pdb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>SNAP_3286480866_994767095</td>
<td>3165758</td>
<td>/d1/snap_3286480866_3165758.pdb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following query of DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE returns no rows because this view is only populated when PDB snapshots are sparse:

SQL> SELECT COUNT(*) FROM DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE;

COUNT(*) --------

0
Administering Application Containers

You can administer application containers, including application roots and application PDBs. You can also administer the applications installed in application containers.

Note:
You can complete the tasks in this chapter using SQL*Plus or Oracle SQL Developer.

Related Topics

- Creating and Removing Application Containers and Seeds
  You can create application containers and application seeds in several different ways. You can also remove application containers from a CDB, and you can remove application seeds from application containers.

- Tools for a Multitenant Environment
  You can use various tools to configure and administer a multitenant environment.

17.1 About Application Container Administration

Some aspects of administering an application container are similar to administering the CDB root and the CDB as a whole, while other aspects are similar to administering a PDB.

Administering an application container is similar to administering a CDB because you can manage both the application root and the application PDBs that are plugged into the application root. However, administering an application container is also similar to managing a PDB because changes to the application container do not affect other application containers or PDBs in the CDB.

The following table describes administrative tasks for application containers that are similar to administrative tasks that manage a CDB or CDB root.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administrative Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>More Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuring application common users and commonly</td>
<td>Application common users and privileges are similar to common users and commonly granted privileges in a CDB root, but in an application container, common users and commonly granted privileges only exist within the containers of the application container, including the application root, application PDBs that belong to the application root, and an optional application seed that belongs to the application root.</td>
<td>&quot;Overview of Common and Local Users in a CDB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>granted privileges</td>
<td></td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating application containers</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the CDB root can create application containers that are plugged into the CDB root by specifying the AS APPLICATION CONTAINER clause in the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement. The database files must be Oracle Managed Files.</td>
<td>&quot;Creating Application Containers&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating application PDBs</td>
<td>A common user whose current container is the application root can create application PDBs that are plugged into the application root.</td>
<td>&quot;Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching to containers</td>
<td>A common user with the proper privileges can switch between containers in an application container, including the application root, application PDBs that belong to the application root, and an optional application seed that belongs to the application root.</td>
<td>&quot;Switching to a Container Using the ALTER SESSION Statement&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing ALTER SYSTEM SET statements</td>
<td>The ALTER SYSTEM SET statement can dynamically set an initialization parameter in one or more containers in an application container.</td>
<td>&quot;Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing data definition language (DDL) statements</td>
<td>In an application container, some DDL statements can apply to all containers in the application container or to the current container only.</td>
<td>&quot;Modifying Application Common Objects with DDL Statements&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following table describes administrative tasks for application containers that are similar to administrative tasks that manage a PDB.

### Table 17-2  Application Container Administrative Tasks Similar to Those of a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administrative Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>More Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connecting to the application root</td>
<td>The application root has its own service name, and users can connect to the application root in the same way that they connect to a PDB. Similarly, each application PDB has its own service name, and the application seed has its own service name.</td>
<td>&quot;Accessing a Container in a CDB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing the <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> statement</td>
<td>An <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> statement can modify an application root, application PDB, and application seed in the same way it modifies a PDB. For example, an administrator can open or close an application root with an <code>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> statement.</td>
<td>&quot;Modifying Containers When Connected to the CDB Root&quot; &quot;Modifying a PDB at the Database Level&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing the SQL*Plus <code>STARTUP</code> and <code>SHUTDOWN</code> commands</td>
<td>SQL*Plus <code>STARTUP</code> and <code>SHUTDOWN</code> commands operate on an application root, application PDB, and application seed in the same way that they operate on a PDB.</td>
<td>&quot;Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing the <code>ALTER SYSTEM</code> statements</td>
<td>An <code>ALTER SYSTEM</code> statement operates on an application root, application PDB, and application seed in the same way that it operates on a PDB.</td>
<td>&quot;Modifying a CDB with ALTER SYSTEM&quot; &quot;Modifying a PDB at the System Level&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing tablespaces</td>
<td>Administrators can create, modify, and drop tablespaces for an application root and for application PDBs. Each container has its own tablespaces.</td>
<td>&quot;About Managing Tablespaces in a CDB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing data files and temp files</td>
<td>Administrators can create, modify, and drop data files and temp files for an application root and for application PDBs. Each container has its own files.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Administrator's Guide for information about managing data files and temp files</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 17-2 (Cont.) Application Container Administrative Tasks Similar to Those of a PDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administrative Task</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>More Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Managing schema objects</td>
<td>You can create, modify, and drop schema objects in an application root and in each application PDB in the same way that you would in a PDB. You can also create triggers that fire for a specific application root or application PDB. However, application containers support application common objects, which can be shared between the containers in an application container. Application common objects cannot be created in PDBs.</td>
<td>&quot;Managing Application Common Objects&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17.2 About Modifying an Application Root

The `ALTER DATABASE` statement can modify an application root. The `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement can modify the open mode of application PDBs.

The following table lists which containers are modified by clauses in `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statements issued in an application root. The table also lists statements that are not allowed in an application root.

**Note:**

Statements issued when the current container is the application root never affect the CDB root or PDBs that do not belong to the current application root.
Table 17-3   Statements That Modify Containers in an Application Root

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modify Application Root Only</th>
<th>Modify One or More Application PDBs</th>
<th>Cannot Be Issued in an Application Root</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When connected as an application common user whose current container is the application root, ALTER DATABASE statements with the following clauses modify the application root only:</td>
<td>When connected as an application common user whose current container is the application root, ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statements with the following clause can modify the open mode of one or more application PDBs:</td>
<td>When connected as an application common user whose current container is the application root, ALTER DATABASE statements with the following clauses are not allowed:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  database_file_clauses</td>
<td>•  pdb_change_state</td>
<td>•  startup_clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  DEFAULT EDITION clause</td>
<td></td>
<td>•  recovery_clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause</td>
<td></td>
<td>•  logfile_clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  DEFAULT TEMPORARY TABLESPACE clause</td>
<td></td>
<td>•  controllfile_clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER DATABASE statements with the following clauses modify the application root and set default values for application PDBs:</td>
<td>When the current container is an application PDB, ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statements with this clause can modify the open mode of the current application PDB.</td>
<td>•  standby_database_clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  flashback_mode_clause</td>
<td>When connected as an application common user whose current container is the application root, ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statements with the following clause can preserve or discard the open mode an application PDB when the CDB restarts:</td>
<td>•  instance_clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  SET DEFAULT (BIGFILE</td>
<td></td>
<td>•  security_clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMALLFILE) TABLESPACE clause</td>
<td>•  pdb_save_or_discard_state</td>
<td>•  RENAME GLOBAL_NAME clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•  set_time_zone_clause</td>
<td>You can use these clauses to set nondefault values for specific application PDBs.</td>
<td>•  ENABLE BLOCK CHANGE TRACKING clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can use these clauses to set nondefault values for specific application PDBs.</td>
<td></td>
<td>•  DISABLE BLOCK CHANGE TRACKING clause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:

• “About the Current Container”
• "Modifying a PDB at the Database Level"
• Oracle Database SQL Language Reference

17.3 Managing Applications in an Application Container

You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

You can also uninstall an application from an application container. You perform these operations in the application root. The application container propagates the application changes to the application PDBs when the application PDBs synchronize with the application in the application root.

Related Topics

• Overview of Applications in an Application Container
  Within an application container, an application is the named, versioned set of common data and metadata stored in the application root.
17.3.1 About Application Management

In an application container, an **application** is a named, versioned set of application metadata and common data. The application is stored in the application root.

In this context, the term “application” means “application back-end.” Application common objects include user accounts, tables, PL/SQL packages, and so on. You can share an application with the application PDBs that belong to the application root.

When you perform application changes, application PDBs can synchronize with the application in the application root.

17.3.1.1 Basic Steps of Application Maintenance

You can install, upgrade, and patch an application in an application root.

You must issue an **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN** statement to start the operation and an **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... END** statement to end the operation. You can issue these statements in the same user session or in different user sessions.

The following is the typical process for creating and maintaining an application in an application container:

1. Create the application container.
2. Install the application in the application root using **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN INSTALL**.

   This step includes creating the application data model and configuring the application common users and application common objects.

   **Note:**

   SQL*Loader is the only supported utility for bulk inserts into tables during application install, upgrade, and patch operations.

3. Create the application PDBs in the application root.
4. Synchronize each application PDB that should install the application with the application root. The statement is **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC**.
5. Load the data for each application PDB.
6. Maintain the application. Upgrade using **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN UPGRADE, and patch using ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN PATCH**.
7. Synchronize application PDBs that should apply changes from upgrades and patches.
8. Add new application PDBs whenever necessary.
9. If necessary, uninstall the application using **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN UNINSTALL**.
17.3.1.2 Application Versions

The application container also manages the versions of the application and the patches to the application.

The application container manages versions as follows:

- When you install an application, you must specify the application version number.
- When you upgrade an application, you must specify the old application version number and the new application version number.
- When you patch an application, you must specify the minimum application version number for the patch and the patch number.

As the application evolves, the application container maintains all of the versions and patch changes that you apply.

You can also configure the application container so that different application PDBs use different application versions. For example, if you provide an application to various customers, and each customer has its own application PDB, some customers might wait longer to upgrade the application. In this case, some application PDBs can use the latest version of the application, whereas other application PDBs can use an older version of the application.

17.3.1.3 Application Module Names

The application module name is set by the `DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE` procedure or the equivalent OCI attribute setting.

The module name is necessary during application maintenance because of other activity that might be occurring in the database. For example, statements issued by background processes should not be captured in the application capture tables. Also, other users might execute statements that are unrelated to the application. A module name check distinguishes what should be captured from what should not be captured. Only sessions whose module name matches the module name of the session where `APPLICATION BEGIN` was issued are considered for capture.

Some clauses, such as the `SHARING` clause, are valid only when issued between an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN` statement and an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... END` statement. For these clauses, if the module name for a session does not match, then this session is not included in between the `BEGIN` and `END` statements, causing statements that include the clause to fail with ORA-65021 or other errors.

The most common cause for a module name mismatch is the default module name. For example, SQL*Plus sets a default module name when a connection is made to the database. A connection as a `SYSDBA` user results in one default module name (for
example, sqlplus@host1 (TNS V1-V3)), whereas a connection as a non-SYSDBA user results in a different default module name (for example, SQL*Plus). When SYSDBA and non-SYSDBA users are both performing maintenance, you must explicitly set the module name in each session to the same value, and not rely the default settings in SQL*Plus.

Example 17-1  Checking the Application Module Name

This example shows how the default module name changes depending on whether the connected user has SYSDBA privileges.

```
SQL> CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
Connected.

SQL> select module from v$session where audsid = SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV','sessionid');

MODULE
-----------------------------------------------
sqlplus@host1 (TNS V1-V3)

SQL> CONNECT dba1
Password: *************
Connected.

SQL> select module from v$session where audsid = SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV','sessionid');

MODULE
-----------------------------------------------
SQL*Plus
```

See Also:
Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference to learn how to set the application module name

17.3.2 Installing Applications in an Application Container

You can install an application in an application container.

17.3.2.1 About Installing Applications in an Application Container

You issue ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statements to install an application in the application root.

You install the application in the application root only. Application PDBs that synchronize with the application install the application automatically. With the automated method, you can perform the installation using one or more of the following techniques: scripts, SQL statements, and graphical user interface tools.

Start of the installation with an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL statement and the end of the install with an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE
APPLICATION END INSTALL statement. Each installation must be associated with an application name and version number, which are specified in the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statements.

Related Topics
- Running Oracle-Supplied SQL Scripts in a CDB
  You can use the catcon.pl script to run Oracle-supplied SQL or SQL scripts within a CDB. You can run the script against any specified containers.

17.3.2.2 Installing an Application in an Application Container with Automated Propagation

In automated propagation, the application is installed in the application PDBs that synchronize with the application in the application root.

Prerequisites
You must meet the following prerequisites:

- The current user must have the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE system privilege, and the privilege must be commonly granted in the application root.
- The application root must be in open read/write.

To install an application using automated propagation:

1. In SQL*Plus or SQL Developer, ensure that the current container is a PDB.
2. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL statement in the following form:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name BEGIN INSTALL 'application_version_number';
   ```

   For example, run the following statement if the application_name is salesapp and the application_version_number is 4.2:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN INSTALL '4.2';
   ```

3. Install the application using scripts, SQL statements, or graphical user interface tools.
4. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL statement in the following form:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name END INSTALL 'application_version_number';
   ```

   For example, run the following statement if the application_name is salesapp and the application_version_number is 4.2:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END INSTALL '4.2';
   ```
**Note:**

Ensure that the application name and application version number match in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL` statement and the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL` statement.

5. Synchronize all of the application PDBs that must install the application by issuing an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.

**Related Topics**

- **Accessing a Container in a CDB**
  Access a container in a CDB with SQL*Plus by issuing a `CONNECT` or `ALTER SESSION` command.

- **Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB**
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

### 17.3.3 Upgrading Applications in an Application Container

Major changes to an application constitute application upgrades. You can upgrade an application in an application container.

**17.3.3.1 About Upgrading Applications in an Application Container**

You issue `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements to upgrade an application in the application root.

**Related Topics**

- **Running Oracle-Supplied SQL Scripts in a CDB**
  You can use the `catcon.pl` script to run Oracle-supplied SQL or SQL scripts within a CDB. You can run the script against any specified containers.

**17.3.3.1.1 Purpose of Application Upgrade**

You can upgrade the application definition once in the application root so that other application PDBs can synchronize with the upgraded definition.

Application PDBs do not automatically inherit the upgraded application definition in the application root. Application PDBs synchronize with an application in the root when you manually run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `SYNC` clause. You can upgrade using one or more of the following techniques: scripts, SQL statements, and graphical user interface tools.

**17.3.3.1.2 How an Application Upgrade Works**

When you upgrade an application, Oracle Database automatically clones the application root.

During the upgrade, application PDBs point to the root clone. Applications continue to run during the upgrade. Application PDBs can perform DML on metadata-linked and extended data-linked tables and views. Application PDBs can query metadata-linked objects, extended data-linked objects, and data-linked objects.
After the upgrade, the application root clone remains and continues to support any application PDB that still use the preupgrade version of the application in the root clone. Application PDBs that upgrade are pointed to the upgraded application root. Application PDBs that do not upgrade might continue to use the clone, and application PDBs that are plugged into the application root might also use the same application version as the root clone.

**Note:**

Unlike an application upgrade, a patch does not create an application root clone. If an application PDB is not synchronized after a patch, then queries are directed to the application root, which has already been patched.

The following figure illustrates the application upgrade process.
Figure 17-1  Upgrading Applications in an Application Container

1. **Before upgrade**

    Application Root v1.0
    Application Root v1.0 Application Root Clone v1.0
    Application Root Clone v1.0
    Application PDBs

2. **Begin upgrade**

    Application Root v1.0
    Application Root Clone v1.0
    Application PDBs

3. **End upgrade**

    Application Root v2.0
    Application Root Clone v1.0
    Application PDBs

4. **After synchronization**

    Application Root v2.0
    Synchronized Application PDBs
    Application Root Clone v1.0
    Application PDB at v1.0
17.3.3.1.3 User Interface for Application Upgrade

To upgrade an application definition in the application root, use the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... UPGRADE` command.

Start the upgrade with an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UPGRADE` statement and end with an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UPGRADE` statement. Each upgrade must be associated with an application name, starting version number, and ending version number, which are specified in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements.

17.3.3.2 Upgrading an Application in an Application Container

After an upgrade, application changes caused by the upgrade propagate to the application PDBs that synchronize with the application root.

Prerequisites

- The CDB must be in local undo mode.
- The current user must have the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege, and the privilege must be commonly granted in the application root.
- The application root must be in open read/write.
- If Transparent Data Encryption is enabled in the application root, then an external password store must be configured.

To upgrade an application in an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus or SQL Developer, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UPGRADE` statement in the following form:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name BEGIN UPGRADE 'application_start_version_number' TO 'application_end_version_number';
```
For example, run the following statement if the application_name is salesapp, the application_start_version_number is 4.2, and the application_end_version_number is 4.3:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN UPGRADE '4.2' TO '4.3';
```

3. Upgrade the application using scripts, SQL statements, or graphical user interface tools.

4. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UPGRADE statement in the following form:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name END UPGRADE TO 'application_end_version_number';
```

For example, run the following statement if the application_name is salesapp and the application_end_version_number is 4.3:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END UPGRADE TO '4.3';
```

**Note:**

Ensure that the application_name and application_end_version_number match in the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UPGRADE statement and the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UPGRADE statement.

5. Synchronize all of the application PDBs that must upgrade the application by issuing an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement with the SYNC clause.

Related Topics

- **Accessing a Container in a CDB**
  Access a container in a CDB with SQL*Plus by issuing a CONNECT or ALTER SESSION command.

- **Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB**
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

- **Setting the Undo Mode in a CDB Using ALTER DATABASE**
  When local undo is enabled, each container has its own undo tablespace for every instance in which it is open. When local undo is disabled, there is one undo tablespace for the entire CDB.

### 17.3.4 Patching Applications in an Application Container

Minor changes to an application constitute application patches.

Examples of minor changes can include bug fixes and security patches. You can patch an application in an application container.
17.3.4.1 About Patching Applications in an Application Container

To patch an application in the application root, issue `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements.

You patch the application in the application root only. The application PDBs that synchronize with the application apply the changes. You can perform the patch using one or more of the following techniques: scripts, SQL statements, and graphical user interface tools.

The patch is restricted to a small set of operations. In general, destructive operations, such as dropping a table, are not allowed in a patch. If you attempt to patch an application, and the operation raises an "operation not supported in an application patch" error, then upgrade the application instead of patching it to make the necessary changes.

**Note:**

Unlike an application upgrade, a patch does not create an application root clone. If an application PDB is not synchronized after a patch, then queries are directed to the application root, which has already been patched.

Indicate the start of the patch with an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN PATCH` statement and the end of the patch with an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END PATCH` statement. Each patch must be associated with an application name, starting version number, and ending version number. Specify these values in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements.

**Related Topics**

- **Running Oracle-Supplied SQL Scripts in a CDB**
  You can use the `catcon.pl` script to run Oracle-supplied SQL or SQL scripts within a CDB. You can run the script against any specified containers.

- **Upgrading Applications in an Application Container**
  Major changes to an application constitute application upgrades. You can upgrade an application in an application container.

17.3.4.2 Patching an Application in an Application Container with Automated Propagation

Application changes for the patch are propagated to the application PDBs that synchronize with the application in the application root.

**Prerequisites**

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The current user must have the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege, and the privilege must be commonly granted in the application root.
- The application root must be in open read/write mode.
- In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN PATCH` statement in the following form:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name
       BEGIN PATCH patch_number
       MINIMUM VERSION 'minimum_application_version_number';
   ```

   For example, run the following statement if the `application_name` is `salesapp`, the `patch_number` is `987654`, and the `minimum_application_version_number` is `4.2`:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp
       BEGIN PATCH 987654 MINIMUM VERSION '4.2';
   ```

   The `minimum_application_version_number` indicates the minimum application version at which an application installation must be before the patch can be applied to it.

3. Patch the application using scripts, SQL statements, and graphical user interface tools.

4. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END PATCH` statement in the following form:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name
       END PATCH patch_number;
   ```

   For example, run the following statement if the `application_name` is `salesapp` and the `patch_number` is `987654`:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END PATCH 987654;
   ```

   **Note:**

   Ensure that the `application_name` and `patch_number` match in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN PATCH` statement and the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END PATCH` statement.

5. Synchronize all of the application PDBs that must patch the application by issuing an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.

Related Topics

- **Accessing a Container in a CDB**
  Access a container in a CDB with SQL*Plus by issuing a `CONNECT` or `ALTER SESSION` command.

- **Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB**
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

17.3.5 Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container

You can migrate an application that is installed in a PDB to an application container.
You can migrate the application to the application root or to an application PDB. For example, you might migrate an application installed in a PDB plugged into an Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2) CDB to an application container in an Oracle Database 18c CDB.

17.3.5.1 About Migrating an Existing Application to an Application Container

You can migrate an application to an application root by creating an application root using an existing PDB.

If the application is installed in more than one PDB, then you can use one of the PDBs to create the application root. You can use one of the methods available for copying a PDB to an application root, such as cloning the PDB or plugging in the PDB as an application root.

When common users, roles, or profiles exist in the PDB used to create the application root, you must run procedures in the `DBMS_PDB` package to associate them with the application. When an application root created from a PDB is first opened, each local user, role, and profile is marked as common. The procedures in the `DBMS_PDB` package associate the user, role, or profile with the application. Therefore, all DDL operations on the user, role, or profile must subsequently be done within an application `BEGIN...END` block of this application.

When shared database objects exist in the application root, you must run procedures in the `DBMS_PDB` package to associate the database objects with the application as application common objects. Therefore, all DDL operations on the application common objects must subsequently be done within an application `BEGIN...END` block of this application.

After the application root is in place, you can create application PDBs in the new application container using the existing PDBs. The application PDBs that you create must contain the application objects, including their data. Additional steps are necessary to synchronize the application version and patch number and to establish shared database objects in the application PDBs.

Scenario with One Hundred PDBs Running the Same Application

Assume that you currently have one hundred PDBs that are running the same application, and you want to migrate these PDBs to an application container. These PDBs have the application common objects and common users, roles, and profiles required by the application. To migrate the PDBs to an application container, follow these steps:

1. Choose one of the PDBs, and use the instructions in "Creating an Application Root Using an Existing PDB" to create the application root with this PDB.
   
   As part of this step, you associate the database objects, users, roles, and profiles with the application by running procedures in the `DBMS_PDB` package.

2. Use the instructions in "Creating an Application PDB Using an Existing PDB" to create one hundred application PDBs using the PDBs that are running the application.
17.3.5.2 Creating an Application Root Using an Existing PDB

Migrate an application that is installed in a PDB by copying the PDB to an application container.

Prerequisites

An Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2) or later CDB must exist.

1. In the CDB, create the application root by cloning the existing PDB, relocating the existing PDB, or by unplugging and plugging in the existing PDB.

   The new application root must contain all database objects used by the application.

2. With the application root as the current container, start an application installation operation by issuing an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... BEGIN INSTALL statement.

3. Optional: Query the COMMON column in the DBA_USERS, DBA_ROLES, and DBA_PROFILES views to determine which users, roles, and profiles are common.

4. Run the following procedures in the DBMS_PDB package to associate users, roles, and profiles with the application:
   - Run the SET_USER_EXPLICIT procedure to set application common users.
   - Run the SET_ROLE_EXPLICIT procedure to set application common roles.
   - Run the SET_PROFILE_EXPLICIT procedure to set application common profiles.

   If you do not have EXECUTE privilege on the DBMS_PDB package, then you can run these procedures in the DBMS_PDB_ALTER_SHARING package.

5. Optional: With the application root as the current container, query the SHARING column in the DBA_OBJECTS view to determine which database objects are shared.

6. Run the following procedures in the DBMS_PDB package to associate database objects with the application:
   - Run the SET_DATA_LINKED procedure to set data-linked application common objects.
   - Run the SET_METADATA_LINKED procedure to set metadata-linked application common objects.
   - Run the SET_EXT_DATA_LINKED procedure to set extended data-linked application common objects.
If you do not have `EXECUTE` privilege on the `DBMS_PDB` package, then you can run these procedures in the `DBMS_PDB.Alter_Sharing` package.

7. End the application installation operation by issuing an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... END INSTALL` statement.

8. Optional: Rerun the queries that you ran previously to ensure that the sharing properties of the database objects are correct and that the common properties of the users, roles, and profiles are correct.

9. Optional: If existing PDBs use the application, then create application PDBs using these existing PDBs.

   See "Creating an Application PDB Using an Existing PDB".

Related Topics

- Creating an Application Container
  You can create an application container using the `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `AS APPLICATION CONTAINER` clause.

- Managing Applications in an Application Container
  You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

- Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference

17.3.5.3 Creating an Application PDB Using an Existing PDB

After migrating an existing application to an application root, you can use an existing PDB that uses the application to create an application PDB.

Prerequisites

You must meet the following prerequisites:

- An Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2) or later CDB must exist, and the application root to which the application PDB will belong must exist.
- The PDB must contain all application common objects used by the application.
- The application must be installed in the application root.

1. In the application root, create the application PDB by cloning the existing PDB or by unplugging and plugging in the existing PDB.

   Violations will be reported during PDB creation.

2. Connect to or switch to the new PDB as a user with the required privileges.

3. Run the `pdb_to_apppdb.sql` script in the `ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin` directory.

   The script automatically synchronizes the application PDB with the application root.

4. Optional: Query the `SHARING` column in the `DBA_OBJECTS` view to ensure that the sharing properties of the database objects are correct.

5. Optional: Query the `COMMON` column in the `DBA_USERS`, `DBA_ROLES`, and `DBA_PROFILES` views to ensure that the common properties of the users, roles, and profiles are correct.
17.3.6 Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB

Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

Installing, upgrading, patching, or uninstalling an application in an application root does not change its application PDBs until they are synchronized. When the application PDB is the current container, synchronize manually using one of the following forms of `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... SYNC`:

- Synchronize a single application as follows, where `app1` is the name of the application:
  
  ```sql
  ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION app1 SYNC;
  ```

  Optionally, specify `SYNC TO PATCH patchno` to synchronize `app1` to the specified patch, and `SYNC TO version` to synchronize `app1` to the specified version.

- Synchronize multiple applications as follows, where `app1` and `app2` are the names of different applications:
  
  ```sql
  ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION app1, app2 SYNC;
  ```

- Synchronize all applications as follows:
  
  ```sql
  ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL SYNC;
  ```

- Synchronize all applications except a specified subset as follows, where `app1` and `app2` are the applications to be excluded:
  
  ```sql
  ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL EXCEPT app1, app2 SYNC;
  ```

Prerequisites and Restrictions

- The current user must have `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege.
- When specifying multiple applications using `ALL` or a list of names, the `SYNC TO` clause is not supported.
- Specifying multiple applications using `ALL` or a list of names replays application `BEGIN` and `END` blocks in the order in which they were captured. When applications depend on one another, synchronizing them in a single statement is necessary for functional correctness.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application PDB.
2. Run an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.
Example 17-2  Synchronizing a Specific Application in an Application PDB
This example synchronizes an application named salesapp in an application PDB with the latest application changes in the application root.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp SYNC;

Example 17-3  Synchronizing an Application to a Specified Patch
This example synchronizes an application named salesapp in an application PDB to patch 100.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp SYNC TO PATCH 100;

Example 17-4  Synchronizing an Application to a Specified Application Release
This example synchronizes an application named salesapp in an application PDB to release 2.0 of the application.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp SYNC TO '2.0';

Example 17-5  Synchronizing Multiple Applications in an Application PDB
This example synchronizes the applications salesapp and eusalesapp in an application PDB with the latest application changes in the application root.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp, eusalesapp SYNC;

Example 17-6  Synchronizing All Applications in an Application PDB
This example synchronizes all of the applications in an application PDB with the latest application changes in the application root.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL SYNC;

Example 17-7  Synchronizing All Applications Minus a Subset
This example synchronizes all of the applications in an application PDB except for salesapp.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ALL EXCEPT salesapp SYNC;

Example 17-8  Synchronizing Implicitly Created Applications in an Application PDB
This example synchronizes all of the implicitly-created applications in an application PDB with the latest application changes to the implicitly created applications in the application root.

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION APP$CON SYNC;
17.3.7 Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB

When application containers in different CDBs have the same application, their application roots can be kept synchronized by creating a master application root, a replica application root, and a proxy PDB.

17.3.7.1 About Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB

A proxy PDB can synchronize an application root and a replica of the application root. An application might be installed in several application containers. Installing, upgrading, and patching the application are more efficient when you use proxy PDBs.

In this configuration, one application container has the master application root. The master application root is where you install, upgrade, and patch the application. Application root replicas are exact copies of the master application root. Each application root replica is referenced by a proxy PDB in the master application root.

When a proxy PDB is synchronized with the application changes in the master application root, it propagates the changes to its referenced application root replica. After the application root replica is synchronized, application PDBs that are plugged into the application root replica can synchronize with the replica and in this way receive the changes.

The following figure shows a configuration that synchronizes an application root replica using a proxy PDB.
Figure 17-2  Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB
In addition, when an application root replica is configured and has its own application PDBs, a query that includes the `CONTAINERS` clause in the master application root can return data from the current application container and from the application container with the application root replica. The query can show results from the application root replica and from any open application PDBs plugged into the replica.

See Also:
"Querying Application Common Objects Across Application PDBs"

17.3.7.2 Creating a Proxy PDB That References an Application Root Replica

When multiple application containers run the same application, the application in the application containers can be kept synchronized using proxy PDBs.

1. Create the application container with the master application root by using a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement.
   Install the application in the application container now or later.

2. Create the application container with the application root replica in one of the following ways:
   - Create an empty application container using any supported method.
   - Clone the master application root.

   If the port of the listener used by the application root replica is not 1521, then a `PORT` clause is required during creation. If the host of the application root replica is different from the host of the master application root, then a `HOST` clause is required during creation.

   This application root replica will be referenced by the proxy PDB.

3. In the master application root, create a proxy PDB that references the application root replica that you created in the previous step.

4. Open and synchronize the proxy PDB.

   When the proxy PDB is synchronized, it propagates the changes in the master application root to the application root replica.

5. Optional: In the master application root, modify the application by installing, upgrading, or patching it.

6. Optional: Synchronize the proxy PDB with the application changes in the master application root by running the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.

   When the proxy PDB is synchronized, it propagates the changes in the master application root to the application root replica.

Example 17-9  Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB

This example assumes that two CDBs exist: `hqdb` and `depdb`. The goal is to keep the same application synchronized in an application container in each CDB. To accomplish this goal, this example configures the following application containers:
• The hqdb CDB contains the application container with the master application root called msappcon.
  – An application called sampleapp is installed in the msappcon master application root.
  – The msappcon application root contains two application PDBs named mspdb1 and mspdb2.
  – The msappcon application root also contains a proxy PDB named prxypdb that references the application root replica in the other CDB.

• The depdb CDB contains the application container with the application root replica called depappcon.
  – An application called sampleapp is propagated from the proxy PDB prxypdb in the msappcon master application root and installed in the depappcon master application root.
  – The depappcon application root contains two application PDBs named deppdb1 and deppdb2.

This example shows how changes to the sampleapp application in the msappcon master application root are applied to the application PDBs in both CDBs when the application PDBs are synchronized.

1. Create the application container with the master application root in the hqdb CDB.
   a. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the hqdb CDB root.
   b. Create the application container from the PDB seed with the following statement:

   ```sql
   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE msappcon
   AS APPLICATION CONTAINER
   ADMIN USER msappconadm IDENTIFIED BY password
   STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
   DEFAULT TABLESPACE appcontbs
   DATAFILE '/disk1/oracle/dbs/msappcon/msappcon01.dbf' SIZE 250M
   AUTOEXTEND ON
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/dbs/msappcon/',
                         '/disk1/oracle/dbs/msappcon/');
   ```
   c. Open the new master application root in read/write mode:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE msappcon OPEN;
   ```

2. Install an application in the master application root.
   a. Change container to the master application root:

   ```sql
   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=msappcon;
   ```
   b. Begin the application installation:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp BEGIN INSTALL '1.0';
   ```
   c. Install the application.
For example, you can create database objects:

```sql
CREATE TABLE apptb SHARING=METADATA
(id            NUMBER(6),
widget_name   VARCHAR2(20));
```

d. End the application installation:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp END INSTALL '1.0';
```

3. Create and synchronize one or more application PDBs in the master application root.
   a. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the master application root.
   b. Create application PDBs in the master application root.
      For example, create two application PDBs from the PDB seed:

```
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE mspdb1 ADMIN USER mspdb1admin IDENTIFIED BY password
STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
DEFAULT TABLESPACE mspdb1tbs
   DATAFILE '/disk1/oracle/dbs/mspdb1/mspdb101.dbf' SIZE 250M
   AUTOEXTEND ON
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/',
                        '/disk1/oracle/dbs/mspdb1/');

CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE mspdb2 ADMIN USER mspdb2admin IDENTIFIED BY password
STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
DEFAULT TABLESPACE mspdb2tbs
   DATAFILE '/disk1/oracle/dbs/mspdb2/mspdb201.dbf' SIZE 250M
   AUTOEXTEND ON
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/',
                        '/disk1/oracle/dbs/mspdb2/');
```
   c. Open both application PDBs:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE mspdb1 OPEN;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE mspdb2 OPEN;
```
   d. Synchronize the application PDBs with the master application root:

```
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=mspdb1;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;

ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=mspdb2;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;
```

4. Create the application container with the application root replica in the depdb CDB.
   a. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the depdb CDB root.
b. Create the application container from the PDB seed with the following statement:

```sql
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE depappcon
    AS APPLICATION CONTAINER
    ADMIN USER depappconadm IDENTIFIED BY password
    STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
    DEFAULT TABLESPACE appcontbs
    DATAFILE '/disk2/oracle/dbs/depsappcon/depappcon01.dbf' SIZE 250M
    AUTOEXTEND ON
    FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk2/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/',
                         '/disk2/oracle/dbs/depappcon/');
```

**Note:**
- If the port of the listener used by the application root replica is not 1521, then a `PORT` clause is required.
- If the host of the application root replica is different from the host of the master application root, then a `HOST` clause is required.

c. Open the new application root replica in read/write mode:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE depappcon OPEN;
```

5. Create and synchronize the proxy PDB in the master application root.
   a. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the master application root.
   b. Create a database link to the application root replica:

   ```sql
   CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK depappcon
     CONNECT TO depappconadm IDENTIFIED BY password USING 'depappcon';
   ```

   c. Create the proxy PDB:

   ```sql
   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE prxypdb AS PROXY
     FROM depappcon@depappcon
     FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk2/oracle/dbs/depsappcon/',
                           '/disk1/oracle/dbs/prxypdb/');
   ```

   d. Open the proxy PDB:

   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE prxypdb OPEN;
   ```

   e. Synchronize the proxy PDB with the master application root:

   ```sql
   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=prxypdb;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;
   ```

6. Create and synchronize one or more application PDBs in the application root replica.
a. Change container to the application root replica:

   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=depappcon;

b. Create application PDBs in the application root replica.
   For example, create two application PDBs from the PDB seed:

   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE deppdb1
   ADMIN USER deppdb1admin IDENTIFIED BY password
   STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
   DEFAULT TABLESPACE deppdb1tbs
   DATAFILE '/disk2/oracle/dbs/deppdb1/deppdb101.dbf' SIZE 250M
   AUTOEXTEND ON
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk2/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/',
                        '/disk2/oracle/dbs/deppdb1/');

   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE deppdb2 ADMIN USER deppdb2admin
   IDENTIFIED BY password
   STORAGE (MAXSIZE 2G)
   DEFAULT TABLESPACE deppdb2tbs
   DATAFILE '/disk2/oracle/dbs/deppdb2/deppdb201.dbf' SIZE 250M
   AUTOEXTEND ON
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT = ('/disk2/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/',
                        '/disk2/oracle/dbs/deppdb2/');

c. Open both application PDBs:

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE deppdb1 OPEN;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE deppdb2 OPEN;

d. Synchronize the application PDBs with the master application root:

   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=deppdb1;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;

   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=deppdb2;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;

7. Check the structure of the apptb table in an application PDB in the application root replica.
   a. From the application root replica, switch containers to the deppdb1 application PDB:

      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=deppdb1;

   b. Describe the apptb table:

      desc apptb
8. In the master application root, upgrade the application.
   a. Change container to the master application root:
      
      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=msappcon;
   
   b. Begin the application upgrade.
      
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp
      BEGIN UPGRADE '1.0' TO '1.1';
   
   c. Modify the application.
      
      For example, add a row to the apptb table:
      
      ALTER TABLE apptb ADD (widget_type VARCHAR2(30));
   
   d. End the application upgrade:
      
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp END UPGRADE TO '1.1';

9. Synchronize the proxy PDB with the master application root:
      
      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=prxypdb;
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;

10. Synchronize the application PDBs in the application root replica and check for the application upgrade.
    a. Synchronize the application PDBs:
      
      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=deppdb1;
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;

      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=deppdb2;
      ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION sampleapp SYNC;

    b. From the application root replica, switch containers to the deppdb1 application PDB:
      
      ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=deppdb1;

    c. Describe the apptb table:
      
      desc apptb
Your output is similar to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Null?</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td></td>
<td>NUMBER(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIDGET_NAME</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIDGET_TYPE</td>
<td></td>
<td>VARCHAR2(30)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that the change in the application upgrade is reflected in the output because the widget_type column has been added to the apptb table.

Related Topics

- Creating Application Containers
  You can use the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement to create an application container in a CDB.

- Creating a PDB as a Proxy PDB
  You can create a PDB as a proxy PDB by referencing it in a remote CDB.

- Managing Applications in an Application Container
  You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

- Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

17.3.8 Setting the Compatibility Version of an Application

The compatibility version of an application is the earliest version of the application possible for the application PDBs that belong to the application container.

The compatibility version is enforced when the compatibility version is set and when an application PDB is created. If there are application root clones that resulted from application upgrades, then all application root clones that correspond to versions earlier than the compatibility version are implicitly dropped.

You specify the compatibility version of an application by issuing one of the following SQL statements when the application root is the current container:

- ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name SET COMPATIBILITY VERSION 'application_version_number';
  
  application_name is the name of the application, and application_version_number is the earliest compatible version.

- ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name SET COMPATIBILITY VERSION CURRENT;
  
  application_name is the name of the application. The current version is the version of the application in the application root.

Note:

You cannot plug in an application PDB that uses an application version earlier than the compatibility setting of the application container.
1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.

2. Run an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION SET COMPATIBILITY VERSION statement.

Example 17-10 Setting the Compatibility Version to a Specific Version Number

This example sets the compatibility version for an application named salesapp to version 4.2.

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp
  SET COMPATIBILITY VERSION '4.2';
```

Example 17-11 Setting the Compatibility Version to the Current Application Version

This example sets the compatibility version for an application named salesapp to the current application version.

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp
  SET COMPATIBILITY VERSION CURRENT;
```

See Also: "About Upgrading Applications in an Application Container" for information about application root clones

17.3.9 Performing Bulk Inserts During Application Install, Upgrade, and Patch Operations

SQL*Loader is the only supported utility for bulk inserts into tables during application install, upgrade, and patch operations. Only conventional path loads are supported for bulk inserts during application install, upgrade, and patch operations.

The correct SQL*Loader module name must be specified between the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN and the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END statements. The module name is SQL Loader Conventional Path Load.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.

2. Set the correct module by running the following procedure:

```sql
BEGIN
  DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE("SQL Loader Conventional Path Load", '');
END;
```

This module must remain set for the entire application install, upgrade, or patch operation.

3. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN statement for beginning an application installation, upgrade, or patch.
For example, if you are performing the bulk insert as part of an application installation, then run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL` statement in the following form:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name
    BEGIN INSTALL 'application_version_number';
```

4. Perform the conventional path load with SQL*Loader.

5. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL` statement for ending an application installation, upgrade, or patch.

For example, if you are performing the bulk insert as part of an application installation, then run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL` statement in the following form:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name
    END INSTALL 'application_version_number';
```

---

**Note:**

Ensure that the `application_name` and `application_version_number` match in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL` statement and the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL` statement.

6. Synchronize all application PDBs that must include these application changes by issuing an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.

**Example 17-12  Performing a Conventional Path Load During an Application Installation**

In this example, the conventional path load is performed in an application root.

1. In SQL*Plus, switch to the application root.

   ```
   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=cdb1_approot1;
   ```

2. Set the correct module.

   ```
   BEGIN
     DBMS_APPLICATION_INFO.SET_MODULE(
       'SQL Loader Conventional Path Load', '');
   END;
   ```

3. Start the application installation.

   ```
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION APP1 BEGIN INSTALL '1';
   ```
4. Use SQL*Loader to perform the conventional path load.

    HOST sqlldr u1/u1@cdb1_approot1 control=my_bulk_load.ctl -
    rows=3 log=my_bulk_load.log

5. End the application installation.

    ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION APP1 END INSTALL '1';

---

See Also:

*Oracle Database Utilities* for information about SQL*Loader

---

### 17.3.10 Uninstalling Applications from an Application Container

You can uninstall an application in an application container.

#### 17.3.10.1 About Uninstalling Applications from an Application Container

You issue `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements to uninstall an application from the application root.

You uninstall the application from the application root only, and application PDBs that synchronize with the application uninstall the application automatically. The uninstall operation can be done with one or more of the following: scripts, SQL statements, and graphical user interface tools.

You must indicate the start of the uninstallation with an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UNINSTALL` statement and the end of the uninstallation with an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UNINSTALL` statement. Each uninstallation must be associated with an application name and version number, which are specified in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements.

Uninstalling an application does not remove the application from the data dictionary. It marks the application as **UNINSTALLED** so that upgrade, patch, and uninstall of the application is disallowed.

Destructive changes to application objects are allowed during application uninstallation. Applications running in an application PDB continue to function during uninstallation and after the application is uninstalled from the application root. The application can continue to function in the application PDB because the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UNINSTALL` statement creates a clone of the application root called an application root clone. An application root clone serves as a metadata repository for old versions of application objects, so that application PDBs that have not been synchronized with latest version of the application can continue to function. Because the clone is created while the application PDB is open, local undo must be configured at the CDB level before an application can be uninstalled.
17.3.10.2 Uninstalling an Application from an Application Container

To uninstall an application from an application container, run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UNINSTALL` statement to begin the uninstallation and the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UNINSTALL` statement to end it. The application uninstalled from the application PDBs that synchronize with the application in the application root.

The following prerequisites must be met:

- The CDB must be in local undo mode.
- The current user must have the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` system privilege, and the privilege must be commonly granted in the application root.
- The application root must be in open read/write mode.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UNINSTALL` statement in the following form:
   
   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name BEGIN UNINSTALL;
   ```
   
   For example, run the following statement if the `application_name` is `salesapp`:
   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN UNINSTALL;
   ```
   
3. Uninstall the application using scripts, SQL statements, or graphical user interface tools.
4. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UNINSTALL` statement in the following form:
   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name END UNINSTALL;
   ```
   
   For example, run the following statement if the `application_name` is `salesapp`:
   ```sql
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END UNINSTALL;
   ```
5. Synchronize all of the application PDBs that must uninstall the application by issuing an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause.

**See Also:**

- “Accessing a Container in a CDB”
- “Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB”
- “Setting the Undo Mode in a CDB Using `ALTER DATABASE`”

### 17.4 Managing Application Common Objects

Application common objects are shared, user-created database objects in an application container. Application common objects are created in an application root.

#### 17.4.1 About Application Common Objects

Application common objects are created in an application root and are shared with the application PDBs that belong to the application root.

There are three types of application common object: metadata-linked, data-linked, and extended data-linked. The following types of database objects can be application common objects:

- Analytic views
- Attribute dimensions
- Directories
- External procedure libraries
- Hierarchies
- Java classes, resources, and sources
- Object tables, types, and views
- Sequences
- Packages, stored functions, and stored procedures
- Synonyms
- Tables (including global temporary tables)
- Triggers
- Views
17.4.1.1 Creation of Application Common Objects

Create application common objects by issuing a CREATE statement when the current container is the application root and specifying the SHARING clause.

You can specify the sharing attribute by including the SHARING clause in the CREATE statement or by setting the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter in the application root. When you set the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter, the setting is the default sharing attribute for all database objects of a supported type created in the application root. However, when a SHARING clause is included in a CREATE statement, its setting overrides the setting for the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter.

You can specify one of the following for the sharing attribute:

- **METADATA**: A metadata link shares the database object’s metadata, but its data is unique to each container. These database objects are referred to as metadata-linked application common objects. This setting is the default.

- **DATA**: A data link shares the database object, and its data is the same for all containers in the application container. Its data is stored only in the application root. These database objects are referred to as data-linked application common objects.

- **EXTENDED DATA**: An extended data link shares the database object, and its data in the application root is the same for all containers in the application container. However, each application PDB in the application container can store data that is unique to the application PDB. For this type of database object, data is stored in the application root and, optionally, in each application PDB. These database objects are referred to as extended data-linked application common objects.

- **NONE**: The database object is not shared.

For most types of application common objects, the only valid settings for the SHARING clause are METADATA and NONE. The following types of application common objects allow additional settings for the SHARING clause:

- For tables (excluding object tables), the SHARING clause can be set to METADATA, DATA, EXTENDED DATA, or NONE. For object tables, only METADATA or NONE is valid.

- For views (excluding object views), the SHARING clause can be set to METADATA, DATA, EXTENDED DATA, or NONE. For object views, only METADATA or NONE is valid.

- For sequences, the SHARING clause can be set to METADATA, DATA, or NONE.

With a metadata-linked sequence, each application PDB has its own sequence. When the metadata-linked sequence is incremented using the NEXTVAL pseudocolumn in one application PDB, it does not affect the value of the sequence in the other application PDBs in the application container.

With a data-linked sequence, each application PDB shares the same sequence in the application root. When the metadata-linked sequence is incremented using the NEXTVAL pseudocolumn in one application PDB, all other application PDBs in the same application container also see the change.
Application common objects can be created or changed only as part of an application installation, upgrade, or patch. An application PDB applies changes to application common objects when it synchronizes with the application that made the changes. If an application PDB is closed when an application common object is created, dropped, or modified, then the appropriate changes are applied in the application PDB when it is opened and synchronized with the application.

The names of application common objects must not conflict with those of local database objects in any of the application PDBs that belong to the application root or Oracle-supplied common objects in the CDB root. If a newly opened application PDB contains a local database object whose name conflicts with that of an application common object, then the application PDB is opened in restricted mode. In this case, you must resolve the naming conflict before the application PDB can be opened in normal mode.

17.4.1.2 About Metadata-Linked Application Common Objects

For metadata-linked application common objects, the metadata for the object is stored once in the application root.

A metadata link in each application PDB that belongs to the application root enables the application PDBs to share the metadata for the object, including the object name and structure. The data for the object is unique to each container, including the application root and each application PDB that belongs to the application root.

Data definition language (DDL) operations on a metadata-linked application common object can be run in the application root only as part of an application installation, upgrade, or patch. However, the data can be modified in an application PDB using normal data manipulation language (DML) operations.

For example, consider a company with several regional offices. The company wants the structure of the information about employees to be consistent, but each office has different employees. If this company has a human resources application in an application container, it can create a separate application PDB for each regional office and use a metadata-linked table to store employee information. The data structure of the table, such as the columns, is the same in the application PDB for each regional office, but the employee data is different.

Another example might involve a company that builds and maintains a sales application that is used by several different businesses. Each business uses the same sales application, but the data for each business is different. For example, each business has different customers and therefore different customer data. To ensure that each client uses the same data structure for its application, the company might create an application container with metadata-linked application common objects. Each business that uses the sales application has its own application PDB, and the data structure is the same in each application PDB, but the data is different.

17.4.1.3 About Extended Data-Linked Application Common Objects

For data-linked application common objects, both the metadata and the data for the object is stored once in the application root. A data link in each application PDB that belongs to the application root enables the application PDBs to share the metadata and data of the object.

DDL operations on a data-linked application common object can be run in the application root only as part of an application installation, upgrade, or patch. In
addition, the data can be modified using normal DML operations only in the application root. The data cannot be modified in application PDBs.

For example, consider a company with several regional offices. The company wants the information about the products they sell, such as the product names and descriptions, to be consistent at all of the regional offices. If this company has a sales application in an application container, then it can create a separate application PDB for each regional office and use a data-linked table to store product information. Each application PDB can query the product information, and the product information is consistent at each regional office.

Data-linked application common objects are also useful for data that is standard and does not change. For example, a table that stores the postal codes for a country might be a data-linked application common object in an application container. All of the application PDBs access the same postal code data in the application root.

Note:

If the data-linked application common object is part of a configuration that synchronizes an application root replica with a proxy PDB, then DML operations on a data-linked object in the application root can be done outside of an application action, but the DML operation is not automatically propagated to the application root replication through the proxy PDB. If you want the DML operation to be propagated to the application root replica, then the DML operation on a data-linked object in the application root must be done within an application installation, upgrade, or patch.

17.4.1.4 About Extended Data-Linked Application Common Objects

For an extended data-linked object, each application PDB can create its own data while sharing the common data in the application root. Only data stored in the application root is common for all application PDBs.

DDL operations on an extended data-linked application common object can be run in the application root only as part of an application installation, upgrade, or patch. However, the data can be modified in the application root or in an application PDB using normal DML operations.

For example, a sales application in an application container might support several application PDBs, and all of the application PDBs need the postal codes in the United States for shipping purposes. In this case the postal codes can be stored in the application root so that all of the application PDBs can access it. However, one application PDB also makes sales in Canada, and this application PDB requires the postal codes for the United States and Canada. This one application PDB can store the postal codes for Canada in an extended data-linked object in the application PDB instead of in the application root.
17.4.2 Restrictions for Application Common Objects

Some restrictions apply to application common objects.

Queries on application common objects can return data from a container that is not the current container. For example, when the current container is an application root, queries that include the CONTAINERS clause can return data from application PDBs for metadata-linked application common objects. Also, when the current container is an application PDB, queries on data-linked and extended data-linked application common objects return data that resides in the application root.

Columns of the following types return no data in queries that return data from a container other than the current container:

- The following user-defined types: object types, varrays, REFs, and nested tables
- The following Oracle-supplied types: ANYTYPE, ANYDATASET, URI types, SDO_TOPO_GEOMETRY, SDO_GEORASTER, and Expression

In addition, queries on object tables and object views return no data from containers other than the current container.

Related Topics

- Querying Application Common Objects Across Application PDBs
  The CONTAINERS clause enables you to query application common objects across all PDBs in an application container. Queries from the application root display data in objects that exist in all open PDBs in the container.

17.4.3 Creating Application Common Objects

You create an application common object in an application root either by ensuring that the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter is set to the correct value or by including the SHARING clause in the CREATE SQL statement.

You can create a metadata-linked object, an extended data-linked, or a data-linked object in an application root as part of an application installation, upgrade, or patch. An application PDB applies changes to application common objects when it synchronizes with the application in the application root.
1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
   The current user must have the privileges required to create the database object.

2. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN` statement for beginning an application installation, upgrade, or patch.
   For example, if you are creating the application common object as part of an application installation, then run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL` statement in the following form:

   `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name
   BEGIN INSTALL 'application_version_number';`

3. Create the application common object and specify its sharing attribute in one of the following ways:
   - Ensure that the `DEFAULT_SHARING` initialization parameter is set to the desired sharing attribute in the application root, and issue the `CREATE` SQL statement to create the database object.
   - Issue the `CREATE` SQL statement, and include the `SHARING` clause set to `METADATA`, `DATA`, or `EXTENDED DATA`.

   When a `SHARING` clause is included in a SQL statement, it takes precedence over the value specified in the `DEFAULT_SHARING` initialization parameter. For example, if the `DEFAULT_SHARING` initialization parameter is set to `METADATA` in the application root, and a database object is created with `SHARING` set to `DATA`, then the database object is created as a data-linked database object.

   **Note:**
   Once a database object is created, its sharing attribute cannot be changed.

4. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END` statement for ending an application installation, upgrade, or patch.
   For example, if you are creating the application common object as part of an application installation, then run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL` statement in the following form:

   `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name
   END INSTALL 'application_version_number';`

   **Note:**
   Ensure that the `application_name` and `application_version_number` match in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL` statement and the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL` statement.
5. Synchronize all of the application PDBs that must apply these changes by issuing an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement with the SYNC clause with the application PDB as the current container.

**Example 17-13  Setting the DEFAULT_SHARING Initialization Parameter**

This example sets the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter to DATA both in memory and in the SPFILE. When a database object that supports sharing is created in the application root, and no SHARING clause is included in the CREATE SQL statement, the database object uses the sharing attribute specified in the DEFAULT_SHARING initialization parameter.

```sql
ALTER SYSTEM SET DEFAULT_SHARING=DATA SCOPE=BOTH;
```

**Example 17-14  Creating a Metadata-Linked Object**

This example creates the employees_md metadata-linked table by including the SHARING=METADATA clause. The application_name is salesapp and the application_version_number is 4.2, and the object is created during application installation.

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN INSTALL '4.2';
CREATE TABLE employees_md SHARING=METADATA
(employee_id NUMBER(6),
  first_name VARCHAR2(20),
  last_name VARCHAR2(25) CONSTRAINT emp_last_name_nn_demo NOT NULL,
  email VARCHAR2(25) CONSTRAINT emp_email_nn_demo NOT NULL,
  phone_number VARCHAR2(20),
  hire_date DATE DEFAULT SYSDATE
    CONSTRAINT emp_hire_date_nn_demo NOT NULL,
  job_id VARCHAR2(10) CONSTRAINT emp_job_nn_demo NOT NULL,
  salary NUMBER(8,2) CONSTRAINT emp_salary_nn_demo NOT NULL,
  commission_pct NUMBER(2,2),
  manager_id NUMBER(6),
  department_id NUMBER(4),
  dn VARCHAR2(300),
  CONSTRAINT emp_salary_min_demo CHECK (salary > 0),
  CONSTRAINT emp_email_uk_demo UNIQUE (email));
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END INSTALL '4.2';
```

**Example 17-15  Creating a Data-Linked Object**

This example creates the product_descriptions_ob data-linked table by including the SHARING=DATA clause. The application_name is salesapp and the application_version_number is 4.2, and the object is created during application installation.

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN INSTALL '4.2';
CREATE TABLE product_descriptions_ob SHARING=DATA (
  product_id             NUMBER(6),
  language_id            VARCHAR2(3),
  translated_name        NVARCHAR2(50) CONSTRAINT translated_name_nn NOT NULL,
  translated_description NVARCHAR2(2000)
);
Example 17-16  Creating an Extended Data-Linked Object

This example creates the \texttt{postalcodes} extended data-linked table by including the \texttt{EXTENDED} keyword and the \texttt{SHARING} clause. The \texttt{application\_name} is \texttt{salesapp} and the \texttt{application\_version\_number} is 4.2, and the object is created during application installation.

\begin{verbatim}
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN INSTALL '4.2';
CREATE TABLE postalcodes SHARING=EXTENDED DATA
    (code    VARCHAR2(7),
     country_id  NUMBER,
     place_name  VARCHAR2(20));
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END INSTALL '4.2';
\end{verbatim}

Example 17-17  Creating an Object That Is Not Shared in an Application Root

This example creates the \texttt{departments\_ns} table and specifies that it is not a shared common application object by including the \texttt{SHARING=NONE} clause. After creation, this database object can be accessed only in the application root.

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE departments\_ns SHARING=NONE
    (department_id    NUMBER(4),
     department_name  VARCHAR2(30) CONSTRAINT dept_name_nn  NOT NULL,
     manager_id       NUMBER(6),
     location_id      NUMBER(4),
     dn               VARCHAR2(300));
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Note:}

The \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN} and \texttt{END} statements are not required when you create an object that is not a shared common object. However, if you create an object that is not shared in between \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN} and \texttt{END} statements, then the object is created in application PDBs that synchronize with the application.

Related Topics

- Managing Applications in an Application Container
  You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

- Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

17.4.4 Issuing DML Statements on Application Common Objects

The rules are different for issuing DML statements on metadata-linked, data-linked, and extended data-linked application common objects.
Related Topics

• Managing Applications in an Application Container
  You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

• Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the
  latest version and patch in the application root.

• Synchronizing an Application Root Replica with a Proxy PDB
  When application containers in different CDBs have the same application, their
  application roots can be kept synchronized by creating a master application root, a
  replica application root, and a proxy PDB.

17.4.4.1 Issuing DML on Metadata-Linked Common Objects

You can issue DML on metadata-linked application objects as normal.

For metadata-linked application common objects, the object definitions are the same in
all application PDBs, but the data is different. Users and applications can issue DML
statements on these objects in the same way as for ordinary database objects. The
DML only affects the current container.

17.4.4.1.1 Querying Using the CONTAINERS Clause

For metadata-linked objects, the CONTAINERS clause enables you to query a table or
view across all PDBs in an application container.

For metadata-linked objects, the CONTAINERS clause is useful when DML is run in the
application root. The query performs a UNION ALL, returning all rows from the object in
the root and all open application PDBs (except those in RESTRICTED mode).

To query a subset of the PDBs, specify the CON_ID or CON$NAME in predicate. If the
queried table or view does not already contain a CON_ID column, then the query adds a
CON_ID column to the query result, which identifies the container whose data a given
row represents.

Prerequisites

Note the following prerequisites:

• To query data in an application container, you must be a common user connected
to the application root.

• The table or view must exist in the application root and all PDBs in the application
  container.

• The table or view must be in your own schema. It is not necessary to specify
  schema, but if you do, then you must specify your own schema.

To query a metadata-linked object in an application container:

1. Log in to the application root as an application common user.
2. Specify the CONTAINERS clause in a SELECT statement.
For example, the following statement counts the number of rows in the `sh.customers` table in the root and every application PDB (sample output included):

```sql
SELECT c.CON_ID, COUNT(*)
FROM CONTAINERS(sh.customers) c
GROUP BY c.CON_ID
ORDER BY 1;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>COUNT(*)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>20002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>7232</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17.4.4.1.2 Setting the Default Container or DML

You can set the `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` attribute on any metadata-linked object so that DML issued in the application root is wrapped in the `CONTAINERS` clause by default.

Set `ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` in either an `ALTER TABLE` or `ALTER VIEW` statement. The `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` column in the `DBA_TABLES` and `DBA_VIEWS` views shows whether the database object is enabled for the `CONTAINERS` clause by default.

**To set the default container for DML involving a metadata-linked table or view:**

1. Log in to the application root as an application common user.
2. Issue an `ALTER TABLE` or `ALTER VIEW` statement with the `ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` clause in the application root.

The following statement sets the default container for `sh.customers`:

```sql
ALTER TABLE sh.customers ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT;
```

After setting this attribute, queries and DML statements issued in the application root use the `CONTAINERS` clause by default for `sh.customers`.

### 17.4.4.2 Issuing DML on Data-Linked Common Objects

For data-linked application objects, issue DML as normal in the application root. For extended data-linked application objects, issue DML as normal in the application root and in application PDBs.

For data-linked application objects, DML in the application root affects the data accessible by all PDBs in the application container. You cannot issue DML on data-linked application objects in application PDBs.

For extended data-linked application objects, DML in the application root affects the data accessible by all PDBs in the application container. DML in an application PDB only affects data that is unique to the application PDB.

Consider an application root that has data-linked or extended data-linked objects. Also, assume that this root is the master for application root replicas synchronized with proxy PDBs. In this case, DML only synchronizes with the replicas when DML occurs during an application installation, upgrade, or patch. Specifically, DML must occur in
the root between ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... (BEGIN|END) statements. Other DML applies only to the current root and is not synchronized with root replicas.

To issue DML for an application common object that is not part of an application root replica configuration:
1. Connect to the appropriate container in the application container as a user with the privileges required to issue DML statements on the database object.
2. Issue DML statements normally.

To issue DML for a data-linked or extended data-linked object that is part of an application root replica configuration:
1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the master application root in the application root replica in the configuration.
   The current user must have the privileges required to issue the DML statements on the database object.
2. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... BEGIN statement for beginning an application installation, upgrade, or patch.
   If you are modifying the application common object as part of an application upgrade, then issue the upgrade statement in the following form:

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name BEGIN UPGRADE 'application_start_version_number' TO 'application_end_version_number';

   For example, run the following statement if the application_name is salesapp, the application_start_version_number is 4.2, and the application_end_version_number is 4.3:

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN UPGRADE '4.2' TO '4.3';

3. Issue the DML statements on the data-linked application common object.
4. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION ... END statement.
   For example, if you are modifying the application common object as part of an application upgrade, then run the statement in the following form:

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name END UPGRADE TO 'application_end_version_number';

   For example, run the following statement if the application_name is salesapp, the application_start_version_number is 4.2, and the application_end_version_number is 4.3:

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END UPGRADE TO '4.3';
5. To synchronize all application PDBs that must apply these changes, issue an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement with the SYNC clause when the application PDB is the current container.

17.4.5 Modifying Application Common Objects with DDL Statements

When you modify an application common object in an application root with certain DDL statements, you must modify the object between ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN and ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END statements, and application PDBs must synchronize with the application to apply the changes.

You can alter a metadata-linked object or a data-linked object in an application root. You run an ALTER, RENAME, or DROP SQL statement on the database object to perform a DDL change.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
   The current user must have the privileges required to make the planned changes to the database object.

2. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN statement for beginning an application installation, upgrade, or patch.

   For example, if you are modifying the application common object as part of an application upgrade, then run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UPGRADE statement in the following form:

   \[
   \text{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name BEGIN UPGRADE 'application_start_version_number' TO 'application_end_version_number';}
   \]

   For example, run the following statement if the \text{application_name} is \text{salesapp}, the \text{application_start_version_number} is 4.2, and the \text{application_end_version_number} is 4.3:

   \[
   \text{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN UPGRADE '4.2' TO '4.3';}
   \]

3. Modify the application common object with the DDL statement.

   For example, an ALTER TABLE statement might add a column to a table.

4. Run the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END statement for ending an application installation, upgrade, or patch.
For example, if you are modifying the application common object as part of an application upgrade, then run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UPGRADE` statement in the following form:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name END UPGRADE
   TO 'application_end_version_number';
```

For example, run the following statement if the `application_name` is `salesapp` and the `application_end_version_number` is `4.3`:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END UPGRADE TO '4.3';
```

**Note:**

Ensure that the `application_name` and `application_end_version_number` match in the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN UPGRADE` statement and the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END UPGRADE` statement.

5. Synchronize all of the application PDBs that must apply these changes by issuing an `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statement with the `SYNC` clause with the application PDB as the current container.

**Related Topics**

- Managing Applications in an Application Container
  
  You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

- Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB

  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

### 17.5 Issuing DML Statements on Containers in an Application Container

A DML statement issued in an application root can modify one or more containers in the application container. In addition, you can specify one or more default container targets for DML statements.

**17.5.1 About Issuing DML Statements on Containers in an Application Container**

DML statements can affect database objects in more than one container in an application container.

In an application root, a single DML statement that includes the `CONTAINERS` clause can modify a table or view in one or more containers in the application container. To use the `CONTAINERS` clause, specify the table or view being modified in the `CONTAINERS` clause and the containers in the `WHERE` clause. A target container can be specified in an `INSERT VALUES` statement by specifying a value for `CON_ID` in the `VALUES` clause. Also, a target container can be specified in an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement by specifying a `CON_ID` predicate in the `WHERE` clause.
For example, the following DML statement updates the `sales.customers` table in the
containers with a `CON_ID` of 7 or 8:

```sql
UPDATE CONTAINERS(sales.customers) ctab
SET ctab.city_name='MIAMI'
WHERE ctab.CON_ID IN(7,8) AND
CUSTOMER_ID=3425;
```

The values specified for the `CON_ID` in the `WHERE` clause must be for containers in the
current application container.

You can specify default target containers for DML operations. If a DML statement does
not specify values for the `CON_ID` in the `WHERE` clause, then the target containers of the
DML operation are those specified in the database property
`CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET` in the application root. When issued in an application
root, the following DML statement modifies the default target containers for the
application container:

```sql
UPDATE CONTAINERS(sales.customers) ctab
SET ctab.city_name='MIAMI'
WHERE CUSTOMER_ID=3425;
```

By default, the default target containers in an application container include all of its
application PDBs but not its application root or application seed. You can determine
the default target containers for an application container by running the following
query:

```sql
SELECT PROPERTY_VALUE
FROM DATABASE_PROPERTIES
WHERE PROPERTY_NAME='CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET';
```

In addition, you can enable the `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` attribute for a table or view in an
application root. When this attribute is enabled, the `CONTAINERS` clause is used for
queries and DML statements on the database object by default, and the `CONTAINERS`
clause does not need to be specified in the SQL statements. To enable the
`CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` attribute for a table or view in an application root, run the an
`ALTER TABLE` or `ALTER VIEW` statement with the `ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` clause.

The following restrictions apply to the `CONTAINERS` clause:

- The `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET` clause does not affect `SELECT` statements.
- `INSERT` as `SELECT` statements where the target of the `INSERT` is in `CONTAINERS()` is
  not supported.
- A multitable `INSERT` statement where the target of the `INSERT` is in `CONTAINERS()` is
  not supported.
- DML statements using the `CONTAINERS` clause require that the database listener is
  configured using TCP (instead of IPC) and that the `PORT` and `HOST` values are
  specified for each target PDB using the `PORT` and `HOST` clauses, respectively.
17.5.2 Specifying the Default Container for DML Statements in an Application Container

To specify the default container for DML statements in an application container, issue the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET` clause.

When a DML statement is issued in an application root without specifying containers in the `WHERE` clause, the DML statement affects the default container for the application container. The default container can be any container in the application container, including the application root or an application PDB. Only one default container is allowed.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
   The current user must have the commonly granted `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` privilege.

2. Run the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE` statement with the `CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET` clause.

Example 17-18 Specifying the Default Container for DML Statements in an Application Container

This example specifies that `APDB1` is the default container for DML statements in the application container.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET = (APDB1);
```

Example 17-19 Clearing the Default Container

This example clears the default container setting. When it is not set, the default container is the application root.

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE CONTAINERS DEFAULT TARGET = NONE;
```

17.6 Partitioning by PDB with Container Maps

Container maps enable the partitioning of data at the application PDB level when the data is not physically partitioned at the table level.

17.6.1 About Container Maps

A `container map` is a database property that specifies a partitioned map table defined in an application root.

Use a container map to partition the data in metadata-linked objects. Container maps partition data in application PDBs based on a commonly-used column.
For example, you might create a metadata-linked table named `countries_mlt` (with a column `cname`) that stores different data in each application PDB. The map table named `pdb_map_tbl` partitions by list on the `cname` column. The partitions `amer_pdb`, `euro_pdb`, and `asia_pdb` correspond to the names of the application PDBs.

A container map can define a logical partition key on a column for a common object. Because the container is resolved internally based on the container map, this mapping removes the requirement to define a query with a `CON_ID` predicate or use the `CONTAINERS` clause in the query.

Some types of row-based consolidation use a tenant ID with a single PDB that contains multiple tenants. Container maps are useful for migrating to a configuration that uses a different PDB for each tenant.

### 17.6.1.1 Map Objects

The **map object** is the partitioned table.

The names of the partitions in the map table match the names of the application PDBs in the application container. The metadata-linked object is not physically partitioned at the table level, but it can be queried using the partitioning strategy used by the container map.

To associate the map table with the metadata-linked table, specify the map table in `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... CONTAINER_MAP` while connected to the application root. You can create no more than one container map in an application container. You cannot create container maps in the CDB root.

**Note:**

- Data must be loaded into the PDB tables in a manner that is consistent with the partitions defined in map object.
- When there are changes to the application PDBs in an application container, the map object is not synchronized automatically to account for these changes. For example, an application PDB that is referenced in a map object can be unplugged, renamed, or dropped. The map object must be updated manually to account for such changes.

Starting in Oracle Database 18c, for a `CONTAINERS()` query to use a map, the partitioning column in the map table does not need to match a column in the metadata-linked table. Assume that the table `sh.sales` is enabled for the container map `pdb_map_tbl`, and `cname` is the partitioning column for the map table. Even though `sh.sales` does not include a `cname` column, the map table routes the following query to the appropriate PDB:

```sql
SELECT * FROM CONTAINERS(sh.sales) WHERE cname = 'US'
ORDER BY time_id;
```

### 17.6.1.2 List-Partitioned Container Map: Example

This example uses a container map to route queries to PDBs that store data for a geographical region.
The following illustration of an application root shows a map object, a metadata-linked table, and a query on the metadata-linked table. The query is executed in the appropriate application PDB.

**Figure 17-3  Container Map**

The illustration shows an application container with three application PDBs named AMER, EURO, and ASIA. The PDBs store data for the corresponding regions. A metadata-linked table named oe.cmtb stores information for an application. This table has a COUNTRY column. For this partitioning strategy, partition by list is used to create a map object that creates a partition for each region. The country value, which is GERMANY in the query shown in the illustration, determines the region, which is EURO.

**See Also:**
"Creating a Container Map" for a detailed description of this example
17.6.1.3 Range-Partitioned Container Map: Example

This example uses a container map to route queries to PDBs that store data for a particular department.

Consider another example that uses a range-partitioned table for the map object. The following SQL statement creates the map object in the application root:

```sql
CREATE TABLE app_con_admin.conmap (
    department_id NUMBER NOT NULL)
PARTITION BY RANGE (department_id) (
    PARTITION apppdb1 VALUES LESS THAN (100),
    PARTITION apppdb2 VALUES LESS THAN (200),
    PARTITION apppdb3 VALUES LESS THAN (300));
```

This map object partitions data in the application PDBs apppdb1, apppdb2, and apppdb3 based on the commonly-used column department_id. The following SQL statement sets the CONTAINER_MAP database property to the app_con_admin.conmap table in the application root:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SET CONTAINER_MAP='app_con_admin.conmap';
```

Queries that use container maps produce similar results to queries that use the CONTAINERS clause. For example, the following queries return similar results:

```sql
SELECT employee_id
FROM   CONTAINERS(hr.employees)
WHERE  department_id = 10
AND    CON_ID IN (44);
```

```sql
SELECT employee_id
FROM   hr.employees
WHERE  department_id = 10;
```

As shown in the first query with the CONTAINERS clause, when the query only pertains to a single application PDB, the query must specify the container ID of this application PDB in the WHERE clause. This requirement might cause application changes.

The second query uses the container map, replacing the CONTAINERS clause. The second query does not specify the container because the container map directs the query to the correct application PDB. Queries that use container maps are generally more efficient than queries that use the CONTAINERS clause.

The container map must be created by a common user with ALTER DATABASE system privilege. Queries run against an object that is enabled for container map. Query privileges are determined by privileges granted on the object.
17.6.2 Creating a Container Map

Create a container map by creating a map object and setting the \texttt{CONTAINER\_MAP} database property to the map object.

The map object is a partitioned table in which each partition name matches the name of an application PDB in an application container.

Prerequisites

To create a container map, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- Before creating a container map, an application container with application PDBs must exist in the CDB.
- The application container must have at least one application installed in it.

To create a container map:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Set the \texttt{CONTAINER\_MAP} database property to the map object.

   In the following statement, replace \texttt{map\_table\_schema} with the owner of the table, and \texttt{map\_table\_name} with the name of the table:

   \begin{verbatim}
   ALTER DATABASE SET CONTAINER\_MAP = \textquoteleft\textquoteleft map\_table\_schema.map\_table\_name\textquoteright;
   \end{verbatim}

3. Start an application installation, upgrade, or patch.
4. If the metadata-linked table that will be used by the container map does not exist, then create it.
5. Enable the container map for the table to be queried by issuing an \texttt{ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE CONTAINER\_MAP} statement.
6. Ensure that the table to be queried is enabled for the \texttt{CONTAINERS} clause by issuing an \texttt{ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE CONTAINERS\_DEFAULT} statement.
7. End the application installation, upgrade, or patch started previously.

Example 17-20 Creating and Using a Container Map

This example creates a simple application that uses a container map. Assume that an application container has three application PDBs named \texttt{AMER}, \texttt{EURO}, and \texttt{ASIA}. The application PDBs store data for the different regions (America, Europe, and Asia, respectively). A metadata-linked table stores information for an application and has a \texttt{COUNTRY} column. For this partitioning strategy, partition by list is used to create a map object that creates a partition for each region, and the country value is used to determine the region.

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the application root.
2. Create the map object.

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE TABLE salesadm.conmap (country VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL)
PARTITION BY LIST (country) {
    PARTITION AMER VALUES ('US','MEXICO','CANADA'),
    PARTITION EURO VALUES ('UK','FRANCE','GERMANY'),
\end{verbatim}
3. Set the CONTAINER_MAP database property to the map object.

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SET CONTAINER_MAP='salesadm.conmap';

4. Begin an application installation.

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp BEGIN INSTALL '1.0';

5. Create a metadata-linked table that will be queried using the container map.

   CREATE TABLE oe.cmtb SHARING=METADATA {
       value VARCHAR2(30),
       country VARCHAR2(30));

6. Enable the container map for the table to be queried.

   ALTER TABLE oe.cmtb ENABLE CONTAINER_MAP;

7. Ensure that the table to be queried is enabled for the CONTAINERS clause.

   ALTER TABLE oe.cmtb ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT;

8. End the application installation.

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp END INSTALL '1.0';

9. Switch session into each application PDB and synchronize it.

   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=amer;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp SYNC;

   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=euro;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp SYNC;

   ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=asia;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION salesapp SYNC;

10. Insert values into the oe.cmtb table in each application PDB based on the partitioning strategy.

    ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=amer;
    INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('AMER VALUE','US');
    INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('AMER VALUE','MEXICO');
    INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('AMER VALUE','CANADA');
    COMMIT;

    ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=euro;
    INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('EURO VALUE','UK');
    INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('EURO VALUE','FRANCE');
    INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('EURO VALUE','GERMANY');
    COMMIT;
ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=asia;
INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('ASIA VALUE', 'INDIA');
INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('ASIA VALUE', 'CHINA');
INSERT INTO oe.cmtb VALUES ('ASIA VALUE', 'JAPAN');
COMMIT;

11. Switch session into the application root and query the data using the container map.

ALTER SESSION SET CONTAINER=sales;
SELECT value FROM oe.cmtb WHERE country='MEXICO';
SELECT value FROM oe.cmtb WHERE country='GERMANY';
SELECT value FROM oe.cmtb WHERE country='JAPAN';

The output for the first query should be AMER VALUE, the output for the second query should be EURO VALUE, and the output for the third query should be ASIA VALUE. These values illustrate that the container map is working correctly.
Monitoring CDBs and PDBs

You can view information about CDBs and PDBs using SQL*Plus or SQL Developer.

Related Topics

• Tools for a Multitenant Environment
  You can use various tools to configure and administer a multitenant environment.

18.1 About CDB and Container Information in Views

In a CDB, the metadata for data dictionary tables and view definitions is stored only in the root.

Each container, including each PDB, application root, and application PDB, has its own set of data dictionary tables and views for the objects contained in the container. Because each container can contain different data and schema objects, containers can display different metadata in data dictionary views, even when querying the same view in each container. For example, metadata about tables displayed in the DBA_TABLES view can be different in two different containers because the containers can contain different tables. An internal mechanism called a metadata link enables a container to access the metadata for these views in the root.

If a dictionary table stores information that pertains to the whole CDB, instead of for each container, then the metadata and the data displayed in a data dictionary view are stored in the root. For example, Automatic Workload Repository (AWR) data can be stored in the root, and this data is displayed in some data dictionary views, such as the DBA_HIST_ACTIVE_SESS_HISTORY view. An internal mechanism called a data link enables a container to access both the metadata and the data for these types of views in the root.

See Also:

"Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB" for more information about dictionary access in containers, metadata links, and data links

18.1.1 About Viewing Information When the Current Container Is Not the CDB Root

When the current container is a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB, the data dictionary views show metadata for the current container only.

Also, in a container that is not the CDB root, CDB_ views only show information about database objects visible through the corresponding DBA_ view.
18.1.2 About Viewing Information When the Current Container Is the CDB Root

When the current container is the CDB root, a common user can view data dictionary information for the CDB root and for PDBs, application roots, and application PDBs by querying container data objects.

A container data object is a table or view that can contain data pertaining to the following:

- One or more containers
- The CDB as a whole
- One or more containers and the CDB as a whole

Container data objects include `V$`, `GV$`, `CDB_`, and some Automatic Workload Repository `DBA_HIST*` views. A common user's `CONTAINER_DATA` attribute determines which containers are visible in container data objects.

In a CDB, for every `DBA_` view, there is a corresponding `CDB_` view. All `CDB_` views are container data objects, but most `DBA_` views are not.

Each container data object contains a `CON_ID` column that identifies the container for each row returned. Table 18-1 describes the meanings of the values in the `CON_ID` column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value in CON_ID Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>The data pertains to the entire CDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The data pertains to the CDB root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The data pertains to the PDB seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 - 4,098</td>
<td>The data pertains to a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Each container has its own container ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following views behave differently from other `GV$` views:

- `GV$SYSSTAT`
- `GV$SYS_TIME_MODEL`
- `GV$SYSTEM_EVENT`
- `GV$SYSTEM_WAIT_CLASS`

When queried from the CDB root, these views return instance-wide data, with 0 in the `CON_ID` column for each row returned. However, you can query equivalent views that behave the same as other container data objects. The following views can return specific data for each container in a CDB: `GV$CON_SYSSTAT`, `GV$CON_SYS_TIME_MODEL`, `GV$CON_SYSTEM_EVENT`, and `GV$CON_SYSTEM_WAIT_CLASS`. 

---

Table 18-1   CON_ID Column in Container Data Objects

The following views behave differently from other `GV$` views:

- `GV$SYSSTAT`
- `GV$SYS_TIME_MODEL`
- `GV$SYSTEM_EVENT`
- `GV$SYSTEM_WAIT_CLASS`

When queried from the CDB root, these views return instance-wide data, with 0 in the `CON_ID` column for each row returned. However, you can query equivalent views that behave the same as other container data objects. The following views can return specific data for each container in a CDB: `GV$CON_SYSSTAT`, `GV$CON_SYS_TIME_MODEL`, `GV$CON_SYSTEM_EVENT`, and `GV$CON_SYSTEM_WAIT_CLASS`. 

---

ORACLE
Note:

- When querying a container data object, the data returned depends on whether containers are open and on the privileges granted to the user running the query.
- In an Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, the data returned by container data objects might vary based on the instance to which a session is connected.
- When a container is opened in restricted mode, it is ignored in queries on CDB_ views.

See Also:

- "About the Current Container"
- "Container Data Objects in a CDB"
- Oracle Database Security Guide for detailed information about container data objects

18.1.3 Views for a CDB

You can query a set of views for information about a CDB and its PDBs. Table 18-2 describes data dictionary views that are useful for monitoring a CDB and its PDBs.

Table 18-2 Views for a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>More Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Container data objects, including:</td>
<td>Container data objects can display information about multiple PDBs. Each container data object includes a CON_ID column to identify containers. There is a CDB_ view for each corresponding DBA_ view.</td>
<td>&quot;Querying Container Data Objects&quot; Oracle Database Security Guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V$ views</td>
<td>Displays information about the PDBs associated with the CDB, including the status of each PDB.</td>
<td>&quot;Viewing Information About PDBs&quot; Oracle Database Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GV$ views</td>
<td>Displays the permanent properties of each container in a CDB.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDB_ views</td>
<td>Displays the history of each PDB.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_CONTAINER_DATA</td>
<td>Displays information about the user-level and object-level CONTAINER_DATA attributes specified in the CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>More Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_HIST_PDB_INSTANCE`</td>
<td>Displays the PDBs and instances in the Workload Repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_PDB_SAVED_STATES`</td>
<td>Displays information about the current saved PDB states in the CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_APPLICATIONS`</td>
<td>Describes all applications in an application container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_APP_STATEMENTS`</td>
<td>Describes all statements from application installation, upgrade, and patch operations in an application container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_APP_PATCHES`</td>
<td>Describes all application patches in an application container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_APP_ERRORS`</td>
<td>Describes all application error messages generated in an application container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_CDB_RSRCPlans`</td>
<td>Displays information about all the CDB resource plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{CDB</td>
<td>DBA}_CDB_RSRC_PLAN_DIRECTIVES`</td>
<td>Displays information about all the CDB resource plan directives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>PDB_ALERTS</code></td>
<td>Contains descriptions of reasons for PDB alerts.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS</code></td>
<td>Displays information about incompatibilities between a PDB and the CDB to which it belongs. This view is also used to display information generated by executing <code>DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY</code>.</td>
<td>Oracle Database Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
<td>CDB}_SERVICES`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 18-2  (Cont.) Views for a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>More Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
<td>CDB}_DIRECTORIES`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`{USER</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>DBA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[G]V$DATABASE</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[G]V$CONTAINERS</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[G]V$PDBS</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>[G]V$PDB_INCARNATION</code></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18.2 Viewing Information About the Containers in a CDB

The \texttt{V$CONTAINERS} view provides information about all containers in a CDB, including the root and all PDBs.

To view this information, the query must be run by a common user whose current container is the root. When the current container is a PDB, this view only shows information about the current PDB.

To view information about the containers in a CDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the \texttt{V$CONTAINERS} view.

\textbf{Example 18-1} Viewing Identifying Information About Each Container in a CDB

\begin{verbatim}
COLUMN NAME FORMAT A8
SELECT NAME, CON_ID, DBID, CON_UID, GUID FROM V$CONTAINERS ORDER BY CON_ID;
\end{verbatim}

Sample output:

\begin{verbatim}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>DBID</th>
<th>CON_UID</th>
<th>GUID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>659189539</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>C091A6F89C7572A1E0436797E40AC78D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4026479912</td>
<td>4026479912</td>
<td>C091AE9C0377591E0436797E40AC138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3718888687</td>
<td>3718888687</td>
<td>C091B63B53E7834E0436797E40A9040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2228741407</td>
<td>2228741407</td>
<td>C091FA64EF8F0577E0436797E40ABE9F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\end{verbatim}
18.3 Viewing Information About PDBs

The **CDB_PDBS** view and **DBA_PDBS** view provide information about the PDBs associated with a CDB, including the status of each PDB.

To view this information, the query must be run by a common user whose current container is the root. When the current container is a PDB, all queries on these views return no results.

To view information about PDBs:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   
   See "Accessing a Container in a CDB with SQL*Plus".

2. Query the **CDB_PDBS** or **DBA_PDBS** view.

Example 18-2  Viewing Container ID, Name, and Status of Each PDB

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A15

SELECT PDB_ID, PDB_NAME, STATUS FROM DBA_PDBS ORDER BY PDB_ID;
```

Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PDB_ID</th>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
<td>NORMAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>NORMAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>NORMAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.4 Viewing the Open Mode of Each PDB

The **V$PDBS** view provides information about the PDBs associated with the current database instance.

You can query this view to determine the open mode of each PDB. For each PDB that is open, this view can also show when the PDB was last opened. A common user can query this view when the current container is the root or a PDB. When the current container is a PDB, this view only shows information about the current PDB.
To view the open status of each PDB:

1. In SQL*Plus, access a container.
   
   See "Accessing a Container in a CDB with SQL*Plus".

2. Query the V$PDBS view.

**Example 18-3  Viewing the Name and Open Mode of Each PDB**

```sql
SELECT NAME, OPEN_MODE, RESTRICTED, OPEN_TIME FROM V$PDBS;
```

Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>OPEN_MODE</th>
<th>RESTRICTED</th>
<th>OPEN_TIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
<td>READ ONLY</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>21-MAY-12 12.19.54.465 PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>READ WRITE</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>21-MAY-12 12.34.05.078 PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>MOUNTED</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>22-MAY-12 10.37.20.534 AM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**See Also:**

- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs with ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE"
- "Modifying the Open Mode of PDBs"
- "Modifying a PDB with the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE Statement"
- "About the Current Container"

### 18.5 Querying Container Data Objects

In the root, container data objects can show information about database objects (such as tables and users) contained in the root and in PDBs. Access to PDB information is controlled by the common user's CONTAINER_DATA attribute.

For example, CDB_ views are container data objects. See "About Viewing Information When the Current Container Is the CDB Root" and Oracle Database Security Guide for more information about container data objects.

Each container data object contains a CON_ID column that shows the container ID of each PDB in the query results. You can view the PDB name for a container ID by querying the DBA_PDBS view.

To use container data objects to show information about multiple PDBs:

1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the container data object to show the desired information.
Note:

When a query contains a join of a container data object and a non-container data object, and the current container is the root, the query returns data for the entire CDB only ($CON_ID = 0$).

Example 18-4  Showing the Tables Owned by Specific Schemas in Multiple PDBs

This example queries the DBA_PDBS view and the CDB_TABLES view from the root to show the tables owned by hr user and oe user in the PDBs associated with the CDB. This query returns only rows where the PDB has an ID greater than 2 ($p.PDB_ID > 2$) to avoid showing the users in the CDB root and PDB seed.

```
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN OWNER FORMAT A15
COLUMN TABLE_NAME FORMAT A30

SELECT p.PDB_ID, p.PDB_NAME, t.OWNER, t.TABLE_NAME
FROM DBA_PDBS p, CDB_TABLES t
WHERE p.PDB_ID > 2 AND
   t.OWNER IN('HR','OE') AND
   p.PDB_ID = t.CON_ID
ORDER BY p.PDB_ID;
```

Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PDB_ID</th>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>OWNER</th>
<th>TABLE_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>COUNTRIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>JOB_HISTORY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>EMPLOYEES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>JOBS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>DEPARTMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>LOCATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
<td>REGIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>PRODUCT_INFORMATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>INVENTORIES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>ORDERS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>ORDER_ITEMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>WAREHOUSES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>CUSTOMERS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>SUBCATEGORY_REF_LIST_NESTEDTAB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>PRODUCT_REF_LIST_NESTEDTAB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>PROMOTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
<td>PRODUCT_DESCRIPTIONS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This sample output shows the PDB hrpdb has tables in the hr schema and the PDB salespdb has tables in the oe schema.
Example 18-5  Showing the Users in Multiple PDBs

This example queries the DBA_PDBS view and the CDB_USERS view from the root to show the users in each PDB. The query uses p.PDB_ID > 2 to avoid showing the users in the CDB root and the PDB seed.

COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN USERNAME FORMAT A30

SELECT p.PDB_ID, p.PDB_NAME, u.USERNAME
FROM DBA_PDBS p, CDB_USERS u
WHERE p.PDB_ID > 2 AND p.PDB_ID = u.CON_ID
ORDER BY p.PDB_ID;

Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PDB_ID</th>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>USERNAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>HR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>OLAPSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>MDSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>ORDSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>CTXSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>MDSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>EXFSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>OLAPSYS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 18-6  Showing the Data Files for Each PDB in a CDB

This example queries the DBA_PDBS and CDB_DATA_FILES views to show the name and location of each data file for all of the PDBs in a CDB, including the PDB seed.

COLUMN PID FORMAT 999
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A8
COLUMN FILE_ID FORMAT 9999
COLUMN TABLESPACE_NAME FORMAT A10
COLUMN FILE_NAME FORMAT A45

SELECT p.PDB_ID AS PID, p.PDB_NAME, d.FILE_ID, d.TABLESPACE_NAME, d.FILE_NAME
FROM DBA_PDBS p, CDB_DATA_FILES d
WHERE p.PDB_ID = d.CON_ID
ORDER BY p.PDB_ID;
Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PID</th>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>FILE_ID</th>
<th>TABLESPACE</th>
<th>FILE_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>SYSAUX</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/cdb1_ax.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>SYSTEM</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/cdb1_db.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>SYSAUX</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/hrpdb/hrpdb_ax.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>SYSTEM</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/hrpdb/hrpdb_db.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>USER</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/hrpdb/hrpdb_usr.dbf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>SYSTEM</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/salespdb_db.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>SYSAUX</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/salespdb_ax.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>USER</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/salespdb_usr.dbf</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 18-7  Showing the Temp Files in a CDB**

This example queries the `CDB_TEMP_FILES` view to show the name and location of each temp file in a CDB, as well as the tablespace that uses the temp file.

```sql
COLUMN CON_ID FORMAT 999
COLUMN FILE_ID FORMAT 9999
COLUMN TABLESPACE_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN FILE_NAME FORMAT A45

SELECT CON_ID, FILE_ID, TABLESPACE_NAME, FILE_NAME
FROM CDB_TEMP_FILES
ORDER BY CON_ID;
```

Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>FILE_ID</th>
<th>TABLESPACE_NAME</th>
<th>FILE_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>TEMP</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/t_tmp1.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>TEMP</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/pdbseed/t_tmp1.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>TEMP</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/hrpdb/hrpdb_tmp1.f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>TEMP</td>
<td>/disk1/oracle/dbs/salespdb/t_salespdb_tmp1.f</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 18-8  Showing the Services Associated with PDBs**

This example queries the `CDB_SERVICES` view to show the PDB name, network name, and container ID of each service associated with a PDB.

```sql
COLUMN NETWORK_NAME FORMAT A30
COLUMN PDB FORMAT A15
COLUMN CON_ID FORMAT 999

SELECT PDB, NETWORK_NAME, CON_ID FROM CDB_SERVICES
WHERE PDB IS NOT NULL AND
CON_ID > 2
ORDER BY PDB;
```
18.6 Querying Across Containers with the CONTAINERS Clause

The CONTAINERS clause enables you to query tables and views across all containers in a CDB. It also enables you to query application common objects across all containers in an application container.

18.6.1 About Querying Across Containers with the CONTAINERS Clause

The CONTAINERS clause enables you to query across containers in a CDB.

The CONTAINERS clause enables you to query user-created tables and views across all containers in a CDB. This clause enables queries from the CDB root to display data in tables or views that exist in all open containers in a CDB.

The CONTAINERS clause also enables you to query application common objects, such as tables and views, across all application PDBs in an application container. This clause enables queries from the application root to display data in tables or views that exist in all open application PDBs in the application container.

The CONTAINERS_PARALLEL_DEGREE initialization parameter can control the degree of parallelism of a query involving the CONTAINERS clause. If the value of CONTAINERS_PARALLEL_DEGREE is lower than 65535 (the default), then the specified value is used.

When the CONTAINERS_PARALLEL_DEGREE initialization parameter is set to the default value (65535), queries that use the CONTAINERS clause are parallel by default. The default degree of parallelism is calculated with the following formula:

\[
\text{max}(\min(\text{cpu\_count}, \text{number\_of\_open\_containers}), \#\text{instances})
\]
In addition, you can pass a `DEFAULT_PDB_HINT` hint in the `CONTAINERS` clause. The hint is passed in the query that is run in each container.

You can force the recursive SQL that results from a query that includes the `CONTAINERS` clause to be parallel by using the `DEFAULT_PDB_HINT` clause of a `CONTAINERS` hint or by using automatic degree of parallelism. However, parallel statement queuing is not possible for recursive SQL that results from a query that includes the `CONTAINERS` clause.

Columns of the following types are removed if they exist in a table specified in a `CONTAINERS` clause:

- The following user-defined types: object types, varrays, REFs, and nested tables
- The following Oracle-supplied types: `ANYTYPE`, `ANYDATASET`, URI types, `SDO_TOPO_GEOMETRY`, `SDO_GEOGRASTER`, and `Expression`

**Note:**

- When a container is opened in restricted mode, it is ignored by the `CONTAINERS` clause.
- When the `CONTAINERS` clause is used and an error is returned by a container, the query does not return results from the container that raised the error, and the error is not returned. For example, you cannot select a `BFILE` column from a remote table into a local variable. If a query that does this uses the `CONTAINERS` clause and includes local and remote containers, then the query returns results for the local containers, but not the remote containers, and no error is returned.

**See Also:**

- “About the Current Container”
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about the `CONTAINERS` clause and the `CONTAINERS` hint
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* for detailed information about container data objects
- *Oracle Database Reference* for more information about the `CONTAINERS_PARALLEL_DEGREE` initialization parameter
- *Oracle Database Data Warehousing Guide* for more information about automatic degree of parallelism and parallel statement queuing
18.6.2 Querying User-Created Tables and Views Across All Containers

The `CONTAINERS` clause enables you to query user-created tables and views across all containers. This clause enables queries from the CDB root to display data in tables or views that exist in all open PDBs in a CDB.

Prerequisites

The tables and views, or synonyms of them, specified in the `CONTAINERS` clause must exist in the CDB root and in all other containers.

To use the `CONTAINERS` clause to query tables and views across all containers:

1. In SQL*Plus, access a container.
   - To view data in multiple containers, ensure that the current container is the CDB root.
   - See "About Container Access in a CDB".
2. Run a query that includes the `CONTAINERS` clause.

Example 18-9    Querying a Table Owned by a Common User Across All Containers

This example makes the following assumptions:

- An organization has several PDBs, and each PDB is for a different department in the organization.
- Each PDB has an `employees` table that tracks the employees in the department, but the table in each PDB contains different employees.
- The CDB root also has an empty `employees` table.
- The `employees` table in each container is owned by the same common user.

With the CDB root as the current container and the common user that owns the table as the current user, run the following query with the `CONTAINERS` clause to return all employees in the `employees` table in all PDBs:

```sql
SELECT * FROM CONTAINERS(employees);
```

Example 18-10    Querying a Table Owned by Local Users Across All Containers

This example makes the following assumptions:

- An organization has several PDBs, and each PDB is for a different department in the organization.
- Each PDB has an `hr.employees` table that tracks the employees in the department, but the table in each PDB contains different employees.
- The CDB root also has an empty `employees` table owned by a common user.
To run a query that returns all employees in all PDBs, first connect to each PDB as a common user, and create a view with the following statement:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW employees AS SELECT * FROM hr.employees;
```

The common user that owns the view must be the same common user that owns the `employees` table in the CDB root. After you run this statement in each PDB, the common user has a view named `employees` in each PDB.

With the CDB root as the current container and the common user as the current user, run the following query with the `CONTAINERS` clause to return all employees in the `hr.employees` table in all PDBs:

```
SELECT * FROM CONTAINERS(employees);
```

You can also query the view in specific containers. For example, the following SQL statement queries the view in the containers with a `CON_ID` of 3 and 4:

```
SELECT * FROM CONTAINERS(employees) WHERE CON_ID IN(3,4);
```

**Note:**

You can also use the `CONTAINERS` clause to query Oracle-supplied tables and views. When running the query, ensure that the current user is the owner of the table or view, or create a view using the `CONTAINERS` clause and grant `SELECT` privilege on the view to the appropriate users.

**See Also:**

- "About the Current Container"
- "Container Data Objects in a CDB"
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for more information about the `CONTAINERS` clause
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* for detailed information about container data objects

### 18.6.3 Querying Application Common Objects Across Application PDBs

The `CONTAINERS` clause enables you to query application common objects across all PDBs in an application container. Queries from the application root display data in objects that exist in all open PDBs in the container.

The `CONTAINERS` clause is most useful for metadata-linked application common objects. With metadata-linked application common objects, the structure is the same in
all containers in an application container, but the data is different. You can use the `CONTAINERS` clause to view the data in a metadata-linked application common object in multiple application PDBs. The benefits are similar for extended data-linked objects. The `CONTAINERS` clause uses parallel execution to execute the query across the distinct application PDBs hosted in the application root.

To use the `CONTAINERS` clause to query tables and views across all application PDBs:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root. See "About Container Access in a CDB".
2. Run a query that includes the `CONTAINERS` clause.

**Note:**

You can enable the `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` attribute for a table or view in an application root. When this attribute is enabled, the `CONTAINERS` clause is used for queries and DML statements on the database object by default, and the `CONTAINERS` clause is not required in the SQL statements. To enable the `CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` attribute for a table or view in an application root, run the `ALTER TABLE` or `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` statement with the `ENABLE CONTAINERS_DEFAULT` clause.

**Example 18-11  Querying an Application Common Object Across All Application PDBs**

This example makes the following assumptions:

- An organization has several application PDBs, and each application PDB is for a different department in the organization.
- Each application PDB has an `employees` table that tracks the employees in the department, but the table in each application PDB contains different employees.
- The application root also has an empty `employees` table.
- The employees table in each container is owned by the same common user.
- A company has multiple tenants that use an application in an application container, and each tenant has its own application PDB.
- The company uses metadata-linked application common objects to keep the structure of the data the same in all application PDBs, but the data is different in each application PDB.
- Each application PDB has a metadata-linked `sales.customers` table that stores information about each tenant's customers.

With the application root as the current container and the application common user that owns the table as the current user, run the following query with the `CONTAINERS` clause to return all customers in the `sales.customers` table in all application PDBs:

```
SELECT * FROM CONTAINERS(sales.customers);
```
18.7 Determining the Current Container ID or Name

You can determine your current container ID or container name in a CDB.

To determine the current container ID:

- Run the following SQL*Plus command:

  ```sql
  SHOW CON_ID
  ```

To determine the current container name:

- Run the following SQL*Plus command:

  ```sql
  SHOW CON_NAME
  ```

In addition, you can use the functions listed in Table 18-3 to determine the container ID of a container.

### Table 18-3 Functions That Return the Container ID of a Container

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CON_NAME_TO_ID('container_name')</td>
<td>Returns the container ID based on the container's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON_DBID_TO_ID(container_dbid)</td>
<td>Returns the container ID based on the container's DBID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON_UID_TO_ID(container_uid)</td>
<td>Returns the container ID based on the container's unique identifier (UID).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CON_GUID_TO_ID(container_guid)</td>
<td>Returns the container ID based on the container's globally unique identifier (GUID).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The V$CONTAINERS view shows the name, DBID, UID, and GUID for each container in a CDB.

**Example 18-12   Returning the Container ID Based on the Container Name**

```sql
SELECT CON_NAME_TO_ID('HRPDB') FROM DUAL;
```

**Example 18-13   Returning the Container ID Based on the Container DBID**

```sql
SELECT CON_DBID_TO_ID(2226957846) FROM DUAL;
```
18.8 Listing the Modifiable Initialization Parameters in PDBs

In a CDB, some initialization parameters apply to the root and to all PDBs. When such an initialization parameter is changed, it affects the entire CDB. You can set other initialization parameters to different values in each container.

For example, you might have a parameter set to one value in the root, set to another value in one PDB, and set to yet another value in a second PDB.

The query in this section lists the initialization parameters that you can set independently in each PDB.

To list the initialization parameters that are modifiable in each container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access a container.
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".
2. Run the following query:

   ```sql
   SELECT NAME FROM V$SYSTEM_PARAMETER
   WHERE ISPDB_MODIFIABLE = 'TRUE'
   ORDER BY NAME;
   ```

   If an initialization parameter listed by this query is not set independently for a PDB, then the PDB inherits the parameter value of the root.

18.9 Viewing the History of PDBs

The CDB_PDB_HISTORY view shows the history of the PDBs in a CDB. It provides information about when and how each PDB was created and other information about each PDB’s history.

To view the history of each PDB:
1. In SQL*Plus, ensure that the current container is the root.

   See “Accessing a Container in a CDB with SQL*Plus”.

2. Query `CDB_PDB_HISTORY` view.

**Example 18-14  Viewing the History of PDBs**

This example shows the following information about each PDB's history:

- The `DB_NAME` field shows the CDB that contained the PDB.
- The `CON_ID` field shows the container ID of the PDB.
- The `PDB_NAME` field shows the name of the PDB in one of its incarnations.
- The `OPERATION` field shows the operation performed in the PDB's history.
- The `OP_TIMESTAMP` field shows the date on which the operation was performed.
- If the PDB was cloned in an operation, then the `CLONED_FROM_PDB` field shows the PDB from which the PDB was cloned.

```sql
COLUMN DB_NAME FORMAT A10
COLUMN CON_ID FORMAT 999
COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN OPERATION FORMAT A16
COLUMN OP_TIMESTAMP FORMAT A10
COLUMN CLONED_FROM_PDB_NAME FORMAT A15

SELECT DB_NAME, CON_ID, PDB_NAME, OPERATION, OP_TIMESTAMP, CLONED_FROM_PDB_NAME
FROM CDB_PDB_HISTORY
WHERE CON_ID > 2
ORDER BY CON_ID;
```

Sample output:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DB_NAME</th>
<th>CON_ID</th>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>OPERATION</th>
<th>OP_TIMESTAMP</th>
<th>CLONED_FROM_PDB_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEWCDB</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>CREATE</td>
<td>10-APR-12</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEWCDB</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>CREATE</td>
<td>17-APR-12</td>
<td>PDB$SEED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEWCDB</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>TESTPDB</td>
<td>CLONE</td>
<td>30-APR-12</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

When the current container is a PDB, the `CDB_PDB_HISTORY` view shows the history of the current PDB only. A local user whose current container is a PDB can query the `DBA_PDB_HISTORY` view and exclude the `CON_ID` column from the query to view the history of the current PDB.

**See Also:**

"About the Current Container"
### 18.10 Viewing Information About Applications in Application Containers

Several views provide information about the applications in application containers in a CDB.

**Related Topics**

- **Creating and Removing Application Containers**
  You can create application containers in several different ways, including using the PDB seed, cloning an existing PDB, and plugging in an unplugged PDB. You can also remove application containers from a CDB.

- **Administering Application Containers**
  You can administer application containers, including application roots and application PDBs. You can also administer the applications installed in application containers.

### 18.10.1 Viewing Information About Applications

The `DBA_APPLICATIONS` view provides information about the applications in an application container.

#### Note:

The `DBA_APPLICATIONS` view provides information about the application in the current container only. To view information about applications in all of the application PDBs in the current application container, query the `DBA_APP_PDB_STATUS` with the application root as the current container.

To view information about the applications in an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.
2. Query the `DBA_APPLICATIONS` view.

**Example 18-15 Viewing Details About the Applications in an Application Container**

This query shows the name, the latest version, and the status of each user-created application in the application container.

```sql
COLUMN APP_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN APP_VERSION FORMAT A15
COLUMN APP_STATUS FORMAT A15

SELECT APP_NAME, APP_VERSION, APP_STATUS
FROM   DBA_APPLICATIONS
WHERE  APP_IMPLICIT='N';
```
The following sample output shows the `salesapp` application:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APP_NAME</th>
<th>APP_VERSION</th>
<th>APP_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>NORMAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
Oracle Database creates some applications implicitly when an application common user operation is issued with a `CONTAINER=ALL` clause outside of `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN/END` statements. The sample query excludes implicitly-created applications by specifying `APP_IMPLICIT='N'` in the `WHERE` clause.

**Related Topics**
- **Administering Application Containers**
  You can administer application containers, including application roots and application PDBs. You can also administer the applications installed in application containers.
- **Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB**
  Synchronizing an application updates the application in the application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

### 18.10.2 Viewing Information About Application Status

The `DBA_APP_PDB_STATUS` view provides information about the status of the applications in an application container. It can show the status of each application in each application PDB.

The view can show the status of an application in an application PDB even if the application PDB is closed.

**Note:**
When queried from the application root, the `DBA_APP_PDB_STATUS` view provides information about the applications in all application PDBs in the current application container. To view information about the application in the current container only, query the `DBA_APPLICATIONS` view.

**To view information about the application status in an application container:**

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the `DBA_APP_PDB_STATUS` view.
Example 18-16  Viewing Information About Application Status

This query shows the name of the application PDB, the name of the application, the version number of the application, and the status of the application.

COLUMN PDB_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN APP_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN APP_VERSION FORMAT A20
COLUMN APP_STATUS FORMAT A12

SELECT p.PDB_NAME, s.APP_NAME, s.APP_VERSION, s.APP_STATUS
FROM DBA_PDBS p, DBA_APP_PDB_STATUS s
WHERE p.CON_UID = s.CON_UID;

Your output is similar to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PDB_NAME</th>
<th>APP_NAME</th>
<th>APP_VERSION</th>
<th>APP_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SALES1</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>NORMAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

The status of an application can be NORMAL in an application PDB even when the application has not been synchronized to the latest version. Other statuses might indicate that an operation is in progress or that an operation encountered a problem. For example, the status UPGRADING might indicate that an upgrade of the application is in progress in the application PDB, or it might indicate that an error was encountered when the application PDB tried to upgrade an application.

See Also:

"Administering Application Containers"

18.10.3 Viewing Information About Application Statements

The DBA_APP_STATEMENTS view provides information about SQL statements issued during application installation, upgrade, and patch operations.

Oracle Database records all of the SQL statements issued during application installation, upgrade, and patch operations, and you can view the history of these statements by querying the DBA_APP_STATEMENTS view.

To view information about the SQL statements issued during application operations:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.

   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the DBA_APP_STATEMENTS view.
Example 18-17  Viewing Information About Application Statements

This query shows the statement ID, capture time, SQL statement, and application name for the SQL statements for applications in the application container.

```sql
SET LONG  8000
SET PAGES 8000
COLUMN STATEM_ID FORMAT NNNNN
COLUMN CAPTURE_TIME FORMAT A12
COLUMN APP_STATEMENT FORMAT A36
COLUMN APP_NAME FORMAT A15

SELECT STATEMENT_ID AS STATEM_ID, CAPTURE_TIME, APP_STATEMENT, APP_NAME
FROM   DBA_APP_STATEMENTS
ORDER BY STATEMENT_ID;
```

Your output is similar to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATEM_ID</th>
<th>CAPTURE_TIME</th>
<th>APP_STATEMENT</th>
<th>APP_NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>SYS</td>
<td>APP$1E87C094764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1142FE0534018F8</td>
<td>0AA6C5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION APP$CON BEGIN INSTALL '1.0'</td>
<td>APP$1E87C094764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1142FE0534018F8</td>
<td>0AA6C5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION APP$CON END INSTALL '1.0'</td>
<td>APP$1E87C094764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1142FE0534018F8</td>
<td>0AA6C5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>SYS</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION SALESAPP salesapp BEGIN INSTALL '1.0'</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>CREATE TABLE oe.cmtb SHARING=METADAT SALESAPP A (value VARCHAR2(30), country VARCHAR2(30))</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>CREATE TABLE conmap (country VARCHAR2(30) NOT NULL) PARTITION BY LIST (country) (PARTITION AMER VALUES ('US','MEXICO','CANADA'), PARTITION EURO VALUES ('UK','FRANCE','GERMANY'), PARTITION ASIA VALUES ('INDIA','CHINA','JAPAN'))</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>ALTER TABLE oe.cmtb ENABLE CONTAINER SALESAPP _MAP</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>30-AUG-15</td>
<td>ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION SALESAPP salesapp END INSTALL '1.0'</td>
<td>SALESAPP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

.`

.`

.`
Note:

Oracle Database creates some applications implicitly when an application common user operation is issued with a CONTAINER=ALL clause outside of ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN/END statements. The names of these applications begin with APP$, and the sample output shows these applications.

See Also:

- "Administering Application Containers"
- "Synchronizing Applications in an Application PDB"

18.10.4 Viewing Information About Application Versions

The DBA_APP_VERSIONS view provides information about the versions for applications in an application container.

Oracle Database records the versions for each application in an application container.

To view information about the application versions in an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the DBA_APP_VERSIONS view.

Example 18-18 Viewing Information About Application Versions

This query shows the name of the application that was versioned, the version number, and the comment for the version.

```
COLUMN APP_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN APP_VERSION FORMAT A20
COLUMN APP_VERSION_COMMENT FORMAT A25

SELECT APP_NAME, APP_VERSION, APP_VERSION_COMMENT
FROM DBA_APP_VERSIONS;
```

Your output is similar to the following:

```
APP_NAME  APP_VERSION  APP_VERSION_COMMENT
----------  -----------  -------------------------
SALESAPP   1.0          Sales Application
```
18.10.5 Viewing Information About Application Patches

The `DBA_APP_PATCHES` view provides information about the patches for applications in an application container.

Oracle Database records the patches for each application in an application container.

To view information about the application patches in an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the `DBA_APP_PATCHES` view.

Example 18-19 Viewing Information About Application Patches

This query shows the name of the application that was patched, the patch number, the minimum application version for the patch, and the status of the patch for each patch in the application container.

```
COLUMN APP_NAME FORMAT A15
COLUMN PATCH_NUMBER FORMAT NNNNNNNN
COLUMN PATCH_MIN_VERSION FORMAT A10
COLUMN PATCH_STATUS FORMAT A15

SELECT APP_NAME, PATCH_NUMBER, PATCH_MIN_VERSION, PATCH_STATUS
FROM DBA_APP_PATCHES;
```

Your output is similar to the following:

```
APP_NAME        PATCH_NUMBER PATCH_MIN VERSION PATCH_STATUS
--------------- ------------ ---------- ---------------
SALESAPP                   1 1.2        INSTALLED
```

See Also:

"Administering Application Containers"
18.10.6 Viewing Information About Application Errors

The **DBA_APP_ERRORS** view provides information errors raised when an application PDB synchronizes with an application in the application root.

An application PDB issues the **ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION** statement with the **SYNC** clause. You can view the history of application errors during application synchronization by querying the **DBA_APP_ERRORS** view.

To view information about errors raised during application synchronization:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the **DBA_APP_ERRORS** view.

   **Example 18-20 Viewing Details About Errors Raised During Application Synchronization**

   This query shows the application name, the SQL statement that raised the error, the error number, and the error message for errors raised during application synchronization.

   ```sql
   SET LONG 8000
   SET PAGES 8000
   COLUMN APP_NAME FORMAT A15
   COLUMN APP_STATEMENT FORMAT A36
   COLUMN ERRORNUM FORMAT NNNNNNNN
   COLUMN ERRORMSG FORMAT A20
   
   SELECT APP_NAME, APP_STATEMENT, ERRORNUM, ERRORMSG
   FROM DBA_APP_ERRORS;
   ```

   **See Also:**

   "Administering Application Containers"

18.10.7 Listing the Shared Database Objects in an Application Container

The **DBA_OBJECTS** view can list the shared database objects in an application container.

Shared database objects are metadata-linked application common objects, data-linked application common objects, and extended data-linked application common objects.

To list the shared database objects in an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container.
   
   See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the **DBA_OBJECTS** view and specify the **SHARING** column.
Example 18-21   Listing the User-Created Shared Database Objects in an Application Container

This query shows the owner and name of the user-created shared database objects in the application container. It also shows whether each shared database object is a metadata-linked application common object or a data-linked application common object. The query excludes Oracle-supplied shared database objects.

```
COLUMN OWNER FORMAT A15
COLUMN OBJECT_NAME FORMAT A25
COLUMN SHARING FORMAT A13

SELECT OWNER, OBJECT_NAME, SHARING
FROM DBA_OBJECTS WHERE SHARING != 'NONE' 
   AND ORACLE_MAINTAINED = 'N';
```

Your output is similar to the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OWNER</th>
<th>OBJECT_NAME</th>
<th>SHARING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SALESADM</td>
<td>CONMAP</td>
<td>METADATA LINK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OE</td>
<td>PRODUCT_DESCRIPTIONS_OB</td>
<td>DATA LINK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OE</td>
<td>CMTB</td>
<td>METADATA LINK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:

"Managing Application Common Objects"

18.10.8 Listing the Extended Data-Linked Objects in an Application Container

The DBA_TABLES and DBA_VIEWS views can list the extended data-linked objects in an application container.

An extended data-linked object is a special type of data-linked object for which each application PDB can create its own specific data while sharing the common data in the application root. Only the data stored in the application root is common for all application PDBs.

To list the extended data-linked objects in an application container:

1. In SQL*Plus, access the application root of the application container. See "About Container Access in a CDB".

2. Query the DBA_TABLES or DBA_VIEWS view and specify the EXTENDED_DATA_LINK='YES' in the WHERE clause.
Example 18-22  Listing the Extended Data-Linked Tables in an Application Container

This query shows the owner and name of the extended data-linked tables in the application container.

COLUMN OWNER FORMAT A20
COLUMN TABLE_NAME FORMAT A30

SELECT OWNER, TABLE_NAME FROM DBA_TABLES WHERE EXTENDED_DATA_LINK='YES';

Your output is similar to the following:

OWNER                TABLE_NAME
-------------------- ------------------------------
SALESADM             ZIPCODES

See Also:

"Managing Application Common Objects"
Oracle Database provides a rich set of default security features to manage user accounts, authentication, privileges, application security, encryption, network traffic, and auditing in a multitenant environment.
19 Configuring Privilege and Role Authentication in a Multitenant Environment

You can manage privileges, user accounts, and roles for a multitenant environment.

19.1 Managing Commonly and Locally Granted Privileges

Privileges can be granted commonly for an entire CDB or application container, or granted locally to a specific PDB.

19.1.1 How the Oracle Multitenant Option Affects Privileges

All users, including common users, can exercise their privileges only within the current container.

However, a user connected to the root can perform certain operations that affect other pluggable databases (PDBs). These operations include ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE, CREATE USER, CREATE ROLE, and ALTER USER. The common user must possess the commonly granted privileges that enable these operations. A common user connected to the root can see metadata pertaining to PDBs by way of the container data objects (for example, multitenant container database (CDB) views and $V$ views) in the root, provided that the common user has been granted privileges required to access these views and his CONTAINER_DATA attribute has been set to allow seeing data about various PDBs. The common user cannot query tables or views in a PDB.

Common users cannot exercise their privileges across other PDBs. They must first switch to the PDB that they want, and then exercise their privileges from there. To switch to a different container, the common user must have the SET CONTAINER privilege. The SET CONTAINER privilege must be granted either commonly or in the container to which the user is attempting to switch. Alternatively, the common user can start a new database session whose initial current container is the container this user wants, relying on the CREATE SESSION privilege in that PDB.

Be aware that commonly granted privileges may interfere with the security configured for individual PDBs. For example, suppose an application PDB database administrator wants to prevent any user in the PDB from modifying a particular application common object. A privilege (such as UPDATE) granted commonly to PUBLIC or to a common user or common role on the object would circumvent the PDB database administrator's intent.

Related Topics

• Oracle Database Security Guide
19.1.2 About Commonly and Locally Granted Privileges

Both common users and local users can grant privileges to one another. Privileges by themselves are neither common nor local. How the privileges are applied depends on whether the privilege is granted commonly or granted locally.

For commonly granted privileges:

- A privilege that is granted commonly can be used in every existing and future container.
- Only common users can grant privileges commonly, and only if the grantee is common.
- A common user can grant privileges to another common user or to a common role.
- The grantor must be connected to the root and must specify `CONTAINER=ALL` in the `GRANT` statement.
- Both system and object privileges can be commonly granted. (Object privileges become actual only with regard to the specified object.)
- When a common user connects to or switches to a given container, this user’s ability to perform various activities (such as creating a table) is controlled by privileges granted commonly as well as privileges granted locally in the given container.
- Do not grant privileges to `PUBLIC` commonly.

For locally granted privileges:

- A privilege granted locally can be used only in the container in which it was granted. When the privilege is granted in the root, it applies only to the root.
- Both common users and local users can grant privileges locally.
- A common user and a local user can grant privileges to other common or local roles.
- The grantor must be connected to the container and must specify `CONTAINER=CURRENT` in the `GRANT` statement.
- Any user can grant a privilege locally to any other user or role (both common and local) or to the PUBLIC role.

**Related Topics**

- [Overview of Privilege and Role Grants in a CDB](#)
  User accounts in a CDB can grant and be granted roles and privileges. Roles and privileges in a CDB, however, are either locally or commonly granted.
- [How the PUBLIC Role Works in a Multitenant Environment](#)
  All privileges that Oracle grants to the PUBLIC role are granted locally.

19.1.3 How Commonly Granted System Privileges Work

Users can exercise system privileges only within the PDB in which they were granted. For example, if a system privilege is locally granted to a common user A in a PDB B, user A can exercise that privilege only while connected to PDB B.
System privileges can apply in the root and in all existing and future PDBs if the following requirements are met:

- The system privilege grantor is a common user and the grantee is a common user, a common role, or the PUBLIC role. Do not commonly grant system privileges to the PUBLIC role, because this in effect makes the system privilege available to all users.
- The system privilege grantor possesses the ADMIN OPTION for the commonly granted privilege
- The GRANT statement must contain the CONTAINER=ALL clause.

The following example shows how to commonly grant a privilege to the common user c##hr_admin.

CONNECT SYSTEM
Enter password: password
Connected.

GRANT CREATE ANY TABLE TO c##hr_admin CONTAINER=ALL;

Related Topics
- Oracle Database Security Guide

19.1.4 How Commonly Granted Object Privileges Work

Object privileges on common objects applies to the object as well as all associated links on this common object.

These links include all metadata links, data links (previously called object links), or extended data links that are associated with it in the root and in all PDBs belonging to the container (including future PDBs) if certain requirements are met.

These requirements are as follows:

- The object privilege grantor is a common user and the grantee is a common user, a common role, or the PUBLIC role.
- The object privilege grantor possesses the commonly granted GRANT OPTION for the privilege
- The GRANT statement contains the CONTAINER=ALL clause.

The following example shows how to grant an object privilege to the common user c##hr_admin so that he can select from the DBA_PDBS view in the CDB root or in any of the associated PDBs that he can access.

CONNECT SYSTEM
Enter password: password
Connected.

GRANT SELECT ON DBA_OBJECTS TO c##hr_admin CONTAINER=ALL;

Related Topics
- Oracle Database Security Guide
• **Data Dictionary Architecture in a CDB**  
  From the user and application perspective, the data dictionary in each container in a CDB is separate.

• **Namespaces in a CDB**  
  In a CDB, the namespace for every object is scoped to its container.

• **How the PUBLIC Role Works in a Multitenant Environment**  
  All privileges that Oracle grants to the PUBLIC role are granted locally.

### 19.1.5 Granting or Revoking Privileges to Access a PDB

You can grant and revoke privileges for PDB access.

To grant or revoke a privilege in a PDB, include the `CONTAINER` clause in the `GRANT` or `REVOKE` statement. Setting `CONTAINER` to `ALL` applies the privilege to all existing and future containers; setting it to `CURRENT` applies the privilege to the local container only. Omitting the `CONTAINER` clause applies the privilege to the local container. If you issue the `GRANT` statement from the root and omit the `CONTAINER` clause, then the privilege is applied locally.

**Related Topics**

- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*

### 19.1.6 Example: Granting a Privilege to a Common User

You must use the `GRANT` statement in the root to grant privileges to a common user. Example 19-1 shows how to commonly grant the `CREATE TABLE` privilege to common user `c##hr_admin` so that this user can use this privilege in all existing and future containers.

**Example 19-1**  
Granting a Privilege in a Multitenant Environment

```
CONNECT SYSTEM  
Enter password: password  
Connected.

GRANT CREATE TABLE TO c##hr_admin CONTAINER=ALL;
```

### 19.1.7 Enabling Common Users to View CONTAINER_DATA Object Information

Common users can view information about CONTAINER_DATA objects in the root or for data in specific PDBs.
19.1.7.1 Viewing Data About the Root, CDB, and PDBs While Connected to the Root

You can restrict view information for the X$ table and the V$, GV$ and CDB_* views when common users perform queries.

The X$ table and these views contain information about the application root and its associated application PDBs or, if you are connected to the CDB root, the entire CDB. Restricting this information is useful when you do not want to expose sensitive information about other PDBs. To enable this functionality, Oracle Database provides these tables and views as container data objects. You can find if a specific table or view is a container data object by querying the TABLE_NAME, VIEW_NAME, and CONTAINER_DATA columns of the USER_[DBA_]ALL_VIEWS|TABLES dictionary views.

To find information about the default (user-level) and object-specific CONTAINER_DATA attributes:

1. In SQL*Plus or SQL Developer, log in to the root.
2. Query the CDB_CONTAINER_DATA data dictionary view.
   
   For example:
   
   ```sql
   SELECT USERNAME, DEFAULT_ATTR, OWNER, OBJECT_NAME, ALL_CONTAINERS, CONTAINER_NAME, CON_ID
   FROM   CDB_CONTAINER_DATA
   ORDER BY OBJECT_NAME;
   ```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USERNAME</th>
<th>DEFAULT</th>
<th>OWNER</th>
<th>OBJECT_NAME</th>
<th>ALL CONTAINERS</th>
<th>CONTAINER_NAME</th>
<th>CON_ID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C##HR_ADMIN</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>SYS</td>
<td>V$SESSION</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C##HR_ADMIN</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>SYS</td>
<td>V$SESSION</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>SALESPDB</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C##HR_ADMIN</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>HRPDB</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C##HR_ADMIN</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>CDB$ROOT</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBSNMP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTEM</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics

- [Container Data Objects in a CDB](#)

  A container data object is a table or view containing data pertaining to multiple containers or the whole CDB.

- [Oracle Database Reference](#)
19.1.7.2 Enabling Common Users to Query Data in Specific PDBs

You can enable common users to access data pertaining to specific PDBs by adjusting the users’ CONTAINER_DATA attribute.

To enable common users to access data about specific PDBs:

• Issue the ALTER USER statement in the root.

Example 19-2  Setting the CONTAINER_DATA Attribute

This example shows how to issue the ALTER USER statement to enable the common user c##hr_admin to view information pertaining to the CDB$ROOT, SALES_PDB, and HRPDB containers in the V$SESSION view (assuming this user can query that view).

CONNECT SYSTEM
Enter password: password
Connected.

ALTER USER c##hr_admin
SET CONTAINER_DATA = (CDB$ROOT, SALESPDB, HRPDB)
FOR V$SESSION CONTAINER=CURRENT;

In this specification:

• SET CONTAINER_DATA lists containers, data pertaining to which can be accessed by the user.
• FOR V$SESSION specifies the CONTAINER_DATA dynamic view, which common user c##hr_admin will query.
• CONTAINER = CURRENT must be specified because when you are connected to the root, CONTAINER=ALL is the default for the ALTER USER statement, but modification of the CONTAINER_DATA attribute must be restricted to the root.

If you want to enable user c##hr_admin to view information that pertains to the CDB$ROOT, SALES_PDB, HRPDB containers in all CONTAINER_DATA objects that this user can access, then omit FOR V$SESSION. For example:

ALTER USER c##hr_admin
SET CONTAINER_DATA = (CDB$ROOT, SALESPDB, HRPDB)
CONTAINER=CURRENT;

Related Topics
• Oracle Database SQL Language Reference

19.2 Managing Common Roles and Local Roles

A common role is a role that is created in the root; a local role is created in a PDB.
19.2.1 About Common Roles and Local Roles

Database roles can be specific to a PDB or used throughout the entire system container or application container.

A common role is a role whose identity and (optional) password are created in the root of a container and will be known in the root and in all existing and future PDBs belonging to that container.

A local role exists in only one PDB and can only be used within this PDB. It does not have any commonly granted privileges.

Note the following:

• Common users can both create and grant common roles to other common and local users.
• You can grant a role (local or common) to a local user or role only locally.
• If you grant a common role locally, then the privileges of that common role apply only in the container where the role is granted.
• Local users cannot create common roles, but they can grant them to common and other local users.
• The CONTAINER = ALL clause is the default when you create a common role in the CDB root or an application root.

Related Topics
• Oracle Database Security Guide

19.2.2 How Common Roles Work

Common roles are visible in the root and in every PDB of a container within which they are defined.

A privilege can be granted commonly to a common role if:

• The grantor is a common user.
• The grantor possesses the commonly granted ADMIN OPTION for the privilege that is being granted.
• The GRANT statement contains the CONTAINER=ALL clause.

If the common role contains locally granted privileges, then these privileges apply only within the PDB in which they were granted to the common role. A local role cannot be granted commonly.

For example, suppose the CDB common user c##hr_mgr has been commonly granted the DBA role. This means that user c##hr_mgr can use the privileges associated with the DBA role in the root and in every PDB in the container. However, if the CDB common user c##hr_mgr has only been locally granted the DBA role for the hr_pdb PDB, then this user can only use the DBA role’s privileges in the hr_pdb PDB.

19.2.3 How the PUBLIC Role Works in a Multitenant Environment

All privileges that Oracle grants to the PUBLIC role are granted locally.
This feature enables you to revoke privileges or roles that have been granted to the `PUBLIC` role individually in each PDB as needed. If you must grant any privileges to the `PUBLIC` role, then grant them locally. Never grant privileges to `PUBLIC` commonly.

**Related Topics**
- About Commonly and Locally Granted Privileges
  Both common users and local users can grant privileges to one another.

### 19.2.4 Privileges Required to Create, Modify, or Drop a Common Role

Only common users who have the commonly granted `CREATE ROLE`, `ALTER ROLE`, and `DROP ROLE` privileges can create, alter, or drop common roles.

Common users can also create local roles, but these roles are available only in the PDB in which they were created.

### 19.2.5 Rules for Creating Common Roles

When you create a common role, you must follow special rules.

The rules are as follows:

- **Ensure that you are in the correct root.** For the creation of common roles, you must be in the correct root, either the CDB root or the application root. You cannot create common roles from a PDB. To check if you are in the correct root, run one of the following:
  - To confirm that you are in the CDB root, you can issue the `show_con_name` command. The output should be `CDB$ROOT`.
  - To confirm that you are in an application root, verify that the following query returns `YES`:

    ```sql
    SELECT APPLICATION_ROOT FROM V$PDBS WHERE CON_ID=SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV', 'CON_ID');
    ```

- **Ensure that the name that you give the common role starts with the value of the COMMON_USER_PREFIX parameter (which defaults to `C##`).** Note that this requirement does not apply to the names of existing Oracle-supplied roles, such as `DBA` or `RESOURCE`.

- **Optionally, set the CONTAINER clause to ALL.** As long as you are in the root, if you omit the `CONTAINER = ALL` clause, then by default the role is created as a common role for the CDB root or the application root.

### 19.2.6 Creating a Common Role

You can use the `CREATE ROLE` statement to create a common role.

1. Connect to the root of the CDB or the application container in which you want to create the common role.
For example:

CONNECT SYSTEM
Enter password: password
Connected.

2. Run the CREATE ROLE statement with the CONTAINER clause set to ALL.
For example:

CREATE ROLE c##sec_admin IDENTIFIED BY password CONTAINER=ALL;

Related Topics
• Oracle Database Security Guide

19.2.7 Rules for Creating Local Roles
To create a local role, you must follow special rules.
These rules are as follows:
• You must be connected to the PDB in which you want to create the role, and have the CREATE ROLE privilege.
• The name that you give the local role must not start with the value of the COMMON_USER_PREFIX parameter (which defaults to C##).
• You can include CONTAINER=CURRENT in the CREATE ROLE statement to specify the role as a local role. If you are connected to a PDB and omit this clause, then the CONTAINER=CURRENT clause is implied.
• You cannot have common roles and local roles with the same name. However, you can use the same name for local roles in different PDBs. To find the names of existing roles, query the CDB_ROLES and DBA_ROLES data dictionary views.

19.2.8 Creating a Local Role
You can use the CREATE ROLE statement to create a role.

1. Connect to the PDB in which you want to create the local role.
For example:

CONNECT sec_admin@pdb_name
Enter password: password
Connected.

To find the available PDBs in a CDB, log in to the CDB root container and then query the PDB_NAME column of the DBA_PDBS data dictionary view. To check the current container, run the show con_name command.

2. Run the CREATE ROLE statement with the CONTAINER clause set to CURRENT.
For example:

CREATE ROLE sec_admin CONTAINER=CURRENT;
19.2.9 Role Grants and Revokes for Common Users and Local Users

Role grants and revokes apply only to the scope of access of the common user or the local user.

Common users can grant and revoke common roles to and from other common users. A local user can grant a common role to any user in a PDB, including common users, but this grant applies only within the PDB.

The following example shows how to grant the common user c##sec_admin the AUDIT_ADMIN common role for use in all containers.

```
CONNECT SYSTEM
Enter password: password
Connected.

GRANT AUDIT_ADMIN TO c##sec_admin CONTAINER=ALL;
```

Similarly, the next example shows how local user aud_admin can grant the common user c##sec_admin the AUDIT_ADMIN common role for use within the hrpdb PDB.

```
CONNECT aud_admin@hrpdb
Enter password: password
Connected.

GRANT AUDIT_ADMIN TO c##sec_admin CONTAINER=CURRENT;
```

This example shows how a local user aud_admin can revoke a role from another user in a PDB. If you omit the CONTAINER clause, then CURRENT is implied.

```
CONNECT aud_admin@hrpdb
Enter password: password
Connected.

REVOKE sec_admin FROM psmith CONTAINER=CURRENT;
```

19.3 Configuring Operating System Users for a PDB

The DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL procedure configures user accounts to be operating system users for a pluggable database (PDB).

19.3.1 About Configuring Operating System Users for a PDB

Instead of the oracle operating system user, a specific user account can be the operating system user for a pluggable database (PDB).

If you do not set a specific user to be the operating system user for the PDB, then by default the PDB uses the oracle operating system user. For the root, you can use the oracle operating system user when you must interact with the operating system.
For better security, Oracle recommends that you set a unique operating system user for each PDB. Doing so helps to ensure that operating system interactions are performed as a less powerful user than the oracle operating system user, and helps to protect data that belongs to one PDB from being accessed by users who are connected to other PDBs.

19.3.2 Configuring an Operating System User for a PDB

The `DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL` procedure can set an operating system user for a pluggable database (PDB).

1. Log in to the CDB root as a user who has the EXECUTE privilege for the `DBMS_CREDENTIAL` PL/SQL package and the ALTER SYSTEM system privilege.
   
   For example:
   
   ```sql
   sqlplus c##sec_admin
   Enter password: password
   ```

2. Run the `DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL` procedure to create an Oracle credential for the operating system user.
   
   For example, to set the credential for a user named `os_admin`:
   
   ```sql
   BEGIN
   DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL (%
   credential_name => 'PDB1_OS_USER',
   username        => 'os_admin',
   password        => 'password');
   END;
   /```

3. Connect to the PDB for which the operating system user will be used.
   
   For example:
   
   ```sql
   CONNECT cc##sec_admin@pdb_name
   Enter password: password
   ```

   To find the available PDBs in a CDB, log in to the CDB root container and then query the `PDB_NAME` column of the `DBA_PDBS` data dictionary view. To check the current container, run the `show con_name` command.

4. Set the `PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL` initialization parameter for the user whose credential was set in Step 2.
   
   For example:
   
   ```sql
   ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL = PDB1_OS_USER SCOPE = SPFILE;
   ```

   The `PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL` parameter is a static parameter, so you must set it using the `SCOPE = SPFILE` clause.
5. Restart the CDB.

SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE
STARTUP

Related Topics
• Oracle Database Security Guide
• Oracle Database Reference
• Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference

Related Topics
• Setting the Default Credential in a PDB

You can set the database property DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL for a specified PDB.

19.3.3 Setting the Default Credential in a PDB

You can set the database property DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL for a specified PDB.

A default credential is useful when importing files from an object store into a PDB. If you do not specify a credential name when using impdp, then Oracle Data Pump and the object store module can use the DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL object to retrieve the user name and password. When running impdp without specifying a credential, you must prefix the dump file name with DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL:

To set the default credential:

1. Log in to a PDB with administrator privileges.
2. Use an ALTER DATABASE statement to set the default credential.

For example, enter the following statement to set the credential to SYSTEM.HR_CRED:

ALTER DATABASE PROPERTY SET DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL = 'SYSTEM.HR_CRED';

Example 19-3 Importing Data into a PDB Using the Default Credential

This example assumes that a default credential exists. The following command imports data from an object store, prefacing the URL with the string DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL:

impdp hr@pdb1 table_exists_action=replace \\dumpfile=DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL:https://example.com/ostore/obucket/myt.dmp

See Also:
• “Using Oracle Data Pump to Move Data Into a CDB”
• Oracle Database Utilities to learn about Data Pump Import
19.4 Restricting Operations on PDBs Using PDB Lockdown Profiles

You can use PDB lockdown profiles to restrict sets of user operations in pluggable databases (PDBs).

19.4.1 About PDB Lockdown Profiles

A PDB lockdown profile is a named set of features that controls a group of operations. In some cases, you can enable or disable operations individually. For example, a PDB lockdown profile can contain settings to disable specific clauses that come with the ALTER SYSTEM statement.

PDB lockdown profiles restrict user access to the functionality the features provided, similar to resource limits that are defined for users. As the name suggests, you use PDB lockdown profiles in a CDB, for an application container, or for a PDB or application PDB. You can create custom profiles to accommodate the requirements of your site. PDB profiles enable you to define custom security policies for an application. In addition, you can create a lockdown profile that is based on another profile, called a base profile. You can configure this profile to be dynamically updated when the base profile is modified, or configure it to be static (unchanging) when the base profile is updated. Lockdown profiles are designed for both Oracle Cloud and on-premises environments.

When identities are shared between PDBs, elevated privileges may exist. You can use lockdown profiles to prevent this elevation of privileges. Identities can be shared in the following situations:

- At the operating system level, when the database interacts with operating system resources such as files or processes
- At the network level, when the database communicates with other systems, and network identity is important
- Inside the database, as PDBs access or create common objects or they communicate across container boundaries using features such as database links

The features that use shared identifies and that benefit from PDB lockdown profiles are in the following categories:

- **Network access features.** These are operations that use the network to communicate outside the PDB. For example, the PL/SQL packages UTL_TCP, UTL_HTTP, UTL_MAIL, UTL_SNMP, UTL_INADDR, and DBMS_DEBUG_JDWP perform these kinds of operations. Currently, ACLs are used to control this kind of access to share network identity.

- **Common user or object access.** These are operations in which a local user in the PDB can proxy through common user accounts or access objects in a common schema. These kinds of operations include adding or replacing objects in a common schema, granting privileges to common objects, accessing common directory objects, granting the INHERIT PRIVILEGES role to a common user, and manipulating a user proxy to a common user.

- **Operating System access.** For example, you can restrict access to the UTL_FILE or DBMS_FILE_TRANSFER PL/SQL packages.
Connections. For example, you can restrict common users from connecting to the PDB or you can restrict a local user who has the SYSOPER administrative privilege from connecting to a PDB that is open in restricted mode.

The general procedure for creating a PDB lockdown profile is to first create it in the CDB root or the application root using the CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE statement, and then use the ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE statement to add the restrictions.

To enable a PDB lockdown profile, you can use the ALTER SYSTEM statement to set the PDB_LOCKDOWN parameter. You can find information about existing PDB lockdown profiles by connecting to CDB or application root and querying the DBA_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES data dictionary view. A local user can find the contents of a PDB lockdown parameter by querying the V$LOCKDOWN_RULES dynamic data dictionary view.

19.4.2 Default PDB Lockdown Profiles

Oracle Database provides a set of default PDB lockdown profiles that you can customize for your site requirements.

By default, most of these profiles are empty. They are designed to be a placeholder or template for you to configure, depending on your deployment requirements.

Detailed information about these profiles is as follows:

- **PRIVATE_DBAAS** incorporates restrictions that are suitable for private Cloud Database-as-a-Service (DBaaS) deployments. These restrictions are:
  - Must have the same database administrator for each PDB
  - Different users permitted to connect to the database
  - Different applications permitted

  PRIVATE_DBAAS permits users to connect to the PDBs but prevents them from using Oracle Database administrative features.

- **SAAS** incorporates restrictions that are suitable for Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployments. These restrictions are:
  - Must have the same database administrator for each PDB
  - Different users permitted to connect to the database
  - Must use the same application

  The SAAS lockdown profile is more restrictive than the PRIVATE_DBAAS profile. Users can be different, but the application code is the same; users are prevented from directly connecting and must connect only through the application; and users are not granted the ability to perform any administrative features.

- **PUBLIC_DBAAS** incorporates restrictions that are suitable for public Cloud Database-as-a-Service (DBaaS) deployments. The restrictions are as follows:
  - Different DBAs in each PDB
  - Different users
  - Different applications

  The PUBLIC_DBAAS lockdown profile is the most restrictive of the lockdown profiles.
19.4.3 Creating a PDB Lockdown Profile

To create a PDB lockdown profile, you must have the *CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE* system privilege.

After you create the lockdown profile, you can add restrictions before enabling it.

1. Connect to the CDB root or the application root as a user who has the *CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE* system privilege.

   For example, to connect to the CDB root:

   ```
   CONNECT c##sec_admin
   Enter password: password
   ```

2. Run the *CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE* statement to create the profile by using the following syntax:

   ```
   CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE profile_name
   [FROM static_base_profile | INCLUDING dynamic_base_profile];
   ```

   In this specification:
   - *profile_name* is the name that you assign the lockdown profile. You can find existing names by querying the `PROFILE_NAMES` column of the `DBA_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES` data dictionary view.
   - *FROM static_base_profile* creates a new lockdown profile by using the values from an existing profile. Any subsequent changes to the base profile will not affect the new profile.
   - *INCLUDING dynamic_base_profile* also creates a new lockdown profile by using the values from an existing base profile, except that this new lockdown profile will inherit the *DISABLE STATEMENT* rules that comprise the base profile, as well as any subsequent changes to the base profile. If rules that are explicitly added to the new profile conflict with the rules in the base profile, then the rules in the base profile take precedence. For example, an *OPTION_VALUE* clause in the base profile takes precedence over the *OPTION_VALUE* clause in the new profile.

   The following two PDB lockdown profile statements demonstrate how the inheritance works:

   ```
   CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE hr_prof INCLUDING PRIVATE_DBAAS;
   CREATE LOCKDOWN PROFILE hr_prof2 FROM hr_prof;
   ```

   In the first statement, *hr_prof* inherits any changes made to the *PRIVATE_DBAAS* base profile. If a new statement is enabled for *PRIVATE_DBAAS*, then it is enabled for *hr_prof*. In the second statement, in contrast, when *hr_prof* changes, then *hr_prof2* does not change because it is independent of its base profile.

3. Run the *ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE* statement to provide restrictions for the profile.
For example:

```
ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE hr_prof DISABLE STATEMENT = ('ALTER SYSTEM');
ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE hr_prof ENABLE STATEMENT = ('ALTER SYSTEM')
clause = ('flush shared_pool');
ALTER LOCKDOWN PROFILE hr_prof DISABLE FEATURE = ('XDB_PROTOCOLS');
```

In the preceding example:

- DISABLE STATEMENT = ('ALTER SYSTEM') disables the use of all ALTER SYSTEM statements for the PDB.
- ENABLE STATEMENT = ('ALTER SYSTEM') clause = ('flush shared_pool') enables only the use of the FLUSH_SHARED_POOL clause for ALTER SYSTEM.
- DISABLE FEATURE = ('XDB_PROTOCOLS') prohibits the use of the XDB protocols (FTP, HTTP, HTTPS) by this PDB.

After you create a PDB lockdown profile, you are ready to enable it by using the ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_LOCKDOWN SQL statement.

Related Topics

- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*

### 19.4.4 Enabling or Disabling a PDB Lockdown Profile

To enable or disable a PDB lockdown profile, use the PDB_LOCKDOWN initialization parameter.

You can use ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_LOCKDOWN to enable a lockdown profile in any of the following contexts:

- CDB (affects all PDBs)
- Application root (affects all application PDBs in the container)
- Application PDB
- PDB

**Note:**

It is not necessary to restart the instance to enable the profile. When the ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_LOCKDOWN statement completes, the profile rules take effect immediately.

When you set PDB_LOCKDOWN in the CDB root, every PDB and application root inherits this setting unless PDB_LOCKDOWN is set at the container level. To disable lockdown profiles, set PDB_LOCKDOWN to null. If you set this parameter to null in the CDB root, then lockdown profiles are disabled for all PDBs except those that explicitly set a profile within the PDB.

A CDB common user who has been commonly granted the SYSDBA administrative privilege or the ALTER SYSTEM system privilege can set PDB_LOCKDOWN only to a lockdown profile that was created in the CDB root. An application common user with...
the application common SYSDBA administrative privilege or the ALTER SYSTEM system privilege can set PDB_LOCKDOWN only to a lockdown profile created in an application root.

1. Log in to the desired container as a user who has the commonly granted ALTER SYSTEM or commonly granted SYSDBA privilege.

   For example, to enable the profile for all PDBs, log in to the CDB root:

   ```
   CONNECT c##sec_admin
   Enter password: password
   ```

2. Run the ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_LOCKDOWN statement.

   For example, the following statement enables the lockdown profile named hr_prof for all PDBs:

   ```
   ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_LOCKDOWN = hr_prof;
   ```

   The following statement resets the PDB_LOCKDOWN parameter:

   ```
   ALTER SYSTEM RESET PDB_LOCKDOWN;
   ```

   This variation of the preceding statement includes the SCOPE clause:

   ```
   ALTER SYSTEM RESET PDB_LOCKDOWN SCOPE = BOTH;
   ```

   The following statement disables all lockdown profiles in the CDB except those that are explicitly set at the PDB level:

   ```
   ALTER SYSTEM SET PDB_LOCKDOWN = '' SCOPE = BOTH;
   ```

   To find the names of PDB lockdown profiles, query the PROFILE_NAME column of the DBA_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES data dictionary view.

3. Optionally, review information about the profiles by querying DBA_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES.

   For example, run the following query:

   ```
   SET LINESIZE 150
   COL PROFILE_NAME FORMAT a20
   COL RULE FORMAT a20
   COL CLAUSE FORMAT a25

   SELECT PROFILE_NAME, RULE, CLAUSE, STATUS FROM CDB_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES;
   ```

   Sample output appears below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROFILE_NAME</th>
<th>RULE</th>
<th>CLAUSE</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HR_PROF</td>
<td>XDB_PROTOCOLS</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR_PROF</td>
<td>ALTER SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.4.5 Dropping a PDB Lockdown Profile

To drop a PDB lockdown profile, you must have the **DROP LOCKDOWN PROFILE** system privilege and be logged into the CDB or application root.

You can find the names of existing PDB lockdown profiles by querying the **DBA_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES** data dictionary view.

1. Connect to the CDB root or the application root as a user who has the **DROP LOCKDOWN PROFILE** system privilege.

   For example, to connect to the CDB root:

   ```sql
   CONNECT c##sec_admin
   Enter password: password
   ```

2. Run the **DROP LOCKDOWN_PROFILE** statement.

   For example:

   ```sql
   DROP LOCKDOWN PROFILE hr_prof2;
   ```

3. Optionally, review the current list of profiles by querying **DBA_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES**.

   For example, run the following query:

   ```sql
   SET LINESIZE 150
   COL PROFILE_NAME FORMAT a20
   COL RULE FORMAT a20
   COL CLAUSE FORMAT a25
   SELECT PROFILE_NAME, RULE, CLAUSE, STATUS FROM CDB_LOCKDOWN_PROFILES;
   ```

   Sample output appears below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PROFILE_NAME</th>
<th>RULE</th>
<th>CLAUSE</th>
<th>STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HR_PROF</td>
<td>XDB_PROTOCOLS</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR_PROF</td>
<td>ALTER SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td>DISABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR_PROF</td>
<td>ALTER SYSTEM</td>
<td>FLUSH SHARED_POOL</td>
<td>ENABLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIVATE_DBAAS</td>
<td>ALTER SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td>EMPTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBLIC_DBAAS</td>
<td>ALTER SYSTEM</td>
<td></td>
<td>EMPTY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EMPTY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20

Controlling Access to Data in a Multitenant Environment

Oracle Database provides several features that enable you to control access to sensitive data.

20.1 Using Application Contexts in a Multitenant Environment

An application context stores user identification that can enable or prevent a user from accessing data in the database.

20.1.1 What Is an Application Context?

An application context is a set of name-value pairs that Oracle Database stores in memory.

The context has a label called a namespace (for example, empno_ctx for an application context that retrieves employee IDs). This context enables Oracle Database to find information about both database and nondatabase users during authentication.

Inside the context are the name-value pairs (an associative array): the name points to a location in memory that holds the value. An application can use the application context to access session information about a user, such as the user ID or other user-specific information, or a client ID, and then securely pass this data to the database.

You can then use this information to either permit or prevent the user from accessing data through the application. You can use application contexts to authenticate both database and non-database users.

Related Topics
• Oracle Database Security Guide

20.1.2 Application Contexts in a Multitenant Environment

Where you create an application in a multitenant environment determines where you must create the application context.

If an application is installed in the application root or CDB root, then it becomes accessible across the application container or system container and associated application PDBs. You will need to create a common application context in this root.

When you create a common application context for use with an application container, note the following:
• You can create application contexts by setting the `CONTAINER` clause in the `CREATE CONTEXT` SQL statement. For example, to create a common application context in the application root, you must execute `CREATE CONTEXT` with `CONTAINER` set to `ALL`. To create the application context in a PDB, set `CONTAINER` to `CURRENT`.

• You cannot use the same name for a local application context for a common application context. You can find the names of existing application contexts by running the following query:

```sql
SELECT OBJECT_NAME FROM DBA_OBJECTS WHERE OBJECT_TYPE = 'CONTEXT';
```

• The PL/SQL package that you create to manage a common application context must be a common PL/SQL package. That is, it must exist in the application root or CDB root. If you create the application context for a specific PDB, then you must store the associated PL/SQL package in that PDB.

• The name-value pairs that you set under a common session application context from an application container or a system container for a common application context are not accessible from other application containers or system containers when a common user accesses a different container.

• The name-value pairs that you set under a common global application context from an application container or a system container, are accessible only within the same container in the same user session.

• An application can retrieve the value of an application context whether it resides in the application root, the CDB root, or a PDB.

• During a plug-in operation of a PDB into a CDB or an application container, if the name of the common application context conflicts with a PDB’s local application context, then the PDB must open in restricted mode. A database administrator would then need to correct the conflict before opening the PDB in normal mode.

• During an unplug operation, a common application context retains its common semantics, so that later on, if the PDB is plugged into another CDB where a common application context with the same name exists, it would continue to behave like a common object. If a PDB is plugged into an application container or a system container, where the same common application context does not exist, then it behaves like a local object.

To find if an application context is a local application context or an application common application context, query the `SCOPE` column of the `DBA_CONTEXT` or `ALL_CONTEXT` data dictionary view.

**Related Topics**
- *Oracle Database Security Guide*

### 20.2 Using Oracle Virtual Private Database in a Multitenant Environment

Oracle Virtual Private Database (VPD) enables you to filter users who access data.

#### 20.2.1 What Is Oracle Virtual Private Database?

Oracle Virtual Private Database (VPD) creates security policies to control database access at the row and column level.
Oracle Database release 12c introduced Real Application Security (RAS) to supersede VPD. Oracle recommends that you use RAS for new projects that require row and column level access controls for their applications.

Essentially, Oracle Virtual Private Database adds a dynamic WHERE clause to a SQL statement that is issued against the table, view, or synonym to which an Oracle Virtual Private Database security policy was applied.

Oracle Virtual Private Database enforces security, to a fine level of granularity, directly on database tables, views, or synonyms. Because you attach security policies directly to these database objects, and the policies are automatically applied whenever a user accesses data, there is no way to bypass security.

When a user directly or indirectly accesses a table, view, or synonym that is protected with an Oracle Virtual Private Database policy, Oracle Database dynamically modifies the SQL statement of the user. This modification creates a WHERE condition (called a predicate) returned by a function implementing the security policy. Oracle Database modifies the statement dynamically, transparently to the user, using any condition that can be expressed in or returned by a function. You can apply Oracle Virtual Private Database policies to SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, INDEX, and DELETE statements.

For example, suppose a user performs the following query:

```
SELECT * FROM OE.ORDERS;
```

The Oracle Virtual Private Database policy dynamically appends the statement with a WHERE clause. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM OE.ORDERS
WHERE SALES_REP_ID = 159;
```

In this example, the user can only view orders by Sales Representative 159.

If you want to filter the user based on the session information of that user, such as the ID of the user, then you can create the WHERE clause to use an application context. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM OE.ORDERS
WHERE SALES_REP_ID = SYS_CONTEXT('USERENV','SESSION_USER');
```

Oracle Virtual Private Database does not support filtering for DDLs, such as TRUNCATE or ALTER TABLE statements.

Related Topics
- Oracle Database Real Application Security Administrator’s and Developer’s Guide
20.2.2 Oracle Virtual Private Database in a Multitenant Environment

You can create Virtual Private Database policies in an application root for use throughout any associated application PDBs.

The CDB restriction applies to shared context sensitive policies and views related to Virtual Private Database policies as well. You cannot create a Virtual Private Database policy for an entire multitenant environment.

With regard to application containers, you can create Virtual Private Database policies to protect application common objects by applying the common policy to all PDBs that belong to the application root. In other words, when you install an application in the application root, all the common Virtual Private Database policies that protect the common objects will be applied to and immediately enforced for all PDBs in the application container.

Note the following:

- You can only create the common Virtual Private Database policy and its associated PL/SQL function in the application root and only attach it to application common objects. If the function is not in the same location as the policy, then an error is raised at runtime.

- A Virtual Private Database policy that is applied to common objects is considered a common policy that will be automatically enforced in PDBs that belong to the application container when it accesses the application common objects from application PDBs.

- Application common Virtual Private Database policies can only protect application common objects.

- A Virtual Private Database policy that is applied to application common objects in the application root and is applied to all application PDBs is considered a common Virtual Private Database policy. A policy that is applied to a local database table and enforced in one PDB is considered a local Virtual Private Database policy.

For example, if policy VPD_P1 is applied to the application common table T1 in the application root, then it is considered a common policy. It will be enforced in each application PDB. If a policy named VPD_P1 is applied to a local table called T1 in PDB1, then it is considered a local policy, which means that it affects only PDB1. If a policy called VPD_P1 is applied to a local table T1 in the application root, then it is still considered a local policy because it affects only the application root. This concept applies to other operations, such as enabling, disabling, and removing Virtual Private Database policies.

- Application common Virtual Private Database policies only protect application common objects, while local Virtual Private Database policies only protect local objects.

- If you are using application contexts, then ensure common database session-based application contexts and common global application context objects are used in the common Virtual Private Database configuration.

- Application container Virtual Private Database policies are stored in the application root. PDBs store only local policies. If you plug a PDB into the application container, then the common policies are not converted to local policies. Instead,
Oracle Database loads them from the application root and enforces them in the local PDB when the policies access common objects in the local PDB.

**Related Topics**
- *Oracle Database Security Guide*

## 20.3 Securing and Isolating Resources Using DbNest

Oracle Multitenant enables you to secure and isolate instance-level and operating system resources.

### 20.3.1 About DbNest

DbNest is an Oracle Database feature that provides hierarchical, isolated run-time environments at the CDB and PDB level.

These run-time environments provide file system isolation, process ID number space isolation, and secure computing for PDBs and CDBs. To secure the environments, dbNest uses the latest Linux resource isolation, namespace, and control group features.

### 20.3.1.1 Purpose of DbNest

DbNest isolates a database instance from other databases and applications running on the same host, and also isolate PDBs from each other and from the CDB.

Sharing instance-level and operating system resources can lead to security and isolation constraints, especially in large-scale cloud deployments. Vulnerabilities can be external, such as compromised applications, unauthorized access of resources, and shared resources. An example of an internal vulnerability is a compromised Oracle process.

Ideally, a database instance protects all resources from unauthorized access from all methods. For database instance and PDB protection, the requirements are as follows:

- The database instance and its resources must not be accessed by the *oracle* operating system user or a high-privileged operating system user.
- Another database instance or application, whether in the same Oracle home or a different Oracle home, must not have access to the database instance.
- Processes from one PDB must not access resources belonging to either the CDB or another PDB.

DbNest is the Oracle solution for database instance and PDB protection. This infrastructure enables a database instance to run in a protected, virtualized environment.

The infrastructure is implemented as a Linux-specific package that provides hierarchical containers, called *nests*. A CDB resides within a single parent nest, while PDBs reside within the individual child nests created within the parent. Linux processes in a PDB nest have their own process ID (PID) number spaces and cannot access PIDs in other nests. Process isolation provides a last level of defense in a security breach if a malicious user compromises a process.
20.3.1.2 How DbNest Works

DbNest achieves isolation and file system access controls using Linux namespaces.

20.3.1.2.1 Linux Namespaces

A namespace wraps a global system resource in an abstraction that makes it appear to processes within the namespace that they have their own isolated instance of the global resource.

Important types of namespaces are:

- **Process namespace**
  A namespace has an independent set of process IDs. The first process initializes the namespace. Every process inside the namespace receives a process ID, starting with 1. Each process can only see the processes inside the namespace.

- **User ID namespace**
  A user namespace maps user IDs between the namespace and the operating system. The `oracle` user can create a namespace without the need for system-wide root privileges. Configured properly, the `oracle` is effectively a root user inside this namespace, but this privilege is restricted to the namespace.

- **Mount namespace**
  Mount namespaces control mount points. A mount point within a child namespace is not visible to its parent. However, any mount operations within the parent namespace are visible to the child.

Linux namespaces provide the operating system infrastructure for dbNest, enabling different nests to function as independent virtual environments.

20.3.1.2.2 DbNest Properties

A nest is a runtime environment that Oracle Database creates for every CDB, PDB, or application container.

Each nest corresponds to exactly one container. The nest hierarchy exactly mirrors the container hierarchy. Because a CDB can contain one or more PDBs, a parent CDB nest can have one or more child nests. Each child nest corresponds to the PDB that can be contained in the nest.

A **database nest instance** is the collection of all nests and metadata associated with a CDB. For example, assume that a parent nest contains a CDB, and each of its 99 PDBs is in a separate child nest. In this case, the database nest instance for this CDB contains 100 nests. A database nest instance can contain a maximum of 4000 nests. If a host contains $x$ number of CDBs, then $4000x$ nests are supported on this host, up to a maximum of 8142.

A nest has the following properties:

- **Operating system isolation**
  A nest isolates operating system resources such as the process ID, user, and mount by providing a virtualized environment in which an application runs. The hierarchical structure provides visibility for the parent nest to access the child
nests. A process belonging to one PDB is not visible to other PDBs or the CDB root.

- **File system isolation**
  Within a nest, you can control the visibility for file system entities, so that critical or unrelated entities are hidden from other nests. For example, within `hrpdb`, you might make only the following file system entities visible within the nest: `/lib`, `$ORACLE_HOME/lib`, the data file path, the trace file path, and the ETL staging area. The shell, device files, and mount configuration are not accessible to PDBs in other nests.

  A **pivot root** in Linux namespaces is equivalent to `chroot`: an operation that changes what the current running process sees as the root directory. A **bind mount** enables the contents of one directory to be accessible in a different directory. The two directories are independent. Using bind mounts, the same files can be located in multiple `chroot` environments without copying the contents.

- **Resource management**
  You can control and monitor the resources of a nest, including CPU and memory. The resources available for a nest are based on the availability of the same resources from parent nest.

- **Secure computing mode (seccomp)**
  Database Nest uses seccomp to filter out system calls that could be unnecessary or malicious. Internally, seccomp uses Berkeley Packet Filters (BPF).

  The isolation and resource management properties of a nest are separate. A **full nest** includes both isolation and resource management. Alternatively, you can configure a partial nest that includes only resource management.

### 20.3.1.2.3 DbNest Architecture

The dbNest library is integrated with Oracle Database binaries, forming a single virtual environment.

The dbNest interface layer manages the Linux namespaces, resources, file system, and so on. This interface layer interacts with the CDB, which maintains a table that maps PDBs to nests.

The following figure illustrates the basic architecture of dbNest for a CDB that contains two PDBs.
The graphic shows one nest hierarchy. The parent nest contains the CDB root, including the database background processes. If Oracle ASM storage is used, then the storage security model is provided by Oracle ASM.

The parent nest has two child nests: one containing PDB1 and its foreground processes, and one containing PDB2 and its foreground processes. Each PDB only has access to the relevant file system, trace files, and Oracle home files within its own nest. Each nest manages its own CPU, memory, and network resources.

In the preceding diagram, the CDB nest hierarchy has no access to operating system processes and files. For example, PDB1 cannot access a Linux shell, system files, or application processes.

20.3.1.2.4 How Oracle Database Manages a Nest

When the `DBNEST_ENABLE` initialization parameter is set to any value other than `NONE`, Oracle Database automatically creates, manages, and deletes nests. These operations are transparent to the user.

Specifically, Oracle Database performs the following operations:

- Creating a nest

  At instance startup, Oracle Database creates a parent nest for the CDB root, and one child nest for each mounted PDB. Also, a `CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE` command automatically triggers the creation of a child nest for the created PDB.
• Opening a nest

When you first log in to a PDB, the CDB opens the child nest for the PDB. Logging in to the CDB root and opening a PDB also opens the child nest for this PDB.

• Updating a nest

Resources such as CPU count may change while the CDB is running. In this case, Resource Manager updates the nest configuration automatically.

• Closing a nest

The CDB closes a PDB child nest when you close a PDB by using the connection either inside the PDB or from the CDB root. A background processes closes the nest.

• Deleting a nest

The CDB removes a PDB child nest when the PDB is deleted or unplugged. When the database instance is shut down, the CDB parent nest is removed.

20.3.1.3 User Interface for DbNest

By default, dbNest is disabled. You can enable and configure it using initialization parameters.

20.3.1.3.1 User Interface for DbNest

You can manually enable and configure dbNest by using initialization parameters.

To set the following initialization parameters using ALTER SYSTEM, the instance must have been started with a server parameter file, and you must set SCOPE=SPFILE.

Table 20-1 Initialization Parameters for DbNest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DBNEST_ENABLE</td>
<td>Enables or disables dbNest. This parameter accepts the following values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disables dbNest. This is the default value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• CDB_RESOURCE_PDB_ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enables full nest for PDBs and a resource-only nest for the CDB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To set this parameter, a dedicated broker must have been configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBNEST_PDB_FS_CONF</td>
<td>Specifies the location of an optional file system configuration file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.3.1.3.2 DbNest Configuration File

The configuration file, which applies to the whole CDB, lists paths to be mounted inside the CDB. These paths are in addition to the default paths.

Syntax for the Configuration File

A path specification has the following syntax:

```
source [destination [options]]
```

The first two placeholders are defined as follows:
• **source**
  Specifies the source directory in which to mount. If you specify the source as `dev`, then the file system mounts a special directory that contains only the following files: `zero`, `random`, `urandom`, `shm`.

• **destination**
  Specifies an optional destination directory. If no directory is specified, then the database uses `source` as the destination.

    **Note:**
    Both `source` and `destination` can be environment variables.

• **options**
  Options require `destination` to be set. Options can be any of the following:
  - `ro` specifies read-only mount.
  - `nosetuid` specifies no setuid execution through files in this directory.
  - `noexec` specifies no execution of any binaries in this directory.
  - `optional` specifies that this directory will be mounted only if the source is available.

**Tokens for the Source and Destination Directories**

The source and destination can have tokens in the form `$TOKEN` or `${TOKEN}`. You can provide the token either as an environment variable or through options in the dbNest library call. The library call uses the format `name[array], value[array]`. A user-provided name-value pair takes precedence.

DbNest supports the following tokens:

- PDB
- PDBID
- ORACLE_HOME
- ORACLE_BASE
- ORACLE_BASE_HOME
- ORACLE_BASE_CONFIG

**Directives in the Configuration File**

If `DBNEST_NO_DEFAULT` is the first line in the configuration file, then the database ignores internal default paths. If `DBNEST_NO_FS_ROOT_MODE` is specified, then subsequent directories are blocked. For example, the following syntax blacklists `/bin/usr/bin` and `$ORACLE_HOME/bin`:

```
DBNEST_NO_FS_ROOT_MODE
/bin/usr/bin
$ORACLE_HOME/bin
```
20.3.2 Enabling DbNest: Tutorial

In this tutorial, you enable a full nest for a CDB and all its PDBs.

Prerequisites

To enable dbNest, you must satisfy the following requirements:

- The CDB and PDB services registered with a local listener, which is configured to route all connections through a dedicated broker.
  When a client connects to the database, the listener hands the connection off to the broker, which then passes the client connection to a dedicated server process. Unlike the listener, the broker is part of the database instance.
- You must have database administrator privileges.

Assumptions

This tutorial assumes the following:

- The current Linux host contains one CDB, which is open.
- You want to enable a full nest for the Linux host.
- The dedicated broker is already configured, with USE_DEDICATED_BROKER set to true in the initialization parameter file.
- A local listener is already configured, with LOCAL_LISTENER set to the listener name in the initialization parameter file. The listener.ora file has the following setting:
  
      dedicated_through_broker_listenername=on

- The CDB and PDB services are registered with the listener to redirect the connection to the broker.

To enable dbNest:

1. Start SQL*Plus, and log in to the CDB root as an administrator.
2. Ensure that the USE_DEDICATE_BROKER initialization parameter is set to true (sample output included):

   SHOW PARAMETER DEDICATED_BROKER

   +----------------+---------+---------+
   | NAME           | TYPE    | VALUE   |
   |----------------+---------+---------|
   | use_dedicated_broker | boolean | TRUE    |

3. Set the DBNEST_ENABLE initialization parameter to ALL and the scope to SPFILE:

   ALTER SYSTEM SET DBNEST_ENABLE=ALL SCOPE=SPFILE;
4. Shut down the database instance, and then reopen the database using the server parameter file:

SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE
STARTUP

The CDB instance and all PDBs are running within a database nest.

5. Optionally, search the alert log for the word "nest".

20.3.3 Configuring a File System in a Nest: Tutorial

You can configure a file system to be mounted within or excluded from a nest.

By default, dbNest mounts necessary file systems. For security reasons, you may choose to hide and reveal selected sets of directories or mount points from other nests.

Prerequisites

A nest must be currently enabled for the CDB or PDB.

Assumptions

This tutorial assumes the following:

• The CDB and all its PDBs are in a single nest.
• You want to exclude the following file systems from the nest: /bin, /usr/bin, and $ORACLE_HOME/bin.

To exclude file systems from the nest:

1. On the Linux host, create a text file named nest_blacklist.txt (or any arbitrary file name) with the following contents:

   DBNEST_NO_FS_ROOT_MODE
   /bin
   /usr/bin
   $ORACLE_HOME/bin

2. Start SQL*Plus, and log in to the CDB root as an administrator.

3. Set the DBNEST_PDB_FS_CONF initialization parameter to the name of the configuration file, and set the scope to SPFILE:

   ALTER SYSTEM SET DBNEST_PDB_FS_CONF='/dsk1/nest_blacklist.txt'
   SCOPE=SPFILE;

4. Shut down the database instance, and then reopen the database using the server parameter file:

   SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE
   STARTUP
Monitoring Multitenant Activity with Auditing

Auditing is the monitoring and recording of configured database actions.

Note:
This chapter describes only auditing as it relates to a multitenant environment. *Oracle Database Security Guide* describes database auditing in general.

21.1 Overview of Auditing in a Multitenant Environment

Auditing is the monitoring and recording of configured database actions, from both database users and nondatabase users. Nondatabase users are application users who are recognized in the database using the `CLIENT_IDENTIFIER` attribute.

You can base auditing on individual actions, such as the type of SQL statement executed, or on combinations of data that can include the user name, application, time, and so on. You can configure auditing for both successful and failed activities, and include or exclude specific users from the audit. In a multitenant environment, you can audit individual actions of the pluggable database (PDB) or individual actions in the entire multitenant container database (CDB).

Auditing is enabled by default. Audit records are written to the unified audit trail in a uniform format and are made available through the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL` view.

21.1.1 Unified Auditing in a Multitenant Environment

You can apply audit settings to individual PDBs or to the CDB, depending on the type of policy.

Each PDB, including the root, has its own unified audit trail.

- **Unified audit policies created with the CREATE AUDIT POLICY and AUDIT statements**: You can create policies for both the root and individual PDBs.
- **Audit records written to the syslog**: On UNIX platforms, you can set the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_COMMON_SYSTEMLOG` initialization parameter in the CDB root to enable certain unified audit trail columns to be written to SYSLOG. On both Windows and UNIX, you can set the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG` parameter in both the root and PDB level.
- **Fine-grained audit policies**: You can create policies for individual PDBs only, not the root.
- **Purging the audit trail**: You can perform purge operations for both the root and individual PDBs.
21.1.2 Traditional Auditing in a Multitenant Environment

In traditional auditing (not unified auditing), the `AUDIT` and `NOAUDIT` statements can audit statements and privileges in a multitenant environment.

**Note:**
Starting with Oracle Database release 20c, traditional auditing is deprecated. Oracle recommends that you use unified auditing instead.

To configure the audit policy to be either a local audit policy or a common audit policy, you must include the `CONTAINER` clause, as you normally do for other SQL creation or modification statements. If you want to audit an application container, then you can audit SQL statement and system privileges performed by local and common users and roles. The audit record will be created in the container in which the action was performed.

- If you want to apply the `AUDIT` or `NOAUDIT` statement to the current CDB or application PDB, then in this PDB, you must set `CONTAINER` to `CURRENT`. For example:

  ```sql
  AUDIT DROP ANY TABLE BY SYSTEM BY ACCESS CONTAINER = CURRENT;
  ```

- If you want to apply the `AUDIT` or `NOAUDIT` statement to the entire multitenant environment, then in the CDB root, then you must set `CONTAINER` to `ALL`. For an application container, you would set it in the application root. For example:

  ```sql
  AUDIT DROP ANY TABLE BY SYSTEM BY ACCESS CONTAINER = ALL;
  ```

To find if a traditional audit option is designed for use in an application container, perform a join query with the `DBA_OBJ_AUDIT_OPTS` and `DBA_OBJECTS` data dictionary views, by using the `OWNER` and `OBJECT_NAME` columns in both views, and the `APPLICATION` column in `DBA_OBJECTS`.

**Related Topics**

- Oracle Database Security Guide

**See Also:**
Oracle Database SQL Language Reference for more information about the traditional `AUDIT` and `NOAUDIT` SQL statements
21.1.3 About Local, CDB Common, and Application Common Audit Policies

An audit policy can be either a local audit policy, a CDB common audit policy, or an application common audit policy.

This applies to both unified audit policies and policies that are created using the AUDIT SQL statement.

• **Local audit policy.** This type of policy can exist in either the root (CDB or application) or the PDB (CDB or application). A local audit policy that exists in the root can contain object audit options for both local and common objects. Both local and common users who have been granted the AUDIT_ADMIN role can enable local policies: local users from their PDBs and common users from the root or the PDB to which they have privileges. You can enable a local audit policy for both local and common users and roles.

You can create local audit policies for application local objects and application local roles, as well as system action options and system privilege options. You cannot enforce a local audit policy for a common user across all containers, nor can you enforce a common audit policy for a local user.

• **CDB common audit policy.** This type of policy is available to all PDBs in the multitenant environment. Only common users who have been granted the AUDIT_ADMIN role can create and maintain common audit policies. You can enable common audit policies only for common users. You must create common audit policies only in the root. This type of policy can contain object audit options of only common objects, and be enabled only for common users. You can enable a common audit policy for common users and roles only.

You cannot enforce a common audit policy for a local user across all containers.

• **Application common audit policy.** Similar to CDB common audit policies, this type of policy is available to all PDBs in the multitenant environment. You can create common audit policies for application common objects and application common roles, as well as system action options and system privilege options. You can only create this type of policy in the application root container, but you can enable it on both application common users and CDB common users. If you want to audit objects, then ensure that these objects are application common objects. You can determine whether an object is an application common object by querying the SHARING column of the DBA_OBJECTS data dictionary view.

By default, audit policies are local to the current PDB, for both CDB and application scenarios.

The following table explains how audit policies apply in different multitenant environments.

**Table 21-1 How Audit Policies Apply to the CDB Root, Application Root, and Individual PDBs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audit Option Type</th>
<th>CDB Root</th>
<th>Application Root</th>
<th>Individual PDB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common audit statement or audit policy</td>
<td>Applies to CDB common users</td>
<td>Applies to CDB common users</td>
<td>Applies to CDB common users</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 21-1 (Cont.) How Audit Policies Apply to the CDB Root, Application Root, and Individual PDBs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audit Option Type</th>
<th>CDB Root</th>
<th>Application Root</th>
<th>Individual PDB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application container common audit statement or audit policy</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>• Applies to CDB common users and are valid for the current application container only</td>
<td>• Applies to CDB common users and are valid for this application container only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Applies to application container common users</td>
<td>• Applies to application common users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local audit statement or audit policy</td>
<td>Local configurations not allowed</td>
<td>Local configurations not allowed</td>
<td>• Applies to CDB common users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Applies to application common users</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.1.4 How Local or Common Audit Policies or Settings Appear in the Audit Trail

You can query unified audit policy views from either the root or the PDB in which the action occurred.

You can perform the following types of queries:

- **Audit records from all PDBs.** The audit trail reflects audited actions that have been performed in the PDBs. For example, if user `lbrown` in PDB1 performs an action that has been audited by either a common or a local audit policy, then the audit trail will capture this action. The `DBID` column in the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL` data dictionary view indicates the PDB in which the audited action takes place and to which the policy applies. If you want to see audit records from all PDBs, you should query the `CDB_UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL` data dictionary view from the root.

- **Audit records from common audit policies.** This location is where the common audit policy results in an audit record. The audit record can be generated anywhere in the multitenant environment—the root or the PDBs, depending on where the action really occurred. For example, the common audit policy `fga_pol` audits the `EXECUTE` privilege on the `DBMS_FGA` PL/SQL package, and if this action occurs in PDB1, then the audit record is generated in PDB1 and not in the root. Hence, the audit record can be seen in PDB1.

  You can query the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_TRAIL` data dictionary view for the policy from either the root or a PDB if you include a `WHERE` clause for the policy name (for example, `WHERE UNIFIED_AUDIT_POLICIES = 'FGA_POL'`).

The following example shows how to find the results of a common unified audit policy:

```
CONNECT c##sec_admin
Enter password: password
Connected.
```
21.1.5 Fine-Grained Auditing in a Multitenant Environment

You can create fine-grained audit policies in the CDB root, application root, CDB PDBs, and application PDBs.

Note the following general rules about fine-grained audit policies:

- You cannot create fine-grained audit policies on `SYS` objects.
- You cannot create fine-grained audit policies, either local or application common, for extended data link objects.
- When you create a fine-grained audit policy in the CDB root, the policy cannot be applied to all PDBs. It only applies to objects within the CDB root. (In other words, there is no such thing as a common fine-grained audit policy for the CDB root.) If you want to create a fine-grained audit policy to audit a common object’s access in all the PDBs, then you must explicitly create that policy in each PDB and then enable it on the common objects that is accessible in the PDB.
- When you create a fine-grained audit policy in a PDB, it applies only to objects within the PDB.
- You can create application common fine-grained audit policies only if you are connected to the application root and only within the `BEGIN/END` block. If you are connected to the application root and create the fine-grained audit policy outside the `BEGIN/END` block, then the fine-grained audit policy is created in the application root.
- You cannot create application common fine-grained audit policies on local PDB objects.
- If the application common fine-grained audit policy has a handler, then this handler must be owned by either an application common user or a CDB common user.
- You can create an application fine-grained audit policy on local (PDB) objects and CDB common objects. Because the policy is local to its container, the object on which the policy is defined is audited only in the particular container where the policy is defined. For example, if you create a fine-grained audit policy in the `hr_pdb` PDB, the object for which you create this policy must exist in the `hr_pdb` PDB.
- You cannot create local fine-grained audit policies in an application PDB on object linked and extended data link objects. On metadata-linked objects are allowed in the fine-grained audit policy.
- Application root local policies are allowed for all application common objects.
- When you create a fine-grained audit policy as a common audit policy in an application root, it will be effective in each PDB that belongs to this application root. Therefore, any access to the application common object and CDB common object (on which the application common fine-grained audit policy is defined) from...
the application PDB is audited in the fine-grained audit trail in that application PDB.

• When you create scripts for application install, upgrade, patch, or uninstall operations, you can include SQL statements within the ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE app_name BEGIN INSTALL and ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE app_name END INSTALL blocks to perform various operations. You can include fine-grained audit policy statements only within these blocks.

• You can only enable, disable, or drop application common fine-grained audit policies from the application root, and from within a ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE app_name BEGIN INSTALL and ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE app_name END INSTALL block in a script.

Related Topics
• Oracle Database Security Guide

21.2 Configuring a Local Unified Audit Policy or Common Unified Audit Policy

The CONTAINER clause is specific to multitenant environment use for the CREATE AUDIT POLICY statement.

To create a local or common (CDB or application) unified audit policy in either the CDB environment or an application container environment, include the CONTAINER clause in the CREATE AUDIT POLICY statement.

• Use the following syntax to create a local or common unified audit policy:

```
CREATE AUDIT POLICY policy_name
action1 [, action2 ]
[CONTAINER = {CURRENT | ALL}];
```

In this specification:

• CURRENT sets the audit policy to be local to the current PDB.

• ALL makes the audit policy a common audit policy, that is, available to the entire multitenant environment.

For example, for a common unified audit policy:

```
CREATE AUDIT POLICY dict_updates
ACTIONS UPDATE ON SYS.USER$,
DELETE ON SYS.USER$,
UPDATE ON SYS.LINK$,
DELETE ON SYS.LINK$
CONTAINER = ALL;
```

Note the following:

• You can set the CONTAINER clause for the CREATE AUDIT POLICY statement but not for ALTER AUDIT POLICY or DROP AUDIT POLICY. If you want to change the scope of an existing unified audit policy to use this setting, then you must drop and re-create the policy.
• For AUDIT statements, you can set the CONTAINER clause for audit settings only if you have an Oracle database that has not been migrated to the Release 12.x and later audit features. You cannot use the CONTAINER clause in an AUDIT statement that is used to enable a unified audit policy.

• If you are in a PDB, then you can only set the CONTAINER clause to CURRENT, not ALL. If you omit the setting while in the PDB, then the default is CONTAINER = CURRENT.

• If you are in the root, then you can set the CONTAINER clause to either CURRENT if you want the policy to apply to the root only, or to ALL if you want the policy to apply to the entire CDB. If you omit the CONTAINER clause, then default is CONTAINER = CURRENT.

• For objects:
  – Common audit policies can have common objects only and local audit policies can have both local objects and common objects.
  – You cannot set CONTAINER to ALL if the objects involved are local. They must be common objects.

• For privileges:
  – You can set the CONTAINER to CURRENT (or omit the CONTAINER clause) if the user accounts involved are a mixture of local and common accounts. This creates a local audit configuration that applies only to the current PDB.
  – You cannot set CONTAINER to ALL if the users involved are local users. They must be common users.
  – If you set CONTAINER to ALL and do not specify a user list (using the BY clause in the AUDIT statement), then the configuration applies to all common users in each PDB.

• For application containers, you can run a common unified audit policy from the application container script that is used for application install, upgrade, patch, and uninstall operations. To do so:
  1. Create a common unified audit policy in the application container root, and set this policy to CONTAINER = ALL. Alternatively, you can include this policy in the script that is described in this next step.
  2. Create a custom version of the script you normally would use to install, upgrade, patch, or uninstall Oracle Database.
  3. Within this script, include the SQL statements that you want to audit within the following lines:

     ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION BEGIN INSTALL
     List SQL statements here. Separate each statement with a semi-colon.
     ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION END INSTALL

     If you include the unified audit policy in the script, then ensure that you include both the CREATE AUDIT POLICY and AUDIT POLICY statements.

After the audit policy is created and enabled, all user access to the application common objects is audited irrespective of whether the audit policy is defined in the database or from the script.
• To audit application install, upgrade, patch, and uninstall operations locally in an application root or an application PDB, follow a procedure similar to the preceding procedure for common unified audit policies, but synchronize the application PDB afterward. For example:

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION application_name SYNC;
```

Related Topics

• Managing Applications in an Application Container
  You install, upgrade, or patch an application in an application container.

21.3 Configuring Auditing in a Multitenant Environment: Examples

The examples in this section show various uses of `CREATE AUDIT POLICY`.

21.3.1 Example: Local Unified Audit Policy

The `CREATE AUDIT POLICY` statement can create a local unified audit policy in either the root or a PDB.

When you create a local unified audit policy in the root, it only applies to the root and not across the multitenant environment.

The following example shows a local unified audit policy that has been created by the common user `c##sec_admin` from a PDB and applied to common user `c##hr_admin`.

**Example 21-1  Local Unified Audit Policy**

```
CONNECT c##sec_admin@pdb_name
Enter password: password
Connected.

CREATE AUDIT POLICY tablePrivs
  PRIVILEGES CREATE ANY TABLE, DROP ANY TABLE
  CONTAINER = CURRENT;

AUDIT POLICY tablePrivs BY c##hr_admin;
```

21.3.2 Example: CDB Common Unified Audit Policy

The `CREATE AUDIT POLICY` statement can create a CDB common unified audit policy.

**Example 21-2** shows a common unified audit policy that has been created by the common user `c##sec_admin` from the root and applied to common user `c##hr_admin`.

**Example 21-2  Common Unified Audit Policy**

```
CONNECT c##sec_admin
Enter password: password
Connected.
```
CREATE AUDIT POLICY admin_pol
ACTIONS CREATE TABLE, ALTER TABLE, DROP TABLE
ROLES c##hr_mgr, c##hr_sup
CONTAINER = ALL;

AUDIT POLICY admin_pol BY c##hr_admin;

21.3.3 Example: Application Common Unified Audit Policy

For application container common unified audit policies, you can audit action options and system privilege options, and refer to common objects and roles.

You can create the application common audit policy only from the application root, and enable the policy for both application common users and CDB common users.

The following example shows how to create a policy that audits the application common user SYSTEM for the application container app_pdb. The audit policy audits SELECT actions on the SYSTEM.utils_tab table and on DROP TABLE actions on any of the PDBs in the container database, including the CDB root. The policy also audits the use of the SELECT ANY TABLE system privilege across all containers.

Example 21-3 Application Common Unified Audit Policy

CONNECT c##sec_admin@app_pdb
Enter password: password
Connected.

CREATE AUDIT POLICY app_pdb_admin_pol
ACTIONS SELECT ON hr_app_cdb.utils_tab, DROP TABLE
PRIVILEGES SELECT ANY TABLE
CONTAINER = ALL;

AUDIT POLICY app_pdb_admin_pol by SYSTEM, c##hr_admin;

In the preceding example, setting CONTAINER to ALL applies the policy only to all the relevant object accesses in the application root and on all the application PDBs that belong to the application root. It does not apply the policy outside this scope.

21.3.4 Example: Auditing the Predefined Common DBA Role

The CREATE AUDIT POLICY statement can audit roles in both the root and in PDBs.

The following example shows how to audit a predefined common role DBA.

Example 21-4 Auditing the Predefined Common DBA Role

CREATE AUDIT POLICY role_dba_audit_pol
ROLES DBA
CONTAINER = ALL;

AUDIT POLICY role_dba_audit_pol;
21.4 Enabling SYSLOG and Windows Event Viewer Captures for the Unified Audit Trail

You can write a subset of unified audit trail records to the UNIX SYSLOG or to the Windows Event Viewer.

1. Locate the init.ora initialization file, which by default is in the $ORACLE_HOME/dbs directory.

2. Edit the init.ora file to include the UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG parameter.

You can set UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG in either the CDB root or in a PDB.

In an Oracle Database Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) environment, set UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG to the same value on each Oracle RAC instance.

- On Windows, set UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG to either TRUE or FALSE. TRUE writes the SYSLOG values to the Windows Event Viewer; FALSE disables the parameter. On Windows, the default is FALSE. For example:

  UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG = TRUE

- On UNIX systems, use the following syntax:

  UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG = 'facility_clause.priority_clause'

There is no default setting for UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG on UNIX systems.

In this specification:

- facility_clause refers to the facility to which you will write the audit trail records. Valid choices are USER and LOCAL. If you enter LOCAL, then optionally append 0–7 to designate a local custom facility for the SYSLOG records.

- priority_clause refers to the type of warning in which to categorize the record. Valid choices are NOTICE, INFO, DEBUG, WARNING, ERR, CRIT, ALERT, and EMERG.

For example:

  UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG = 'LOCAL7.EMERG'

3. On UNIX platforms, to write unified audit records to SYSLOG set the UNIFIED_AUDIT_COMMON_SYSTEMLOG parameter to either TRUE or FALSE in the init.ora file in the root.

   Setting UNIFIED_AUDIT_COMMON_SYSTEMLOG to TRUE writes predefined columns of unified audit records from common unified audit policies to SYSLOG. FALSE disables these columns from being written to SYSLOG.

   You cannot set this parameter in a pluggable database (PDB). There is no Windows equivalent of the UNIFIED_AUDIT_COMMON_SYSTEMLOG parameter.

4. Add the audit file destination to the SYSLOG configuration file /etc/syslog.conf.
For example, assuming you had set the `UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG` to `LOCAL7.EMERG`, enter the following:

```
local7.emerg /var/log/audit.log
```

This setting logs all emergency messages to the `/var/log/audit.log` file.

5. Restart the SYSLOG logger.

```
$ /etc/rc.d/init.d/syslog restart
```

Now, all audit records will be captured in the file `/var/log/audit.log` through the `syslog` daemon.

6. Log back in to the database instance.

7. Restart the database.
   For example:

   ```
   SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE
   STARTUP
   ```

   If you set `UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG` in a PDB, then close and reopen the PDB:

   ```
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name OPEN;
   ```

**Related Topics**

- *Oracle Database Reference*
22 Using Oracle Database Vault with a CDB

You can use Oracle Database Vault in a multitenant container database (CDB).

22.1 About Oracle Database Vault

The Oracle Database Vault security controls protect application data from unauthorized access, and comply with privacy and regulatory requirements.

You can deploy controls to block privileged account access to application data and control sensitive operations inside the database using trusted path authorization. Through the analysis of privileges and roles, you can increase the security of existing applications by using least privilege best practices. Oracle Database Vault secures existing database environments transparently, eliminating costly and time consuming application changes.

Related Topics

- Oracle Database Vault Administrator's Guide

22.2 How Oracle Database Vault Works in a Multitenant Environment

Using Oracle Database Vault in a multitenant environment increases security for consolidation.

〉 Note:

A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, "database" and "non-CDB" refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, "non-CDB" refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

Oracle Database Vault can prevent privileged user access inside a pluggable database (PDB) and between the PDB and the common privileged user at the container database. Each PDB has its own Database Vault metadata, such as realms, rule sets, command rules, default policies (such as default realms), and so on. In addition, the objects within the DVSYS and DVF schemas are automatically available to any child PDBs. Both schemas are common user schemas.

You can configure common realms in the application root only, but you can create common rule sets and command rules in either the application root or the CDB root. A common command rule in the application root applies to its associated PDBs, and common command rules in the CDB root apply to all PDBs in the CDB environment. The ability to create common realms and command rules enables you to create
policies that use a shared set of realms, rule sets, or command rules throughout the CDB environments, rather than having to create these same components for every PDB in the multitenant environment. The common protection applies for all PDBs associated with the application root that have Oracle Database Vault enabled.

You can create individual local policies for each PDB. When you use Database Vault to protect an object, Database Vault subjects common privileges for common objects to the same enforcement rules as local system privileges.

When you configure a PDB that has Database Vault enabled, the DVSYS schema is a common user schema that is stored in the root. This means that all the objects within the DVSYS schema (tables, data dictionary views, user accounts, PL/SQL packages, default policies, and so on) are subject to the common privileges available for this schema. In other words, you can create realms, factors, and so on in the root to protect the schema in the root. Ensure that you configure Database Vault in the root first, before you configure it in the associated PDBs.

When you enable Oracle Database Vault in the CDB root, you can choose either regular mode or strict mode. The settings propagate throughout the CDB based on the setting you choose. For example, suppose a CDB contains both Database Vault-enabled PDBs and PDBs in which Database Vault is not enabled. If you enable Database Vault using regular mode, then both types of PDBs continue to function normally. If you enable Database Vault using strict mode, then the Database Vault-disabled PDBs operate in restricted mode.

Figure 22-1 illustrates how the database in regular mode allows different access for common and local database administrators depending if Database Vault is enabled. In this scenario, neither the common user nor the local users have access to the realms in PDB1 and PDB2. Both the common user and the PDB3 local user have access to the Custom App application in PDB3, where Database Vault is not enabled.

Figure 22-1  Oracle Database Vault in a Multitenant Environment with Regular Mode
Related Topics

- **Realms in a Multitenant Environment**
  You can create a realm to protect common objects in the application root.

- **Rule Sets and Rules in a Multitenant Environment**
  You can create a rule set and its associated rules in the application root.

- **Command Rules in a Multitenant Environment**
  You can create common and local command rules in either the CDB root or the application root.

- **Converting a Standalone Oracle Database to a PDB and Plugging It into a CDB**
  You can convert a standalone Oracle Database database from release 12c through 19c to a PDB, and then plug this PDB into a CDB.

---

22.3 Verifying That Database Vault Is Configured and Enabled

The `DBA_DV_STATUS`, `CDB_DV_STATUS`, and `DBA_OLS_STATUS` data dictionary views verify if Oracle Database is configured and enabled.

In addition to Oracle Database Vault administrators, the Oracle Database `SYS` user and users who have been granted the `DBA` role can query these views.

- **For Database Vault:**
  - If you want to find the Database Vault status for the root only or an individual PDB, then query `DBA_DV_STATUS`. For example:

    ```sql
    SELECT * FROM DBA_DV_STATUS;
    ```

    Output similar to the following appears:

    | NAME                | STATUS |
    |---------------------|--------|
    | DV_CONFIGURE_STATUS | TRUE   |
    | DV_ENABLE_STATUS    | TRUE   |

  - If you want to find the Database Vault status of all PDBs in the multitenant environment, then as a common user with administrative privileges, query `CDB_DV_STATUS`, which provides the addition of a container ID (`CON_ID`) field.

- **For Oracle Label Security**, query the `DBA_OLS_STATUS` data dictionary view.

---

22.4 Registering Oracle Database Vault

You can register Oracle Database Vault based on several scenarios.

22.4.1 Registering Database Vault in the CDB Root

You register Oracle Database Vault with common users who will use the Database Vault-enforced roles in the CDB root.
1. Log into the root of the database instance as a user who has privileges to create users and grant the `CREATE SESSION` and `SET CONTAINER` privileges.

For example:

```sql
sqlplus c##dba_debra
Enter password: password
```

2. Select user accounts (or create new users) that will be used for the Database Vault Owner (`DV_OWNER` role) and Database Vault Account Manager (`DV_ACCTMGR` role) accounts.

Oracle strongly recommends that you maintain two accounts for each role. One account, the primary named user account, will be used on a day-to-day basis and the other account will be used as a backup account in case the password of the primary account is lost and must be reset.

Prepend the names of these accounts with `c##` or `C##`. For example:

```sql
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO c##sec_admin_owen
   IDENTIFIED BY password CONTAINER = ALL;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO c##dbv_owner_root_backup
   IDENTIFIED BY password CONTAINER = ALL;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO c##accts_admin_ace
   IDENTIFIED BY password CONTAINER = ALL;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO c##dbv_acctmgr_root_backup
   IDENTIFIED BY password CONTAINER = ALL;
```

In this specification:

- Create the primary accounts (`c##sec_admin_owen` and `c##accts_admin_ace`) if these do not already exist for the new roles, `DV_ADMIN` and `DV_ACCTMGR`.
- Replace `password` with a password that is secure.

3. Connect to the root as user `SYS` with the `SYSDBA` administrative privilege

```sql
CONNECT SYS AS SYSDBA
Enter password: password
```

4. Configure the two backup Database Vault user accounts.

For example:

```sql
BEGIN
    CONFIGURE_DV (
        dvowner_uname => 'c##dbv_owner_root_backup',
        dvacctmgr_uname => 'c##dbv_acctmgr_root_backup',
        force_local_dvowner => FALSE);
END;
/
```

In this example, setting `force_local_dvowner` to `FALSE` enables the common users to have `DV_OWNER` privileges for the PDBs that are associated with this CDB root. Setting it to `TRUE` restricts the common `DV_OWNER` user to have the `DV_OWNER` role privileges for the CDB root only. If you grant `DV_OWNER` locally to the CDB root...
common user, then that user cannot grant the **DV_OWNER** role commonly to any other user.

5. Run the `utlrp.sql` script to recompile invalidated objects in the root.

```sql
@%/rdbms/admin/utlrp.sql
```

If the script provides instructions, follow them, and then run the script again. If the script terminates abnormally without giving any instructions, then run it again.

6. Connect to the root as the primary Database Vault Owner user that you just configured.

For example:

```sql
CONNECT c##dbv_owner_root_backup
Enter password: password
```

7. Enable Oracle Database Vault using one of the following commands:

- To enable Oracle Database Vault to use regular mode:

  ```sql
  EXEC DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_DV;
  ```

- If every associated PDB will need to have Database Vault enabled in this database, then use the following command. (You will need to enable each of these PDBs after you complete this procedure.) PDBs that do not have Database Vault enabled will be in restricted mode after the database is restarted and until Database Vault is enabled in the PDB:

  ```sql
  EXEC DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_DV (strict_mode => 'y');
  ```

8. Connect with the **SYSDBA** administrative privilege.

```sql
CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
```

9. Restart the database.

```sql
SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE
STARTUP
```

10. Verify that Oracle Database Vault and Oracle Label Security are installed and enabled.

```sql
SELECT * FROM DBA_DV_STATUS;
SELECT * FROM DBA_OLS_STATUS;
```

11. Connect as the backup **DV_OWNER** user and then grant the **DV_OWNER** role to the primary **DV_OWNER** user that you created earlier.

For example:

```sql
CONNECT c##dbv_owner_root_backup
Enter password: password
```
GRANT DV_OWNER TO c##sec_admin_owen WITH ADMIN OPTION;

12. Connect as the backup DV_ACCTMGR user and then grant the DV_ACCTMGR role to the backup DV_ACCTMGR user.
   For example:
   
   CONNECT c##dbv_acctmgr_root_backup
   Enter password: password
   
   GRANT DV_ACCTMGR TO c##accts_admin_ace WITH ADMIN OPTION;

13. Store the two backup account passwords in a safe location such as a privileged account management (PAM) system in case they are needed in the future.

Related Topics

- Verifying That Database Vault Is Configured and Enabled
  The DBA_DV_STATUS, CDB_DV_STATUS, and DBA_OLS_STATUS data dictionary views verify if Oracle Database is configured and enabled.
- Oracle Database Vault Administrator’s Guide
- Oracle Database Vault Administrator’s Guide

22.4.2 Registering Database Vault Common Users to Manage Specific PDBs

You must register Oracle Database Vault in the root first, then in the PDBs afterward.

If you try to register in a PDB first, then an ORA-47503: Database Vault is not enabled on CDB$ROOT error appears.

1. If you have not already done so, then identify or create named common user accounts to be used as the Database Vault accounts along with associated backup accounts.

2. Ensure that you have registered Oracle Database Vault in the CDB root and that the DV_OWNER role was granted commonly to the common user.

3. Connect to the PDB as an administrator who is local to the PDB.
   For example:
   
   CONNECT dba_debra@pdb_name
   Enter password: password
   
   To find the available PDBs, query the DBA_PDBS data dictionary view. To check the current PDB, run the show con_name command.

4. Grant the CREATE SESSION and SET CONTAINER privileges to the users for this PDB.
   For example:
   
   GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO c##sec_admin_owen CONTAINER = CURRENT;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO c#accts_admin_ace CONTAINER = CURRENT;

5. Connect as user SYS with the SYSDBA administrative privilege

CONNECT SYS@pdb_name AS SYSDBA
Enter password: password

6. While still in the PDB, configure the two backup Database Vault user accounts.

BEGIN
  CONFIGURE_DV (dOWNER_uname => 'c#dbv_owner_root_backup',
                  dvacctmgr_uname => 'c#dbv_acctmgr_root_backup');
END;
/

In this example, the force_local_dvowner parameter is omitted because it is unnecessary. All common users who are configured within a PDB are restricted to the scope of the PDB.

7. Run the utlrp.sql script to recompile invalidated objects in this PDB.

@?/rdbms/admin/utlrp.sql

If the script provides instructions, follow them, and then run the script again. If the script terminates abnormally without giving any instructions, then run it again.

8. Connect to the PDB as the backup Database Vault Owner user that you just configured.

For example:

CONNECT c#dbv_owner_root_backup@pdb_name
Enter password: password

9. Enable Oracle Database Vault in this PDB.

EXEC DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_DV;

10. Connect to the CDB with the SYSDBA administrative privilege.

CONNECT / AS SYSDBA

11. Close and reopen the PDB.

For example:

ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name OPEN;
12. Verify that the PDB is configured and enabled for Database Vault and Oracle Label Security.

```
CONNECT SYS@pdb_name AS SYSDBA
Enter password: password
SELECT * FROM DBA_DV_STATUS;
SELECT * FROM DBA_OLS_STATUS;
``` 

13. Connect as the backup DV_OWNER user and then grant the DV_OWNER role to the primary DV_OWNER user that you created earlier.
   For example:

```
CONNECT c##dbv_owner_root_backup@pdb_name
Enter password: password
GRANT DV_OWNER TO c##sec_admin_owen WITH ADMIN OPTION;
``` 

14. Connect as the backup DV_ACCTMGR user and then grant the DV_ACCTMGR role to the primary DV_ACCTMGR user.
   For example:

```
CONNECT c##dbv_acctmgr_root_backup@pdb_name
Enter password: password
GRANT DV_ACCTMGR TO c##accts_admin_ace WITH ADMIN OPTION;
``` 

15. Store the two backup account passwords in a safe location such as a privileged account management (PAM) system in case they are needed in the future.

Related Topics

- Verifying That Database Vault Is Configured and Enabled
  The DBA_DV_STATUS, CDB_DV_STATUS, and DBA_OLS_STATUS data dictionary views verify if Oracle Database is configured and enabled.
- Oracle Database Vault Administrator’s Guide
- Oracle Database Vault Administrator’s Guide

22.4.3 Registering Database Vault Local Users to Manage Specific PDBs

You must register Oracle Database Vault in the root first, and then in the PDBs afterward.

If you try to register in a PDB first, then an ORA-47503: Database Vault is not enabled on CDB$ROOT error appears.

1. Log in to the PDB as a user who has privileges to create users and to grant the CREATE SESSION and SET CONTAINER privileges.
For example:

```
sqlplus sec_admin@pdb_name
Enter password: password
```

To find the available PDBs, query the `DBA_PDBS` data dictionary view. To check the current PDB, run the `show con_name` command.

2. If you are not using existing local user named accounts for the new Database Vault roles, create new named local user accounts.

In both cases, you must create backup accounts to hold the Database Vault roles in case the named user loses or forgets their password.

```
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO sec_admin_owen
   IDENTIFIED BY password;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO dbv_owner_backup
   IDENTIFIED BY password;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO accts_admin_ace
   IDENTIFIED BY password;
GRANT CREATE SESSION, SET CONTAINER TO dbv_acctmgr_backup
   IDENTIFIED BY password;
```

3. Ensure that you have registered Oracle Database Vault in the CDB root.

Temporarily connect to the root and then query the `DBA_DV_STATUS` view.

```
CONNECT SYS / AS SYSDBA
Enter password: password
SELECT * FROM DBA_DV_STATUS;
```

4. Connect to the PDB as user SYS with the SYSDBA administrative privilege.

```
CONNECT SYS@pdb_name AS SYSDBA
Enter password: password
```

5. While still in the PDB, configure the two backup Database Vault user accounts.

```
BEGIN
  CONFIGURE_DV (
    dvowner_uname     => 'dbv_owner_backup',
    dvacctmgr_uname   => 'dbv_acctmgr_backup');
END;
/
```

In this example, the `force_local_dvowner` parameter is omitted because it is unnecessary. Database Vault roles are granted locally when configured in a PDB.

6. Run the `utlrp.sql` script to recompile invalidated objects in this PDB.

```
@?/rdbms/admin/utlrp.sql
```
If the script provides instructions, follow them, and then run the script again. If the script terminates abnormally without giving any instructions, run it again.

7. Connect to the PDB as the backup Database Vault Owner user that you just configured.
   For example:
   ```
   CONNECT dbv_owner_backup@pdb_name
   Enter password: password
   ```

8. Enable Oracle Database Vault in this PDB.
   ```
   EXEC DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_DV;
   ```

9. Connect to the CDB with the SYSDBA administrative privilege.
   ```
   CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
   ```

10. Close and reopen the PDB.
    ```
    ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
    ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name OPEN;
    ```

11. Verify that the PDB is configured and enabled for Database Vault and Oracle Label Security.
    ```
    CONNECT SYS@pdb_name AS SYSDBA
    Enter password: password
    SELECT * FROM DBA_DV_STATUS;
    SELECT * FROM DBA_OLS_STATUS;
    ```

12. Connect as the backup DV_OWNER user and then grant the DV_OWNER role to the primary DV_OWNER user that you created earlier.
    For example:
    ```
    CONNECT dbv_owner_backup@pdb_name
    Enter password: password
    GRANT DV_OWNER TO sec_admin_owen WITH ADMIN OPTION;
    ```

13. Connect as the backup DV_ACCTMGR user and then grant the DV_ACCTMGR role to the backup DV_ACCTMGR user.
    For example:
    ```
    CONNECT dbv_acctmgr_backup@pdb_name
    Enter password: password
    GRANT DV_ACCTMGR TO c##accts_admin_ace WITH ADMIN OPTION;
    ```

14. Store the two backup account passwords in a safe location such as a privileged account management (PAM) system in case they are needed in the future.
22.4.4 Manually Installing Oracle Database Vault

Under certain conditions, you must manually install Oracle Database Vault.
For example, you must manually install Oracle Database Vault if a release 11g Oracle
database without Database Vault is upgraded to release 12c, then converted to a PDB
to be plugged into a 12c Database Vault-enabled database. In addition, you must
manually install Oracle Database Vault (and Oracle Label Security) in a PDB if this
PDB does not have these products when the PDB has been plugged into a CDB
where Database Vault and Label Security are installed.

1. As user who has been granted the SYSDBA administrative privilege, log in to the
   PDB in which you want to install Oracle Database Vault.

   sqlplus sec_admin@pdb_name as sysdba
   Enter password: password

   To find the available PDBs, query the DBA_PDBS data dictionary view. To check the
current PDB, run the show con_name command.

2. If necessary, check if Oracle Database Vault and Oracle Label Security are
   already installed on this PDB.
   If the DVSYS account (for Database Vault) and the LBACSYS account (for Label
   Security) exist, then Database Vault and Label Security exist on the PDB.

   SELECT USERNAME FROM DBA_USERS WHERE USERNAME IN ('DVSYS', 'LBACSYS');

3. If neither Database Vault nor Label Security have been installed, then install
   Oracle Label Security by executing the catols.sql script.

   @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catols.sql

   Oracle Label Security must be installed before you can install Oracle Database
   Vault.

4. Install Oracle Database Vault by executing the catmac.sql script.

   @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/catmac.sql

5. At the Enter value for 1 prompt, enter SYSTEM as the tablespace to install DVSYS.

6. At the Enter value for 2 prompt, enter the temporary tablespace for the PDB.

   After the installation is complete, you can register Oracle Database Vault in the PDB. If
   Database Vault is not registered in the CDB already, you must close the PDB before
   you can register Database Vault in the CDB root. Database Vault must be registered in
   CDB root before it can be registered in the PDB. After Database Vault is registered in
   the CDB root and the database has been restarted, then you can open the PDB and
   register Database Vault.

Related Topics

- Oracle Database Vault Administrator's Guide
22.5 Configuring Realms

You can create a realm around database objects to protect them, and then set authorizations to control user access to this data.

22.5.1 What Are Realms?

Realms enable you to protect database objects, including specific object types.

22.5.1.1 About Realms

A realm is a grouping of database schemas, database objects, and database roles that must be secured for a given application.

Think of a realm as zone of protection for your database objects. A schema is a logical collection of database objects such as tables, views, and packages, and a role is a collection of privileges. By arranging schemas and roles into functional groups, you can control the ability of users to use system privileges against these groups and prevent unauthorized data access by the database administrator or other powerful users with system privileges. Oracle Database Vault does not replace the discretionary access control model in the existing Oracle database. It functions as a layer on top of this model for both realms and command rules.

Oracle Database Vault provides two types of realms: regular and mandatory. Both realm types can protect either an entire schema or crucial objects within a schema selectively, such as tables and indexes. With a regular realm, an object owner or users who has been granted object privileges can perform queries or DML operations without realm authorization but must have realm authorization to perform DDL operations. A mandatory realm provides stronger protection for objects within a realm. Mandatory realms block both object privilege-based and system privilege-based access and will not allow users with object privileges to perform queries, DML, or DDL operations without realm authorization. In other words, even an object owner cannot access his or her own objects without proper realm authorization if the objects are protected by mandatory realms.

For databases that use Oracle Flashback Technology, then both regular and mandatory realms will enforce the same behavior for a flashback table. Users can execute a \texttt{FLASHBACK TABLE} SQL statement on a realm-protected table if the user is authorized to the realm.

For databases that use Information Lifecycle Management (ILM), a Database Vault administrator can use the \texttt{DBMS_MACADM.AUTHORIZE_MAINTENANCE_USER} and \texttt{DBMS_MACADM.UNAUTHORIZE_MAINTENANCE_USER} procedure to control who can perform ILM operations on realm-protected objects.

You can register schemas, all objects of a certain type in a schema, or individual objects within a schema into a realm. After you create a realm, you can register a set of schema objects or roles (secured objects) for realm protection and authorize a set of users or roles to access the secured objects. Objects that are protected by a regular realm allow DML access to users who have direct object grants.

For example, you can create a realm to protect all existing database schemas that are used in an accounting department. The realm prohibits any user who is not authorized to the realm to use system privileges to access the secured accounting data. When an
entire schema is protected, all objects in the schema are protected, including tables, indexes, procedures and other objects.

You can run reports on realms that you create in Oracle Database Vault. You can use simulation mode during development, test, and even production phases to log only realm violations instead of blocking access. This enables you to quickly test applications using Database Vault realms.

You can configure realms by using the Oracle Database Vault Administrator pages in Oracle Enterprise Manager Cloud Control. Alternatively, you can configure realms by using the PL/SQL interfaces and packages provided by Oracle Database Vault.

22.5.1.2 Realms in a Multitenant Environment

You can create a realm to protect common objects in the application root.

The advantage of creating a realm in the application root instead of creating a large number objects and realms around these objects within individual pluggable databases (PDBs) is that you can create them in one place, the application root. This way, you can manage them centrally.

You cannot create a common realm in the CDB root.

A Database Vault common realm can be either a regular realm or a mandatory realm. The realm protects only objects within the application root, not local objects in a PDB. The CDB root, application root, and any affected PDBs all must be Database Vault enabled.

To configure a common realm, you must be commonly granted the DV_OWNER or DV_ADMIN role. To grant common authorizations for a common realm, you must be in the application root. To propagate the realm to the PDBs that are associated with the application root, you must synchronize the application root. For example, to synchronize an application called saas_sales_app

```
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC;
```

Related Topics

- Oracle Database Vault Administrator’s Guide

22.5.2 Realm Authorizations in a Multitenant Environment

The rules and behavior for common realm authorizations are similar to the authorizations for other common objects.

Local Authorization for a Common Realm

The local authorization for a common realm refers to the authorization a user has for the PDB that this user is accessing.

The rules for the local authorization for a common realm are as follows:

- A user who has been commonly granted the DV_OWNER or DV_ADMIN role can grant local authorization to common users, common roles, local users, and local roles. The common DV_OWNER or DV_ADMIN user can also remove local authorization from a common realm in a PDB.
• A local Database Vault administrator can authorize locally (that is, grant local
  authorizations to both local and common users) within the PDB. A common
  Database Vault administrator can also grant authorizations in each PDB. A
  common realm authorization can only be granted by a common Database Vault
  administrator in the application root.

• The common Database Vault administrator can both add or remove local
  authorization to and from a common realm from within the PDB.

• If a common user has only local authorization for a common realm, then this user
  cannot access the common realm in any other PDB than this local authorization.

• A common user or a common role can have both the local authorization and the
  common authorization to a common realm at the same time. Removing a common
  user's local authorization from a common realm does not affect the common user's
  common authorization. Removing a common user's common authorization from a
  common realm does not affect the common user's local authorization.

Common Authorization for a Common Realm

The common authorization for a common realm refers to the authorization a common
user or a common role has in the application root while the authorization takes effect in
every container that is Database Vault enabled.

The rules for the local authorization for a common realm are as follows:

• A user who has been commonly granted the DV_OWNER or DV_ADMIN role can grant
  common realm authorization to common users or roles in the application root. This
  common Database Vault administrator can perform the removal of common
  authorizations while in the application root.

• This common authorization applies to the containers that have been Database
  Vault enabled in the CDB.

• If a common user is authorized to a common realm in the application root, then
  this user has access to the objects protected by the common realm in the
  application root and any application PDBs.

• Any rule sets that are associated with a common realm must be common rule sets.
  The rules that are added to a common rule set that is associated with common
  authorization cannot involve any local objects.

How the Authorization of a Realm Works in Both the Application Root and in an
Individual PDB

During the Database Vault enforcement in a container, a common realm performs the
same enforcement behaviors as the same realm when it is used locally in a PDB.

22.6 Rule Sets and Rules in a Multitenant Environment

You can create a rule set and its associated rules in the application root.

A common realm must use a common rule set when the associated realm or
command rule is evaluated by Database Vault. The common rule set and its rules can
only be created in the application root. After the common rule set is created, it exists in
every container that is associated with the root where the common rule set is created.
The common rule set can only include common rules.

To configure a common rule set and its rules, you must be commonly granted the
DV_OWNER or DV_ADMIN role.
22.7 Command Rules in a Multitenant Environment

You can create common and local command rules in either the CDB root or the application root.

Common command rules can be associated only with common realms, rule sets, and rules. Local command rules can be associated only with local realm, rule sets, and rules.

To apply these command rules to the entire multitenant environment, you must execute the command rule procedures from the CDB root or application root as a common user who has been granted the `DVADM` or `DVOWNER` role. A common command rule that is created in the CDB root will be applied to all PDBs in that CDB environment. A common command rule that is created in the application root will only be applied to the PDBs that are associated with this application root. To propagate the command rule to the PDBs that are associated with the CDB root or application root, you must synchronize the PDB. For example, to synchronize an application root called saas_sales_app to its application PDBs:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION saas_sales_app SYNC;
```

To synchronize a common command rule in the CDB root to a PDB:

```sql
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION APP$CDB$SYSTEM SYNC;
```

You can check a user's roles by querying the `USER_ROLE_PRIVS` data dictionary view. To find information about command rules, query the `DBA_DV_COMMAND_RULE` data dictionary view.

22.8 Oracle Database Vault Policies in a Multitenant Environment

Oracle Database Vault policies are only local to the pluggable database (PDB) in which they were created.

That is, if you created the policy in a PDB, then only local realms and command rules can be added to it. You cannot create Database Vault policies that can have common realms or common command rules.

22.9 Using Database Vault Operations Control to Restrict Multitenant Common User Access to Local PDB Data

You can control PDB access by CDB root common users, such as infrastructure database administrators.
22.9.1 About Using Database Vault Operations Control

You can automatically restrict common users from accessing pluggable database (PDB) local data in autonomous, regular Cloud, or on-premises environments.

To accomplish this, you can use Oracle Database Vault operations control, which applies to common users such as infrastructure database administrators and applications.

Database Vault operations control is useful for situations where a database administrator must log in to the CDB root as a highly privileged user, but still not be able to access PDB customer data. Database operations control does not block PDB database administrators. To block these users, enable Oracle Database Vault in the PDB and then use the Database Vault features such as realm control to block these users.

You can create an exception list for Database Vault operations control of common users and packages for situations where a common user or application must perform tasks that must access local data on a PDB. An example of the type of common user that you would specify for the exception list is the CTXSYS application account, which is responsible for Oracle Text. Specifying a package in an exception list enables you to apply more fine-grained control instead of providing full access to a user in an exception list.

The general process for using Database Vault operations control is as follows:

1. Enable Database Vault operations control and keep it enabled for the production environment.

2. At this stage Database Vault operations control applies to all PDBs in the environment, regardless of whether the PDB has enabled Database Vault or not.

3. To enable specific users and packages to have access to the local schemas of the PDBs, add them to an exception list. When the user or package no longer needs access, then you can remove them from the exception list. For example, if the database is using Oracle Text, then you can add the CTXSYS administrative user account and the package to the exception list.

22.9.2 How the Addition of Common Users and Packages to an Exception List Works

Before you add a common user or package to an exception list, they must fulfill special requirements.

You can add a user package to the exception list if the package is the only object in the user account that needs access to the PDB local data. This allows for fine grained control over what is put into the exception list. The kinds of common users and packages that you would add to the exception list are ones that are necessary for the functioning of the PDB. For example, if you are using Oracle Spatial, then you should add the MDSYS account to the exception list. MDSYS requires access to customer PDB data for Oracle Spatial functions.
A PL/SQL procedure on the Ops Control exception list can be run by any common user, as long as the common user has system or direct object privileges to run the PL/SQL procedure. (Only definer’s rights procedures can be added to the exception list, not invoker’s rights.)

Only users on the operations control exception list (user, % exception) can modify PL/SQL procedures on an exception list and only if they have the privileges to modify the PL/SQL procedures. For example, User X cannot modify his or her own User X PL/SQL procedure if the procedure is on the operations control exception list, but User X is not on the exception list. User Y can modify User X procedures if User Y is on the exception list (Y, %) and if User Y has privileges to modify User X procedures.

To add a common user and a package to the Database Vault operations control exception list, you can use the DBMS_MACADM.ADD_APP_EXCEPTION PL/SQL procedure. To find existing exceptions, you can query the DBA_DV_APP_EXCEPTION data dictionary view.

22.9.3 Enabling Database Vault Operations Control

To enable Database Vault operations control, use the DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_APP_PROTECTION PL/SQL procedure.

Oracle recommends that if you elect to use Database Vault operations control for your multitenant production server, then you should keep Database Vault operations control enabled full time.

In most cases, you will enable Database Operations control for the entire CDB, not just a specific PDB. If you need to disable it for a specific PDB (for example, for troubleshooting purposes), then you can execute the DBMS_MACADM.DISABLE_APP_PROTECTION procedure on the PDB. When you are finished troubleshooting the PDB, re-enable it for Database Vault operations control, as shown in the example in this topic.

Before you enable Database Vault operations control, Database Vault must be enabled and configured in the CDB root. However, Database Vault does not need to be enabled in the PDBs.

1. Log in to the CDB root as a common user who has been granted the DV_OWNER role.
   For example:

   sqlplus c##sec_admin_owen_root
   Enter password: password

2. Execute the DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_APP_PROTECTION procedure.
   • To enable Database Vault operations control for all PDBs in the CDB environment:

   EXEC DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_APP_PROTECTION;

   • The operations control for a specific PDB may have been disabled for troubleshooting reasons. To re-enable Database Vault operations control for a specific PBB (for example, HRPDB):

   EXEC DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_APP_PROTECTION ('HRPDB');
At this stage, one or all of the PDBs are enabled for Database Vault operations control. You can confirm by connecting as user SYS with the SYSDBA administrative privilege and then executing the SELECT * FROM DBA_DV_STATUS; query. If specific trusted common users or packages must have access to the local schemas of these PDBs to perform special operations, then you can use the DBMS_MACADM.ADD_APP_EXCEPTION procedure to add the user or package to an exception list for Database Vault operations control.

Related Topics

- Adding Common Users and Packages to an Exception List

Oracle Database Vault Administrator's Guide

22.9.4 Adding Common Users and Packages to an Exception List

Common users and applications that must access PDB local data can be added to an exception list.

1. Log in to the CDB root as a common user who has been granted the DV_OWNER role.

   For example:

   sqlplus c##sec_admin_owen_root
   Enter password: password

2. Ensure that the package that you will specify for the common user meets the following requirements:

   • The package must be owned by the common user.
   • A user-created package must be created with definer's rights procedures.

   You can find more information about user-created packages by querying the DBA_OBJECTS data dictionary view.

3. Execute the DBMS_MACADM.ADD_APP_EXCEPTION procedure.

   For example:

   DBMS_MACADM.ADD_APP_EXCEPTION ('MDSYS', 'PATCH_APP');

22.9.5 Deleting Common Users and Packages from an Exception List

Users and applications that no longer need to access PDB local data can be removed from the exception list.

To remove a common user and a package from the Database Vault operations control exception list, you can use the DBMS_MACADM.DELETE_APP_PROTECTION PL/SQL procedure. To find existing exceptions, you can query the DBA_DV_APP_EXCEPTION data dictionary view.

1. Log in to the CDB root as a common user who has been granted the DV_OWNER role.
For example:

```
sqlplus c##sec_admin_owen_root
Enter password: password
```

2. Execute the `DBMS_MACADM.DELETE_APP_EXCEPTION` procedure.
   For example:
   ```
   DBMS_MACADM.DELETE_APP_EXCEPTION ('MDSYS', 'PATCH_APP');
   ```

### 22.9.6 Disabling Database Vault Operations Control

To disable Database Vault operations control, use the `DBMS_MACADM.DISABLE_APP_PROTECTION` PL/SQL procedure.

In most cases, you should keep Database Vault operations control enabled. If troubleshooting requires that a PDB be dropped from Database Vault operations control, then Oracle recommends that you temporarily disable Database Vault operations control for the PDB (and maintain operations control for the rest of the PDBs). After the troubleshooting is complete, then you should re-enable Database Vault operations control.

1. **Log in to the CDB root as a common user who has been granted the `DV_OWNER` role.**
   For example:
   ```
   sqlplus c##sec_admin_owen_root
   Enter password: password
   ```

2. **Execute the `DBMS_MACADM.DISABLE_APP_PROTECTION` procedure.**
   - **To disable Database Vault operations control for all PDBs in the CDB environment:**
     ```
     EXEC DBMS_MACADM.DISABLE_APP_PROTECTION;
     ```
   - **To disable Database Vault operations control for a specific PDB (for example, HR_PDB):**
     ```
     EXEC DBMS_MACADM.DISABLE_APP_PROTECTION ('HR_PDB');
     ```

### 22.10 Converting a Standalone Oracle Database to a PDB and Plugging It into a CDB

You can convert a standalone Oracle Database database from release 12c through 19c to a PDB, and then plug this PDB into a CDB.

1. **Connect to the root as a user who has been granted the `DV_OWNER` role.**
For example:

```
sqlplus c##sec_admin
Enter password: password
```

2. Grant the **DV_PATCH_ADMIN** role to user **SYS** with **CONTAINER = CURRENT**.

```
GRANT DV_PATCH_ADMIN TO SYS CONTAINER = CURRENT;
```

3. In the root, connect as user **SYS** with the **SYSOPER** system privilege.

For example:

```
CONNECT SYS AS SYSOPER
Enter password: password
```

4. Restart the database in read-only mode.

For example:

```
SHUTDOWN IMMEDIATE
STARTUP MOUNT
ALTER DATABASE OPEN READ ONLY
```

5. Connect to the Database Vault-enabled PDB as a user who has the **DV_OWNER** role.

For example:

```
CONNECT sec_admin@pdb_name
```

To find the available PDBs, query the **PDB_NAME** column of the **DBA_PDBS** data dictionary view. To check the current container, run the **show con_name** command.

6. Grant the **DV_PATCH_ADMIN** role to user **SYS** in this PDB.

```
GRANT DV_PATCH_ADMIN TO SYS;
```

7. Optionally, run the **DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUG_COMPATIBILITY** function to determine whether the unplugged PDB is compatible with the CDB.

When you run the function, set the following parameters:

- **pdb_descr_file**: Set this parameter to the full path to the XML file that will contain a description of the PDB.

- **store_report**: Set this parameter to indicate whether you want to generate a report if the PDB is not compatible with the CDB. Set it to **TRUE** to generate a report or **FALSE** to not generate a report. A generated report is stored in the **PDB_PLUG_IN_VIOLATIONS** temporary table and is generated only if the PDB is not compatible with the CDB.

For example, to determine whether a PDB described by the `/disk1/usr/dv_db_pdb.xml` file is compatible with the current CDB, run the following PL/SQL block:

```
SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
DECLARE
```
compatible CONSTANT VARCHAR2(3) :=
    CASE DBMS_PDB.CHECK_PLUGIN_COMPATIBILITY(
        pdb_descr_file => '/disk1/usr/dv_db_pdb.xml',
        store_report => TRUE)
        WHEN TRUE THEN 'YES'
        ELSE 'NO'
    END;
BEGIN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(compatible);
END;
/

If the output is YES, then the PDB is compatible, and you can continue with the next step.
If the output is NO, then the PDB is not compatible. You can check the PDB_PLUGIN_IN_VIOLATIONS temporary table to see why it is not compatible.

8. Create an XML file that describes the PDB.
   For example:

   BEGIN
       DBMS_PDB.DESCRIBE(
           pdb_descr_file => '/disk1/oracle/dv_db.xml');
   END;
   /

9. Run the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, and specify the XML file in the USING clause. Specify other clauses when they are required.
   For example:

   CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE dv_db_pdb AS CLONE USING 'dv_db.xml' NOCOPY;

10. Connect to the PDB that you just created as user SYS with the SYSDBA administrative privilege.

    CONNECT SYS@pdb_name AS SYSDBA

11. Execute the noncdb_to_pdb.sql script.

    @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/noncdb_to_pdb.sql

12. Open this PDB in a read/write restricted mode.

    ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE pdb_name OPEN READ WRITE RESTRICTED;

13. Run the following procedure to synchronize the PDB:

    EXECUTE DBMS_PDB.SYNC_PDB;
14. Connect to the root as a user who has been granted the `DV_OWNER` role.

   sqlplus c##sec_admin
   Enter password: password

15. Revoke the `DV_PATCH_ADMIN` role from user `SYS` with `CONTAINER = CURRENT`.

   REVOKE DV_PATCH_ADMIN FROM SYS CONTAINER = CURRENT;

16. Connect to the legacy Database Vault-enabled PDB as user `SYS` with the `SYSOPER` system privilege.

   CONNECT SYS@$pdb_name AS SYSOPER

17. Close and then reopen the PDB.

   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE $pdb_name CLOSE IMMEDIATE;
   ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE $pdb_name OPEN;

18. Revoke the `DV_PATCH_ADMIN` role from user `SYS`.

   REVOKE DV_PATCH_ADMIN FROM SYS;

Related Topics

- Creating and Removing PDBs and Application Containers
  You can create PDBs, application containers, and application seeds using a variety of techniques.
Part VI

Using Oracle Features in a Multitenant Environment

You can use Oracle Database features in a multitenant environment.
23 Backing Up and Recovering CDBs and PDBs

You can back up and recover multitenant container databases (CDBs) and pluggable databases (PDBs).

23.1 Overview of Backing Up and Recovering CDBs and PDBs

When using the multitenant architecture, you can perform backup and recovery operations on a whole multitenant container database (CDB), the root, or one or more pluggable databases (PDBs).

The backup and recovery operations include the following:

• Full and incremental backups
• Complete and point-in-time recovery (PITR)
• Flashback Database
• Reporting operations (such as listing backups and cross-checking backups)

About Connecting to CDBs and PDBs

You can connect to the root in one of the following ways:

• Connect using operating system authentication
  You are connected to the root as the SYS user with the SYSDBA privilege.
• Connect locally as a common user
• Connect as a common user through Oracle Net Services

To connect as TARGET to a PDB, use one of the following techniques:

• Connect with a net service name that resolves to a database service for that PDB
• Connect locally as a common user or local user with the SYSDBA or SYSBACKUP privilege

Note:

Certain operations are not available when you connect directly to a PDB. See Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide for a list of these operations.
23.2 Backup and Complete Recovery of CDBs

To perform backup and complete recovery operations on a whole multitenant container database (CDB), you connect as TARGET to the root.

The connection must be established as a common user with the SYSDBA or SYSBACKUP privilege.

See Also:
The following sections in the Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User's Guide provide detailed information about performing backup and complete recovery of CDBs:
• “Backing Up a Whole CDB”
• “Performing Complete Recovery of a Whole CDB”
• “Validating a Whole CDB”
• “Reporting in CDBs”

23.3 Backup and Complete Recovery of PDBs

You can perform backup and complete recovery operations on a single pluggable database (PDB) or on multiple PDBs.

Backups of PDBs

Note:
A multitenant container database is the only supported architecture in Oracle Database 20c. While the documentation is being revised, legacy terminology may persist. In most cases, “database” and “non-CDB” refer to a CDB or PDB, depending on context. In some contexts, such as upgrades, “non-CDB” refers to a non-CDB from a previous release.

When relocating a PDB or cloning a non-CDB as a PDB, you may want to retain the use of preplugin backups. For preplugin backups to be usable in the destination CDB,
metadata about the preplugin backups must be exported to the RMAN repository of the destination CDB.

The technique for making the backups usable depends on the type of operation:

- **Creating a PDB by cloning a non-CDB**
  
  When the non-CDB is opened in read/write mode, you must execute the `DBMS_PDB.EXPORTRMANBACKUP` procedure as the last step before cloning. When plugging in the non-CDB as a PDB to a destination CDB, the operation copies the backup metadata of the source non-CDB into the data dictionary of the destination CDB.

- **Relocating a PDB to another CDB**
  
  When you unplug the source PDB, the backup metadata is automatically exported. Therefore, you do not need to execute `DBMS_PDB.EXPORTRMANBACKUP`.

Preplugin backups are usable only on the destination CDB into which you plug in the source non-CDB or PDB.

---

**Note:**

- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* to learn about preplugin backups
- *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* to learn how to create a preplugin backup of the whole database
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* to learn more about the `DBMS_PDB.EXPORTRMANBACKUP` procedure

---

**Syntax for Backup Commands**

Although the Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) commands are the same, the syntax used to perform operations on multiple PDBs contains some modifications.

To perform backup and complete recovery operations on a single PDB, you can connect as `TARGET` to either of the following containers:

- **PDB**
  
  In this case, use the same commands that you would use to backup or recover CDBs. For example, to back up a PDB, use the `BACKUP DATABASE` command.

- **CDB$ROOT**
  
  In this case, use the `PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clause in your RMAN commands. The following command backs up the PDB `hrpdb` when connected to the root:

  ```sql
  BACKUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb;
  ```

To perform backup and complete recovery operations on multiple PDBs using a single command, you must connect to the root. Use the `PLUGGABLE DATABASE` clause followed by the list of PDBs on which you want to perform the operation.
The following example backs up the PDBs hrpdb, salespdb, and invpdb when connected to the root:

```
BACKUP PLUGGABLE DATABASE hrpdb, salespdb, invpdb;
```

**See Also:**

The following sections in the *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* provide detailed information about backing up and recovering PDBs:

- "Connecting as Target to a PDB"
- "Connecting as Target to the Root"
- "Backing Up PDBs with RMAN"
- "Performing Complete Recovery of PDBs with RMAN"
- "Validating PDBs"
- "Reporting in PDBs"

### 23.4 Point-in-Time Recovery in a Multitenant Environment

You can perform point-in-time recovery of the whole multitenant container database (CDB) or a particular pluggable database (PDB).

**Point-in-Time Recovery of a CDB**

To perform point-in-time recovery of a CDB, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- You must be logged in to the root container as a common user with the SYSDBA or SYSBACKUP privilege.
- The CDB must be mounted.

When performing the recovery operation, use the same commands that you use for non-CDBs.

**Point-in-Time Recovery of a PDB**

When a PDB is closed in an open or closed CDB, you can recover the PDB to a past point in time. The technique depends on the undo mode of the CDB. The following table describes the differences.
Table 23-1 Differences in Point-in-Time Recovery Techniques

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Undo Mode</th>
<th>Auxiliary Instance Used?</th>
<th>Connect as TARGET to ...</th>
<th>RMAN Commands to Use for Recovery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shared</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>CDB root</td>
<td>Include the PLUGGABLE DATABASE clause to specify the PDB that must be recovered. RMAN uses an auxiliary destination to store temporary files created during recovery. If a fast recovery area has been configured, then it is used as the auxiliary destination. You can explicitly specify an auxiliary destination using the AUXILIARY DESTINATION clause in the RECOVER command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>CDB root or PDB</td>
<td>When connected to the PDB, use the same commands that you use for non-CDBs. When connected to the root, include the PLUGGABLE DATABASE clause to specify the PDB that must be recovered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:
The following sections in the Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide for more information about point-in-time recovery.

- “Overview of Restore Points in a Multitenant Environment”
- “Creating CDB Restore Points”
- “Creating PDB Restore Points”
- “Performing Point-in-Time Recovery of CDBs and PDBs”

23.5 Flashback Database in a Multitenant Environment

You can perform a Flashback Database operation for a whole multitenant container database (CDB) or for a particular pluggable (PDB).

RMAN uses an auxiliary destination to store temporary files created during point-in-time recovery. By default, the fast recovery area is used as the auxiliary destination. You can explicitly specify an auxiliary destination using the AUXILIARY DESTINATION clause in the RECOVER command.

Flashback of CDBs
To perform Flashback Database for a CDB, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- You must be connected to the root as a common user with the SYSDBA or SYSBACKUP privilege.
- The CDB must be mounted.

Specify the target point in time for the flashback operation using a CDB restore point, time expression, or SCN. A CDB restore point is accessible to every PDB within the...
CDB. However, the restore point does not reflect the PDB sub-incarnation of any of its PDBs.

Flashback of PDBs

When a PDB is closed and the CDB is open, you can perform a flashback database operation for this PDB using the `FLASHBACK DATABASE` command. Performing a Flashback Database operation on a particular PDB modifies only data files related to that PDB. The other PDBs in the CDB are not impacted and are available for use. Note that a PDB restore point is accessible only to the PDB in which it is defined and can be used for operations only on this PDB.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CDB Undo Mode</th>
<th>Auxiliary Instance Used?</th>
<th>Connect as TARGET to ...</th>
<th>Commands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shared</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>CDB root</td>
<td>Use the <code>FLASHBACK PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> command. You can only flash back to a clean PDB restore point. RMAN uses an auxiliary destination to store temporary files created during flashback. If a fast recovery area has been configured, then it is used as the auxiliary destination. You can explicitly specify an auxiliary destination using the <code>AUXILIARY DESTINATION</code> clause in the <code>FLASHBACK PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>CDB root or PDB</td>
<td>Use the <code>FLASHBACK PLUGGABLE DATABASE</code> command. You can specify the target point in time for the flashback operation using a CDB restore point, PDB restore point, time expression, or target SCN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Also:

The following sections in the *Oracle Database Backup and Recovery User’s Guide* for more information about flashback of CDBs and PDBs:

- "Overview of Restore Points in a Multitenant Environment"
- "Creating CDB Restore Points"
- "Creating PDB Restore Points"
- "Performing a Flashback Database Operation for a Whole CDB"
- "Performing a Flashback Database Operation for PDBs"
Using Database Utilities in a Multitenant Environment

You can use utilities such as Oracle Data Pump, DBNEWID, and Oracle LogMiner in a multitenant environment.

24.1 Importing and Exporting Data in a CDB

Oracle Data Pump technology enables very high-speed movement of data and metadata from one database to another.

24.1.1 About Using Oracle Data Pump in a Multitenant Environment

In general, using Oracle Data Pump with PDBs is identical to using Oracle Data Pump with a non-CDB.

A multitenant container database (CDB) is an Oracle Database that includes zero, one, or many user-created pluggable databases (PDBs). A PDB is a portable set of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects that appear to an Oracle Net client as a non-CDB. A non-CDB is an Oracle Database that is not a CDB. Non-CDB architecture Oracle Database was deprecated in Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1). Starting with Oracle Database 20c, non-CDB architecture deployments are desupported.

You can use Oracle Data Pump to migrate all or some of a database in the following scenarios:

- From a non-CDB into a PDB
- Between PDBs within the same or different CDBs
- From a PDB into an earlier release non-CDB

Note:

Oracle Data Pump does not support any CDB-wide operations. If you are connected to the root or seed database of a CDB, then Oracle Data Pump issues the following warning:

ORA-39357: Warning: Oracle Data Pump operations are not typically needed when connected to the root or seed of a container database.
24.1.2 Using Oracle Data Pump to Move Data Into a CDB

After you create an empty PDB, to move data into the PDB, you can use an Oracle Data Pump full-mode export and import operation.

You can import data with or without the transportable option. If you use the transportable option on a full mode export or import, then it is referred to as a full transportable export/import.

When the transportable option is used, export and import use both transportable tablespace data movement and conventional data movement; the latter for those tables that reside in non-transportable tablespaces such as SYSTEM and SYSAUX. Using the transportable option can reduce the export time, and especially, the import time. With the transportable option, table data does not need to be unloaded and reloaded, and index structures in user tablespaces do not need to be recreated.

Note the following requirements when using Oracle Data Pump to move data into a CDB:

- To administer a multitenant environment, you must have the CDB_DBA role.
- Full database exports from Oracle Database 11.2.0.2 and earlier can be imported into Oracle Database 12c or later (CDB or non-CDB). However, Oracle recommends that you first upgrade the source database to Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.3 or later), so that information about registered options and components is included in the export.
- When migrating Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2.0.3 or later) to a CDB (or to a non-CDB) using either full database export or full transportable database export, you must set the Oracle Data Pump Export parameter at least to VERSION=12 to generate a dump file that is ready for import into an Oracle Database 12c or later release. If you do not set VERSION=12, then the export file that is generated does not contain complete information about registered database options and components.
- Network-based full transportable imports require use of the FULL=YES, TRANSPORTABLE=ALWAYS, and TRANSPORT_DATAFILES=datafile_name parameters. When the source database is Oracle Database 11g Release 11.2.0.3 or later, but earlier than Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1), the VERSION=12 parameter is also required.
- File-based full transportable imports only require use of the TRANSPORT_DATAFILES=datafile_name parameter. Data Pump Import infers the presence of the TRANSPORTABLE=ALWAYS and FULL=YES parameters.
- As of Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2), in a multitenant container database (CDB) environment, the default Oracle Data Pump directory object, DATA_PUMP_DIR, is defined as a unique path for each PDB in the CDB. This unique path is defined whether the PATH_PREFIX clause of the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement is defined or is not defined for relative paths.
- Starting in Oracle Database 19c, the credential parameter of impdp specifies the name of the credential object that contains the user name and password required to access an object store bucket. You can also specify a default credential using the PDB property named DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL. When you run impdb with the default credential, you prefix the dump file name with DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL: and you do not specify the credential parameter.
Example 24-1  Importing a Table into a PDB

To specify a particular PDB for the export/import operation, supply a connect identifier in the connect string when you start Data Pump. For example, to import data to a PDB named pdb1, you could enter the following on the Data Pump command line:

```bash
impdp hr@pdb1 DIRECTORY=dpump_dir1 DUMPFILE=hr.dmp TABLES=employees
```

Example 24-2  Specifying a Credential When Importing Data

This example assumes that you created a credential named HR_CRED using DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL as follows:

```sql
BEGIN
    DBMS_CLOUD.CREATE_CREDENTIAL(
        credential_name => 'HR_CRED',
        username => 'atpc_user@example.com',
        password => 'password'
    );
END;
/
```

The following command specifies credential HR_CRED, and specifies the file stored in an object store. The URL of the file is https://example.com/ostore/dnfs/myt.dmp.

```bash
impdp hr@pdb1 \
    table_exists_action=replace \
    credential=HR_CRED \
    parallel=16 \
    dumpfile=https://example.com/ostore/dnfs/myt.dmp
```

Example 24-3  Importing Data Using a Default Credential

1. You create a credential named HR_CRED using DBMS_CREDENTIAL.CREATE_CREDENTIAL as follows:

```sql
BEGIN
    DBMS_CLOUD.CREATE_CREDENTIAL(
        credential_name => 'HR_CRED',
        username => 'atpc_user@example.com',
        password => 'password'
    );
END;
/
```

2. You set the PDB property DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL as follows:

```sql
ALTER DATABASE PROPERTY SET DEFAULT_CREDENTIAL = 'ADMIN.HR_CRED'
```
3. The following command specifies the default credential as a prefix to the dump file location https://example.com/ostore/dnfs/myt.dmp:

```sql
impdp hr@pdb1 
  table_exists_action=replace 
  parallel=16 
  dumpfile=default_credential:https://example.com/ostore/dnfs/
myt.dmp
```

Note that the `credential` parameter is not specified.

See Also:
- *Oracle Database Security Guide* to learn how to configure SSL authentication, which is necessary for object store access
- *Oracle Database Utilities* to learn about using Oracle Data Pump Import to load files to the object store

24.1.3 Using Oracle Data Pump to Move PDBs Within or Between CDBs

Learn how to avoid ORA-65094 user schema errors with Oracle Data Pump export and import operations on PDBs.

If you create a common user in a CDB, then a full database or privileged schema export of that user from within any PDB in the CDB results in a standard `CREATE USER C##common name` DDL statement being performed upon import. However, the statement fails because of the common user prefix C## on the user name. The following error message is returned:

ORA-65094:invalid local user or role name

Example 24-4  Avoiding Invalid Local User Error

In the PDB being exported, if you have created local objects in that user's schema, and you want to import them, then either make sure a common user of the same name already exists in the target CDB instance, or use the Oracle Data Pump Import `REMAP_SCHEMA` parameter on the `impdp` command to remap the schema to a valid local user. For example:

```sql
REMAP_SCHEMA=C##common name:local user name
```

Related Topics
- *Oracle Database Utilities*
- *Oracle Database Utilities*
- *Oracle Database Utilities*
24.2 Using LogMiner in a CDB

You can use LogMiner in a multitenant container database (CDB).

LogMiner supports CDBs that have PDBs of different character sets provided the root container has a character set that is a superset of all the PDBs.

To administer a multitenant environment you must have the CDB_DBA role.

Note:

Starting with Oracle Database 20c, installation of non-CDB Oracle Database architecture is no longer supported.

The non-CDB architecture was deprecated in Oracle Database 12c. It is desupported in Oracle Database 20c. Oracle Universal Installer can no longer be used to create non-CDB Oracle Database instances.

24.2.1 LogMiner V$ Views and DBA Views in a CDB

In a CDB, views used by LogMiner to show information about LogMiner sessions running in the system contain an additional column named CON_ID.

The CON_ID column identifies the container ID associated with the session for which information is being displayed. When you query the view from a pluggable database (PDB), only information associated with the database is displayed. The following views are affected by this new behavior:

- V$LOGMNR_DICTIONARY_LOAD
- V$LOGMNR_LATCH
- V$LOGMNR_PROCESS
- V$LOGMNR_SESSION
- V$LOGMNR_STATS

Note:

To support CDBs, the V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS view has several other new columns in addition to CON_ID.

The following DBA views have analogous CDB views whose names begin with CDB.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Log View</th>
<th>DBA View</th>
<th>CDB View</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LogMiner Log Views</td>
<td>DBA_LOGMNR_LOG</td>
<td>CDB_LOGMNR_LOG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogMiner Purged Log Views</td>
<td>DBA_LOGMNR_PURGED_LOG</td>
<td>CDB_LOGMNR_PURGED_LOG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogMiner Session Log Views</td>
<td>DBA_LOGMNR_SESSION</td>
<td>CDB_LOGMNR_SESSION</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The DBA views show only information related to sessions defined in the container in which they are queried.

The CDB views contain an additional `CON_ID` column, which identifies the container whose data a given row represents. When CDB views are queried from the root, they can be used to see information about all containers.

### 24.2.2 The V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS View in a CDB

In a CDB, the `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` view and its associated functions are restricted to the root database. Several new columns exist in `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` in support of CDBs.

- **CON_ID** — contains the ID associated with the container from which the query is executed. Because `V$LOGMNR_CONTENTS` is restricted to the root database, this column returns a value of 1 when a query is done on a CDB.
- **SRC_CON_NAME** — the PDB name. This information is available only when mining is performed with a LogMiner dictionary.
- **SRC_CON_ID** — the container ID of the PDB that generated the redo record. This information is available only when mining is performed with a LogMiner dictionary.
- **SRC_CON_DBID** — the PDB identifier. This information is available only when mining is performed with a current LogMiner dictionary.
- **SRC_CON_GUID** — contains the GUID associated with the PDB. This information is available only when mining is performed with a current LogMiner dictionary.

### 24.2.3 Enabling Supplemental Logging in a CDB

In a CDB, the syntax for enabling and disabling database-wide supplemental logging using the `ALTER DATABASE` command.

For example, use the following syntax when adding or dropping supplemental log data:

```sql
ALTER DATABASE [ADD|DROP] SUPPLEMENTAL LOG DATA ...
```

Note the following:

- In a CDB, supplemental logging levels that are enabled from `CDB$ROOT` are enabled across the CDB.
- If at least minimal supplemental logging is enabled in `CDB$ROOT`, then additional supplemental logging levels can be enabled at the PDB level.
- Supplemental logging levels enabled at the CDB level from `CDB$ROOT` cannot be disabled at the PDB level.
- Dropping all supplemental logging from `CDB$ROOT` disables all supplemental logging across the CDB regardless of previous PDB level settings.

Supplemental logging operations started with `CREATE TABLE` and `ALTER TABLE` statements can be executed from either the CDB root or a PDB. They affect only the table to which they are applied.
24.2.4 Using a Flat File Dictionary in a CDB

You cannot take a dictionary snapshot for an entire CDB in a single flat file. You must be connected to a distinct PDB, and can take a snapshot of only that PDB in a flat file.

Thus, when using a flat file dictionary, you can only mine the redo logs for the changes associated with the PDB whose data dictionary is contained within the flat file.

24.3 DBNEWID Considerations for CDBs and PDBs

The DBNEWID parameter **PDB** allows you to change the DBID on pluggable databases (PDBs).

By default, when you run the DBNEWID utility on a container database (CDB) it changes the DBID of only the CDB; the DBIDs of the pluggable databases (PDBs) comprising the CDB remain the same. This could cause problems with duplicate DBIDs for PDBs in some cases, such as when a CDB is cloned.

As of Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2), you can change the DBID on the PDBs by using the new DBNEWID **PDB** parameter. You cannot specify a particular PDB; either all of them or none of them will have new DBIDs. The **PDB** parameter is applicable only in a CDB environment. It has the following format:

```
PDB=[ALL | NONE]
```

- If you specify **ALL**, then in addition to the DBID for the CDB changing, the DBIDs for all PDBs comprising the CDB are also changed.
- Specifying **NONE** (the default) leaves the PDB DBIDs the same, even if the CDB DBID is changed.

Oracle recommends that you use **PDB=ALL**, but **PDB=NONE** is the default for backward compatibility reasons.
Using Oracle Scheduler with a CDB

You can use Oracle Scheduler to schedule jobs in a multitenant container database (CDB).

Before using Oracle Scheduler with a CDB, meet the following requirements:

- You understand how to configure and manage a CDB.
- You understand how to use Oracle Scheduler to schedule jobs in a non-CDB.

See Also:

- "Administering a Multitenant Environment"
- Oracle Database Administrator's Guide

25.1 DBMS_SCHEDULER Invocations in a CDB

Most scheduler calls work the same way as they do in non-CDBs, except for two scheduler global attributes.

The JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES initialization parameter specifies the maximum number of job slaves per instance that can be created for the execution of DBMS_JOB jobs and Oracle Scheduler (DBMS_SCHEDULER) jobs. The range of values is 0 to 4000. The default value for JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES across all containers is automatically derived from the number of sessions and CPUs configured in the system. The default is adequate for most use cases.

To limit job slaves in a CDB environment, you can set JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES in the following locations:

- CDB root
  Set JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES to the maximum number of slave processes that Scheduler can use simultaneously in the entire database instance.

  If JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES is 0 in the CDB root, then DBMS_JOB and Oracle Scheduler jobs cannot run in the root or any PDB, regardless of the JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES setting at the PDB level.

- PDB
  Set JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES to the maximum number of simultaneous jobs for this PDB. The actual number depends on the resources assigned by Resource Manager and the demand in other containers. When multiple PDBs request jobs, Oracle Scheduler attempts to give all PDBs a fair share of the processes.
If JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES is 0 in a PDB, then DBMS_JOB and Oracle Scheduler jobs cannot run in this PDB, regardless of the JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES setting in the CDB root.

You must set all global Oracle Scheduler attributes at the PDB level. For example, if you set the EMAIL_SENDER attribute in the root database using DBMS_SCHEDULER.SET_ATTRIBUTE, then it applies to the jobs that run in the root, not the jobs running in a specific PDB. If you choose a new EMAIL_SENDER for a PDB, then you must set the global attribute in this PDB.

See Also:
Oracle Database Reference to learn more about JOB_QUEUE_PROCESSES

25.2 Job Coordinator and Slave Processes in a CDB

The major CDB-related changes are to the job coordinator process.

In a non-CDB, the coordinator looks at all jobs that are ready to run, picks a subset of them to run, and assigns them to job slaves. It also opens and closes windows, which changes the resource plan in effect for the database.

That is essentially what happens inside a CDB except for the following:

- Jobs are selected from all PDBs
  The coordinator looks at the root database and all the child PDBs and selects jobs based on the job priority, the job scheduled start time, and the availability of resources to run the job. The latter criterion depends on the consumer group of the job and the resource plan currently in effect. The coordinator makes no attempt to be fair to every PDB. The only way to ensure that jobs from a PDB are not starved is to allocate enough resources to it.

- Windows are open in the PDB and root database levels
  In a non-CDB, only one window can be open at any given time. In a CDB, there are two levels of windows. At the PDB level, windows can be used to set resource plans that allocate resources among consumer groups belonging to that PDB. At the root database level, windows can allocate resources to different PDBs. Therefore, at any time, there can be a window open in the root database and one in each PDB.

- Job slave switches to the specific PDB it belongs to
  The job slaves are essentially the same as in a non-CDB, except that when a slave executes a job, it switches to the PDB that the job belongs to and then executes it. The rest of the code is essentially unchanged.

25.3 DBMS_JOB and DBMS_SCHEDULER

You can use DBMS_JOB within a PDB only if you grant the CREATE_JOB privilege to the schemas that submit DBMS_JOB jobs.

The DBMS_JOB interface is implemented using DBMS_SCHEDULER. For this reason, Oracle recommends that you switch from DBMS_JOB to DBMS_SCHEDULER.
For the scheduler, the coordinator selects jobs to run from every PDB. Also, for the scheduler, the slave process switches into a PDB before executing a job; otherwise, the code is essentially unchanged.

See Also:
Oracle Database Administrator’s Guide for information about support for DBMS_JOB

25.4 Processes to Close a PDB

If a PDB is closed with the immediate option, then the coordinator terminates jobs running in the PDB, and the jobs must be recovered before they can run again.

In an Oracle RAC database, the coordinator can, in most cases, recover the jobs on another instance where that PDB is open. So, if the coordinator on the first instance can find another instance where the PDB is still open, it moves the jobs there. In certain cases, moving the jobs to another instance may not be possible. For example, if the PDB in question is not open anywhere else, the jobs cannot be moved. Also, moving a job to another instance is not possible when the job has the INSTANCE_ID attribute set. In this case the job cannot run until the PDB on that instance is open again.

In a non-Oracle RAC case, the question of moving jobs does not arise. Terminated jobs can only be recovered after the PDB is opened again.

25.5 New and Changed CDB Views

Some CDB views are specific to CDBs, whereas others have a CDB-specific column.

- V$ and GV$ views have a CON_ID column that identifies a container whose data is represented by a CDB_* row. In non-CDBs, the CON_ID column is NULL.
- CDB_* views correspond to all Scheduler DBA_* views.

In a PDB, these views only show objects visible through a corresponding DBA_* view, but all objects are visible in the root. The CDB_* view contains all columns found in a given DBA_* view and the column (CON_ID). In non-CDBs, this column is NULL.
You can use Oracle Database XStream in a multitenant container database (CDB).

26.1 About XStream

XStream consists of Oracle Database components and application programming interfaces (APIs) that enable client applications to receive data changes from an Oracle database and send data changes to an Oracle database.

These data changes can be shared between Oracle databases and other systems. The other systems include non-Oracle databases, non-RDBMS Oracle products, file systems, third party software applications, and so on. A client application is designed by the user for specific purposes and use cases.

XStream consists of two major features: XStream Out and XStream In. **XStream Out** provides Oracle Database components and APIs that enable you to share data changes made to an Oracle database with other systems. XStream Out can retrieve both data manipulation language (DML) and data definition language (DDL) changes from the redo log and send these changes to a client application that uses the APIs, as shown in the following figure.

![XStream Out Diagram](image-url)
**XStream In** provides Oracle Database components and APIs that enable you to share data changes made to other systems with an Oracle database. XStream In can apply these changes to database objects in the Oracle database, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 26-2  XStream In**

XStream uses the capture and apply features of the Oracle database. These features enable the following functionality for XStream:

- The logical change record (LCR) format for streaming database changes
  An LCR is a message with a specific format that describes a database change. If the change was a data manipulation language (DML) operation, then a row LCR encapsulates each row change resulting from the DML operation. One DML operation might result in multiple row changes, and so one DML operation might result in multiple row LCRs. If the change was a data definition language (DDL) operation, then a single DDL LCR encapsulates the DDL change.

- Rules and rule sets that control behavior, including inclusion and exclusion rules
  Rules enable the filtering of database changes at the database level, schema level, table level, and row/column level.

- Rule-based transformations that modify captured data changes

- Support for most data types in the database, including LOBs, LONG, LONG RAW, and XMLType

- Customized configurations, including multiple inbound streams to a single database instance, multiple outbound streams from a single database instance, multiple outbound streams from a single capture process, and so on

- Full-featured apply for XStream In, including apply parallelism for optimal performance, SQL generation, conflict detection and resolution, error handling, and customized apply with apply handlers
In both XStream Out and XStream In configurations, the client application must use a dedicated server connection.

Related Topics

• Oracle Database XStream Guide

26.2 System-Created Rules and a Multitenant Environment

A multitenant environment enables an Oracle database to contain a portable set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to an application as a separate database. This self-contained collection is called a pluggable database (PDB). A CDB contains PDBs.

It can also contain application containers. An application container is an optional component of a CDB that consists of an application root and the application PDBs associated with it. An application container stores data for one or more applications. An application container shares application metadata and common data. In a CDB, each of the following is a container: the CDB root, each PDB, each application root, and each application PDB.

In a CDB, LCRs can contain the global name of the container where the change originated in the `source_database_name` attribute and the global name of the CDB root in the `root_name` attribute. The rules for XStream components can consider these attributes.

Related Topics

• Multitenant Architecture

The multitenant architecture enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB).

26.2.1 System-Created Rules in a CDB and XStream Out

In a CDB, XStream Out must be configured in the CDB root. Therefore, the PL/SQL procedures in the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package that create system-created rules must be run in the CDB root while connected as a common user.

Excluding the procedures that create rules for propagations, the procedures that create system-created rules for XStream Out, such as the `ADD_GLOBAL_RULES` procedure, include the key parameters in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>source_database</code></td>
<td>The global name of the source database. In a CDB, specify the global name of the container to which the rules pertain. The container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. The following are examples: mycdb.example.com or hrpdb.example.com.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 26-1  (Cont.) Key Procedure Parameters for System-Created Rules in a CDB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>source_root_name</td>
<td>The global name of the CDB root in the source CDB. The following are examples: mycdb.example.com.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>source_container_name</td>
<td>The short name of the source container. The container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. The following are examples: CDB$ROOT or hrpdb.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you do not include the domain name when you specify source_database or source_root_name, then the procedure appends it to the name automatically. For example, if you specify DBS1 and the domain is .EXAMPLE.COM, then the procedure specifies DBS1.EXAMPLE.COM automatically.

The combination of these key parameters determines which containers' changes XStream Out captures and streams to the client application, based on the rules generated by the procedures. Regardless of the settings for these parameters, system-generated rules can still limit the changes captured and streamed to specific schemas and tables.

Local capture means that a capture process runs on the source CDB. In a local capture configuration, the source_root_name parameter specifies the global name of the CDB root in the local CDB. If this parameter is NULL, then the global name of the CDB root in the local CDB is specified automatically. The resulting rules include a condition for the global name of the CDB root in the current CDB.

Downstream capture means that a capture process runs on a CDB other than the source CDB. In a downstream capture configuration, the source_root_name parameter must be non-NULL, and it must specify the global name of the CDB root in the remote source CDB. The resulting rules include a condition for the global name of the CDB root in the remote CDB. If this parameter is NULL, then local capture is assumed.

The following table describes the rule conditions for various source_database and source_container_name parameter settings in a local capture configuration.

Table 26-2  Local Capture and XStream Out Container Rule Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>source_database Parameter Setting</th>
<th>source_container_name Parameter Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in any container in the local CDB, including the CDB root, all PDBs, all application roots, and all application PDBs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in the specified source container of the local CDB. The source container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. The DBMS_XSTREAM_ADMIN procedure queries the CDB_PDBS view and CDB_PROPERTIES view to determine the source_container_name value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 26-2  (Cont.) Local Capture and XStream Out Container Rule Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>source_database Parameter Setting</th>
<th>source_container_name Parameter Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in the specified source container of the local CDB. The source container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. The DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM procedure queries the CDB_PDBS view and CDB_PROPERTIES view to determine the source_database value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in the specified source container of the local CDB. The source container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. If the prefix of the source_database value is different from the source_container_name value, then the resulting rules include a condition for the source_database value, and an internal table maps the source_database value to the source_container_name value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table describes the rule conditions for various source_database and source_container_name parameter settings in a downstream capture configuration.

### Table 26-3  Downstream Capture and XStream Out Container Rule Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>source_database Parameter Setting</th>
<th>source_container_name Parameter Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in any container in the remote source CDB, including the CDB root, all PDBs, all application roots, and all application PDBs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in the specified source container of the remote source CDB. The source container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. The DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM procedure derives the source_container_name value from the prefix of source_database value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>The DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM procedure raises an error.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 26-3  (Cont.) Downstream Capture and XStream Out Container Rule Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>source_database Parameter Setting</th>
<th>source_container_name Parameter Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>non-NULL</td>
<td>XStream Out captures and streams changes made in the specified source container of the remote source CDB. The source container can be the CDB root, a PDB, an application root, or an application PDB. If the prefix of the source_database value is different from the source_container_name value, then the resulting rules include a condition for the source_database value, and an internal table maps the source_database value to the source_container_name value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Topics
- Oracle Database XStream Guide
- Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference

26.2.2 System-Created Rules in a CDB and XStream In

You can configure XStream In in the root or in any container in a CDB. Typically, an inbound server does not use rule sets or rules. Instead, it usually processes all LCRs that it receives from its client application. An inbound server can apply changes to the current container only. Therefore, if an inbound server is configured in the CDB root, then it can apply changes only to the CDB root. If an inbound server is configured in a PDB, then it can apply changes only to that PDB. If an inbound server is configured in an application root, then it can apply changes only to that application root, and if an inbound server is configured in an application PDB, then it can apply changes only to that application PDB.

Related Topics
- Administering a Multitenant Environment
  You can administer a multitenant environment using SQL*Plus or Enterprise Manager Cloud Control (Cloud Control).

26.3 XStream Out and a Multitenant Environment

A multitenant environment enables a database to contain a portable set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to an application as a separate database.

This self-contained collection is called a pluggable database (PDB). A multitenant container database (CDB) contains PDBs. In a CDB, XStream Out functions much the same as it does in a non-CDB.
A CDB can also contain application containers. An application container is an optional component of a CDB that consists of an application root and all application PDBs associated with it. An application container stores data for one or more applications. An application container shares application metadata and common data. In a CDB, each of the following is a container: the CDB root, each PDB, each application root, and each application PDB.

The main differences in the way XStream Out functions in a CDB and non-CDB are:

- XStream Out must be configured only in the CDB root.
- XStream Out can see changes made to any container within the CDB.
- XStream Out capture rules can limit the LCRs to those that are needed for the client application. The system-generated capture rules select the appropriate LCRs based on the parameters that were passed to the ADD_OUTBOUND and CREATE_OUTBOUND procedures in the DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM package. You can use the ADD_*_RULES procedures in the same package for more fine-grained control over the rules used by the XStream Out components.
- The user who performs XStream Out tasks must be a common user.

### Unplug and Plug Operations in an XStream Environment

When a PDB, application root, or application PDB involved with XStream Out is unplugged from its CDB and plugged into another CDB, any capture process or outbound server is not considered part of the container. You must configure the capture process and outbound server again in the other CDB.

If an outbound server is configured in a different database than the capture process, then unplug and plug operations have additional considerations.

For this example, assume the following:

- A CDB named CDB1 contains PDB PDB1.
- A capture process is configured in CDB1, and it sends LCRs from PDB1 to an outbound server in a CDB named CDB2.
- You unplug PDB1 from CDB1, and then plug it into a CDB named CDB3.

To continue delivering LCRs from PDB1 to the outbound server in CDB2, you must configure a new capture process in CDB3 to capture and send LCRs to CDB2.

The rules used by the outbound server in database B must be altered to change references to the root of CDB1 to the root of CDB3. In addition, if PDB1 was given a different name in CDB3, then the rules must be altered to reflect the new PDB name.

### Application Containers in an XStream Environment

When a CDB has one or more application containers, XStream Out must be configured in the CDB root, and XStream Out can capture changes made in any container in the CDB, including the application roots and application PDBs. Changes captured in an application container can be sent to containers of any type, including PDBs, application roots, and application PDBs.

When replicating changes from one application root to another application root, XStream can replicate \texttt{ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION} statements. To avoid errors, the target application root that applies the statements must have the same application installed as the source application root, and the application name must be identical in both application roots.
To avoid errors when replicating changes from an application root to a container that is not an application root, you must ensure that `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements are not replicated.

With the XStream OCI API, you can control whether `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements are replicated using the `OCIXStreamOutAttach` function and the `OCILCHeaderGet` function. With the XStream Java API, you can control this behavior using the `mode` parameter in the `XStreamOut.attach` method.

Related Topics

- System-Created Rules and a Multitenant Environment
  A multitenant environment enables an Oracle database to contain a portable set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to an application as a separate database. This self-contained collection is called a pluggable database (PDB). A CDB contains PDBs.

- Configuring XStream Out in a CDB
  When you configure XStream Out in a CDB, you must decide which database changes will be captured by XStream Out and sent to the client application.

- Multitenant Architecture
  The **multitenant architecture** enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB).

### 26.4 Configuring XStream Out in a CDB

When you configure XStream Out in a CDB, you must decide which database changes will be captured by XStream Out and sent to the client application.

XStream Out can stream all database changes for all containers, including the CDB root and all PDBs, application roots, and application PDBs, or XStream Out can stream the changes from specific containers. In addition, you can configure XStream Out with local capture, or you can configure it with downstream capture to offload the work required to capture changes from the source database.

The following restrictions apply when you configure XStream Out in a CDB:

- The capture process and outbound server must be in the CDB root.
- The capture process and outbound server must be in the same CDB.
- Each container in the CDB must be open during XStream Out configuration.
- When changes made to an application root are captured, you must ensure that `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION` statements are replicated only to other application roots.

In addition, ensure that you create the XStream administrator properly for a CDB.

---

**Note:**

When a container is created using a non-CDB, any XStream Out components from the non-CDB cannot be used in the container. You must drop and re-create the XStream Out components, including the capture process and outbound servers, in the CDB root.
Related Topics

• **XStream Out and a Multitenant Environment**
  A multitenant environment enables a database to contain a portable set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to an application as a separate database.

• **System-Created Rules in a CDB and XStream Out**
  In a CDB, XStream Out must be configured in the CDB root. Therefore, the PL/SQL procedures in the `DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM` package that create system-created rules must be run in the CDB root while connected as a common user.

• **Oracle Database XStream Guide**

26.4.1 Configuring XStream Out with Local Capture in a CDB

An example illustrates configuring XStream Out with local capture in a CDB.

**Prerequisites**

Before configuring XStream Out, ensure that all containers in the CDB are in open read/write mode during XStream Out configuration.

**Assumptions**

This section makes the following assumptions:

• The capture process will be a local capture process, and it will run on the same database as the outbound server.

• The name of the outbound server is `xout`.

• Data manipulation language (DML) and data definition language (DDL) changes made to the `oe.orders` and `oe.order_items` tables in PDB `pdb1.example.com` are sent to the outbound server.

• DML and DDL changes made to the `hr` schema in the PDB `pdb1.example.com` are sent to the outbound server.

*Figure 26-3* provides an overview of this XStream Out configuration.
To create an outbound server using the `CREATE_OUTBOUND` procedure:

1. In SQL*Plus, connect to the root in the CDB (not to the PDB `pdb1.example.com`) as the XStream administrator.

2. Create the outbound server and other XStream components.
   a. Ensure that all containers in the source CDB are in open read/write mode.
   b. Run the `CREATE_OUTBOUND` procedure.

Given the assumptions for this example, run the following `CREATE_OUTBOUND` procedure:

```sql
DECLARE
  tables  DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY;
  schemas DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY;
BEGIN
  tables(1) := 'oe.orders';
  tables(2) := 'oe.order_items';
```

Figure 26-3  Sample XStream Out Configuration Created Using `CREATE_OUTBOUND` for a PDB
```
schemas(1) := 'hr';
DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.CREATE_OUTBOUND(
    server_name  =>  'xout',
    source_database  =>  'pdb1.example.com',
    table_names  =>  tables,
    schema_names  =>  schemas);
END;
/
```

**Note:**

To capture changes in all containers in a CDB, including the CDB root, all PDBs, all application roots, and all application PDBs, and send those changes to the XStream client application, you can omit the `source_database` parameter when you run the CREATE_OUTBOUND procedure.

c. After the CREATE_OUTBOUND procedure completes successfully, optionally change the open mode of one or more containers if necessary.

Running the procedure in Step b performs the following actions:

- Configures supplemental logging for the `oe.orders` and `oe.order_items` tables and for all tables in the `hr` schema in the `pdb1.example.com` PDB.
- Creates a queue with a system-generated name that is used by the capture process and the outbound server.
- Creates and starts a capture process with a system-generated name with rule sets that instruct it to capture DML and DDL changes to the `oe.orders` table, the `oe.order_items` table, and the `hr` schema from the `pdb1.example.com` PDB.
- Creates and starts an outbound server named `xout` with rule sets that instruct it to send DML and DDL changes to the `oe.orders` table, the `oe.order_items` table, and the `hr` schema to the client application.
- Sets the current user as the connect user for the outbound server. In this example, the current user is the XStream administrator. The client application must connect to the database as the connect user to interact with the outbound server.

**Note:**

The `server_name` value cannot exceed 30 bytes.

**Tip:**

To capture and send all database changes from the `pdb1.example.com` database to the outbound server, specify `NULL` (the default) for the `table_names` and `schema_names` parameters.
3. Create and run the client application that will connect to the outbound server in the root of the CDB and receive the LCRs.

When you run the client application, the outbound server is started automatically.

**Related Topics**
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*

### 26.4.2 Configuring XStream Out with Downstream Capture in CDBs

Using downstream capture, the XStream Out components can reside in databases other than the source database.

When you have multiple CDBs, the source database can be in one CDB, and you can use downstream capture to capture the changes in another CDB.

**Prerequisites**

Before configuring XStream Out, the following prerequisites must be met:

- Ensure that all containers in the CDB are in open read/write mode during XStream Out configuration.
- This example uses downstream capture. Therefore, you must configure log file transfer from the source database to a downstream database.
- If you want to use real-time downstream capture, then you must also add the required standby redo logs.

**Assumptions**

This section makes the following assumptions:

- The name of the outbound server is `xout`.
- The queue used by the outbound server is `c##xstradmin.xstream_queue`.
- The source database is the PDB `pdb1.example.com` in the CDB `data.example.com`.
- The capture process runs in the CDB `capture.example.com`.
- The outbound server runs in the CDB `capture.example.com`.
- DML and DDL changes made to the `oe.orders` and `oe.order_items` tables from the PDB `pdb1.example.com` are sent to the outbound server.
- DML and DDL changes made to the `hr` schema from the PDB `pdb1.example.com` are sent to the outbound server.

The following figure gives an overview of this XStream Out configuration.
Figure 26-4  Sample XStream Out Configuration Using Multiple CDBs and Downstream Capture
To configure XStream Out with downstream capture in CDBs:

1. In SQL*Plus, connect to the root of the downstream capture CDB as the XStream administrator.
   In this example, the downstream capture CDB is capture.example.com.

2. Create the queue that will be used by the capture process.
   For example, run the following procedure:

   BEGIN
   DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.SET_UP_QUEUE(
       queue_table => 'c##xstrmadmin.xstream_queue_table',
       queue_name  => 'c##xstrmadmin.xstream_queue');
   END;

3. Optionally, create the database link from the root in the downstream capture CDB to the root in the source CDB.
   In this example, create a database link from the root in capture.example.com to the root in data.example.com. For example, if the user c##xstrmadmin is the XStream administrator on both databases, then create the following database link:

   CREATE DATABASE LINK data.example.com CONNECT TO c##xstrmadmin
   IDENTIFIED BY password USING 'data.example.com';

4. Ensure that all containers in the source CDB are in open read/write mode.

5. If you did not create the database link in Step 3, then you must complete additional steps in the root of the source CDB.
   These steps are not required if you created the database link in Step 3.
   Run the BUILD procedure and ensure that required supplemental logging is specified for the database objects in the source CDB:
   a. Connect to the root in the source CDB as the XStream administrator.
   b. Run the DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD procedure. For example:

   SET SERVEROUTPUT ON
   DECLARE
       scn NUMBER;
   BEGIN
       DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD(
           first_scn => scn);
       DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('First SCN Value = ' || scn);
   END;
   /
   First SCN Value = 409391

   This procedure displays the valid first SCN value for the capture process that will be created in the root in the capture.example.com CDB. Make a note of the SCN value returned because you will use it when you create the capture process in Step 6.
c. Ensure that required supplemental logging is specified for the database objects in the source CDB.

For this example, ensure that supplemental logging is configured for the `hr` schema, the `oe.orders` table, and the `oe.order_items` table in the `pdb1.example.com` PDB.

6. While connected to the root in the downstream capture CDB, create the capture process.

For example, run the following procedure to create the capture process while connected as the XStream administrator to `capture.example.com`:

```sql
BEGIN
  DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.CREATE_CAPTURE(
    queue_name         => 'c##xstrmadmin.xstream_queue',
    capture_name       => 'real_time_capture',
    rule_set_name      => NULL,
    start_scn          => NULL,
    source_database    => NULL,
    use_database_link  => TRUE,
    first_scn          => NULL,
    logfile_assignment => 'implicit',
    source_root_name   => 'data.example.com',
    capture_class      => 'xstream');
END;
/
```

If you did not create a database link in Step 3, then specify the SCN value returned by the `DBMS_CAPTURE_ADM.BUILD` procedure for the `first_scn` parameter.

Do not start the capture process.

7. After the capture process is created, optionally change the open mode of one or more PDBs if necessary.

8. Run the `ADD_OUTBOUND` procedure.

Given the assumption for this section, run the following `ADD_OUTBOUND` procedure:

```sql
DECLARE
  tables  DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY;
  schemas DBMS_UTILITY.UNCL_ARRAY;
BEGIN
  tables(1)  := 'oe.orders';
  tables(2)  := 'oe.order_items';
  schemas(1) := 'hr';
  DBMS_XSTREAM_ADM.ADD_OUTBOUND(
    server_name           => 'xout',
    queue_name            => 'c##xstrmadmin.xstream_queue',
    source_database       => 'pdb1.example.com',
    table_names           => tables,
    schema_names          => schemas,
    source_root_name      => 'data.example.com',
    source_container_name => 'pdb1');
END;
/
```
Running this procedure performs the following actions:

- Creates an outbound server named `xout`. The outbound server has rule sets that instruct it to send DML and DDL changes to the `oe.orders` table, the `oe.order_items` table, and the `hr` schema to the client application. The rules specify that these changes must have originated at the PDB `pdb1.example.com` in the CDB `data.example.com`. The outbound server dequeues LCRs from the queue `c##xstrmadmin.xstream_queue`.

- Sets the current user as the `connect_user` for the outbound server. In this example, the `current_user` is the XStream administrator. The client application must connect to the database as the `connect_user` to interact with the outbound server.

**Note:**
The `server_name` value cannot exceed 30 bytes.

9. Create and run the client application that will connect to the outbound server and receive the LCRs.

When you run the client application, the outbound server is started automatically at the downstream capture CDB.

Related Topics
- *Oracle Database XStream Guide*

### 26.5 XStream In and a Multitenant Environment

A multitenant environment enables an Oracle database to contain a portable set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to an application as a separate database.

This self-contained collection is called a pluggable database (PDB). A multitenant container database (CDB) contains PDBs. It can also contain application containers. An application container is an optional component of a CDB that consists of an application root and all application PDBs associated with it. An application container stores data for one or more applications. An application container shares application metadata and common data. In a CDB, each of the following is a container: the CDB root, each PDB, each application root, and each application PDB.

In a CDB, the inbound server is restricted to receiving LCRs from one source database and only executing changes in the current container (one PDB, one application root, one application PDB, or the CDB root). A single inbound server cannot apply changes to more than one container in a CDB.

When the inbound server is in the CDB root, the apply user must be a common user. When the inbound server is in an application root, the apply user must be a common user or an application common user. When the inbound server is in a PDB or application PDB, the apply user can be a common user or a local user.
Note:

XStream does not synchronize changes done in the application root container. Do not use the XStream In replication to replicate operations done in the application root container. You can manually apply these changes in the application root containers in the target. Note that the operations done in the PDBs can still be replicated.

Related Topics

• **System-Created Rules and a Multitenant Environment**
  A multitenant environment enables an Oracle database to contain a portable set of schemas, objects, and related structures that appears logically to an application as a separate database. This self-contained collection is called a pluggable database (PDB). A CDB contains PDBs.

• **Multitenant Architecture**
  The multitenant architecture enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB).
Glossary

application
Within an application root, an application is a named, versioned set of data and metadata created by a common user. An application might include an application common user, an application common object, or some multiple and combination of the preceding.

application common object
A shared database object created while connected to an application root. The metadata (for a metadata-linked object) or data (for a data-linked common object) is shared by application PDBs in the application container.

application common user
A common user created while connected to an application root. The metadata (for a metadata-linked common object) or data (for a data-linked common object) is shared by application PDBs in the application container.

application container
A named set of application PDBs plugged in to an application root. An application container may contain an application seed.

application patch
In an application container, a small change to an application. Typical examples of patching include bug fixes and security patches. An application upgrade begins and ends with an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement.

application PDB
A PDB that is plugged in to an application container.

application root
The root container within an application container. Every application container has exactly one application root. An application root shares some characteristics with the CDB root, because it can contain common objects, and some characteristics with a PDB, because it is created with the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement.

application seed
An optional application PDB that serves as a template for creating other PDBs within an application container. An application container includes 0 or 1 application seed.
application upgrade
In an application container, a major change to the physical architecture of an application. An application upgrade begins and ends with an ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE APPLICATION statement.

CDB
An Oracle Database installation that contains at least one PDB. Starting in Oracle Database 20c, every Oracle database is a CDB.

CDB administrator
A database administrator who manages a CDB. A PDB administrator manages individual PDBs within the CDB.

CDB fleet
A collection of different CDBs that can be managed as one logical CDB.

CDB restore point
In a CDB, a restore point that is created when connected to the root, and when the FOR PLUGGABLE DATABASE clause is not specified. Unlike a PDB restore point, a CDB restore point is usable by all PDBs.

CDB root
In a multitenant container database (CDB), a collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects to which all PDBs belong. Every CDB has exactly one root container, which stores the system metadata required to manage PDBs. All PDBs belong to the CDB root.

clean restore point
A PDB restore point that is created when the PDB is closed. A Flashback PDB to a clean restore point does not require restoring backups or creating a temporary instance.

common object
An object that resides either in the CDB root or an application root that shares either data (a data-linked common object) or metadata (a metadata-linked common object). All common objects in the CDB root are Oracle-supplied. A common object in an application root is called an application common object.

common user
In a multitenant container database (CDB), a database user that exists with the same identity in multiple containers. A common user created in the CDB root has the same identity in every existing and future PDB. A common user created in an application container has the same identity in every existing and future application PDB in this application container.

container
In a multitenant container database (CDB), either the root or a PDB.
container data object
In a CDB, a table or view containing data pertaining to multiple containers and possibly the CDB as a whole, along with mechanisms to restrict data visible to specific common users through such objects to one or more containers. Examples of container data objects are Oracle-supplied views whose names begin with \texttt{V$} and \texttt{CDB\_}.

cross-container operation
In a CDB, a DDL statement that affects the CDB itself, multiple containers, multiple common users or roles, or a container other than the one to which the user is connected. Only a common user connected to the root can perform cross-container operations.

data link
In a PDB, an internal mechanism that points to data (not metadata) in the root. For example, AWR data resides in the root. Each PDB uses an object link to point to the AWR data in the root, thereby making views such as \texttt{DBA\_HIST\_ACTIVE\_SESS\_HISTORY} and \texttt{DBA\_HIST\_BASELINE} accessible in each separate container.

database consolidation
The general process of moving data from one or more non-CDBs into a multitenant container database (CDB).

data-linked common object
A common object that exists either in the CDB root or an application root. The data, rather than the metadata, is shared by any PDB that contains a data link that points to the common object.

extended data-linked common object
A hybrid of a data-linked common object and a metadata-linked common object. For an extended data-linked object, each application PDB can create its own PDB-specific data while sharing the common data in the application root.

Fast Application Notification (FAN)
Applications can use FAN to enable rapid failure detection, balancing of connection pools after failures, and re-balancing of connection pools when failed components are repaired. The FAN notification process uses system events that Oracle Database publishes when cluster servers become unreachable or if network interfaces fail.

hot cloning
Cloning a PDB while the source PDB is open in read/write mode.

lead CDB
In a CDB fleet, the central location for monitoring and managing several CDBs.

local undo mode
The use of a separate set of undo data files for each PDB in a CDB.
local user
In a multitenant container database (CDB), any user that is not a common user.

metadata link
In a PDB, an internal mechanism that points to a dictionary object definition stored in the root. For example, the OBJ$ table in each PDB uses a metadata link to point to the definition of OBJ$ stored in the root.

metadata-linked common object
A common object that exists either in the CDB root or an application root. The metadata, rather than the data, is shared by any PDB that contains a metadata link that points to the common object.

multitenant architecture
The architecture that enables an Oracle database to function as a multitenant container database (CDB), which means that it can contain PDBs and application containers.

multitenant container database (CDB)
See CDB.

non-CDB
An Oracle database that is not a multitenant container database (CDB). Before Oracle Database 12c, all databases were non-CDBs. Starting in Oracle Database 20c, every database must be a CDB.

Oracle Multitenant
A database option that enables you to create multiple PDBs in a CDB.

PDB
In a multitenant container database (CDB), a portable collection of schemas, schema objects, and nonschema objects that appears to an Oracle Net client as a separate database.

PDB administrator
A database administrator who manages one or more PDBs. A CDB administrator manages the whole CDB.

PDB archive file
A compressed file that contains both PDB data files and an XML metadata file. You can create a PDB by specifying the archive file, and thereby avoid copying the XML file and the data files separately.

PDB lockdown profile
A security mechanism to restrict operations that are available to local users connected to a specified PDB. A typical use is to limit the effect of a grant privilege. For example,
you limit the grant of `ALTER SYSTEM` to only those options whose names begin with `PLSQL`.

**PDB performance profile**
A specified share of system resources, CPU, parallel execution servers, and memory for a PDB or set of PDBs.

**PDB restore point**
Within a CDB, a restore point that usable only for a specific PDB. In contrast, a CDB restore point is usable by all PDBs.

**PDB snapshot**
A named, point-in-time copy of a PDB created using the `ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE SNAPSHOT` command. At the file level, a PDB snapshot is an archive file containing the contents of the PDB copy.

If the underlying file system supports sparse files, then the first snapshot is full, and every subsequent snapshot is sparse.

**PDB synchronization**
The user-initiated update of the application in an application PDB to the latest version and patch in the application root.

**pluggable database (PDB)**
See PDB.

**proxy PDB**
A PDB that references a PDB in a remote CDB using a database link. The remote PDB is called a referenced PDB.

**referenced PDB**
The PDB that is referenced by a proxy PDB. A local PDB is in the same CDB as its referenced PDB, whereas a remote PDB is in a different CDB.

**refreshable clone PDB**
A read-only clone that can periodically synchronize with its source PDB. Depending on the value in the `REFRESH MODE` clause, the synchronization occurs either automatically or manually.

**resource plan**
A container for resource plan directives that specify how resources are allocated to resource consumer groups.

**resource plan directive**
A set of limits and controls for CPU, physical I/O, or logical I/O consumption for sessions in a consumer group.
seed PDB
In a multitenant container database (CDB), a default pluggable database (PDB) that
the system uses as a template for user-created PDBs. A PDB seed is either the
system-supplied PDB$SEED or an application seed.

shared undo mode
In a single-instance CDB, only one active undo tablespace exists. For an Oracle RAC
CDB, one active undo tablespace exists for every instance.

snapshot copy PDB
A PDB that is created by running the CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... FROM ...
SNAPSHOT COPY command. A storage-managed snapshot is a copy of the underlying
storage that is only supported on specific file systems.

Note:
A storage-managed snapshot, which is used to make a snapshot copy PDB,
is different from a PDB-managed snapshot, which can be specified in a
CREATE PLUGGABLE DATABASE ... USING SNAPSHOT command. Storage-
managed snapshots are not involved in clones from PDB snapshots.

split mirror clone PDB
A PDB that is created by splitting a mirror in Oracle ASM.

system container
The container that includes the CDB root and all PDBs in the CDB.

unplugged PDB
A self-contained set of PDB data files, and an XML metadata file that specifies the
locations of the PDB files.
Index

A

ADD_OUTBOUND procedure, 26-12
administrative users
  password files, multitenant environment, 13-19
ALTER DATABASE statement, 13-12
  application roots, 2-36, 17-4
  CDBs, 13-28
  RECOVER clause, 2-13
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, 13-28, 15-12, 17-4
  DROP SNAPSHOT clause, 16-14
  MATERIALIZE clause, 7-26
  SET MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS clause, 16-6, 16-9
  SNAPSHOT clause, 16-10, 16-12
  SNAPSHOT COPY clause, 7-26
  UNPLUG INTO clause, 11-1, 12-6, 12-15
ALTER SESSION statement
  SET CONTAINER clause, 13-22
ALTER SYSTEM statement
  CDBs, 13-27
  CONTAINER clause, 13-27
  PDBs, 15-12
application common objects, 2-29, 2-38, 17-35
  CONTAINERS clause, 17-47
  creation, 2-39, 17-36, 17-39
  data-linked, 2-6, 2-41
  DDL statements, 17-46
  DML statements, 17-42, 17-47
  extended data-linked objects, 2-42
  metadata links, 2-41
  metadata-linked common objects, 2-39
  naming rules, 2-14
  restrictions, 17-39
application containers
  about, 2-33
  administering, 17-1
  application common objects, 2-14, 2-29, 2-38, 2-39, 17-35, 17-39, 17-47
  application contexts, 20-1
  application PDBs, 2-37
  application roots, 2-36, 17-18

application containers (continued)
  application seeds, 2-38
    creating, 12-10, 12-11
    preparing for, 12-11
  application synchronization, 2-52
  application versions, 2-49
  applications, 2-44, 2-46
  applications created implicitly, 2-52
  bulk inserts, 17-31
  compatibility version, 17-30
  container maps, 2-54, 17-49
    creating, 17-53
    creating, 12-1, 12-3
  DML statements, 17-47
  dropping, 12-8
  how an application upgrade works, 2-47
  installing applications, 2-44, 17-8
  managing applications, 17-6
  migrating an application, 2-51
  migrating applications into, 17-16
  naming rules, 2-5
  patching applications, 2-50, 17-15
  preparing for, 12-2
  purpose, 2-34–2-36
  SQL*Loader, 17-31
  synchronizing applications, 17-20
  synchronizing with proxy PDBs, 17-22
  uninstalling applications, 17-33, 17-34
  unplugging, 12-6
  upgrading applications, 2-44, 2-46, 17-10
  viewing extended data-linked objects, 18-27
  viewing information about, 18-20
  viewing patches, 18-24, 18-25
  viewing shared objects, 18-26
  viewing SQL statements, 18-22
  viewing status, 18-21
  viewing synchronization errors, 18-26
  views, 18-20
  Virtual Private Database policies, 20-4
application contexts
  about, 20-1
  application containers, 20-1
  CDBs, 20-1
  application PDBs, 2-37
  application synchronization, 2-52
application PDBs (continued)
cloning, 7-1
creating, 12-18, 17-19
naming rules, 2-5
synchronization, 2-54
application roots, 2-36
ALTER DATABASE statement, 17-4
ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, 17-4
application PDBs
  modifying, 17-4
  creating, 17-18
  modifying, 17-4
application seeds, 1-16, 2-2, 2-38
  creating, 12-10, 12-11
  dropping, 12-17
  preparing for, 12-11
  unplugging, 12-15
applications
  in a CDB
    metadata-linked common objects, 2-39
  in application containers, 2-44, 2-46, 2-47
    at different versions, 2-49
    created implicitly, 2-52
    migrating an application, 2-51
    patching, 2-50, 17-15
    synchronization, 2-52
  uninstalling, 17-34
audit trail
  capturing syslog records, 21-10
  capturing Windows Event Viewer records, 21-10
auditing
  audit configurations, 2-30
  audit policies, 2-30
  CDBs, 21-1
  common objects, 2-30
  traditional, 21-2
authentication
  operating system authentication, 19-10
  operating system user in PDBs, 19-10
  PDBs, 19-10
AVAILABILITY MAX clause, 8-7
AVAILABILITY NORMAL clause, 8-6

B
backup and recovery
  CDBs and PDBs, 2-62, 23-1
break-glass protocol, 22-16

C
  catcon.pl, 13-39
  CDB resource plans, 15-57
  PDB performance profiles, 15-66, 15-75
  CDB_PDB_HISTORY view, 18-18
  CDB_PDBS view, 18-7
  CDBs, 1-3, 3-1, 1, 13-17, 15-44, 22-1
    about, 1-8
    administering, 13-1
    ALTER DATABASE statement, 13-28
    ALTER PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, 13-28
    ALTER SYSTEM statement, 13-27
    application common objects, 2-14, 2-38, 2-39, 17-35, 17-36, 17-47
    querying, 18-15
    application containers, 2-33–2-36
      application common objects, 2-6, 17-36
      application upgrades, 2-47
      bulk inserts, 17-31
      compatibility version, 17-30
      creating, 12-1, 12-3
      DML statements, 17-47
      dropping, 12-8
      installing applications, 2-44, 17-8
      migrating applications into, 17-16
      patching applications, 17-15
      preparing for, 12-2
      synchronizing applications, 17-20
      uninstalling applications, 17-33, 17-34
      unplugging, 12-6
      upgrading applications, 2-46, 17-10
    application contexts, 20-1
    application PDBs, 2-37
      cloning, 7-1
      creating, 12-18, 17-19
      application seeds, 2-38
      creating, 12-10
      dropping, 12-17
      preparing for, 12-11
      unplugging, 12-15
    auditing, 21-1
      how affects, 21-1
      traditional, 21-2
    backup and recovery, 2-62, 23-1
    CDB fleets, 14-1, 14-2
    CDB member, 14-4
      lead CDB, 14-1, 14-3
    CDB resource plans
      viewing information about, 15-82
      character sets, 2-1
      common objects, 2-6, 2-29
      common privilege grants, 2-24, 2-26, 19-2
      common roles, 2-20
      common users, 2-14, 2-16, 2-24, 2-26
        definition, 3-1
        naming rules, 2-14
CDBs (continued)
compatibility violations, 15-27
connecting to, 13-17
   ALTER SESSION statement, 13-22
   CONNECT command, 13-20
container data objects, 2-10, 18-2
   querying, 18-8
container maps, 2-54, 17-49
containers, 1-8, 13-35, 18-6
CONTAINERS clause, 18-14
creating, 4-1, 4-9
   creation, 1-15
   cross-container operations, 2-13
   current container, 2-12, 13-1, 18-17
data definition language (DDL), 13-36
data dictionary, 2-7
data links, 2-8
Database Resource Manager, 15-45
Database Vault operations control, 22-16
DBMS_SQL package, 13-46
DML statements, 13-34, 17-47
EM Express, 4-21
ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE SEED
   FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 4-11
ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE
   initialization parameter, 4-10
executing PL/SQL code, 13-46
files, 2-60
flashback, 23-5
flashback of PDBs, 2-63
functionality in Oracle Database Vault, 22-1
granting common roles and privileges, 2-24
granting privileges and roles, 2-23, 19-4
   initialization parameters, 18-18
local privilege grants, 19-2
   local roles, 2-20–2-22
   local users, 2-16, 2-18
      definition, 3-1
metadata links, 2-8
   modifying, 13-27–13-29
monitoring, 18-1
object privileges, 19-3
Oracle Database Vault, 13-2, 22-1
Oracle Managed Files, 4-12
PDB lockdown profiles, 2-31, 13-14, 19-13
PDB snapshots, 16-1
   configuring automatic creation, 16-10
      creating manually, 7-20, 16-12
      dropping, 16-14
      setting maximum number, 16-6, 16-9
PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization
   parameter, 4-12
PDBs
   modifying, 13-28

CDBs (continued)
PDBs (continued)
   refreshing, 15-23
   planning creation, 4-1
   plugging in PDBs
      methods for, 5-1
      preparing for, 5-19
   point-in-time recovery, 23-4
   prerequisites for, 3-2
   principles of grants, 2-22
   privilege management, 19-1
   realms, 22-13
   recovering, 23-1
   resource management, 2-63
   revoking privileges, 19-4
   roles
      creating common, 19-8
      creating local, 19-9
      granting common, 2-24, 2-26, 19-10
      how common roles work, 19-7
      managing, 19-6
      privileges required to manage, 19-8
      rules for creating common, 19-8
   root container, 2-1
      modifying, 13-33
   rule sets, 22-14
   security, 19-1
   seed PDBs, 1-16, 2-2
   services, 2-57
   shutting down, 13-47
   snapshot copy PDBs, 7-23
      materializing, 7-26
   SQL scripts, 13-39
   standby database, 13-2
   SYSLOG capture of unified audit records, 21-10
   system container, 2-1
   system privileges, 19-2
   tasks for, 3-3
   temp files, 2-60
   tools for, 3-5
   Transparent Data Encryption, 13-2
   undo mode, 2-60, 4-13, 13-30
   unplugging PDBs, 11-1
   user privileges, how affects, 19-1
   using Data Pump to move data into, 24-2
   viewing information about, 18-1, 19-5
   views, 18-3
   Virtual Private Database, 20-2
      policies, 20-4
   XStream, 26-1
   XStream In, 26-16
   XStream Out, 26-6
      configuring, 26-9
      configuring multiple, 26-12
CDBS
- PDB access by infrastructure DBAs, 22-16
- CLONEDB parameter, 7-1
- cloning a PDB, 7-1
  - local, 7-3, 7-5
  - refreshable clone PDBs, 7-17, 15-23
  - remote, 7-10, 7-12
  - using split mirrors, 7-27
- cloning an application PDB, 7-1
- command rules
  - with PDBs, 22-15
- common objects, 2-29
- common privilege grants, 2-24, 2-26
  - about, 19-2
  - granting, 19-4
  - revoking, 19-4
  - with object privileges, 19-3
  - with system privileges, 19-2
- common roles, 2-20
  - about, 19-7
  - creating, 19-8
  - granting privileges to, 2-24, 2-26, 19-1
  - how they work, 19-7
  - privileges required to manage, 19-8
  - rules for creating, 19-8
- common user accounts, 1-8, 2-14, 2-16
  - definition, 3-1
  - enabling access to other PDBs, 19-4
  - granting privileges to, 2-24, 2-26, 19-1
  - naming rules, 2-14
- common users, 2-16
  - accessing data in PDBs, 19-6
  - prefix, 13-36
- COMMON_USER_PREFIX parameter, 13-36
- commonality, principles of, 2-14
- CONFIGURE_DV procedure
  - registering Database Vault with, 22-6, 22-8
- CONNECT command, SQL*Plus
  - creating CDBs, 13-20
  - container data objects, 2-10, 18-2
    - about, 19-5
    - definition, 18-2
    - querying, 18-8
  - container databases
    - See CDBs
  - container maps, 2-54, 17-49
    - creating, 17-53
- CONTAINER_DATA objects
  - viewing information about, 19-4
- CONTAINERS clause, 17-35, 17-47, 18-14, 18-15
- CONTAINERS_DEFAULT attribute, 17-35
- CONTAINERS_DEFAULT_TARGET property, 2-13
- CONTAINERS_PARALLEL_DEGREE parameter, 18-14, 18-15
- containers, CDB, 1-8, 2-1, 2-63
  - root, 2-1
  - CPU_COUNT initialization parameter, 15-50
- CREATE DATABASE statement
  - creating an application PDB, 17-19
  - creating CDBs, 4-1
  - CREATE_DATABASE statement
    - AS PROXY clause, 1-25, 2-4, 10-1
    - clauses, 5-11
    - DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause, 5-4
    - file locations, 5-6
    - HOST clause, 10-5
    - logging_clause, 15-14, 15-16
    - MAX_Audit_SIZE clause, 5-3
    - MAX_DIAG_SIZE clause, 5-3
    - NO DATA clause, 7-5
    - PATH_PREFIX clause, 5-9
    - PDB listener host name, 10-5
    - PDB listener port number, 10-5
    - pdb_force_logging_clause, 15-14
    - PORT clause, 10-5
    - REFRESH MODE clause, 7-17
    - RELOCATE clause, 1-23, 8-1, 8-9, 8-10
    - SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 5-10
    - SNAPSHOT COPY clause, 1-20, 7-1, 7-23
    - SNAPSHOT MODE clause, 16-7
    - source file locations, 9-4
    - SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause, 9-5
    - SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 9-4
    - STORAGE clause, 5-3
    - USER_TABLESPACES clause, 5-5
    - USING clause, 1-21, 9-6
    - USING SNAPShOT clause, 7-20
  - CREATE ROLE statement, 2-20
  - CREATE_FILE_DEST clause, 5-8, 7-8, 13-16
  - CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN procedure
    - Database Resource Manager, 15-86
    - creating an application PDB, 17-19
    - creating CDBs, 4-1
  - CREATE_DATABASE statement, 4-9
    - Database Configuration Assistant, 4-9
    - ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE initialization parameter, 4-10
creating CDBs (continued)
manually from a script, 4-9
Oracle Managed Files, 4-12
PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter, 4-12
planning, 4-1
SEED_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 4-11
undo_mode_clause, 4-13
creating PDBs, 5-1
cross-container operations, 2-13
current container, 2-12, 13-1

D

data definition language (DDL)
CDBs, 13-36
data dictionary
CDBs, 2-7
PDBs, 1-14
storage in a CDB, 2-12
data links, 2-8, 2-41
data manipulation language
CDBs, 13-34
data-linked application common objects, 2-39, 12-1
data-linked common objects, 2-6, 2-38, 2-41, 17-35
Database Configuration Assistant
CDBs, 4-9
database consolidation, 1-12
database instances, 1-3
database links, PDBs, 2-6
Database Resource Manager, 1-12
CDB resource plans, 15-57
CDBs, 2-63, 15-45
CREATE_SIMPLE_PLAN procedure, 15-86
monitoring PDBs, 15-89
PDB resource plans, 15-84
PDBs, 15-45
database services, 2-58
in a CDB, 2-58
PDBs, 2-57
Database Upgrade Assistant (DBUA)
multitenant architecture support, 1-11
Database Vault
See Oracle Database Vault
Database Vault operations control
adding users and packages to exception list, how works, 22-16
adding users and packages to exception list, procedure, 22-18
deleting users and packages from exception list, 22-18
disabling, 22-19
enabling, 22-17

Database Vault realm protection, 22-12
Database Vault realm protections, 22-12
databases
definition, 1-3
grouped schemas
See realms, 22-12
DB_CACHE_SIZE parameter, 15-51
DB_CREATE_FILE_DEST initialization parameter, 5-8
DB_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE parameter, 15-67
DB_APP_ERRORS view, 18-26
DB_APP_PATCHES view, 18-25
DB_APP_PDB_STATUS view, 18-21
DB_APP_STATEMENTS view, 18-22
DB_APP_VERSIONS view, 18-24
DB_APPLICATIONS view, 18-20
DBA_APP_ERRORS view, 18-26
shared objects, 18-26
DBA_PDB_SAVED_STATES view, 15-36
DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTFILE view, 16-14
DBA_PDB_SNAPSHOTS view, 16-14
DBA_PROFILES view, 17-18
DBA_ROLES view, 17-18
DBA_TABLES view
extended data-linked objects, 18-27
DBA_USERS view, 17-18
DBMS_CREDENTIAL package, 13-15
DBMS_JOB
using with PDB, 25-2
DBMS_MACADM.ENABLE_DV procedure
registering Database Vault with, 22-3, 22-6, 22-8
DBMS_PDB package, 5-1, 7-12, 17-18
DBMS_SCHEDULER package, 25-2
DBMS_SQL package
CDBs, 13-46
DEFAULT TABLESPACE clause, 5-4
default temporary tablespaces
specifying for root, 4-16, 4-19
DROP PLUGGABLE DATABASE statement, 11-5, 12-8, 12-17
DVSYS schema
CDBs, 22-1

E

EM Express, 1-11
CDBs, 4-21
ENABLE PLUGGABLE DATABASE clause, 4-10
ENABLE_PLUGGABLE_DATABASE initialization parameter, 4-14
Enterprise Manager
  multitenant architecture support, 1-11
extended data-linked application common objects, 12-1
extended data-linked objects, 2-42, 17-35

F
FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 7-8
Flashback PDB, 2-63, 13-14
FLASHBACK TABLE SQL statement, 22-12
fleets, CDB, 14-1, 14-2

H
HOST clause, 10-5

I
Information Lifecycle Management, 22-12
installations
  Database Vault and Label Security in a multitenant environment, 22-11
instances, database, 1-3

L
lead CDB, 14-1
LEAD_CDB database property, 14-3
LEAD_CDB_URI database property, 14-4
local privilege grants
  about, 19-2
  granting, 19-4
  revoking, 19-4
local privileges
  granting, 2-23
local roles, 2-20–2-22
  about, 19-7
  creating, 19-9
  granting, 2-23
  rules for creating, 19-9
local users, 2-16, 2-18
  definition, 3-1
lockdown profiles, PDB, 2-31, 19-13
logging_clause, 15-14, 15-16
logical change records (LCRs), 26-1
LogMiner utility
  using in a CDB, 24-5

M
MAX_AUDIT_SIZE clause, 5-3
MAX_DIAG_SIZE clause, 5-3
MAX_IOPS parameter, 15-55
MAX_MBPS parameter, 15-55
MAX_PDB_SNAPSHOTS database property, 16-1
metadata links, 2-8, 2-41
metadata-linked application common objects, 2-39, 12-1
metadata-linked common objects, 2-38, 2-39, 17-35
metadata links, 2-41
multitenant architecture, 1-8, 3-1, 1, 24-6
  benefits, 1-12, 1-14
  definition, 1-3
  overview, 2-1
  user interfaces, 1-11
  XStream In, 26-16
  XStream Out, 26-6
multitenant container database
  See CDBs
multitenant container databases, 3-1, 22-1, 24-5
  See also CDBs
multitenant environment, 3-1

N
NO DATA clause, 7-5
non-CDBs
  cloning as PDBs, 1-17, 7-12
  noncdb_to_pdb.sql script, 7-12

O
object privileges
  with common privilege grants, 19-3
open modes
  PDBs, 15-27
operating system users
  configuring for PDBs, 19-11
operating systems, 19-10
  authentication
  operating system user for PDB, 19-10
ORA-39357: Warning: Oracle Data Pump operations are not typically needed when connected to the root or seed of a container database, 24-1
ORA-47503 error, 22-6, 22-8
ORA-65094:invalid local user or role name, 24-4
Oracle ASM, 5-8, 7-27
Oracle Database Guard
  CDBs, 13-2
Oracle Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA), 1-11
Oracle Database Vault, 22-1
  about, 22-1
  CDBs, 13-2, 22-1
Oracle Database Vault operations control about, 22-16
Oracle Database Vault policies in multitenant environment, 22-15
Oracle Database Vault registration common user to manage CDB root, 22-3
common users to manage specific PDBs, 22-6
local users to manage specific PDBs, 22-8
verifying configuration and enablement, 22-3
Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Express See EM Express
Oracle Flashback Technology, 22-12
Oracle Managed Files, 4-12, 5-8
Oracle Multitenant, 13-17
Oracle Multitenant option, 1-1, 1
Oracle Sharding architecture, 1-6
Oracle Universal Installer, 4-1
Oracle Virtual Private Database, 20-2
CDBs, 20-2
Oracle Virtual Private Database (VPD) about, 20-2
application containers, 20-4
CDBs, 20-4

P

PATH_PREFIX clause, 5-9, 7-8, 13-16
PDB lockdown profiles about, 19-13
creating, 19-15
default, 19-14
disabling, 19-16
dropping, 19-18
enabling, 19-16
PDB performance profiles, 15-66
managing, 15-75
PDB relocation basic steps, 8-10
how it works, 8-4
user interface, 8-9
PDB resource plans, 15-84
PDB snapshot carousel about, 16-1
administering, 16-1
contents, 16-6
how it works, 16-4
purpose, 16-1
setting the maximum number of snapshots, 16-9
viewing snapshots, 16-14
PDB snapshots
viewing, 16-14
PDB_FILE_NAME_CONVERT initialization parameter, 4-12, 7-12
pdb_forceLoggingClause, 15-14, 15-16
PDB_OS_CREDENTIAL initialization parameter, 13-14, 13-15
PDB_PLUGIN_IN_VIOLATIONS view, 15-27
pdbSaveOrDiscardStateClause, 15-36
pdb_to_apppdb.sql script, 17-19
PDB$SEED, 2-2
PDBs, 1-3, 3-1, 1, 13-17, 15-44, 22-1
about, 1-8
administering, 15-1
ALTER SYSTEM statement, 15-12
archive files, 1-21
auditing
types of audit settings allowed, 21-1
backup and recovery, 2-62
buffer pool size, 15-61
CDB resource plans, 15-67
creating, 15-63, 15-66
directives, 15-61
disabling, 15-81
enabling, 15-70
managing, 15-71
shares, 15-57
utilization limits, 15-58
viewing information about, 15-82
character sets, 2-1
cloning, 1-17, 2-3, 7-1
cloning application, 7-1
cloning local, 7-3, 7-5, 7-10
command rules in, 22-15
common roles about, 19-7
creating, 19-8
granting, 19-10
how they work, 19-7
privileges required for management, 19-8
revoking, 19-10
rules for creating, 19-8
common users, 2-14
accessing data in PDBs, 19-6
viewing privilege information, 19-5
compatibility violations, 15-27
connecting to, 2-59, 13-17, 15-3
ALTER SESSION statement, 13-22
CONNECT command, 13-20
consolidation of data into, 1-15
containers, 2-1
CPU limits, 15-50
creating as proxies, 10-1
creating by plugging in, 9-6
creating from seed, 1-16, 6-1
creation, 1-15, 5-1
current container, 2-12, 13-1
PDBs (continued)
data dictionary, 1-14
database links, 2-6
Database Resource Manager, 15-45
DBMS_SQL package, 13-46
definition, 2-2, 3-1
dropping, 11-5
EM Express, 4-21
enabling and disabling, 15-44
encryption, 7-1
executing PL/SQL code, 13-46
fine-grained audit policies, 21-5
flashback, 2-63, 13-14, 23-5
granting privileges and roles, 2-21
hot cloning, 7-1
I/O limits, 15-55
instances_clause, 15-29
keystore, 7-1
local roles
about, 19-7
creating, 19-9
rules for creating, 19-9
lockdown profiles, 2-31, 13-14
managing services, 15-44
modifying, 15-14, 15-44
moving, 8-1, 8-6, 8-7
how it works, 8-4
purpose, 8-4
naming rules, 2-5
open mode, 15-27, 18-7
preserving on restart, 15-36
operating system user configuration, 19-11
operating system user for, setting, 19-10
PDB resource plans, 15-84
creating, 15-86
disabling, 15-89
enabling, 15-87
modifying, 15-88
PGA size, 15-51
plugging Database Vault-enabled PDB to CDB, 22-19
plugging in, 9-1
methods for, 5-1
preparing for, 5-19
point-in-time recovery, 23-4
prerequisites for, 3-2
privileges
common, 19-2
granting, 19-4
how affected, 19-1
object, 19-3
revoking, 19-4
viewing information about, 19-5
proxy, 1-15, 1-25, 2-2, 2-4, 10-4, 17-22
PUBLIC role, 19-7

Index
PUBLIC role, CDBs, 19-7

R

realms
  about, 22-12
  authorizations in multitenant environment, 22-13
  multitenant environment
  about, 22-13
recovering CDBs, 23-1
REFRESH MODE clause, 7-17
refreshable clone PDBs, 1-21, 7-17
  switchover, 15-23
relocating PDBs, 8-1
  common listener network, 8-6
  isolated listener network, 8-7
  user interface, 8-9
REMOTE_RECOVERY_FILE_DEST parameter, 7-17
resource plans
  CDB, 15-57
  PDB, 15-84
roles
  common, 2-24
  common, granting, 19-10
  granting in a CDB, 2-21, 2-22
  in a CDB, 2-20
  local, 2-21–2-23
root container, 1-8, 1-15, 2-1
  modifying, 13-33
  viewing information about, 19-5
row-level security
  See fine-grained access control, Oracle Virtual Private Database (VPD)
rsmgr:io rate limit, 15-55
rule sets
  multitenant environment
  about, 22-14
rule-based transformations, 26-1
rules, 26-1

S

Scheduler
  CDB, 25-1
  closing a PDB, 25-3
  invocations to CDB, 25-1
  using job coordinator in CDB, 25-2
  using slave processes in CDB, 25-2
  views, 25-3
security
  CDBs, 19-1
  PDBs, 13-14
SEED_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 4-11
seed PDB, 1-8, 1-15
SERVICE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 5-10, 7-8
services
  PDBs, 15-4
  SGA_MIN_SIZE parameter, 15-51
  SGA_TARGET parameter, 15-51
  SHARED_POOL_SIZE parameter, 15-51
SHUTDOWN command
  closing a PDB, 15-38
  PDBs, 15-42
shutting down an instance
  CDBs, 13-47
SNAPSHOT COPY clause, 1-20, 7-1, 7-23
snapshot copy PDBs, 1-20
SNAPSHOT MODE clause, 16-7
snapshots, PDB, 16-1
  contents, 16-4
  viewing, 16-14
SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY clause, 9-5
SOURCE_FILE_NAME_CONVERT clause, 9-4
split mirror clone PDBs, 7-27
SQL scripts
  CDBs, 13-39
SQL*Loader
  application containers, 17-31
SQL*Plus
  multitenant architecture support, 1-11
standby database
  CDBs, 13-2
STANDBY_PDB_SOURCE_FILE_DBLINK
  initialization parameter, 7-12
STANDBY_PDB_SOURCE_FILE_DIRECTORY
  initialization parameter, 9-6
STARTUP command
  PDBs, 15-40, 15-41
  starting a PDB, 15-38
STORAGE clause, 5-3
switching over refreshable clone PDBs, 15-23
synchronizing applications, 17-20
SYSLOG
  capturing audit trail records, 21-10
system container, 2-1
system privileges
  CDBs, 19-2
  with common privilege grants, 19-2

T

Transparent Data Encryption
  CDBs, 13-2

U

undo mode
  CDBs, 2-60, 13-30
undo tablespaces, 13-12
   specifying for CDBs, 4-16, 4-19
undo_mode_clause, 4-13
unified audit policies, application containers
   example, 21-9
unified audit policies, CDBs
   about, 21-3
   appearance in audit trail, 21-4
   configuring, 21-6
   examples, 21-8
unified audit policies, roles
   examples, 21-9
UNIFIED_AUDIT_COMMON_SYSTEMLOG
   initialization parameter
   using, 21-10
UNIFIED_AUDIT_SYSTEMLOG initialization
   parameter
   using, 21-10
unplugging, 11-1, 12-6, 12-15
upgrades
   database, 1-12, 2-7
user privileges
   CDBs, 19-1
USER_TABLESPACES clause, 5-5
users
   common, 1-8, 2-14, 2-16
   user name, specifying with CREATE USER
      statement, 13-19
USING_SNAPSHOT clause, 7-20
utilization limits for PDBs, 15-58

V
V$CON_SYS_TIME_MODEL view, 18-2
V$CON_SYSSTAT view, 18-2
V$CON_SYSTEM_EVENT view, 18-2
V$CON_SYSTEM_WAIT_CLASS view, 18-2
V$CONTAINERS view, 18-6
V$PDBS view, 15-16, 18-7
V$RSRCPDBMETRIC view, 15-89
   CPU usage, 15-90
   I/O generated, 15-93
   memory usage, 15-93
   parallel execution, 15-92
V$RSRCPDBMETRIC_HISTORY view, 15-89
Virtual Private Database
   See Oracle Virtual Private Database
VPD
   See Oracle Virtual Private Database

W
Windows Event Viewer
   capturing audit trail records, 21-10

X
XStream
   CDBs, 26-1